



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Edinc T 918.62.548

**Harvard College
Library**



By Exchange

DUPLICATE



3 2044 097 062 210

Edinc T 918.62.548

**Harvard College
Library**



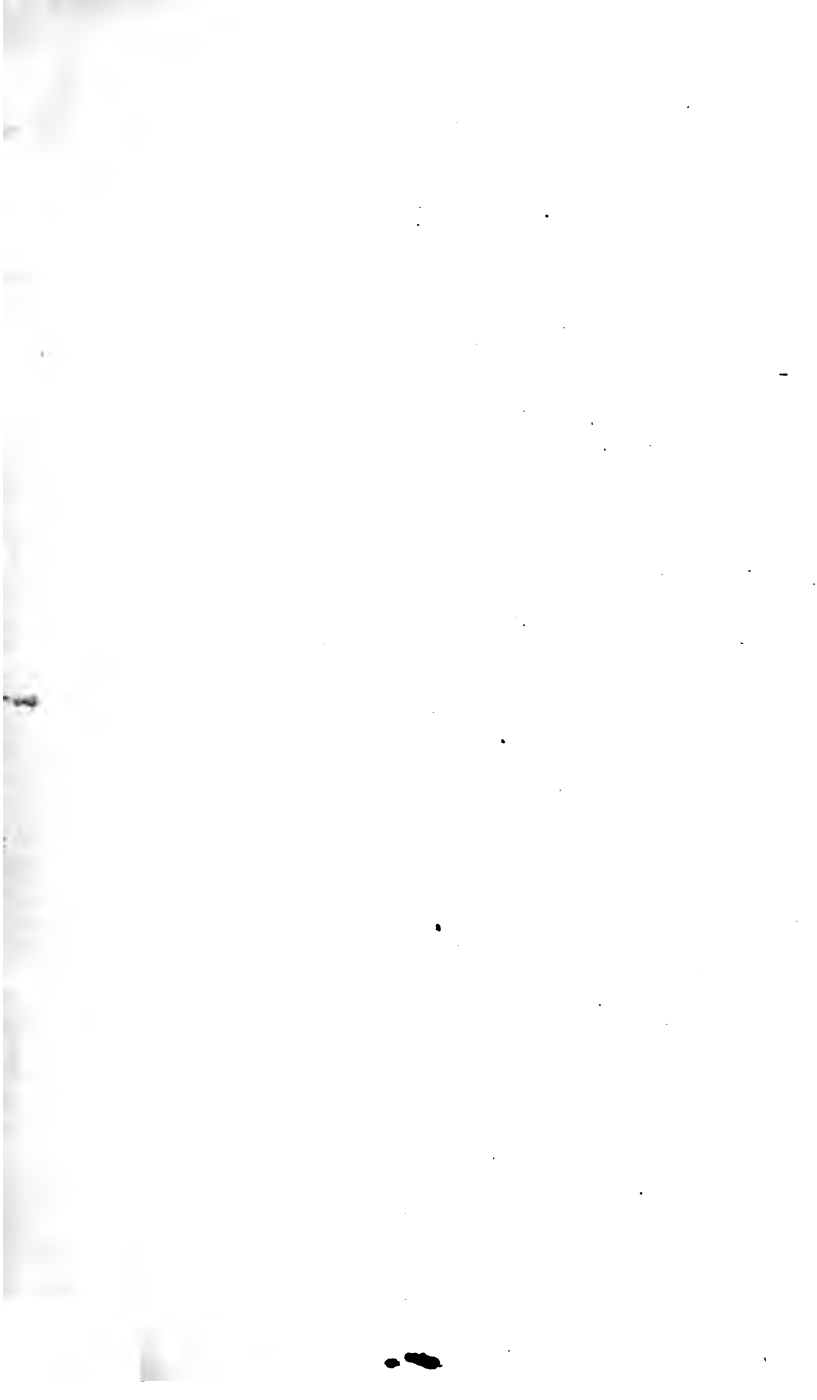
By Exchange

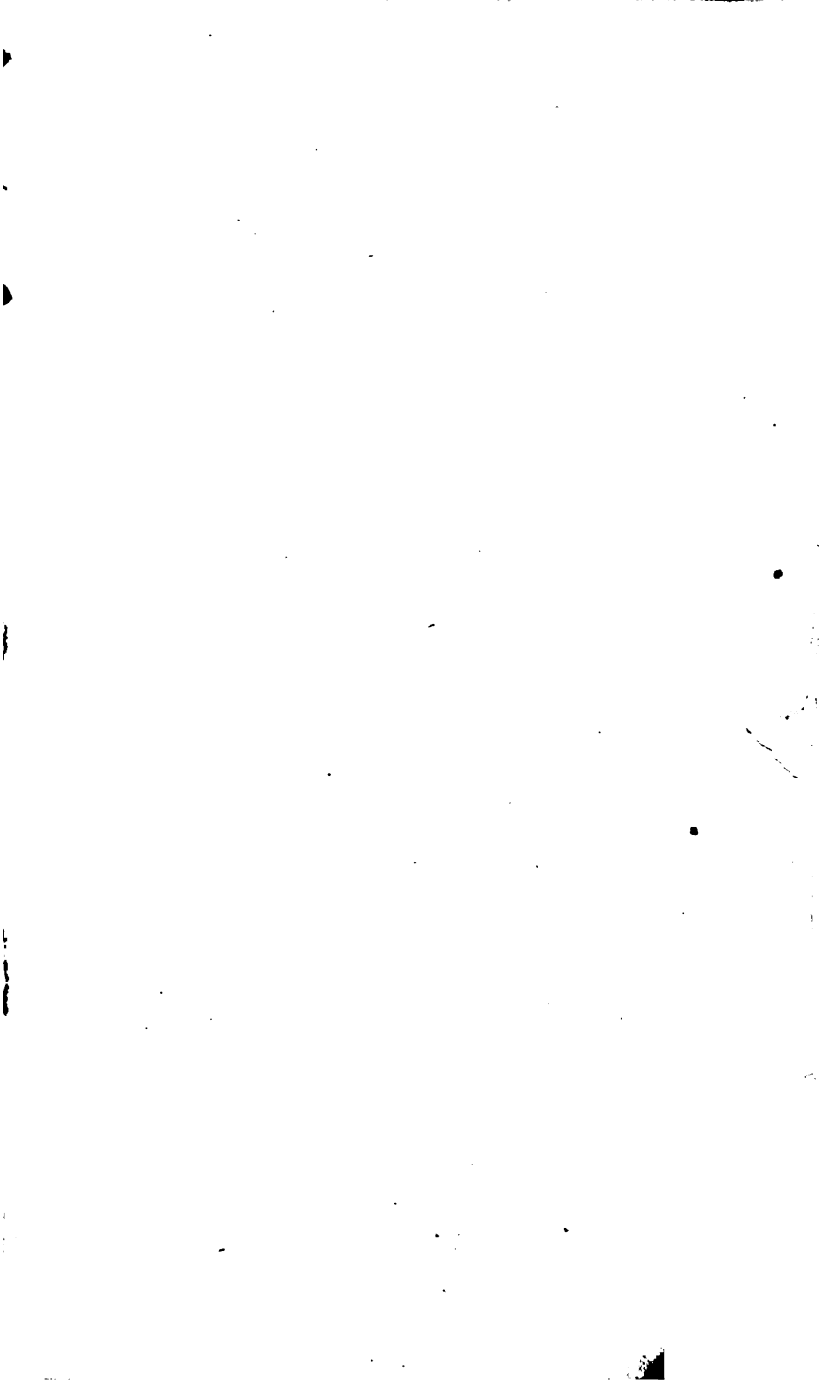
DATE



3 2044 097 062 210

[Handwritten signature]







A

FIRST BOOK IN LATIN;

CONTAINING

GRAMMAR, EXERCISES, AND VOCABULARIES,

ON THE METHOD OF

CONSTANT IMITATION AND REPETITION.

BY

JOHN M'CLINTOCK, A.M.,

PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES,

AND

GEORGE R. CROOKS, A.M.,

ADJUNCT PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN DICKINSON COLLEGE.

EIGHTH EDITION.

NEW YORK:

HARPER & BROTHERS, PUBLISHERS.

1862.

Edue T 918.62.548
✓

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
BY EXCHANGE FROM
NEW YORK STATE LIBRARY
FEB 26 1932

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846,
By HARPER & BROTHERS,
In the Clerk's Office of the Southern District of New York.

PREFACE.

THIS book is designed, as the title-page states to contain within itself Grammar, Exercises, Reading-book, and Dictionary; in short, all that the pupil will need before commencing the regular reading of Cæsar or any other easy Latin author. It has been prepared, as far as possible, on the following principles:

1. The object of studying languages is twofold: (1), the acquisition of the languages themselves; and (2), the mental discipline gained in acquiring them.

2. No language can be thoroughly acquired without the outlay of much labour and time. All schemes which promise to dispense with such outlay must be pronounced visionary and chimerical.

3. But labour without fruit does not contribute to mental cultivation. Labour and pain are not necessary companions: learning should not be "wrung from poor striplings like blood from the nose, or the plucking of untimely fruit."*

4. The grammar of a language cannot be understood until the language itself is at least partially acquired.

5. The vernacular may be learned, so far as its use is concerned, without grammar: a foreign living language may be so learned, but never so thoroughly, nor even so rapidly, as with grammatical aids. In the study of a dead language grammar is indispensable.

6. "A grammar intended for beginners should be formed altogether differently from one intended for

* Milton.

1.08 Nivali

the higher classes, both in the distribution of the matter and in the mode of presenting it. Those who think that the pupil should use the same grammar from the beginning of his course to the end, are quite in error.”*

7. In elementary books, or in teaching, no etymological form nor grammatical principle should be presented to the pupil without an immediate application thereof to *practice*, which should be kept up, both orally and in writing, from the very first lesson.

8. The all-important rule of practice, in the acquisition of language, is *imitation* and *repetition*. This is no new invention; all good teachers have known and used it; but yet it has been but slightly employed in elementary books heretofore.

9. Models for imitation should be simple at first, and gradually made more complicated; but they should always be selected from pure authors, say, in Latin, from Cicero and Cæsar.

10. The pupil's ear should be trained to correctness from the beginning, and the simplest rules of prosody learned and applied as soon as possible. For this purpose, the quantity of all syllables should be marked in elementary books, and attention to it should be strictly enforced by the teacher.

11. The foreign idiom, both as to the use and arrangement of words, should be made familiar to the pupil by constant practice. Nothing can be more hurtful than exercises in which foreign words are used in the idiom, and according to the arrangement of the vernacular.

How far we have been successful in carrying out these principles, the book itself must show.

We have aimed to combine the advantages of constant repetition and imitation of Latin sentences from the beginning, with a more thorough drilling in etymological forms than is common. In order to effect this combination, we have necessarily deviated from the ordinary grammatical course to some extent; but we trust that experienced teachers will find, from an examination of the table of contents alone, that our arrangement is not devoid of systematic and even logical order.

While we have not gone out of our way to bring in novelties, we have yet adopted every new method which we have deemed to be an improvement. None of the class-books of any repute in England or Germany have escaped our notice in the preparation of this work; and we have made free use of them all, without slavish adherence to any. Perhaps the most marked peculiarity of the etymological part of the book will be found to be the doctrine of the genders of nouns of the third declension, which we have reduced, for the first time, to a form at once philosophical, we hope, and practical.* Some steps toward the method here presented have been taken by MADVIG, WEISSENBOERN, and others in Germany; but none of these writers has brought out a clear exposition of the doctrine, adapted to the actual purposes of instruction. The arrangement, also, of the verbs,† according to the formation of the perfect-stem, founded mainly upon the classification of GROTEFEND (better set forth by ALLEN), will be found, we trust, to be an improvement upon any yet offered.

* The summary of rules, with all the exceptions, will be found to occupy two pages only, viz., p. 132, 133.

† Lessons lxii.-lxix., and p. 268-279.

The Syntax, in its details, generally follows ZUMPT but in the arrangement, especially of Part II., we have approached nearer to the plan of BILLROTH. The admirable syntax of BECKER, adopted by KÜHNER in his Greek and Latin Grammars, we deem too difficult for beginners.

The Exercises are selected, as far as possible, from Cæsar's Gallic War. Although we have laboured hard to keep out bad Latin, we do not hope that all our sentences will escape criticism. We have found, from actual experiment in our classes, that the exercises to be rendered from English into Latin are within the capacity of any student of ordinary industry who studies the book in order; and we do not know that this can be said of any book of the kind, of equal extent, in use among us.

A few words as to the use of the book may not be out of place. Our own method has been to employ the lessons, for a considerable time at least, entirely in oral instruction, the teacher pronouncing first the Latin sentences distinctly, and requiring the pupil to give the corresponding English without book; and then pronouncing the English sentences, and requiring the pupil to give the corresponding Latin. As the quantities are marked (in Part I.) in all syllables except those to which the general rules apply, we require the pupil to observe quantity in his pronunciation from the very beginning, so that he learns prosody by practice before the rules are given. For the purpose of review, the summary of Etymology (Part III.), which contains, in short compass, all that is necessary to be learned by heart, will be found very convenient. After the student has passed

through Parts I. and II., he will find little difficulty in committing accurately the Rules of Syntax (Part IV.), with most of which he will be already familiar. The Reading Lessons at the end will give him easy practice in the syntax and in word-building. For the convenience of those who may need it, we have condensed into a few pages, in Appendix I., all of Prosody that is essential for the understanding of hexameter verse.

The preparation of this book was originally suggested by our sense of the inadequacy of the ordinary modes of instruction, and especially by the advantage which we ourselves had derived from the use of OLLENDORFF's method in the study of the German language. Finding that Rev. T. K. ARNOLD had prepared a series of books on the same principle, we used them in our own classes for some time, with a view to revising them for republication. They were found unsuited to our purpose in many respects and we therefore formed the design of preparing an entirely new series, adapted to the use of American schools. The first of these is now presented to the public.

Dickinson College, April 7, 1846.

* * In Part I. the quantity is marked on all syllables except those to which the general rules apply. At the beginning of Part II. additional rules of quantity are given, and the marks are subsequently omitted on many syllables, in order to afford the pupil exercise upon the rules. In the Syntax and Reading Lessons they are omitted almost entirely. Great pains have been taken to ensure accuracy in the marks of quantity, but we cannot hope to have avoided error entirely.

PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION

IN this edition, a number of errors in the marks of quantity, which had crept into the first, are corrected. We have also placed a series of Examination Questions at the end of the book, which will add, we hope to its practical value.

Cambridge, November. 1847

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

	Page
§ 1 Division of the Letters	1
§ 2 Syllables, Quantity, Accent	1
§ 3 Pronunciation	3
§ 4 Division of Words	4

PART I.

PARTIAL EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS.

<i>Summary of Essential Points</i>	8
§ 5. <i>First Declension of Nouns.—First Conjugation of Verbs. (I.—V.)</i>	10
First Declension of Nouns, Nominative, Vocative, and Genitive Cases	10
First Conjugation of Verbs, <i>Intransitive</i>	14
First Declension of Nouns, Accusative Case.—First Conjugation of Verbs, <i>Transitive</i>	17
First Declension of Nouns, Dative and Ablative Cases	19
§ 6. <i>Second Declension of Nouns.—Second Conjugation of Verbs. (VI.—VIII.)</i>	22
Second Declension, <i>Masculine</i>	22
Second Declension, <i>Neuter</i> .—Second Conjugation of Verbs	26
§ 7. <i>Adjectives of First Class, Three Endings. (IX.—X.)</i>	28
Forms of Adjectives in <i>us, a, um</i>	28
Some forms of <i>Esse, to be</i>	30
§ 8. <i>Third and Fourth Conjugations of Verbs. (XI.)</i>	33
§ 9. <i>Passive Verbs. (XII.—XIII.)</i>	36
§ 10. <i>Third Declension of Nouns, Partial Treatment. (XIV.—XV.)</i>	40
§ 11. <i>Adjectives of Second Class, Two Endings. (XVI.)</i>	44
§ 12. <i>Adjectives of Third Class, One Ending. (XVII.)</i>	46
§ 13. <i>Fourth Declension of Nouns. (XVIII.)</i>	48
§ 14. <i>Fifth Declension of Nouns. (XIX.)</i>	51
§ 15. <i>Pronouns. (XX.—XXXI.)</i>	53
Pronoun, <i>Personal</i> , 1st Person. Verb, 1st Person	53
Pronoun, <i>Personal</i> , 2d Person. Verb, 2d Person	57
Pronoun, <i>Personal</i> , 3d Person	61
Pronouns, <i>Demonstrative</i>	66
Pronoun, <i>Relative</i>	68
Pronoun, <i>Interrogative</i>	70

	Pronouns, <i>Indefinite</i>	Page 73
	Pronouns, <i>Correlative</i>	74
§ 16	<i>Numerals</i> . (XXXII.—XXXIII.)	77
§ 17.	<i>Verbs of Third Conjugation in io</i> . (XXXIV.)	81
§ 18.	<i>Verbs, Deponent</i> . (XXXV.)	83
§ 19.	<i>Adverbs</i> . (XXXVI.)	85
§ 20.	<i>Prepositions</i> . (XXXVII.—XXXVIII.)	88
§ 21.	<i>Analysis of Tense-formations</i> . (XXXIX.—XLI.)	92

PART II.

FULLER EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS.

§ 1.	<i>Additional Rules of Quantity</i>	99
§ 2.	<i>Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action, Partial Treatment</i> . (XLIII.—XLVI.)	102
	Perfect Tenses of <i>Esse</i>	102
	Perfect Tenses of 1st, 2d, and 4th Conjugations	104
	Perfect Tenses of 3d Conjugation	106
§ 3.	<i>Third Declension of Nouns, Fuller Treatment</i> . (XLVII. —LVII.)	110
	Irregular Nouns	129
	Summary of Rules of Gender, Third Declension	132
§ 4.	<i>Comparison of Adjectives</i> . (LVIII.—LX.)	134
§ 5.	<i>Comparison of Adverbs</i>	140
§ 6.	<i>Supine</i> . (LXI.)	141
§ 7.	<i>Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action, Active Voice. Fuller Treatment</i> . (LXII.—LXIX.)	144
	Forms of Perfect Stem, 1st Conjugation	144
	Forms of Perfect Stem, 2d Conjugation	146
	Forms of Perfect Stem, 3d Conjugation	149
	Forms of Perfect Stem, 4th Conjugation	159
§ 8.	<i>Tenses for Completed Action, Passive Voice</i> . (LXX.)	162
§ 9.	<i>Participles</i> . (LXXI.—LXXV.)	165
	Present Participle Active	165
	Future Participle Active	168
	Perfect Participle Passive	170
	Ablative Absolute	172
§ 10.	<i>Infinitive</i> . (LXXVI.—LXXIX.)	176
	Forms of Infinitive	176
	Accusative with Infinitive	178
§ 11.	<i>Gerund</i> . (LXXX.)	184
§ 12.	<i>Gerundive</i> . (LXXXI.—LXXXII.)	187
	Gerundive used for Gerund	187
	Gerundive used to express Duty or Necessity	189
§ 13.	<i>Imperative Mood</i> . (LXXXIII.)	192
§ 14.	<i>Sentences</i>	194
§ 15	<i>Conjunctions</i> . (LXXXIV.—LXXXV.)	195

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xi

	Page
§ 16. <i>Subjunctive Mood.</i> (LXXXVI.—XCIII).	199
Subjunctive Present	199
Subjunctive Perfect	202
Subjunctive Imperfect and Pluperfect. Conditional Sentences	205
Subjunctive with ut, ne (<i>Purpose</i>)	209
Subjunctive with ut (<i>Consequence</i>). Succession of Tenses	212
Subjunctive with quin, quo, quominus. Periphrastic Forms	214
Subjunctive with quum	217
Subjunctive in Relative Sentences	220
§ 17. <i>Oratio Obliqua.</i> (XCIV.)	223
§ 18. <i>Impersonal Verbs.</i> (XCV.—XCVI.)	226
§ 19. <i>Irregular Verbs.</i> (XCVII.—CI)	230
Posse	230
Velle, Nolle, Malle	232
Ferre	234
Fieri, Edere	236
Ire, Quire, Nequire	238
§ 20. <i>Defective Verbs.</i> (CII.)	241

PART III.

SUMMARY OF ETYMOLOGY.

§ 1. <i>Letters, Quantity, &c.</i>	247
§ 2. <i>Noun</i>	248
§ 3. <i>Adjective</i>	251
§ 4. <i>Numerals</i>	254
§ 5. <i>Pronoun</i>	255
§ 6. <i>Verb</i>	258
1. Classes of Verbs	258
2. Parts of the Verb	258
3. Conjugation	259
4. The Auxiliary <i>Esse, to be</i>	260
5. Paradigms of Regular Verbs	261
6. Verbs in <i>io</i> of the 3d Conjugation	266
7. Deponent Verbs	266
8. Periphrastic Conjugation	266
9. Formation of Perfect Stem	267
10. Lists of Verbs, with various Perfects and Supines	268
First Conjugation	268
Second Conjugation	269
Third Conjugation	271
Fourth Conjugation	276
Deponent Verbs	277
Inchoative Verbs	279
11. Irregular Verbs, Paradigms	279
12. Defective Verbs	282

13. Impersonal Verbs	Page 283
§ 7. <i>Adverb</i>	285
§ 8. <i>Preposition</i>	288
§ 9. <i>Conjunction</i>	289
§ 10. <i>Interjection</i>	290

PART IV.

SUMMARY OF SYNTAX.

PART I. SIMPLE SENTENCES.

I. Subject and Predicate	293
II. Use of Cases	295
<i>Nominative</i>	295
<i>Genitive</i>	295
<i>Dative</i>	298
<i>Accusative</i>	300
<i>Ablative</i>	302
III. Use of the Indefinite Verb	306
<i>Infinitive</i>	306
<i>Participle</i>	307
<i>Gerund</i>	308
<i>Gerundive</i>	308
<i>Supine</i>	309

PART II. COMPOUND SENTENCES.

I. Co-ordinate Sentences	310
II. Subordinate Sentences	310
A. <i>Participial Sentences</i>	311
B. <i>Accusative with Infinitive</i>	312
C. <i>Conjunctive Sentences</i>	313
D. <i>Relative Sentences</i>	316
E. <i>Interrogative Sentences</i>	318
<i>Oratio Obliqua</i>	319

APPENDIX I. Prosody	323
APPENDIX II. Greek Nouns	326
APPENDIX III. The Calendar	327
APPENDIX IV. Abbreviations	329
WORD-BUILDING	333
READING LESSONS	340
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	355
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	363

INTRODUCTION.*

§ 1. DIVISION OF THE LETTERS.

(1.) THE letters are the same as in English, with the omission of *w*; *k* is used in but few words, and *y* and *z* only in words borrowed from the Greek.

(2.) Six are *vowels*,¹ viz., *a, e, i, o, u, y*: the remaining nineteen are *consonants*.²

¹ Sounds formed by an *uninterrupted* emission of the air from the throat. Called *vowels* (*vocales* = sounding letters), because capable of being sounded by themselves.

² Sounds formed by *interrupting* the emission of air from the throat. Called *consonants* (*con-sonare* = to sound together), because incapable of being sounded by themselves.

(3.) The consonants are divided into

(a) Liquids,³ *l, m, n, r*;

(b) Spirants,³ *h, s, j*;

(c) Mutes,³ *b, c, d, f, g, k, p, q, t, v*;

³ The *Liquids* are formed by a *partial* interruption of the voice; the *Spirants* chiefly by the breath; and the *Mutes* by a more complete interruption of the passage of the air from the throat. *H* is regarded, indeed, simply as an aspiration, though in many words it fills the place of a consonant.

(d) Double consonants,⁴ *x, z*.

⁴ *X* is compounded of *cs, gs*, and *z* (occurring only in Greek words) of *ds*.

(4.) The union of two vowels into one syllable forms a *diphthong*. These are, in Latin, *au, eu, ae, oe* (generally written *æ, œ*), and, in a few words, *ei, oi, ui*.

§ 2. SYLLABLES, QUANTITY, ACCENT.

(5.) Every word contains as many syllables as vowels; e. g., *miles*, a soldier, is not pronounced in one syllable, as the English word *miles*, but in two, *mī-les*.

(6.) The quantity of syllables (that is, their *length*

* This Introduction may be omitted by *very young pupils* in their first study of the work; but the references to it in the subsequent lessons should be carefully attended to.

or *shortness*) depends upon that of the vowels which they contain. The dash (ˉ) placed over a vowel denotes that it is *long*; the semicircle (˘), that it is *short*. A vowel that may be used either as long or short is marked (ˉ), and is said to be *common*.

(7.) The following rules for the quantity of syllables must be carefully observed:

(a) All diphthongs are *long*; e. g., mens-*æ*, tables, a *ū*-rum, gold.

(b) A vowel followed by another vowel is *short*; e. g., D*ē*us, God.

This rule applies, even though *h* intervene between the two vowels, as *h* is not regarded as a consonant (3, b, n. 3); e. g., tr*ā*ho, v*ē*ho.

(c) A vowel followed by two consonants, or a double one (3, d), is *long by position*; e. g., in am*ā*nt, the *a* before *nt* is long by position.

 [Every syllable to which none of these three rules is applicable will be marked with its proper quantity in the following pages, until other rules are given.]

(8.) A word of but one syllable is called a *Monosyllable*; of two, a *Dissyllable*; of more than two, a *Polysyllable*. Thus, lex is a monosyllable; l*ē*g*is*, a dissyllable; inc*ō*l*ās*, a polysyllable.

(9.) The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the second from the last, the *antepenult*. Thus, in the word inc*ō*l*ās*, the syllable l*ās* is the ultimate, c*ō*, the penult, and in the antepenult.

(10.) The *accent* of a syllable is a stress or elevation of the voice in pronouncing it. Observe the following rules:

(a) Every *dissyllable* is accented on the *penult*; e. g., b*ō*nus, p*ō*no.

(b) Every *polysyllable* is accented,

1 On the *penult*, when the penult is *long*: e. g.,
ā m*ā* r*ē*.

2. On the *antepenult*, when the penult is *short* ;
e.g., *ánimūs*.

§ 3. PRONUNCIATION.

(11.) [Almost every modern nation has its own way of pronouncing Latin. But as the vowels have nearly the same sounds in all the different countries of *Continental Europe*, there is something approaching to uniformity in their pronunciation; the English, however, give peculiar sounds to some of the vowels, and they pronounce Latin, therefore, unlike all the rest of the world. In this country two methods prevail, which, for convenience' sake, may be called the *Continental* and the *English*. We give them both, stating, at the same time, our decided preference for the first, both on the score of consistency and convenience. In both methods the *consonants* are pronounced nearly as in English.]

(a) *The Continental Method.*

Table of Vowel Sounds.

Short <i>ă</i> , as in hat.	Long <i>ī</i> , as in machine
Long <i>ā</i> , as in father.	Short <i>ō</i> , as in not.
Short <i>ě</i> , as in net.	Long <i>ō</i> , as in no.
Long <i>ē</i> , as in there.	Short <i>ũ</i> , as in tub.
Short <i>ĩ</i> , as in sit.	Long <i>ũ</i> , as in full.

Diphthongs.

æ or *œ*, as *e* in there.
au, as *ou* in our.
eu, as *eu* in feud.
ei (rarely occurring), as *i* in nice.

(b) *The English Method.*

The vowels have the English *long* or *short* sounds.
 Exc. A final, in words of more than one syllable, has a *broad* sound; as, *fama* (fame-ah).

Monosyllables.

In monosyllables, if the vowel be the *last* letter, it has the *long* sound; as *mē*, *dō*; if any *other* letter, the *short* sound: as *et*, *dh*.

Dissyllables and Polysyllables.

(1.) The vowel of an *accented penult* has the *long* sound,

(a) Before another vowel; as, Déus.

(b) Before a single consonant; as, Jóvis.

It has the *short* sound,

(a) Before two consonants, or a double consonant; as, múnus, réxit.

(2.) The vowel of an *accented antepenult* has the *short* sound; as, régibus.

(3.) An *accented* vowel before a mute and liquid has usually the *long* sound; as, sácræ.

§ 4. DIVISION OF WORDS.

(12.) I. Words are divided, according to their *signification*, into *eight* classes, called Parts of Speech, viz., Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

(13.) The *Noun* is the name of an object (person, or thing); e. g., *John, man, house*.

Nouns are divided into,

(a) Proper, denoting *individual* objects; e. g., *John, Cæsar, Rome*.

(b) Common, denoting one or more of a *class* of objects; e. g., *man, house, horses*.

(c) Abstract, denoting a *quality*; e. g., *goodness, haste, virtue*.

(14.) The *Adjective* expresses a quality or property belonging to an object; e. g., *good, small*; as, a *good* boy, a *small* house.

(15.) The *Pronoun* is a substitute for the noun; e. g., *he, she, it*, are substitutes for *man, woman, book*.

(16.) The *Verb* declares something of a person or thing.

e. g., the boy *dances*; the boy *sleeps*; the boy *is* good. (In this last case the quality "good" is affirmed of "boy," by means of the verb *is*.)

 *Participles, Gerunds, and Supines* are words partaking in the meaning of the verb, and in the form of the noun.

(17.) The *Adverb* qualifies the meaning of a verb, adjective, or other adverb; *e. g.*, the boy learns *rapidly*; the boy is *remarkably* faithful; the boy learns *very* rapidly.

(18.) *Prepositions* express the relations of objects simply; *e. g.*, *from* me; *in* the house.

(19.) *Conjunctions* connect words and sentences; *e. g.*, Thomas *and* John went to town; Thomas went, *but* John remained.

(20.) *Interjections* are merely signs of emotion; *e. g.*, *alas*!

(21.) II. Words are divided, according to their form, into,

(1) Four *inflected*, viz., Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb.

(2) Four *uninflected*, viz., Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

Rem. Inflection is the variation of a word to express different relations; *e. g.*, boy, boys, the boy's hat; I love, I am loved, &c. The inflection of Nouns is called *Declension*; of Verbs, *Conjugation*. The Latin language makes much more use of inflection than the English.

(22.) III. Words are divided, according to their formation, into,

(1) *Derivative*, *i. e.*, derived from other words.

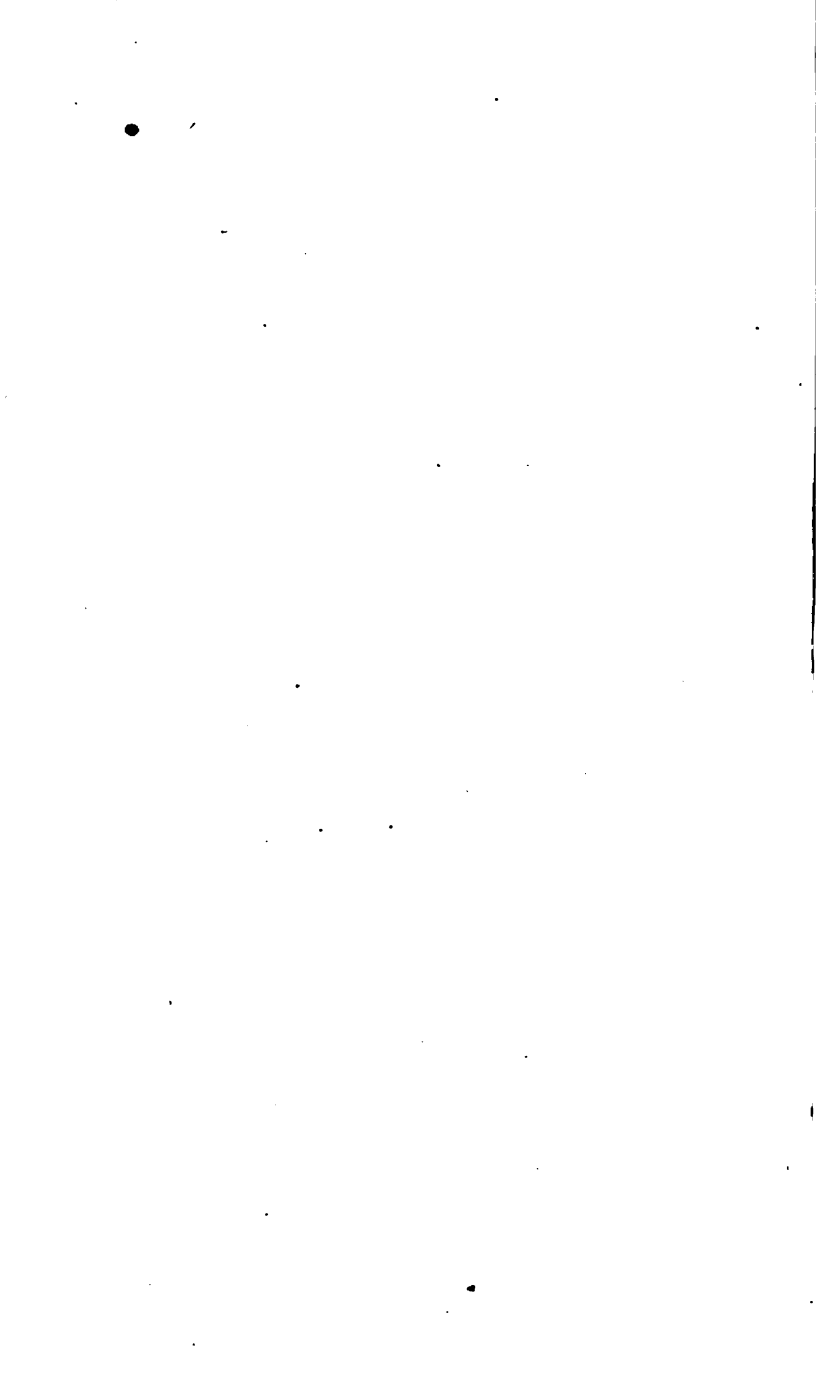
(2) *Primitive*, *i. e.*, not derived from other words.

E. g., *manly*, *manhood*, are derivatives from the primitive *man*.

(3) *Compound*, *i. e.*, made up by the union of two or more words.

(4) *Simple*, *i. e.*, not so made up.

E. g., *man-kind* is a compound, made up of the two simple words *man* and *kind*.



P A R T I.

PARTIAL EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS.

INCLUDING

TENSES OF VERBS FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION.

SUMMARY.

[THE rules and statements on this page and the following are to be thoroughly learned, as they must be applied constantly.]

(23.) OF THE LETTERS.

- (1) Six are *vowels*, *a, e, i, o, u, y*;
- (2) Four *liquids*, *l, m, n, r*;
- (3) Four *k-sounds*, *c, g, k, q*;
- (4) Four *p-sounds*, *b, f, p, v*;
- (5) Two *t-sounds*, *d, t*;
- (6) Two double consonants, *x, z*.
- (7) The diphthongs are *au, eu, ae, oe* (and rarely *ei, oi, ui*).

(24.) GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

- (1) A vowel before another is *short*; *e. g.*, *via*.
- (2) A vowel before two consonants, or a double one, is *long by position*; *e. g.*, *amānt*.

[As a mute followed by a liquid causes some exceptions to this rule, we shall mark the quantity, in that case, *doubtful*; thus, *āgri*.]

- (3) All diphthongs are *long*; *e. g.*, *mensā, āurum*.

[In the following pages of Part I., the quantity of all syllables is marked, except those which are covered by the above rules.]

(25.) GENERAL RULES OF GENDER.

[In English, gender is determined by sex alone; *e. g.*, *man* is masculine, *woman* feminine. But in Latin, gender is determined partly by the *meaning* of nouns, and partly by their *endings*. The general rules here given from the *meanings* apply to nouns of all the declensions.]

I. MASCULINES : Names of *male beings* ; of *most rivers, winds, mountains, months, and nations.*

II. FEMININES : Names of *female beings, cities, countries, trees, plants, and islands.*

III. NEUTERS : All *indeclinable words.*

IV. COMMON : Such as have but one form for masculine and feminine ; *e. g.,* ē x ũ l, *an exile* (male or female).

[These four rules are contained in the following verses.]

(25. a.) *Males, rivers, winds, and mountains* most we find
 With *months and nations* MASCULINE declined ;
 But *females, cities, countries, trees* we name,
 As FEMININE ; *most islands, too, the same.*
 COMMON are such as *both* the genders take,
 And NEUTER all words undeclined we make.

[There are many exceptions from these rules, which must be learned by observation.]

EXPLANATION OF MARKS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

The mark — indicates a *short* vowel.

“ “ — indicates a *long* vowel.

“ “ = indicates that two words or phrases are *equivalent* to each other.

“ “ + between two words shows that they are *compounded together.*

e. g. means, *for example* (exempli gratia).

Passages in brackets [] are not meant to be committed to memory.

In the Exercises, words in parentheses () are not meant to be translated.

The References are made to *paragraphs*, not to *pages*.
 In a reference, R. means *Remark* ; N. means *foot-note*.

§ 5.

FIRST DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—FIRST CONJUGATION OF VERBS. (I.—V.)

LESSON .

First Declension of Nouns.—Nominative, Vocative, and Genitive Cases.

(26.) *Examples.*

(a) <i>Shade or shadow,</i>	Umbră.
(b) <i>Of the shade,</i>	Umbræ.
(c) <i>The wood,</i>	Sylvă.
(d) <i>Of the wood,</i>	Sylvæ.

(27.) The Latin has *no article*. Umbră may be *a shade*, or *the shade*, according to its connection with other words.

(28.) The words umbră and sylvă are names of things belonging to certain *classes*, and are, therefore, *common nouns* (13, b).

(29.) In English, certain words (of, with, by, &c.) are generally placed before nouns, to express their relations to other words; *e. g.*, *of the wood*, &c.; but in Latin these relations are commonly indicated by different *endings* of the noun (21, (2), R.); *e. g.*, sylv-ă, the wood; sylv-æ, *of the wood*.

(30.) That part of the noun to which the *ending* is added is called the *stem*; *e. g.*, sylv- is the stem of sylv-ă; terr- is the stem of terr-ă, *the earth*.

(31.) There are in Latin *six endings*, which, added to the stem, form *six cases*, the *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative*.

(32.) And as we may speak of objects as *one* or *more*, there are two numbers, the *singular* and *plural*.

distinguished by their endings; *e. g.*, umbrā, *the shadow*; umbræ, *the shadows*.

(33.) In this lesson we shall use but three cases, the nominative, vocative, and genitive.

(a) The *nominative* answers to the question *who?* or *what?* and gives the simple name of the thing spoken of. In the example (26, a), umbrā, *shade*, is in the nominative.

(b) The *same* form of the noun, when spoken to, is called the vocative; *e. g.*, umbrā, *shade*; *O shade!*

(c) The *genitive* expresses, in general, those relations which are expressed in English by the possessive case, or by the preposition *of*, and answers to the question *whose?* of *whom?* of *what?* *e. g.*, umbrā, *the shade* (of *what?*), sylvæ (of *the wood*). Here sylvæ is in the genitive.

(34.) There are *five* declensions of nouns, distinguished from each other by the endings of the *genitive singular*. In this lesson we shall use only nouns of the

FIRST DECLENSION.

Case-Endings and Paradigm.—Nominative and Genitive.

(35.) (a) ENDINGS.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. and Voc.	ā	æ
Gen.	æ	ārūm.

(b) By adding these endings to the stem sylv-, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

	^{Sing.}	^{Plur.}
Nom. and Voc.	sylv-ā, <i>the wood</i> ; <i>O wood!</i>	sylv-æ, <i>the woods</i> ; <i>O woods!</i>
Gen.	sylv-æ, <i>of the wood</i> .	sylv-ārūm, <i>of the woods</i> .

(36.) (a) Thus, nouns of the first declension have the nom. and voc. ending ā (*short*), and the gen. ending æ (*long*, 24, 3).

(b) The penult *a* of the gen. pl. is long. (c) They are of the feminine gender, except the names of *men* or *male* beings, or *rivers*: thus, *sylv-ă* is fem.; but *naut-ă*, a *sailor*, *poet-ă*, a *poet*, and the like, are masc.

[A few Greek nouns of this declension end in *e* fem., and *as, es*, masc. See Appendix.]

(37.)

EXERCISE.

[In the Vocabularies, the *nom. case* is always given, with the *genitive* ending subjoined.]

I. Vocabulary

Queen, *regină*, æ.Crown, *cărănă*, æ.Wing, *ală*, æ.Dove, *columbă*, æ.Feather, *plumă*, æ.Daughter, *filiă*, æ.A Celt, *Celtă*, æ.Farmer, *agricolă*, æ. (m.)Rose, *rösă*, æ.Maid-servant, *ancillă*, æ.Galba, *Galbă*, æ. (m.)Flight, *fugă*, æ.Province, *prövinciă*, æ.Memory, recollection, *mămöriă*, æ.Gaul, *Galliă*, æ.Eagle, *ăquillă*, æ.A Belgian, *Belgă*, æ.Injury, *injură*, æ.Language, *linguă*, æ.

II. Translate into Latin.

Of a crown.—Of a queen.—O Galba!—Of crowns.—Of a feather.—Of eagles.—Of the Celt.—Wings.—Roses.—Of doves.—Of injuries.—Of a daughter.—O daughter!—Of the province.—Languages.—Provinces.—Belgians.—Of the provinces.—Of the maid-servant.—O maid-servant!—The farmers.—O farmer!—Of memory.—O Belgian!—Of Gaul.—The eagles.

III. Answer the questions in the foot-note.*

[A few questions are subjoined in the foot-notes, merely as specimens to the first lessons.]

LESSON II.

First Declension of Nouns.—Nominative, Vocative, and Genitive Cases.

(38.) Examples.

(a) The queen's crown. | *Cărănă reginæ*.

* What is the quantity of *u* in *umbră*? (24, 2.) Of *æ* in *sylv-æ*? (24, 3.) Of *u* in *columbă*? (24, 2.) Of the penult (9) in *filiă*? (24, 1.) Of *i* in *linguă*? Of *i* in *ancillă*? (24, 2.)

(a) *Rule of Position.*—The genitive (when *unemphatic*) stands *after* the noun on which it depends; e. g., *rēgīnæ* in (a) stands *after* *īrōnā*.

(b) The queen's crown (*i.e.*, | *Rēgīnæ cōrōnā*.
not the king's).

(b) *Rule of Position.*—The genitive (when *emphatic*) stands *before* the noun on which it depends; e. g., in (b) *rēgīnæ* stands *before* *cōrōnā*.

[Words in the exercises considered *emphatic* are in *italics*.]

(59.)

EXERCISE.

I. Translate into English.

Ālā cōlumbæ.	Rōsā ancillæ.	Fūgā Belgārūm.
Plūmā āquīlæ.	Galbæ fūgā.	Plūmæ āquīlārūm.
Ō rēgīnā (voc.).	Prōvinciā Galliæ.	<i>Injūriārūm mēmōriā</i>
Filiā āgrīcōlæ.	Mēmōriā fūgæ.	Lingūā Celtārūm.
<i>Rēgīnæ</i> filiā.	Ō filiā!	Filiæ rēgīnārūm.
<i>Columbæ</i> plūmā.	<i>Āquīlārūm</i> fūgā.	Lingūā Belgārūm

II. Answer the questions in the foot-note.*

III. Translate into Latin.

The queen's dove.	The wings of eagles.
The farmer's eagle.	O eagle.
The flight of doves.	Galba's daughter.
The <i>girl's</i> rose.	The shades of the woods.
The queen's rose.	The memory of <i>the queen</i> .
The flight of the Celts.	The girl's dove.
The wings of the doves.	The language of <i>the province</i> .
The recollection of <i>an injury</i> .	O Belgians!
O Celts!	The flight of <i>the queen</i> .

* 1. What is the quantity of the ultimate (9) of *ancillæ*? Why? (24, 1.)
2. Of its penult? (9.) Why? (24, 2.) Of the penult of *Galliæ*? Why? (24, 1.)

3. What is the quantity of *a* in *injuriarum*? (36, b.) in *memoria*? (36, a.)

4. What is the stem of *columba*, *ala*, *rosa*? &c. (30.)

5. What is the *gender* of *rosa*, *ala*, *fuga*? &c. (36, c.) What is the *gender* of *Galba*, *agricola*? (25, a.)

6. What is the *case* of *rosa*, *provinciæ*, *injuriarum*, *memoria*? What their number?

7. How many cases have Latin nouns? (21.) What are they? (31.)

LESSON III.

First Declension of Nouns.—Nominative and Genitive Cases.—First Conjugation of Verbs.—Intransitives

(40.) *Examples.*

To fly,	völärë.
To dance,	saltärë.
(a) The eagle flies,	äquillä völäät.
(b) The girl dances,	püellä saltät.

(41.) SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

(a.) Every sentence (*e. g., the eagle flies*) consists of two parts:

1. The *subject*, *i. e.*, that of which something is declared (a noun, or some word used instead of a noun) *e. g., eagle*.

2. The *predicate*, *i. e.*, that which is declared of the subject (generally a verb); *e. g., flies*.

Rem. The predicate is frequently an adjective or participle connected with the subject by the verb *is*; *e. g., the rose is sweet*.

(b.) The verb in the predicate agrees with the subject in number and person; *e. g., the eagle flies*: here *flies* is in the *third person singular*, to agree with *eagle*.

(42.) **ACTIVE VERBS** are those which express activity; *e. g., the eagle flies, the boy dances*. Active verbs are either

(a) *Transitive*, *i. e.*, such as require an *object* to complete their meaning; *e. g., the boy killed (whom? or what?) the squirrel*. Here *killed* is a transitive verb.

(b) *Intransitive*, *i. e.*, such as *do not* require an object; *e. g., the birds fly; the boy dances*.

[All the verbs used in this lesson are intransitives.]

(43.) (a) The *infinitive* form of a verb expresses its action indefinitely, without reference to person or time; *e. g., to dance, to plough*.

(b) The *indicative* mood of a verb expresses its action *definitely*, as a fact or question ; e. g., he *ploughs*. *Does he dance?*

[The imperative and subjunctive moods are treated of hereafter.]

(44.) TENSES.

(a) The *present* tense expresses *incomplete* action in *present* time ; e. g., *I am ploughing, I plough*.

(b) The *imperfect* tense expresses *incomplete* action in *past* time ; e. g., *I was ploughing, I ploughed*.

(c) The *future* tense expresses *incomplete* action in *future* time ; e. g., *I shall be ploughing, I shall plough*

[Rem. As these three forms all express *imperfect* or *incomplete* action, they should be called *Present Imperfect, Past Imperfect, Future Imperfect*. But as the present names are fixed by almost universal usage, we retain them ; advising the student to fix distinctly in his mind the principle that these forms properly express action as *continuing* or *incomplete*. The tense-forms for *completed* action will be given hereafter.]

(45.) CONJUGATIONS.

(a) In Latin, the different moods, tenses, numbers, and persons of verbs are expressed by various endings ; and the affixing of these to the proper *stem* of the verb is called conjugation. (21, Rem.)

(b) There are *four conjugations* of verbs, distinguished by their *infinitive-endings*.

(c) The infinitive-ending of the *first conjugation* is *arē* (a long) ; e. g., *vōl-ārē, to fly ; ār-ārē, to plough*.

(d) To find the *stem* of any verb, strike off the *infinitive-ending* ; e. g., *vōl-ārē*, stem *vōl-* ; *ār-ārē*, stem *ār-*. To form any mood, tense, &c., of a verb, affix the proper ending to the stem thus found.

(46.) SOME ENDINGS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE, <i>ārē</i> .			
INDICATIVE.			
3d Sing.	Present. <i>āt.</i>	Imperfect. <i>ābāt.</i>	Future. <i>ābit.</i>
3d Plural.	<i>ant.</i>	<i>ābant.</i>	<i>ābunt.</i>

(47.) By affixing these endings to the stem *vōl-*, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, <i>vōl-ārē</i> , to fly.			
INDICATIVE.			
3d Sing.	Present. <i>vōl-āt, he, she, it flies.</i>	Imperfect. <i>vōl-ābāt, he, she, it was flying.</i>	Future. <i>vōl-ābit, he, she, it will fly.</i>
3d Plur.	<i>vōl-ant, they fly.</i>	<i>vōl-ābant, they were flying.</i>	<i>vōl-ābunt, they will fly.</i>

Rem. In Latin we need not use the personal pronouns *he, she, it, or they*, with the verb, as in English, because the person-endings *t* and *n* indicate the person sufficiently.*

(48.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Girl, *puellā, æ*.

Forces, *cōpiæ, † ārum (pl.)*.

Sailor, *nautā, æ (m.)*.

A Belgian, *Belgā, æ*.

To hasten, *festin-ārē*.

To watch, *vigil-ārē*.

Galba, *Galbā, æ*.

To fly, *vōl-ārē*.

To dance, *salt-ārē*.

To cry out, *exclām-ārē*.

To sup, *cœn-ārē*.

To walk, *ambul-ārē*.

II. Example.

The eagle flies. | *Āquilā vōlāt.*

Rule of Position.—The subject nominative generally precedes the verb; *e. g.*, in the above example, *āquilā* precedes *vōlāt*.

[In the above example, which word is the subject? Why? (41, a, 1.) Which the predicate? Why? (41, a, 2.) How does *vōlāt* agree with *āquilā*? Why? (41, b.)]

III. Translate into English.

Columbæ vōlant.—*Ancillā saltāt.*—*Puellæ exclāmant.*—*Rēginā cœnābāt.*—*Puellā ambulābāt.*—*Cōpiæ festinānt.*—*Āquilā vōlābant.*—*Galbā festinābit.*—*Rēginā saltāt.*—*Nautæ vigilābant.*—*Filiā rēginæ saltābit.*—*Belgæ festinant.*—*Filiā Gal-*

* But when a new subject is introduced, or emphasis is required, the personal pronoun must be used in Latin.

† *Cōpiā*, in the singular, means *abundance*; in the plural, *forces*.

bæ exclāmāt.—Puellæ ambulābant.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm festinā bunt.—Saltābant.—Ambulābant.—Cœnābunt.—Nautā ambulā bīt.—Vigilābunt.—Nautæ saltant.—Agricōlā cœnābīt.

IV. Answer the questions in the foot-note.*

V. Translate into Latin.

The dove flies.—The girl walks.—The maid-servant hastens.—The sailors dance.—The queen's maid-servant cries out.—The farmer was supping.—The queen will sup.—The sailor was watching.—The farmer's daughter will dance.—The girl's dove will fly.—The queen's maid-servant will walk.—She was hastening.—They were watching.—He (or she) was supping.—The eagles were flying.—Galba was hastening.—The forces of the Belgians will hasten.—Eagles will fly.—The sailors were crying out.—The queen was walking.

LESSON IV.

First Declension of Nouns, Accusative Case.— First Conjugation of Verbs, Transitives.

(49.)	To love,	ā m-ārō.
	Queen,	rē gīnā
	Daughter,	filiā.

(a) The queen loves her daughter.	Rē gīnā filiā n. ā māt.
	The queen her-daughter loves.

Rem. The possessives, his, her, &c., are not expressed in Latin, except for the sake of perspicuity or emphasis.

(50.) (a) It has been stated (41) that every sentence consists of two parts, *subject* and *predicate*; so the English sentence (49, a) contains the subject, *queen*, and the predicate, *loves*. But this predicate is *limited* by

* What is the quantity of the ultimate of *Columbæ*? Why? (24, 3.) Of the penult? Why? (24, 2.) Of the ultimate *a* of *puella*? (36, a.) Of the penult? (24, 2.) Why? Of the antepenult? Why? (24, 1.) What kind of action does *vōlant* express? (44, a.) In what time? What kind does *ambulābāt*? (44, b.) In what time? In what tenses may incomplete actions be expressed? (Pres., past, and fut.) What is the stem of *vōlant*? Of *exclāmant*? Of *cœnābant*? [The stem may be found by striking off any tense-ending.] Why can the personal pronoun be omitted in Latin? (47, Rem.) When must it be used? (47, Rem., N.)

the word *daughter*, which is called the *direct object* of the verb. So, in the Latin sentence (49, a), we have,

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Direct object.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>
Rēginā.	filīām.	āmāt.

(b) A verb thus taking an object is called a *Transitive* verb (42, a), and its direct object is said to be in the *Objective* case in English (e. g., daughter), and in the *Accusative* case in Latin (e. g., filīām). We have thus the following:

(51.) *Rules of Syntax.*

(a) The Accusative is the case of the *direct object*.

(b) Transitive verbs govern the *accusative*.

(52.) The accusative-endings of the first declension are,

Sing. ā m; e. g., filī-am, rēgin-am, *daughter, queen*.

Plur. ā s; e. g., filī-ās, rēgin-ās, *daughters, queens*.

(53.)

EXERCISE.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Moon, lūnā, æ.

To delight, dēlectārē.

Medicine, mēdicinā, æ.

To prepare, pārārē.

Shade or } umbrā, æ.

Shadow, }

To obscure, obscurārē.

To arm, armārē.

Through (prep.), pār (with acc.).

To take possession of; } occupārē
or, to seize,

Island, insulā, æ.

To call, vōcārē.

To (prep.), ad. (with accus.).

Poet, poētā, æ.

To praise, laudārē.

To love, āmārē.

Earth, terrā, æ.

II. *Example.*

The poet praises the queen. | Poētā rēginām laudāt

Rule of Position.—The object accusative stands before the transitive verb; e. g., in the above example, the object rēginām stands before the transitive verb laudāt.

III. *Translate into English.*

Lūnā nautās dēlectāt.—Agricōlā filiās āmāt.—Ancillæ mēdicinām pārant.—Umbra terræ (33, c) lūnām obscurāt.—Nautæ rēginām laudant.—Galbā cōpiās armābāt.—Umbra sylvārūm agricōlās dēlectāt.—Galbā sylvās occupāt.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm sylvās occupābant.—Cōlumbæ pār sylvās vōlābant.—Rēginā ancillās vōcāt.—Ancillæ rēginām āmant.—Agricōlā filīām vōcā-

bāt.—Rēgīnā poētām laudābīt.—Rōsæ ancillās dēlectant.—Cōpiās armābunt (47, Rem.).—Sylvās occūpābunt (47 Rem.).

IV. *Answer the questions in the foot-note.**

V. *Translate into Latin.*

The moon delights the farmer.—The farmer's daughter (38, b) prepares the medicine.—The eagle's feathers delight the queen.—The Belgians arm (their) forces.—The shade of the wood delights the poet.—Galba will take possession of the wood.—(They) walk through the woods.—(They) take possession of the island.—The farmer loves (his) daughter.—The farmer's daughter praises the poet.—The queen will call the maid-servants.—The queen loves (her) maid-servants.—The shadow of the earth will obscure the moon.—The poet will praise the sailors.

LESSON V.

First Declension.—Dative and Ablative Cases.

(54.) THE *dative* case of nouns expresses the object *to* or *for* which any thing is done; *e. g.*, the man gives *(to)* the boy a book. Here *boy* is in the dative case.

Rem. The accusative case, *book*, is the *direct* object of the verb *gives*; the dative, *boy*, the *remote* object.

(55.) (a) The *ablative* case of nouns expresses the person or thing *with*, *from*, *in*, or *by* which any thing is done; *e. g.*, he filled the cup *with* wine. Here, *with wine* would be expressed in Latin by one word, in the ablative.

(b) The ablative is also governed by prepositions expressing the relations *with*, *from*, *by*, &c.

(56.) The Dative endings are, *Sing.* æ: *Plur.* is (*long*).

* (1.) What pronouns are not expressed in Latin? (47, R., 49, R.) For what purpose are they sometimes used? (2.) By what is the transitive verb limited? (By a direct object.) What is the case of the direct object in Latin? (51, a.) What is the direct object of *āmāt*, *laudāt*? &c.

The Ablative endings are *Sing. ā (long) Plur. is (long)*.

(57.)

FIRST DECLENSION.

CASE-ENDINGS AND PARADIGM COMPLETE.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ā.	ae.
Gen.	ae.	arūm.
Dat.	ae.	is.
Acc.	ām.	ās.
Voc.	ā.	ae.
Abl.	ā.	is.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	sylv-ā, <i>a wood.</i>	sylv-ae, <i>woods.</i>
Gen.	sylv-ae, <i>of a wood.</i>	sylv-arūm, <i>of woods.</i>
Dat.	sylv-ae, <i>to a wood.</i>	sylv-is, <i>to woods.</i>
Acc.	sylv-ām, <i>a wood.</i>	sylv-ās, <i>woods.</i>
Voc.	sylv-ā, <i>O wood!</i>	sylv-ae, <i>O woods!</i>
Abl.	sylv-ā, <i>with, &c., a wood.</i>	sylv-is, <i>with, &c., woods.</i>

Rem. Some nouns of this declension are used only in the *plural*, viz., *divitiæ*, *riches*; *nuptiæ*, *a marriage*; *insidiæ*, *an ambush*.

(58.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Way, viā, ae.

To show, monstrārē.

Ambush, or snares, insidiæ, arum
(used only in the pl.).

Wild beast, fērā, ae.

To give, dārē.*

To beseech, obsēcrārē.

Letter, littērā, arum.†

Friendship, amicitia, ae.

To establish,

To strengthen, } confirmārē.

With (prep.), cūm (governing the ab-
lative case).

To abound, abundārē, (with abl.).

Deserter, perfūgā, ae.

Tear, lācrīmā, ae.

Inhabitant, incolā, ae (25, IV.).

II. Examples.

- (a) The farmer shows the way to the girls. | Agricolā puellis viām mon-
strāt.

Rule of Position.—The remote object usually precedes the direct; *e. g.*, in example (a), *puellis* precedes *viām*.

- (b) The queen walks with the maid-servants. | Reginā cūm ancillis ambū-
lāt.

Rule of Position.—The preposition and its noun precede the verb; *e. g.*, in example (b), the words *cūm ancillis* precede *ambūlāt*.

† Dārē has ā short before rē.

† Littērā, *sing.*, means a letter (as of the alphabet); littēræ, *plur.*, a letter = an epistle.

III. *Translate into English.*

Galbā insīdiās pārāt.—Galbā Belgīs (54) insīdiās pārāt.—Belgæ āmicītiām confirmant.—Belgæ cum rēginā āmicītiām confirmant.—Insulā fēris* ābundāt.—Poētā rēginæ (dat., 54) rōsam dābāt.—Cōpiæ pār insulām festinant.—Pērfūgæ rēginām obsēcrābant.—Pērfūgæ cūm lācrīmis rēginām obsēcrābant.—Pērfūga rēginæ (dat., 54) littērās dābāt.—Incōlæ rēginām obsēcrābant.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The poet praises the queen.—Galba establishes friendship.—Galba establishes friendship with the Belgians.—The Belgians will prepare snares.—The Belgians will prepare snares for the inhabitants (54).—The islands abound (in) herbs (58, III., note).—Poets give roses to queens (54).—The Belgians are beseeching Galba.—The Belgians are beseeching Galba with tears.—The queen will establish friendship.—The queen will establish friendship with the Belgians.—The deserters will beseech the queen.—The deserters will beseech the queen with tears.—The Belgians were preparing snares.—The Belgians were preparing snares for the deserters (54).

* Fēris is the abl. *Rule of Syntax.*—The *abl.* case is used with *al* verbs and adjectives of *abounding* and *wanting*.

§ 6.

SECOND DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS. (VI.—VIII).

LESSON VI.

Nouns.—Second Declension, Masculine.

(59.) *Examples.*

<i>Crassus,</i>	<i>Crass-ūs.</i>	<i>Of Crassus,</i>	<i>Crass-ī.</i>
<i>Messenger,</i>	<i>nunti-ūs.</i>	<i>messengers,</i>	<i>nunti-ī.</i>
<i>To hasten,</i>	<i>festinārē.</i>		
<i>The messenger of Crassus</i>	<i>Nunti-ūs</i>	<i>Crass-ī</i>	<i>festināt.</i>
<i>hastens.</i>			
<i>The messengers hasten.</i>		<i>Nunti-ī</i>	<i>festinant.</i>

(60.) The *Second Declension* comprises all nouns whose gen. sing. ending is *ī* (*long*). The nom. has two endings, *ūs* for masc. gender, and *ūm* for the neut.

(61.) The *case-endings* for the masculine gender are as follows :

Nom.	Sing. ūs.	Nom.	Plur. ī.
Gen.	ī.	Gen.	ōrūm.
Dat.	ō.	Dat.	īs.
Acc.	ūm.	Acc.	ōs.
Voc.	ē.	Voc.	ī.
Abl.	ō.	Abl.	īs.

Rem. The nouns in *ūs* of this declension are the only Latin nouns in which the vocative-ending differs from the nominative.

(62.) By adding these endings to the stem *serv-* of the noun *serv-ūs* (a slave), we get the

PARADIGM.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	<i>serv-ūs, a slave.</i>		<i>serv-ī, slaves.</i>
Gen.	<i>serv-ī, of a slave.</i>		<i>serv-ōrūm, of slaves.</i>
Dat.	<i>serv-ō, to or for a slave.</i>		<i>serv-īs, to or for slaves.</i>
Acc.	<i>serv-ūm, a slave.</i>		<i>serv-ōs, slaves.</i>
Voc.	<i>serv-ē, O slave!</i>		<i>serv-ī, O slaves!</i>
Abl.	<i>serv-ō, with, by, &c., a slave.</i>		<i>serv-īs, with, by, &c., slaves.</i>

[*Rem. 1.* Nearly all nouns in *ūs* are *masc.*; but the names of *trees, plants* &c., are *fem.* by the general rule (25, *a*). The four nouns, *alvūs* *belly*; *cōlūs*, *distaff*; *hūmūs*, *ground*; *vannūs*, *fan*, are also *fem.* *Virūs*, *juice*; *pēlāgūs*, *the sea*; *vulgūs*, *the common people*, are *neuter*.

Rem. 2. *Filiūs*, *son*, and proper names in *iūs*, take *i* for the vocative-ending; e. g., *filī*, *O son!* *Tullī*, *O Tully!*

Rem. 3. *Dēūs*, *God*, has *deūs* for *voc. sing.*; and in the plural *N* and *V. diī*, *G. deōrūm*, *D. and Abl. diīs*, *Acc. deōs*.]

[For Greek nouns of this declension, see Appendix.]

(63.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Master (of a family or of slaves), <i>dō-</i> <i>mīn-ūs</i> , <i>I.</i>	Captive, <i>captīv-ūs</i> , <i>I.</i>
Slave, <i>serv-ūs</i> , <i>I.</i>	A German, <i>German-ūs</i> , <i>I.</i>
Village, <i>vīc-ūs</i> , <i>I.</i>	To call, <i>vōcārē</i> .
Ambassador, or lieutenant, <i>lēgāt-ūs</i> , <i>I.</i>	To recall, <i>rēvōcārē</i> *.
Garden, <i>hort-ūs</i> , <i>I.</i>	To call together, <i>convōcārē</i> *.
To, <i>ad</i> (prep. with acc.).	An Æduan, <i>Ædu-ūs</i> , <i>I.</i>
In, <i>in</i> (prep. with abl.).	To flog, <i>verbērārē</i> .
	To ride (on horseback), <i>ēquītārē</i> .

He rides to the village, *ad vīcūm ēquītāt*. When to implies motion, it must be translated by *ad* with the accusative.

II. Translate into English.

Dōmīnūs servūm vōcāt.—*Servūs dōmīnō* (54) *mēdicīnām pār-*
āt.—*Crassūs vīcūm occūpāt*.—*Nuntiūs Crassī vīgilāt*.—*Servī*
ad vīcūm festinant.—*Nuntiūs lēgātō* (54) *viām monstrāt*.—*Servī*
domīnōs laudant.—*Āgrīcōlā ad vīcūm ēquītāt*.—*Captīvī festinā-*
bunt.—*Galbā copīās* (48, *I.*) *Germanōrūm convōcāt* *.—*Nun-*
tiūs captīvōs rēvōcāt.—*Servī in hortō ambulābunt*.—*Æduī*
Crassō (54) *insīdiās pārābant*.—*Nuntiūs cōpīās Æduōrūm rēvō-*
cābāt.—*Dōmīnūs servōs verbērāt*.

III. Translate into Latin.

[Recollect that words in parentheses () are not to be translated.]

The messengers call-together the Æduans.—The slaves pre-
pare medicines for (their) master (dat., 54).—The Æduans take-
possession of the woods.—The master praises (his) slaves.—The
slave is hastening to (ad, with acc.) the woods.—The ambassa-
dors ride to the village.—Crassus will prepare an ambush for the

* The prefix *con* gives the verb the additional meaning of *together*; the prefix *re* of *back*, as in *rēvōcārē* and *convōcārē*.

Æduans.—The lieutenant calls together the Germans.—The messenger will show the way to the captives (54).—The slaves are watching.—The master flogs (his) slave.—Galba will recall the lieutenant.—The Germans were preparing an ambush for Galba (54).—The slave was showing the way to the messenger (54).—The messenger was hastening to the village.—The slaves are watching in the garden.

LESSON VII.

Nouns.—Second Declension, Masculines continued.

(64.) Most nouns of the second declension whose stem ends in *er* and *ir* reject the ending *ūs* in the *nom.* and *ē* in the *voc.*; *e. g.*, *N.* and *V.* *ägēr*, *field*, instead of *ägēr-ūs*, *ägēr-ē*. Moreover, most of those which have *e* in the *nominative* drop it in the *oblique** cases: *e. g.*, *N.* *ägēr*, *G.* *ägri* instead of *ägēr-i*.

(65.) Learn the following

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.			
Nom.	ägēr, <i>field</i> (m).	puēr (m.), <i>boy</i> .	vir, <i>man</i> .
Gen.	ägri, <i>of the field</i> .	puēr-i, <i>of the boy</i> .	vir-i, <i>of the man</i> .
Dat.	ägri-ō, <i>to or for field</i> .	puēr-ō, <i>to or for</i> .	vir-ō, <i>to or for</i> .
Acc.	ägri-ūm, <i>field</i> .	puēr-ūm, <i>boy</i> .	vir-ūm, <i>man</i> .
Voc.	ägēr, <i>O field!</i>	puēr, <i>O boy!</i>	vir, <i>O man!</i>
Abl.	ägri-ō, <i>with, by, &c., field</i> .	puēr-ō, <i>with, by, &c.</i>	vir-ō, <i>with, by, &c.</i>
PLURAL.			
Nom.	ägri, <i>fields</i> .	puēr-i, <i>boys</i> .	vir-i, <i>men</i> .
Gen.	ägri-ōrūm, <i>of fields</i> .	puēr-ōrūm, <i>of boys</i> .	vir-ōrūm, <i>of men</i> .
Dat.	ägri-is, <i>to or for fields</i> .	puēr-is, <i>to or for</i> .	vir-is, <i>to or for</i> .
Acc.	ägri-ōs, <i>fields</i> .	puēr-ōs, <i>boys</i> .	vir-ōs, <i>men</i> .
Voc.	ägri, <i>O fields!</i>	puēr-i, <i>O boys!</i>	vir-i, <i>O men!</i>
Abl.	ägri-is, <i>with fields</i> .	puēr-is, <i>with, by, &c.</i>	vir-is, <i>with, by, &c.</i>

Rem. Only the following nouns keep the *e* in all the cases, *viz.*, *ādul-tēr*, *adulterer*; *puēr*, *boy*; *sōcēr*, *father-in-law*; *gēnēr*, *son-in-law*; *ves-pēr*, *evening*; *libērī* (used only in plural), *children*; with the compounds of *fēr* and *gēr*; *e. g.*, *Lūcifer*, *Lucifer*; *cornigēr*, *horned*.

* The *oblique* cases include all the cases except the *nominative* and *vocative*.

(66.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Boy, puēr, i.*Master* (of a school), māgīstēr, trī (64).*Father-in-law*, sōcēr, i (65, R.).*Herb*, herbā, æ.*Scholar*, discipul-ūs, i.*Son*, fili-ūs, i (62, R. 2).*Man*, vir, i.*Game*, lūd-ūs, i.*Son-in-law*, gēnēr, i (65, R.).*Children*, libērī, orūm (rarely used in singular).*Field*, āgēr, āgrī (64).

II. Example.

(a) *The wood abounds in wild beasts.*

Sylvā fēris ābundāt.

The wood in-wild-beasts abounds.(a) *Rule of Syntax.*—The ablative case is used with adjectives and verbs of *abounding* and *wanting*.

III. Translate into English.

Puēr māgīstrūm āmāt.—Rēgīnā sōcērūm āmābīt.—Puērī in āgrō ambulābunt.—Āgrī herbīs (abl., 66, II., a) ābundant.—Āgrīcōlā pār āgrōs (58, II., b) ēquītāt.—Āgrīcōlā sōcērūm vōcāt.—Pūellæ māgīstrūm laudant.—Virī in āgris ambulābant.—Lūdi puērōs delectant.—Rēgīnā gēnērōs āmābīt.—Virī ad vicūm festinābant.—Āgrīcōlā libērōs āmāt.—Māgīstēr discipulōs convōcāt.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The girls walk in the fields.—The field abounds in herbs (66, II., a).—The sailor calls back the boys.—The queen loves (her) son-in-law.—The queen gives (her) son-in-law (dat., 54) a rose.—The scholars love (their) master.—The fields abound in herbs (66, II., a).—The farmers were walking through the fields.—The son of the master calls the boys.—The master walks in the garden with (his) sons.—The herbs of the field delight the poet.—Games delight girls.—The farmer shows the way to the boy.—The master will praise (his) scholars.—The master will beg (his) scholars.

LESSON VIII.

Nouns.—Second Declension, Neuter.—Verbs, Second Conjugation.

(67.)	Slave.	servūs (masc.).
	Cup.	pōcŭlŭm (neut.).
	To fill.	implērē.
The slave fills his master's cup.		Servūs pōcŭlŭm dōmīni implēt.
		The-slave the-cup of-his-master fills.

(68.) The case-endings of the second declension for the neuter gender are,

Nom. Acc., Voc.	Sing. ŭm.	Plur. ā.
Gen.	ī.	ōrŭm.
Dat., Abl.	ō.	is.

Rem. The endings of the nom., acc., and voc. are *always* the same in neuter nouns. In this declension, those of dat. and abl. are alike also.

(69.) By adding these endings to the stem pōcŭl-, we get the

PARADIGM.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	pōcŭl-ŭm, <i>a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-ā, <i>cups.</i>
Gen.	pōcŭl-ī, <i>of a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-ōrŭm, <i>of cups.</i>
Dat.	pōcŭl-ō, <i>to or for a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-is, <i>to or for cups.</i>
Acc.	pōcŭl-ŭm, <i>a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-ā, <i>cups.</i>
Voc.	pōcŭl-ŭm, <i>O cup!</i>	pōcŭl-ā, <i>O cups!</i>
Abl.	pōcŭl-ō, <i>with, by, &c., a cup.</i>	pōcŭl-is, <i>with, from, &c., cups.</i>

THE SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

(70.) The second conjugation comprises all verbs whose infinitive-ending is ērē (e long before rē); e. g., mōn-ērē, *to advise*; dōc-ērē, *to teach*.

(71.) SOME ENDINGS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

INFINITIVE, ērē.			
INDICATIVE.			
3d Sing.	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Plural.	ēt. ent.	ēbāt. ēbant.	ēbīt. ēbunt.

(72.) By affixing these endings to the stem *mōn-*, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, <i>mōn-ērē</i> , to advise.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	<i>mōn-ēt, he, she, &c., advises.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbāt, he, she, &c., was advising.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbit, he, she, &c., will advise.</i>
3d Plur.	<i>mōn-ēnt, they advise.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbant, they were advising.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbunt, they will advise.</i>

(73.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Assistance, auxiliū, ī (68).*To ask, entreat*, rōgārē.*Camp*, castrā, ōrūm (pl.)*To move*, mōvērē (70).*Cup*, pōcūlūm, ī.*Wine*, vinūm, ī.*To fill*, implērē (70).*Danger*, pēricūlūm, ī*To fear*, timērē (70)*Forum*, fōrūm, ī.*Town*, oppidūm, ī.

II. Translate into English.

Lēgātūs auxiliūm rōgāt.—*Galbā cōpiās ād (63, I., ☞) castrā rēvocāt.*—*Servūs pōcūlūm vinō (55, a) implēt.*—*Crassūs castrā mōvēt.*—*Cōpiā ād oppidūm festinābant.*—*Āgricolā oppidūm laudāt.*—*Cōpiā Germānōrūm ād castrā festinābunt.*—*Nuntiūs pēricūlūm timēt.*—*Puerī pēr fōrūm ambulānt.*—*Germānī pēriculā nōn timent.*—*Lēgātī pēr oppidūm ambulābunt.*—*Āgricolā oppidā Ēdūōrūm laudābāt.*—*Crassūs oppidūm occūpābāt.*—*Servī pōcūlā implēbant.*

III. Translate into Latin.

The Æduans were asking assistance.—The Germans will move (their) camp.—The Germans were praising the town.—The ambassadors of the Æduans hasten to (63, I., ☞) the camp.—The forces of the Belgians fear the danger.—The messenger will recall the ambassadors to the camp.—Galba's messenger will recall the Germans to the town.—The ambassadors praise the towns of the Germans.—The farmers were walking through the forum.—The boy walks through the town.—The sailors will not fear the danger.—Crassus will not move (his) camp.—The Germans were taking possession of the town.—The servant was filling the cup

ADJECTIVES OF FIRST CLASS. (IX.--X.)

LESSON IX.

Adjectives.—Class I, ū s, ā, ū m.

(74.) THE *Adjective* (14), in Latin, agrees with the noun in *gender, number, and case*, and therefore has *endings* to distinguish these; *e. g.*, *puēr* b ō n-ū s, a good boy; *pūellā* b ō n-ā, a good girl; *dōnum* b ō n-ū m, a good gift.

(75.) We divide adjectives into *three* classes, according to their endings. Those of the *first class* have the *fem.* ending of the first decl. of nouns, and the *masc. and neut.* endings of the second. Thus,

(76.) ENDINGS.

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.						
N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	ūs.	ā.	ūm.	bōn-ūs.	bōn-ā.	bōn-ūm.
G.	i.	æ.	i.	bōn-i.	bōn-æ.	bōn-i.
D.	ō.	æ.	ō.	bōn-ō.	bōn-æ.	bōn-ō.
A.	ūm.	ām.	ūm.	bōn-ūm.	bōn-ām.	bōn-ūm.
V.	ē.	ā.	ūm.	bōn-ē.	bōn-ā.	bōn-ūm.
A.	ō.	ā.	ō.	bōn-ō.	bōn-ā.	bōn-ō.
PLURAL.						
N.	i.	æ.	ā.	bōn-i.	bōn-æ.	bōn-ā.
G.	ōrum.	ārum.	ōrum.	bōn-ōrum.	bōn-ārum.	bōn-ōrum.
D.	is.	is.	is.	bōn-is.	bōn-is.	bōn-is.
A.	ōs.	ās.	ā.	bōn-ōs.	bōn-ās.	bōn-ā.
V.	i.	æ.	ā.	bōn-i.	bōn-æ.	bōn-ā.
A.	is.	is.	is.	bōn-is.	bōn-is.	bōn-is.

(77.) Adjectives whose stem ends in *ēr* do not take the endings *ūs* of the nominative and *ē* of the vocative.

(a) Most of them drop the *ē* in inflection; *e. g.*,
pulchēr, *pulchr-ā*, *pulchr-ūm*, *beautiful*;
pulchr-i, *pulchr-æ*, *pulchr-i*, &c.

(b) But aspēr, rough; lācēr, torn; libēr, free; mīsēr miserable; prospēr, fortunate; tēnēr, tender (and the compounds of gēr and fēr; e. g., cornīgēr, flammīfēr), retain it; e. g.,

mīsēr, mīsēr-ā, mīsēr-ūm,
mīsēr-ī, mīsēr-æ, mīsēr-ī, &c.

(78.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Good, bōn-ūs, ā, ūm.

Great, magn-ūs, ā, ūm.

Many, mult-ūs, ā, ūm.

Thick, dens-ūs, ā, ūm.

Broad, wide, lāt-ūs, ā, ūm.

My, mē-ūs, ā, ūm. (voc. masc., mī.)

Thy, tū-ūs, ā, ūm.

His, hers, its (own), su-ūs, ā, ūm.

To see, vidērē.

Master (of slaves), hērūs, ī.

To have, hābērē.

Example, exemplūm, ī.

River, flāviūs, ī.

To frighten, terrērē.

II. Examples.

- (a) *The slave fills the large cup.* | Servūs pōcūlūm māgnūm implēt.

Rule of Position.—(a) The adjective, unless emphatic, follows the noun; e. g., in the above example, māgnūm follows pōcūlūm.

- (b) *The slave fills the queen's large cup.* | Servūs māgnūm rēginæ pōcūlūm implēt.

Rule of Position.—(b) When the noun governs another in the genitive, the adjective stands first, and the genitive between it and its noun; e. g., in example (b), māgnūm rēginæ pōcūlūm.

III. Translate into English.

Rēginā filiām suām amat.—Servūs pōcūlūm meūm implēt.—
Servi pōcūlā magnā implent.—Puēri māgistrūm bōnūm amant.
—Belgæ vicōs multōs habent.—Agricōlā bōnūs viām monstrāt.—
Māgister puērōs bōnōs docēbit.—Māgistrī bōnī exemplā bōnā
puēris (54) dant.—Lāgātūs magnām rēginā (78, II., b) cōrōnām
vidēt.—Perfūgæ ad flūviūm lātūm festinant.—Servūs māgnūm
puēri (78, II., b) pōcūlūm implēbāt.—Sylvæ densæ nuntiōs ter-
rent.—Puēri sylvām densām timēbunt.—Servūs bōnūs hērūm
amat.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The Æduans have many villages.—The queen loves (her)

good son.—The farmer shows the thick wood.—Good slaves love (their) masters.—Good masters love (their) slaves.—The Belgians have many towns.—The broad rivers frighten the deserters.—The boy sees the large town.—Crassus recalls the good lieutenant.—The son praises the great queen.—The Germans have large villages.—He praises thy slave.—He loves thy daughter.—He will praise *his own* daughter.—The deserters were hastening to the broad river.—The slave will fill the large cup of his master (78, II., b).—The lieutenant will see many villages of the Belgians (78, II., b).—The thick wood will frighten the boys.

LESSON X.

Some Forms of Esse.—Adjectives continued.

(79.) Learn the following forms of the irregular verb *Esse*, to be :

INFINITIVE, ESSE, to be.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	est, is.	erat, was.	erit, he, she, it will be.
3d Plur.	sunt, are.	erant, were.	erunt, they will be.

(80.) (a) *Indolence is a vice.* | *Īnertĭā vītĭum est.*
Indolence a vice is.

Here *īnertĭā* is the *subject* of the sentence ; *vītĭum* is the *predicate* ; both in the nominative.

Rule of Syntax.—(a) The *noun* in the predicate must be in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing.

(81.) (b) *The rose is beautiful.* | *Rōsā pulchrā est.*
The rose beautiful is.

Here *rōsā* is the *subject*, and *pulchrā* the *predicate* ; both in *nom. sing. fem.*

Rule of Syntax.—(b) The *adjective* in the predicate agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

[As a general rule, a sentence should not end with a *monosyllable* ; but in short passages, such as the above, especially when the word before *est* ends in a *vowel*, or *m*, it is admissible.]

(82.)

EXERCISE.

[Refer to Rules of Position (78, II.) and to Rem. on adjectives ending in *z* (77).]

I. Vocabulary.

Happy, beātūs, ā, ūm.

True, vērus, ā, ūm.

Friendship, āmicitiā, æ.

Everlasting, sempiternūs, ā, ūm.

Labienu, Lābiēnūs, ī.

Foolish, stultūs, ā, ūm.

Tender, tēnēr, ā, ūm (77, b).

Flame, flammā, æ.

Red, ruddy, rūbēr, ā, ūm (77, a)

A leaf, fōliūm, ī.

Bull, taurūs, ī.

Horned, corniger, ā, ūm (77, b).

Lamb, āgnūs, ī.

Miserable, miser, a, um (77, b).

Europe, Eurōpā, æ.

Peninsula, pēninsulā, æ.

Anger, ira, æ.

Illustrious, clārūs, ā, ūm.

Crow, corvūs, ī.

Black, nīgēr, ā, ūm (77, a).

Not, nōn (always placed before the word which it qualifies)

Always, sempēr (adv.).

Cow, vaccā, æ.

Attica, Atticā, æ.

Britain, Brītanīā, æ.

Ireland, Hiberniā, æ.

Rem. In such phrases as *the good, the wise, &c.*, the noun (*men*) is omitted in Latin, as in English; e. g., *good men* = bōnī; *fools* = stultī; *the happy* = beātī. Also, *many things* = multā (neut.); *all things* = omniā.

II. Examples.

The good are always happy.

True friendships are everlasting.

Labienu was a lieutenant.

The foolish are not happy.

Bōnī sempēr beātī sunt.

Vēræ āmicitiæ sempiternæ sunt.

Lābiēnūs lēgātūs ērāt.

Stultī nōn sunt beātī.

III. Translate into English:

Puellā pulchrā est (81, b).—Herbæ āgrōrūm tēnēræ sunt (81, b).—Ālæ āquillārūm māgnæ sunt.—Flammā rubrā est.—Fōliā rōsarūm pulchrā sunt.—Taurī cornigēri sunt.—Āgnī tēnēri in āgris sunt.—Rēginā pulchrā in hortō ambulābāt.—Puēr āgnōs pulchrōs vidēt.—Vērā āmicitiā sempiternā est.—Stultī miserī sunt.—Eurōpā pēninsulā (80, a) est.—Atticā pēninsulā est.—Irā vitiūm est magnūm.—Crassūs lēgātūs ērāt.—Lābiēnūs lēgātūs clārūs ērāt.—Corvūs plūmās nīgrās hābēt.—Stultī nōn sunt beātī.—Bōnūs sempēr beātūs est.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The queen was beautiful.—The queen's daughter was beau-

tiful.—The beautiful daughter walks in the garden.—The fields abound in tender herbs (66, II., *a*).—The feathers of doves are beautiful.—The feathers of crows are black.—The flames were ruddy.—The leaves of roses are tender.—Cows are horned.—The queen walks in the garden with (*cūm*) her beautiful daughters (*filiābūs**).—The girl will see the tender lambs in the fields.—The good are not always happy.—Fools are not always miserable.—Crassus was a great lieutenant.—Britain is an island.—Ireland is an island.—Geneva is a large town.—Anger is always a vice.—Everlasting friendships are true.—Friendships are not always everlasting.

* *Filiā*, daughter, and *deā*, goddess, have abl. pl. in *ābūs*, instead of *as*, to distinguish them from *filiis*, sons, *diis*, gods. So also a few other words.

§ 8.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS OF VERBS.

LESSON XI.

Verbs.—Third and Fourth Conjugations.

(83.) THE *Third Conjugation* comprises all verbs whose infinitive ending is *ērē* (*ē short before rē*); e. g., *scrib-ērē, to write.*

(84.) SOME ENDINGS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE, <i>ēre</i> .			
INDICATIVE.			
Singular.	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
Plural.	<i>īt.</i>	<i>ēbat.</i>	<i>ēt.</i>
	<i>unt.</i>	<i>ēbant.</i>	<i>ent.</i>

(85.) By affixing these endings to the stem *scrib-*, we get the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, <i>scrib-ēre, to write.</i>			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	<i>scrib-īt, he, she, & writes.</i>	<i>scrib-ēbat, he, she, &c., was writing.</i>	<i>scrib-ēt, he, she, &c., will write.</i>
3d Plur.	<i>scrib-unt, they write.</i>	<i>scrib-ēbant, they were writing.</i>	<i>scrib-ent, they will write.</i>

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

(86.) The *Fourth Conjugation* comprises all verbs whose infinitive-ending is *irē* (*i long before rē*); e. g., *aud-irē, to hear.*

(87) SOME ENDINGS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE, <i>ire</i> .			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	<i>īt.</i>	<i>iēbat.</i>	<i>iēt.</i>
3d Plur.	<i>iunt.</i>	<i>iēbant.</i>	<i>ient.</i>

(88.) By affixing these endings to the stem *aud-* we have the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE, aud-ire, to hear.			
INDICATIVE.			
	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
3d Sing.	aud-īt, <i>he, she, &c., hears.</i>	aud-iēbat, <i>he, she, &c., was hearing.</i>	aud-iēt, <i>he, she, &c., will hear.</i>
3d Plur.	aud-iunt, <i>they hear.</i>	aud-iēbant, <i>they were hearing.</i>	aud-ient, <i>they will hear.</i>

(89.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

*To send, mitterē (83).**In (prep.), in.***To sleep, dormirē (86).**Bed-chamber, cūbiculūm, i.**To run, currērē (83).**To rule, rēgērē (83).**A Gaul, Gallūs, i.**Tower, castellūm, i.**Horse, equūs, i.**Small, parvūs, ū, ūm.**To come, venīrē (86).**A Roman, Rōmānūs, i.**To lead, dūcērē (83).**World, mundūs, i.**To conquer, vincērē (83).**To fortify, mūnīrē (86).**Divitiacus, Divitiācūs, i.*

II. Example.


Crassus comes to the large town. Crassūs magnūm ād oppidūm venīt.

Rule of Position.—The adjective belonging to a noun governed by a preposition is frequently placed *before* the preposition, *e. g.*, magnūm in the example.

III. Translate into English.

Belgæ lēgātōs mittunt.—Belgæ lēgātōs ād Crassūm mittunt.—Puēri in cūbiculō dormiunt.—Puellæ parvō (89, II.) in cūbiculō dormiebant.—Rēginā magnūm ād oppidūm veniēt.—Galbā cōpiās Rōmānōrūm dūcīt.—Dii (62, R., 3) mundūm rēgunt.—Deūs mundūm sempēr rēgit.—Rōmānī Gallōs vincēbant.—Lēgātūs castellā mūniēbāt.—Æduī nuntiūm ad Labiēnūm mittunt.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm ād oppidūm venient.—Divitiācūs cōpiās Æduōrūm dūcēbāt.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The horse runs.—The boy sleeps.—The boy was running.—The slave comes.—Crassus fortifies many towers.—The slave was coming to (63, I., ) his master.—The beautiful boy will sleep in a little bed-chamber (89, II.).—The gods always govern

* *In*, signifying *into* or *unto*, governs the *accusative*; signifying *in* governs the *ablative*.

the world.—The Romans are coming to the large town.—The farmer was sleeping in the field.—Divitiacus was leading the forces of the Æduans.—The Belgians send messengers to Crassus.—Crassus sends a messenger to the Belgians.—The girls will sleep in a little bed-chamber.—Crassus will fortify the towers.—The Romans take-possession-of the towers of Gaul.

§ 9.

PASSIVE VERBS. (XII.—XIII.)

LESSON XII.

Verbs.—Passive Voice.—First and Second Conjugations.

(90.) THE endings of the third persons of verbs, in the tenses for *incomplete* or *continued* action (44), are the same in the passive as in the active voice, with the addition of the syllable *ür*. Thus, we have in the

(91.) FIRST CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.			
	Active.		Passive.
3d Sing.	ām-āt, he, she, it, loves.		ām-āt-ür, he, she, it is loved.*
3d Plur.	ām-ant, they love.		ām-ant-ür, they are loved.
IMPERFECT.			
3d Sing.	ām-ābāt, he was loving.		ām-ābāt-ür, he was loved.
3d Plur.	ām-ābant, they were loving.		ām-ābant-ür, they were loved.
FUTURE.			
3d Sing.	ām-ābit, he shall or will love.		ām-ābit-ür, he shall or will be loved.
3d Plur.	ām-ābunt, they shall or will love.		ām-ābunt-ür, they shall or will be loved.

(92.) SECOND CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.			
	Active.		Passive.
3d Sing.	mön-ēt, he advises.		mön-ēt-ür, he is advised.
3d Plur.	mön-ent, they advise.		mön-ent-ür, they are advised.
IMPERFECT.			
3d Sing.	mön-ēbāt, he was advising.		mön-ēbāt-ür, he was advised.
3d Plur.	mön-ēbant, they were advising.		mön-ēbant-ür, they were advised.
FUTURE.			
3d Sing.	mön-ēbit, he will advise.		mön-ēbit-ür, he will be advised.
3d Plur.	mön-ēbunt, they will advise.		mön-ēbunt-ür, they will be advised.

* The English language has no forms for incomplete action in the passive voice. *He is loved, he was loved, &c., the house is built, &c.,* properly express action complete. An awkward periphrasis—he is *being* loved

(93.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Game, sport, lūdus, i.
To delight, delectārē.

To teach, docēre.
Seize, occupārē.

II. Examples.

(a) Crassus calls the lieutenant. Crassus lēgātum vōcāt.

(b) The lieutenant is called by Crassus. Lēgātus ā Crassō vōcātur.

In these examples, the same action is expressed (viz., the calling of the lieutenant) in (a) by the active form, in (b) by the passive. Every sentence in which a transitive verb occurs may thus be changed into the passive form. The agent (Crassus) is the subject nominative in (a); and in (b) is expressed by the ablative (Crassō) with the preposition ā, *by*.

Rem. If the subject be a thing, not a person, nor considered as a person, the preposition is omitted; e. g., Pōcūlūm vinō implētūr, the cup is filled with wine. (This is the abl. of cause or means.)

III. Translate into English.

Auxiliūm ā lēgātō rōgātūr.—Auxiliūm ā lēgātō rōgābātūr.—

Auxiliūm ā lēgātō rogabitur.—Cōpiæ ā Galbā rēvōcantūr.—Pōcūlūm ā servō implēbātūr.—Oppidā ā Crassō occupābantūr.—Mēdicinā āb ancillis pārābītūr.—Puērī bonī ā māgistrō laudantūr.—Cōpiæ Germānōrūm ā Labiēnō rēvōcābuntūr.—Pōcūlā vinō (93, II., R.) implentūr.—Puērī lūdīs (93, II., R.) delectantūr.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The master is loved by (his) scholars.—The master will be loved by (his) good scholars.—The cups will be filled (with) wine (93, II., R.).—The Germans were called together by Crassus.—The villages were seized by the Romans.—The towns will be seized by the Æduans.—Medicines are prepared by the slaves.—Good boys will be praised by their masters.—The good boys will be advised by their masters.—The scholars are taught by their master.—The scholar was taught by his

the house is *being built*—is sometimes employed, but is not to be approved. The house is *building* is a form sanctioned by usage, but in many verbs it would be ambiguous. The pupil must remember, then, that in the exercises in the First Part, the forms *is loved, is advised, was advised, &c.*, are used to express incomplete action.

38 PASSIVES OF THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

master.—The girls are delighted with games (93, II., R.).—The slaves will be delighted with games.—The queen is praised by (her) maid-servant.—The queen was praised by (her) maid-servant.—The queen will be praised by (her) maid-servant.

LESSON XIII.

Verbs.—Passive Voice.—Third and Fourth Conjugations.

(94.)

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.			
	Active.		Passive.
3d Sing.	rēg-it, he, she, it rules.	rēg-it-ūr, he, she, it is ruled.	
3d Plur.	rēg-unt, they rule.	rēgunt-ūr, they are ruled.	
IMPERFECT.			
3d Sing.	rēg-ēbāt, he was ruling.	rēgēbāt-ūr, he was ruled.	
3d Plur.	rēg-ēbant, they were ruling.	rēgēbant-ūr, they were ruled.	
FUTURE.			
3d Sing.	rēg-ēt, he shall or will rule.	rēgēt-ūr, he shall or will be ruled.	
3d Plur.	rēg-ent, they shall or will rule.	rēgent-ūr, they shall or will be ruled.	

(95.)

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRESENT.			
	Active.		Passive.
3d Sing.	aud-it, he hears.	aud-it-ūr, he is heard.	
3d Plur.	aud-iunt, they hear.	audiunt-ūr, they are heard.	
IMPERFECT.			
3d Sing.	aud-iēbāt, he was hearing.	audiēbāt-ūr, he was heard.	
3d Plur.	aud-iēbant, they were hearing.	audiēbant-ūr, they were heard.	
FUTURE.			
3d Sing.	aud-iēt, he shall or will hear.	aud-iēt-ūr, he shall or will be heard.	
3d Plur.	aud-ient, they shall or will hear.	audient-ūr, they shall or will be heard.	

(96.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

A Roman, Rōmānūs, i.
To lay aside, dēpōnērē.
Garrison, præsidiūm, i.

A Gaul, Gallūs, i.
To distribute, } dispōnērē.
arrange, }

II. Translate into English.

Lēgātī ā Belgīs mittuntūr.—Mundūs ā Deō rēgītūr.—Cōpia

Rōmānōrūm ā Galbā dūcuntūr.—Gallī a Rōmānīs vincuntūr.—
 Irā ā rēgīnā dēpōnītūr.—Castellūm ā Labiēnō mūnītūr.—Præsī-
 dīā ā lēgātō dispōnuntūr.—Lēgātī ād Œduōs mittēbantūr.—Cō-
 piæ Œduōrūm ad vicūm dūcentūr.—Epistolā ā rēgīnā scribītūr.—
 Oppidā Belgārūm muniēbantūr.—Nuntīi ād Crassūm mittentūr.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

Galba is conquered by the Belgians.—The camp is fortified
 by Crassus.—The forces of Crassus are led to the camp.—The
 forces of the Œdui are sent to the village.—Anger will be laid
 aside by the queen.—Galba was conquered by the Gauls.—Let-
 ters will be written by the queen.—Letters are written to (ad)
 Crassus.—The garrisons are not distributed by Crassus.—The
 towers are not fortified by the Belgians.—The world is always
 governed by God.—The Germans are ruled by a lieutenant.—
 A letter will be written by the queen.

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—PARTIAL TREATMENT. (XIV.—XV.)

LESSON XIV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.

(97.) THE *Third Declension* comprises all nouns whose *gen. sing.* ends in *īs*.

Rem. To find the stem of any noun of this declension, strike off *īs* from the *gen. sing.*; e. g., *gen. hōmīnis* (of a man), stem *hōmīn*.

(98.) The case-endings are as follows:

Singular.			Plural.		
N.	M. & F.	Neut.	N.	M. & F.	Neut.
G.	īs.	īs.	G.	ēs.	ā (iā).
D.	ī.	ī	D.	ūm (iūm).	ūm (iūm).
A.	ēm (īm).	like N.	A.	ībūs.	ībūs.
V.	like N.	like N.	V.	ēs.	ā (iā).
A.	ē (i).	ē (i).	A.	ībūs.	ībūs.

Rem. 1. The *nom.* ending is not given, because of the many forms in which that case occurs. Of the changes to which the stem is subject, see hereafter (Part II).

2. Of the endings *īm*, *ī* (in *acc.* and *abl. sing.*), and *iā*, *iūm* (*plur.*), see hereafter (Part II).

3. The *gender* of all nouns of this declension are marked in the vocabularies. The general rules of gender (25, a) of course apply to this declension: special rules are given (355). We give here only

(99.) *Partial Rule of Gender.*—Most nouns which add *s* to the stem to form the nominative are feminine.

(100.) PARADIGMS—MASCULINE AND FEMININE FORMS.

Sing.	Speech (m.).	Honour (m.).	City (f.).	Nation (race), f.	Law (f.).
N. and V.	sermō.	hōnōr.	urb-s.	gens (gents).	lex (legs).
Gen.	sermōn-īs.	hōnōr-īs.	urb-īs.	gent-īs.	lēg-īs.
Dat.	sermōn-ī.	hōnōr-ī.	urb-ī.	gent-ī.	lēg-ī.
Acc.	sermōn-ēm.	hōnōr-ēm.	urb-ēm.	gent-ēm.	lēg-ēm.
Abl.	sermōn-ē.	hōnōr-ē.	urb-ē.	gent-ē.	lēg-ē.
Plur.	Speeches.	Honours.	Cities.	Races.	Laws.
N., A., V.	sermōn-ēs.	hōnōr-ēs.	urb-ēs.	gent-ēs.	lēg-ēs.
Gen.	sermōn-ūm.	hōnōr-ūm.	urb-ūm.	gent-ūm.	lēg-ūm.
D and A.	sermōn-ībūs.	hōnōr-ībūs.	urb-ībūs.	gent-ībūs.	lēg-ībūs.

Rev. 1. Observe that *d* or *t* in the stem is *dropped* in the nom. before *s*; and *c* or *g* combined with *s* to form *x*; e. g., laus=laud-*s*, arx=arc-*s*; lex=leg-*s*; gens=gent-*s*.

2. All the endings are *short* but *i* (dat. sing.) and *es* (N., A., V. plur.).

(101.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

[In the following vocabularies, the *stem* of every noun of the third declension is placed immediately *after* the nominative form, and *before* the genitive ending.]

King, rēx, (rēg) is, m.

Law, lēx, (lēg) is, f.

To abrogate, ābrōgāre.

Just, justūs, ā, ūm.

Worthy, dignūs, ā, ūm.

Part, pars, (part) is, f.

Common people, plebs, (plēb) is, f.

To leave, relinquerē.

Rock, pētrā, ō.

Tree, arbōr, (arbōr) is, f.

To build a nest, nīdificārē.

Cæsar, Cæsār, (Cæsār) is.

And, et (conj.).

Consul, consūl, (consūl) is, m.

General, impērātōr, (impērātōr) is, m.

A Helvetian, Helvētiūs, l.

II. Translate into English.

Rex lēg-es ābrōgāt.—Cōpiæ ād urb-ēm festinant.—Lēg-es justæ sunt.—Pars plēb-is urb-ēm relinquit.—Magnā pars plēb-is urb-ēm relinquit.—Āquilæ in pētris et arbōr-ibūs nīdificant.—Lēg-es ā rēg-e ābrōgantūr.—Cōpiæ ād urb-ēm rēvōcantūr.—Helvētīi ād Cæsār-ēm lēgātōs mittunt.—Nuntīūs sermōn-ēm consūl-is laudāt.—Impērātōr nuntiōs rēvōcāt.—Rex dignīs (54, and 82, I., R.) hōnōr-es dābīt.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm urb-ēm relinquebant.—Cæsār ād vicōs festinābāt.—Lēgāti ād impērātōr-ēm mittuntūr.—Impērātōr nuntiōs ād urb-ēm mittēt.—Lēgātūs part-ēm cōpiārūm rēvōcābīt.

III. Translate into Latin.

The laws were just.—The king will revoke the laws.—The general will leave the village.—The consuls send ambassadors.—The consuls recall the ambassadors.—Doves build their nests in gardens and trees.—The consuls are praised.—The city is fortified.—Honours will be given.—Honours are given to the worthy (82, I., R.).—Ambassadors will be sent to the consuls.—Honours are given to Cæsar (54).—The speech of the consul is praised.—Honours are given to the general.—A great part of the common-people will leave the city.—The consuls will recall the common-people.—The ambassadors will leave the city.—The general will be sent.—Cæsar will be recalled.

LESSON XV.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(102.)

PARADIGMS.—NEUTER FORMS.

Sing.	Sea (n.).	Song (n.).	Work (n.).	Animal (n.).
N., A., V.	mār-ē.	carmēn.	ōpūs.	ānīmāl.
G.	mār-is.	carmīn-is.	ōpēr-is.	ānīmāl-is.
D.	mār-i.	carmīn-i.	ōpēr-i.	ānīmāl-i.
Abl.	mār-i.	carmīn-ē.	ōpēr-ē.	ānīmāl-i.
Plur.	Sea.	Songs.	Works.	Animals.
N., A., V.	mār-iā.	carmīn-ā.	ōpēr-ā.	ānīmāl-iā.
G.	mār-iūm.	carmīn-iūm.	ōpēr-iūm.	ānīmāl-iūm.
D., Abl.	mār-ībūs.	carmīn-ībūs.	ōpēr-ībūs.	ānīmāl-ībūs.

Rem. 1. Neuters whose nom. ends in *a*, *ar*, or *e*, take *i* for abl. sing. ending; *iā*, nom. plur., and *iūm*, gen. plur.

2. *Partial Rule of Gender.*—Nouns whose stems end in *a* or *ar* are neuter.

(103.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Name, nōmēn, (nōmīn) is (n.).

To enrol, conscribērē.

Treaty, fœdūs, (fœdēr) is (n.).

To violate, violārē.

Spoil or booty, prædā, æ.

Ally, sōciūs, i.

Summer, æstās, (æstāt) is (f.).

Cold, frīgūs, (frīgōr) is (n.).

Burden, ōnūs, (ōnēr) is (n.).

To carry, portārē.

Wound, vulnūs, (vulnēr) is (n.).

To cure, heal, sārārē.

To mitigate, mītīgārē.

River, flūmēn, (flūmīn) is (n.).

To swim across, transnārē (gov. acc.)

Work, ōpūs, (ōpēr) is (n.).

Fish, piscis, (pisc) is (m.).

Time, tempūs, (tempōr) is (n.).

To change, mūtārē.

Man, hōmō, (hōmīn) is (m.).

Stormy, turbid, turbidūs, ā, ūm.

II. Translate into English.

Consul nōmīnā conscribīt.—Cæsār fœdūs (acc.) violābāt, & prædām sōciis (54) dābāt.—Æstās frīgūs (acc.) mītīgāt.—Perfugæ flūmēn (acc.) transnābant.—Magnūm ōpūs est.—Flūmēn piscibūs abundāt (66, I., a).—Tempūs hōmīnēs mūtāt.—Tempōrā mūtāntūr.—Frīgūs æstātē (93, II., R.) mītīgābūtūr.—Cōpiæ Belgārūm flūmīnā transnābant.—Servūs ōnūs (acc.) magnūm portāt.—Cæsār nōmīnā nōn conscribēt.—Ōnūs magnūm est.—Mēdicīnā vulnūs sārāt.—Carmīnā puellās dēlectant.—Nōmīnā hōmīnūm mūtābuntūr.—Mārīā turbidā sunt.—Flūmēn magnūm erat turbidūm.—Magnā sunt ōnērā captīvōrūm.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

The Germans violate treaties.—The consuls will not enrol the names.—The slaves were carrying great burdens.—The messenger was-swimming-across the river.—The boy swims-across the river.—Great burdens are carried.—The burden will be carried by the slave.—The rivers abound in fish (66, II., a).—The wounds are healed.—The burdens are great.—The lieutenant will not violate the treaty.—The names are enrolled by the consuls (93, II.).—The treaty is violated.—The treaty is violated by Cæsar.—The treaty will be violated, and the spoil will be given to the allies (dat.).—The consul enrolls the names of the deserters.—The names of the deserters will be enrolled.—The wounds of the prisoners will be healed

§ 11.

ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND CLASS.

LESSON XVI.

Adjectives.—Second Class.—Two Endings.

(104.) ADJECTIVES of the *Second Class* have *is* in the nom. sing. for *masc.* and *fem.* endings, and *ě* for the *neuter*. They are declined throughout like the third declension of nouns; *e. g.*, *brěvīs*, *short*.

(105.)

PARADIGM.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. V.	brěv- <i>is</i> .	brěv- <i>is</i> .	brěv- <i>ě</i> .	brěv- <i>ēs</i> .	brěv- <i>ēs</i> .	brěv- <i>ĕ</i> .
G.	brěv- <i>is</i> .	brěv- <i>is</i> .	brěv- <i>is</i> .	brěv- <i>iūm</i> .	brěv- <i>iūm</i> .	brěv- <i>iūm</i> .
D.	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>ibūs</i> .	brěv- <i>ibūs</i> .	brěv- <i>ibūs</i> .
Acc.	brěv- <i>ēm</i> .	brěv- <i>ēm</i> .	brěv- <i>ě</i> .	brěv- <i>ēs</i> .	brěv- <i>ēs</i> .	brěv- <i>ĕ</i> .
Abl.	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>i</i> .	brěv- <i>ibūs</i> .	brěv- <i>ibūs</i> .	brěv- <i>ibūs</i> .

Rem. 1. Twelve adjectives* of this class take *ěr* for the ending of the nom. sing. masc. instead of *is*; *e. g.*, *ācěr*, *ācěrīs*, *ācěrě*; *cělěběr*, *cělěběrīs*, *cělěběrě*.

Rem. 2. The abl. has *ě* instead of *i* in *jāvėnīs*, *young*; *śdīlīs* *adile*. The gen. pl. has *ūm* instead of *iūm* in *cělěr*, *swift*.

(106.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Father, *pătěr*, (*patr*) *īs*.

Noble, *nōbīlīs*, *ě*.

Every, } *omnīs*, *ě*.

All, the whole, }

Sweet, *dulcīs*, *ě*.

To demand, *poscěrě*.

Soldier, *mīlēs*, (*mīlīt*) *īs* (*m.*).

Study, zeal, *stūdiūm*, *i*.

Kind, *bēnignūs*, *a. um*.

Dog, *cānīs*, (*cān*) *īs* (*c.*, 25, IV.).

To endure, *tōlěrārě*.

Hostage, *ōbsēs*, (*ōbsēd*) *īs* (*c.*, 25, IV.).

Uncertain, *incertūs*, *ā, ūm*.

Useful, *ūtīlīs*, *ě*.

Iron, *ferrūm*, *i*.

Gold, *aurūm*, *i*.

Severe, heavy, *grāvīs*, *ě*.

Life, *vītā*, *ś* (*f.*).

Brave, *fortīs*, *ě*.

Patiently, *pātientēr* (*adv.*).

Wolf, *lūpūs*, *i* (*m.*).

Like, *simīlīs*, *ě*.

A chief, princeps, (*prīncīp*) *īs* (*c.*, 25, IV.).

Ācěr, *sharp*.

Ālēcěr, *cheerfu..*

Campeštěr, *of the plain*.

Cělěběr, *famous*.

Cělěr, *swift*.

Ēquestěr, *equestrian*.

Pālūštěr, *marshy*.

Pēdestěr, *pedestrian*.

Sālūběr, *salubrious*.

Sylvestěr, *woody*.

Terrestěr, *terrestrial*.

Vōlēcěr, *swift*.

II. *Examples.*

(a) *The father is kind to his son.* | Pătër filiō bēnignūs est.

(b) *The dog is like (to) the wolf.* | Cānis lūpō sīmīlis est.

(c) *Rule of Syntax.*—The dative case is used with all adjectives that are followed by the words *to* or *for* in English: hence with adjectives expressing (a) *advantage* or *disadvantage*, (b) *likeness* or *unlikeness*.

[Adjectives of *likeness* or *unlikeness* also take the gen.]

III. *Translate into English.*

Militēs omnēs pēriculū timent.—Impērātōr fortis militēs omnēs convocat.—Vitā brevīs est.—Vitā est brevīs et incertā.—Vinū est dulcē.—Principēs fortēs oppidā omniā muniēbant.—Cēsār obsidēs nobilēs poscit.—Tempūs brevē est.—Nōn omnēs militēs sunt fortēs.—Ferrū utīlē est.—Aurū et ferrū sunt utīliā hōminibūs (106, II., c).—Milēs vulnūs grāvē pātientēr tōlērāt.—Consul fortis pēriculā nōn timēbit.—Ferrū utīlē hōminibūs (106, II., c) est.—Militēs fortēs vulnērā grāviā pātientēr tōlērābunt.—Studiū est puērīs (106, II., c) utīlē.—Impērātōr militibūs (106, II., c) bēnignūs ērāt.—Cānis lūpō sīmīlis est.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The noble queen comes to the city.—The brave lieutenant endures patiently (his) severe wound.—All the soldiers hasten to the camp.—The brave chiefs will fortify many towns.—The noble hostages come to Cēsār (63, I., 17).—The time is uncertain.—Soldiers are not always useful.—Towns are useful for men (106, II., c).—Noble ambassadors are sent.—Many hostages are demanded by the consuls (93, II.).—All the soldiers will be called together.—Not all chiefs are noble.—Wine is sweet and iron is useful.—The dangers are not feared by the brave soldiers (93, II.).—The brave lieutenant praises the noble chief.—Dogs are like wolves (106, II.).—The study of *letters* (littērārū) is useful for all (106, II.).—The soldiers are kind to the prisoners (106, II.).—Gold is heavy.—Iron is not like gold (106, II.).

Even in these, the ending *is* is sometimes found in nom. sing. masc., e.g., *Antisthenes equestris*, Liv., xxix., 35.

ADJECTIVES OF THE-THIRD CLASS

LESSON XVII.

Adjectives.—Third Class.—One Ending.

(107.) ADJECTIVES of the *Third Class* have but **one** ending in the nominative for all three genders; *e. g.*, *fēlīx* (m., f., n.), *happy*; *audāx* (m., f., n.), *bold*; *paupēr* (m., f., n.), *poor*.

(108.) PARADIGM.—*Fēlīx, happy.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. V.	fēlīx.	fēlīx.	fēlīx.	fēlīc-ēs.	fēlīc-ēs.	fēlīc-īā.
G.	fēlīc-īs.	fēlīc-īs.	fēlīc-īs.	fēlīc-īūm.	fēlīc-īūm.	fēlīc-īūm.
D.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ībūs.	fēlīc-ībūs.	fēlīc-ībūs.
Acc.	fēlīc-ēm.	fēlīc-ēm.	fēlīx.	fēlīc-ēs.	fēlīc-ēs.	fēlīc-īā.
Abl.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ī.	fēlīc-ībūs.	fēlīc-ībūs.	fēlīc-ībūs.

[*Rem. 1.* The abl. has *ē* instead of *ī* (*a*) in *paupēr*, *poor*; *sēnex*, *old* (gen. *sēnīs*); *princeps*, *chief*; *compos*, *possessed of*, and most ending in *ēs*; *e. g.*, *hospēs*, *guest*; *pubēs*, *grown up*, &c. Also in the compounds of *corpūs*, *cōlōr*, and *pēs*.

(*b*) Participles in *ns* have, as participles, *ē*, but as *adjectives* *ī*; *e. g.*, *flōrentē rōsā*, *the rose blooming*; *flōrentī rōsā*, *in a blooming rose*.

(*c*) Adjectives used as nouns take *ē*; *e. g.*, *sāpiēns*, *a wise man*, abl. *sāpiēntē*.

Rem. 2. The gen. pl. takes *ūm* instead of *īūm* in *vētūs*, *old* (*vētērūm*); *consors*, *partaking of*; *dēgēnēr*, *degenerate*; *divēs*, *rich*; *īnops*, *helpless*; *mēmōr*, *mindful*; *immēmōr*, *unmindful*; *supplex*, *suppliant*; *ūbēr*, *rich*; *vīgil*, *watching*. Also in all which take *ē* in the abl.; *e. g.*, *princeps*, *principēs*, *principūm*.]

(109.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

War, bellūm, I.*Fierce*, ātrōx, (ātrōc) is (107).*To wage, carry on*, gērērē.*Horse-soldier*, ēquēs, (ēquīt) is (m.).*Tenacious*, tēnax, (tēnac) is (107).*Wise*, sāpiens, (sāpient) is (107).*Death*, mors, (mort) is (f.).*To renew*, rēdintēgrārē.*Rich*, divēs, (divīt) is (107).*To terrify*, terrērē.*Stag*, cervūs, I.*Powerful*, pōtens, (pōtent) is (107)*Scout*, explōrātōr, is (m.).*To kill*, occidērē.*Battle*, praeliūm, I.*And*, et (conj.).*Swift*, vēlox, (vēlōc) is.*Horse*, ēquus, I.*Citizen*, civis, (civ) is (c., 25, IV.)

II. Example.

The inhabitants carry on a fierce war. | Incōlæ bellūm ātrox gērunt
[Refer to 78, II., a.]

III. Translate into English.

Incōlæ bellā magnā ēt ātrōciā gērunt.—Nuntiūs vēlox ād castrū vēnit.—Equītēs vēlōcēs ād sylvām festinant.—Vir sāpiens mortēm nōn timēt.—Discipulūs mēmōriām tenācēm hābēt.—Mēmōriā in puēris est tēnax.—Impērātōr nuntiūm vēlōcēm mittēt.—Principēs fortēs praeliūm ātrox redintegrābunt.—Cervūs vēlox est.—Equūs vēlox currit.—Cānēs sunt vēlōcēs.—Sāpiens (82, I., R.) nōn sempēr divēs est.—Divītēs nōn sempēr beātī sunt.—Princeps pōtens lēgātōs mittīt.—Principēs pōtentēs captīvōs occidunt.—Impērātōr principēs omnēs convōcāt.

IV. Translate into Latin.

The thick woods terrify the swift messenger.—The fierce battle terrifies all the inhabitants.—The noble general was praising the swift messenger.—The illustrious consul sends ambassadors to (63, I., 15) the powerful chief.—The powerful chief will kill all the prisoners.—Rich (men) are not always wise.—The wise (man) does not fear the fierce battle.—The soldiers praise the rich citizen.—The memory in boys is always tenacious.—Dogs and horses are swift.—The consul will not renew the fierce battle.—The illustrious general will recall the swift horse-soldiers.—Rich citizens fear fierce wars.—The fierce battles were terrifying all the hostages.—The wise general calls-together all the ambassadors.—The fierce battle will be renewed.—All the prisoners will be killed by the powerful chiefs (93, II.).—The swift messengers are frightened.—Great wars are carried on.—Rich citizens are killed.

FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

LESSON XVIII.

Nouns.—Fourth Declension.

(110.) THE *Fourth Declension* comprises all nouns whose gen. sing. ends in ūs (*long*). The nom. ending for *masculines* is ūs, and for *neuters* ū; *e. g.*, fruct-ūs, *fruit*, masc.; corn-ū, *horn*, neut.

(111.) The case-endings are as follows:

Sing.	Masc.	Neut.	Plur.	Masc.	Neut.
N. and V.	ūs.	ū.	N. and V.	ūs.	ūā.
Gen.	ūs.	ūs or ū.	Gen.	ūūm.	ūūm.
Dat.	ūī.	ū.	Dat.	ībūs.	ībūs.
Acc.	ūm.	ū.	Acc.	ūs.	ūā.
Abl.	ū.	ū.	Abl.	ībūs.	ībūs.

(112.) By adding these endings to the stems *fruct-* and *corn-*, we get the

PARADIGM.*

	Sing., fruit (m.).	Plur., fruit.		Sing., horn (n.).	Plur., horn.
N. and V.	fruct-ūs.	fruct-ūs.	N., A., V.	corn-ū.	corn-ū.
Gen.	fruct-ūs.	fruct-ūūm.	Gen.	corn-ūs, or ū.	corn-ūūm.
Dat.	fruct-ūī.	fruct-ībūs.	Dat., Abl.	corn-ū.	corn-ībūs.
Acc.	fruct-ūm.	fruct-ūs.			
Abl.	fruct-ū.	fruct-ībūs.			

[Rem. 1. The following take ūbūs in dat. and abl. plur. instead of ībūs, viz., ācūs (f.), *needle*; arcūs (m.), *bow*; artūs (m.), *joint*; ficūs (f.), *fig-tree*; lācūs (m.), *lake*; partūs (m.), *birth*; portūs (m.), *harbor*; quercūs (f.), *oak*; spēcūs (m.), *den*; tribūs (f.), *tribe*; pēcū (n.), *cattle*; vērū (n.), *a spit*.†]

2. The *feminine* nouns of this declension are, ācūs, *needle*; anūs,

* The fourth declension is only a contracted form of the third; thus,

N. fruct-ūs.
G. fruct-ūis, contr. fructūs.
D. fruct-ūī.
Acc. fruct-ūim, contr. fructūm, &c.

† The following verses embrace these:

Arcūs, ācūs, portūs, vērū,
Ficūs, lācūs, artūs,
Spēcūs, quercūs; also, pēcū.
Tribūs too, and partūs

old woman; *dōmūs*, house; *ficūs*, fig; *mānūs*, hand; *nūrūs* daughter-in-law; *porticūs*, gallery; *tribūs*, tribe; *quercūs*, oak. Also, *īdūs*, -ūm (used only in plural), *the Ides*.*

3. *Dōmūs* (f.), house, is thus declined:

Sing.	N., V.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
	dōm-ūs.	-ūs. } -ī. }	-uī.	-ūm.	-ō.
Plur.	dōm-ūs.	-uūm. } -ōrum. }	-ībūs.	-ōs, -ūs (rarely). }	-ībūs.

4. The gen. *dōmī* is used only in the sense of *at home*; e. g., *dōmī mē*, at my home, at my house.

(113.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

To lead over, or across, transducēre.

Approach, adventūs, ūs (m.).

To await, expectāre.

Singing, cantūs, ūs (m.).

Vast, Vastūs, ā, ūm.

To adorn, ornāre.

Four, quattuor (indeclin.).

To build, aedificāre.

Horn, cornū, ūs (n.).

Army, exercitūs, ūs (m.).

Harbour, portūs, ūs (m.).

Enemy, hostīs, (host) is (c., 25, IV.).

Bird, avis, (āv) is (f.).

Grief, luctūs, ūs (m.).

To lay aside, depōnere.

Sadness, mœror, ōris (m.).

Tempest, procellā, æ.

To raise, tollere.

Wave, fluctūs, ūs (m.).

Star, sidūs, (sīdēr) is (n.) (102).

Shore, littūs, (littōr) is (n.) (102).

Wind, ventūs, ī (m.).

Roll, volvere.

Boundary, finīs, (fin) is (m.).

The Rhine, Rhēnūs, ī.

Ship, nāvīs, (nāv) is (f.).

II. Examples.

*The Helvetians lead
of their forces across
the Rhine.*

Helvētīi partēm cōpiārūm
Rhēnūm transducunt.

(b) *Cæsar leads a great army
of Germans across the
Rhine.*

Cæsār magnūm Germānō
rūm exercitūm trans
Rhēnūm transducit.

Rule of Syntax.—(a) Verbs compounded with the preposition *trans* are generally followed by *two accusatives*; e. g., *partem* and *Rhenum* in (a).

(b) But sometimes the preposition is repeated; e. g., *trans* in (b).

III. Translate into English.

Helvētīi Cæsāris (38, b) adventūm expectābant.—Adventū


* Ācūs, mānūs, tribūs, dōmūs, porticūs, and īdūs. The rest are fem. by the general rule (25, II.).

† Mœror = silent grief; luctūs = mourning.

(abl., 55, a) Cæsāris hostēs terrentūr.—Āvis puellām cantū (55, a) dēlectāt.—Fructūs arbōrēs (acc. pl.) ornant.—Fructūs terræ āgricōlām dēlectant.—Pātēr dōmūs (acc. pl.) quāttūr ædificābīt.—Nāvēs in portū sunt.—Rēginā luctūm dēpōnīt.—Sāpientēs luctūm ēt mārōrēm dēpōnunt.—Prōcellā magnōs fluctūs (acc. pl.) tollēbāt.—Prōcellā fluctūs (acc. pl.) ād sidērā tollīt.—Puēr taurūm cornū (abl., 55, a) tēnēt.—Cornuā cervī magnā sunt.—Fluctūs magnī ventīs (55, a) volvuntūr.—Lēgātūs exercitūm dūcīt.—Lēgātūs āb Æduīs (from the Æduans; i. e., their country) exercitūm dūcīt.—Āgricōlā taurūm cornībūs (55, a) tēnēbāt.—Adventūs patrīs puellām dēlectābīt.—Cæsār exercitūm flūmēn transdūcīt (113, II., a).—Lēgātūs pār finēs Helvētiōrūm exercitūm dūcēt.—Ariōvistūs Germānōs trans Rhēnūm transdūcīt (113, II., b).

Rem. Home is translated by dōmūm, the acc. of domus; thus, *The sailor leads the boy home*—Nautā paērūm dōmūm dūcīt.

IV. Translate into Latin.

My father will build four houses.—The tempest is rolling great waves to the shores (63, I., ).—Vast waves are raised to the stars by tempests.—The turbid sea is rolling vast waves to the shores.—The farmer leads the girls home from (ab) the city.—Cæsar will lead the army over the turbid river.—Cassius leads the army through the boundaries of the Æduans and Helvetians.—The Helvetians await the coming of Cæsar.—The boy will hold the bull by the horns (55, a).—The farmer is delighted by the fruits (55, a) of the earth.—The king lays aside his griefs and sadness.—The singing of the birds (āviūm) will delight the soldiers.—The trees are adorned by many fruits.—There are many large ships in the harbour.—The winds raise the great waves to the stars.—The lieutenant was leading the army of the Æduans across the Rhine. (Repeat *trans* (113, II., b)).—The horns of bulls are large.—The queen will lay aside her grief and sadness.—The master sends his slaves home

§ 14.

FIFTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

LESSON XIX.

Nouns.—Fifth Declension.

(114.) THE *Fifth Declension* comprises all nouns whose *gen. ending* is *ĕi*. The *nom. ending* is *ĕs*.

(115.) There are but few nouns of this declension, and they are all *feminine* except *diĕs*, *day*, and *mĕridiĕs*, *mid-day*; and even *diĕs* is *fem.* in the *sing.* when it means a *fixed day*.

(116.) The case-endings are as follows:

Sing.	N. V.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Plur.	ĕs. ĕs.	ĕi. ĕrĭm.	ĕi. ĕbŭs.	ĕm. ĕs.	ĕ. ĕbŭs.

Rem. In the *gen.* and *dat.* the *e* in *ei* is *long* when a vowel stands before it; *e. g.*, *di-ĕi*: *short* when a consonant stands before it; *e. g.*, *fid-ĕi*.

(117.) By adding the endings to the stems *r-* and *dĭ-*, we get the

PARADIGMS.

Thing (f.).	N. V.	G.	D.	Acc.	Abl.
Singular.	r-ĕs.	r-ĕi.	r-ĕi.	r-ĕm.	r-ĕ.
Plural.	r-ĕs.	r-ĕrĭm.	r-ĕbŭs.	r-ĕs.	r-ĕbŭs.
Day (m.).					
Singular.	dĭ-ĕs.	dĭ-ĕi.	dĭ-ĕi.	dĭ-ĕm.	dĭ-ĕ.
Plural.	dĭ-ĕs.	dĭ-ĕrĭm.	dĭ-ĕbŭs.	dĭ-ĕs.	dĭ-ĕbŭs.

Rem. Only *rĕs*, *diĕs*, *spĕciĕs*, have the *plur. complete*; the *gen. dat.* and *abl. plur.* are wanting in all others.

(118.)

EXERCISE.

Vocabulary.

Hope, *spĕs*, *ĕi*.

Day, *diĕs*, *ĕi* (m.).

To appoint, *constitŭĕrĕ*.

To lead out, *ĕdŭcĕrĕ*.

To lead back, *rĕdŭcĕrĕ*.

Line of battle, *ĕlĕs*, *ĕi*.

To draw up, *instrŭĕrĕ*.

About, *cĭrcĭtĕr* (*prep.* with *acc.*).

About mid-day, *cĭrcĭtĕr mĕridiĕm*.

Victory, *victŕiĕ*, *ĕ*.

Mid-day, *mĕridiĕs*, *ĕi* (m.).

Sixth, *ŕextĭs*, *ĕ*, *ŭm*.

Reward, *prĕmiŭm*, *i*.

Sun, *sŕl*, (*sŕl*) *is* (m.).

Setting, *ŕŕcŭsŭs*, *ŭs*.

Seventh, *ŕeptĭmŭs*, *ĕ*, *ŭm*.

Out of, *ĕ* or *ex* (*prep.* with *ablative*).

Faith, *promise*, *fidĕs*, *ĕi*.

The next, *postĕrŭs*, *ĕ*, *ŭm*.

To fight, *pugnĕrĕ*.

II. *Examples.*

(a) *Cæsar draws up the line of battle.* | Cæsār āciēm instrūit.

(b) *The next day they move the camp.* | Postērō dĩē castrā mōvent.

(c) *Rule of Syntax.*—The point of time at which any thing occurs is expressed by the ablative; e. g., in (b) *postero die*.—*At sun-set* = sōlis occāsū.

III. *Translate into English.*

Spēs victōriæ milītēs dēlectāt.—Milītēs spē (93, II., R.) victōriæ dēlectantūr.—Dĩēs vēnit.—Cæsār dĩēm constitūt.—Cæsār dĩēm cūm lēgātis constitūt.—Impērātōr fortis exercitūm ēdūcīt, ēt āciēm instrūit.—Circitēr mēridiēm pignant.—Cæsār, circitēr mēridiēm, exercitūm in castrā rēdūcīt.—Sextō dĩē (118, II., c) Cæsār exercitūm ex castris ēdūcīt.—Spēs prēmiorūm pūrōs dēlectāt.—Pūrī spē prēmiorūm dēlectantur.—Sōlis occāsū Helvētī castrā mōvēbant.—Septimō dĩē Belgæ cōpiās omnēs ex castris ēdūcēbant.—Sōlis occāsū Ariovistūs āciēm instrūit.—Circitēr mēridiēm prēliūm rēdintēgrābunt.—Consul clārūs dĩēm cūm lēgātis constitūt.—Princīpēs nobīlēs fidēm viōlant.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

The hope of victory delights the noble chiefs.—The consul about mid-day leads out the army and renews the fierce battle.—The powerful chiefs, at the-setting of-the-sun (118, II., c), kill all the prisoners.—The day will come.—The consul, at the setting of the sun, will renew the great battle.—At the setting of the sun the great battle will be renewed.—On the sixth day all the forces will be led back to the camp.—The Germans appoint a day with Cæsar.—The next day the Germans move (their) camp.—Ariovistus, on the next day, draws out the line of battle.—Cæsar appoints the mid-day with the ambassadors.—About mid-day the messengers come.—About mid-day the consul will come.—Cæsar will not violate (his) promise.

§ 15.

PRONOUNS. (XX.—XXXI.)

LESSON XX.

Pronouns.—Substantive-Personal and Adjective-Personal.—Verbs, First Person.

(119.) THE three pronouns *ěgŏ, I; tŭ, thou; suī, of himself, herself, itself*, are called *Substantive*, because they are used as substantives, not as adjectives; and *Personal*, because they express the person *speaking*, the person *spoken to*, and the person *spoken of*.

(120.) The *Substantive-Personal* Pronoun of the *first person* is thus declined:

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ěgŏ, <i>I.</i>	měi, <i>of me.</i>	mihl, <i>to me.</i>	mē, <i>me.</i>	mē, <i>by me, &c.</i>
Plur.	nŏs, <i>we.</i>	nostrī, } <i>of us.</i> nostrŭm,	nŏbīs, <i>to us.</i>	nŏs, <i>us.</i>	nŏbīs, <i>by us, &c.</i>

(121.) Derived from the *Substantive-Personal* Pronouns are the *Adjective-Personal* or *Possessive* Pronouns; called *Adjective*, because they agree with nouns; and *Possessive*, because they express possession (*my, thy, his, &c.*).

(122.) The *Adjective-Personal* Pronouns of the *first person* are declined, in both sing. and plur., like adjectives of the *First Class* (76, 77, a). They are,

- | | | |
|-----|-------------------|---|
| (a) | Derived from mēi, | N. mēūs, mēš, mēŭm, <i>my, mine!</i>
G. mēi, mēš, mēi, <i>of my (voc. masc. mī).</i>
&c. &c. (like bŏnšs, 76.) |
| (b) | “ from nostrī, | N. nostrŭ, nostrā, nostrŭm, <i>our, ours.</i>
G. nostrī, nostrŭe, nostrī, <i>of our.</i>
&c. &c. (like pulchŕ, 77, a). |

(123.) The following forms of *Verbs in the first person* must now be learned:

FIRST CONJUGATION : FIRST PERSON ENDINGS.

INFIN. ACT., <i>ārē</i> .			INFIN. PASS., <i>ārī</i> .			
	Indic. present.		Imperfect.		Future.	
	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
1st Sing.	ā.	ār.	ābām.	ābār.	ābō.	ābōr.
1st Plur.	āmūs.	āmūr.	ābāmūs.	ābāmūr.	ābīmūs.	ābīmūr.

(124.) Thus, from the stem *ām*, of *ām-ārē*, to love, we have :

INFIN. ACT., <i>āmārē</i> , to love.			INFIN. PASS., <i>āmārī</i> , to be loved.			
Act.	Indic. Pres.		Imperfect.		Future.	
	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
ām-ā.	ām-ār.	ām-ābām.	ām-ābār.	ām-ābō.	ām-ābōr.	
I love.	I am loved.	I was loving.	I was loved.	I shall love.	I shall be loved.	
ām-āmūs.	ām-āmūr.	ām-ābāmūs.	ām-ābāmūr.	ām-ābīmūs.	ām-ābīmūr.	
we love.	we are loved.	we were loving.	we were loved.	we shall love.	we shall be loved.	

[*Rem.* The student will learn the *passive* endings readily by observing that *r* is the passive characteristic, which is added to the active; the consonant ending of the active, where it has one, being dropped.]

(125.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Book, libēr, brī (m.), (64).

Friend, āmicūs, ī (m.).

Brother, frātēr, (fratr) īs (m.).

Cicero, Cīcērō, (Cīcērōn) īs (m.).

Sister, sōrōr, (sōrōr) īs (f.).

With (i. e., at one's house), apūd (prep. acc.).

Fault, culpā, ē.

Yesterday, hērī (adv.).

All my (possessions), omniā, meā.

To-day, Hōdiē (adv.).

Five, quinqūē.

Sharply, ācritēr.

To-morrow, crās (adv.).

Very much, greatly, valdē (adv.).

To blame, vitūpērārē.

To sing, cantārē.

Three, trēs, triā (adj. of Class II.).

II. Examples.

(a) *I have a book.*

Est mihi libēr (i. e., there is a book to me).

Rule of Syntax.—The dative case is used with *est* or *sunt*, to denote the person who *has* or *possesses* something.*

The thing possessed is *nom.* to *est* or *sunt*.

(b) *The boy was walking with me in the garden yesterday.*

Puēr mēcūm īn hortō hērī ambūlābāt.

Rule of Position.—The preposition *cūm* is *suffixed* to the personal pronouns; e. g., mēcūm, *with me*; nōbiscūm, *with us*, instead of *cūm mē*, *cūm nōbīs*.

[Recollect that the personal and possessive pronouns are not expressed in Latin, unless emphasis or perspicuity demands it.]

* This is called the *Dative of Possession*, and should always be referred to as such by the pupil.

III. *Translate into English.*

Ēgō cantō, amīcūs audīt.—*Ēgō ēt frātēr ambulāmūs.**—*Ēge ēt filiūs meūs festināmūs.*—*Sunt mīhī trēs librī* (125, II., a).—*Sunt mīhī quattuōr equī ēt quinquē cānēs.*—*Īn hortō ambulābām.*—*Ā bōnīs* (82, I., R.) *āmābōr.*—*Cicērō ā mē laudātūr.*—*Hostēs nobiscūm* (125, II., b) *ācritēr pugnant.*—*Hērī īn āgris ambulābāmūs.*—*Pātēr ād nōs nuntiūm mittēt.*—*Culpā nostrā est.*—*Crās īn hortō cenābīmūs.*—*Dēlectābāmūr.*—*Puērī īn hortō nobiscūm ambulābunt.*—*Littērārūm studiūm†* (38, b) *mīhī* (106, II.) *ūtīlē ērit.*—*A māgistrō laudābār.*—*Omniā meā mēcūm portō.*—*Ēgō ā frātrē valdē āmōr.*—*Nōs laudāmūr, puellāe vitūpērāntūr.*—*Nōs ā māgistrō verbērābīmūr.*

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

We praise the beautiful girl.—We have (125, II., a) four large cups.—I have (= there are to me) four sons and three daughters (125, II., a).—We shall praise Cæsar's brave soldiers.—I walk, my friend rides.—I and my sister will ride.*—I and my brother will walk* in the king's garden.†—I and my father will sup* in the garden to-morrow.—We shall always praise the wise and good.—The works of Cicero will be praised by us (93, II., b), the works of Cæsar by the soldiers.—The fault is mine.—We have many large cups (125, II., a).—I have three beautiful sisters.—I have four brothers.—My father will walk with me in Cæsar's garden (*Cæsārīs īn hortō*).‡—The study of literature is useful to us (106, II.).—To-day we shall sup with (apud) Crassus.

LESSON XXI.

Pronouns, Personal and Possessive, continued.—Verbs, First Person, continued.

(126.) THE following are some of the *endings* for the *first person* in verbs of the

* If a predicate have two or more nominatives, connected by a conjunction, it takes generally the plural number; and if the nominatives be of different persons, the verb takes the first person rather than the second, the second rather than the third.

† *Littērārūm studiūm* = the pursuit (or study) of literature (letters).

‡ In all such cases, put the prep. *between* the genitive and the noun governed by the prep.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Present.	mön-	eō.	eōr.	ēmūs.	ēmūr.
Imperfect.	mön-	ebām.	ebār.	ebāmūs.	ebāmūr.
Future.	mön-	ebō.	ebōr.	ebīmūs.	ebīmūr.

[*Rem.* The student will learn these forms readily by observing that they differ chiefly from those of the *first* conjugation in having *ē* before the last syllable instead of *ā*. By adding the endings, as above given, to the stem *mön-*, which stands at the left hand, he will form the paradigm of *mönērē*, to advise.]

(127.) The following are some of the *endings* for the *first* person in the third and fourth conjugations.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Present.	rēg-	ō.	ōr.	īmūs.	īmūr.
Imperfect.	rēg-	ēbām.	ēbār.	ēbāmūs.	ēbāmūr.
Future.	rēg-	ām.	ār.	ēmūs.	ēmūr.

[*Rem.* Compare these with the endings of the 2d conj., and observe that,

1. In the *pres.* *e* is dropped in the sing., and *i* assumed in the plur
2. The imperfect is precisely the same.
3. But the *future* is a new form.
4. By adding the endings to the stem placed at the left, you form the paradigm of *rēgērē*, to rule.]

(128.)

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
Present.	aud-	iō.	iōr.	īmūs.	īmūr.
Imperfect.	aud-	iēbām.	iēbār.	iēbāmūs.	iēbāmūr.
Future.	aud-	iām.	iār.	iēmūs.	iēmūr.

[*Rem.* Observe that the endings of the 4th conj. differ from those of the 3d simply by prefixing the letter *i*. In the 1st plur. the *i* prefixed combines with that of the endings *īmūs*, *īmūr*, and forms *īmūs* *īmūr*.]

(129.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Fierce, *fērōx*, (*fērōc*) *is* (107).

Nothing, *nihil* (neut. indecl.).

To be well, *valērē*.

To arrange, *dispōnērē*.

Wicked, *imprōbūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.

Garrison, *præsidiūm*, *i*.

Latin, *Lātinūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.

Antony, *Antōn'ūs*, *i*.

II. Example.

I have nothing to do with
Antony (125, II., a).

Nihil est mihī cūm Antōniū
(*i. e.*, there is nothing to me
with Antony).

III. *Translate into English.*

2d Conjugation.—Ēgō ēt frātēr vālēmūs (125, III.*).—Ā māgistrō dōcēbimūr.—Linguām Lātinām dōceō.—Ā patrē mōneōr.—Ā māgistrō bōnō dōcēmūr.—Āb hostē tīmēbār.—Hostiūm adventūm nōn tīmēbō. *3d Conjugation.*—Rēgēbāmūr.—Præsidiā dispōnēbāmūs.—Ā Deō rēgimūr.—Ēgō exercitūm dūcām.—Ā filiō meō rēlinquār.—Lūpōs fērōcēs occidimūs. *4th Conjugation.*—Castellā mūniēmūs.—Āviūm cantūm audimūs.—Crās ād urbēm vēniām.—Nihil est mihi cūm imprōbis.—Nihil est nobis cūm hostibūs.

IV. *Translate into Latin.*

2d Conjugation.—I and my son are well (125, III.*).—We shall see the brave soldiers.—I am taught by good masters.—We were fearing the approach of the enemy.—I was teaching the Latin language.—We shall be feared by the enemy.—We shall be advised by our father. *3d Conjugation.*—We were led by a brave general.—I was killing three wolves.—We are ruled by a good king.—We shall arrange the garrisons.—I shall bring (dūcērē) my daughter from (ab) the city.—We shall lead the forces of the Germans. *4th Conjugation.*—We were heard by the master.—We shall sleep in the little town (89, II.).—We shall come to the town to-morrow.—I shall be heard by the girls.—We were fortifying the towns.—We have nothing to do with the foolish (129, II.).—I have nothing to do with Cæsar.

LESSON XXII.

Pronouns.—Substantive-Personal and Adjective-Personal.—Verbs, Second Person.

(130.) THE Substantive-Personal Pronoun of the second person is thus declined :

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	tū, thou.	tui, of thee.	tibi, to thee.	tē, thee.	tī, thou.	tē, by.
Plur.	vōs, you.	vestri, } vestrūm, } of you.	vōbis, to you.	vōs, you.	vōs, you.	vōbis, by.

(131.) The following are some of the *endings* of the second person of verbs of the

FIRST CONJUGATION.

	STĒM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
Pres.	am-	ās.	ārīs.	ātīs.	āmīnī.
Imp.	am-	ābās.	ābārīs.	ābātīs.	ābāmīnī.
Fut.	am-	ābīs.	ābērīs.	ābītīs.	ābīmīnī.

(132.)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

Yesterday, hērī. (adv.).

| To wound, vulnērārē.

To-day, hōdiē (adv.).

| To fight, pugnārē.

II. Translate into English.

Crās mēcūm cōnābīs.—Tū mē āmās, ēgō tē āmō.—Vōs vōbiscūm pugnātīs.—Tū cantās, nōs audīmūs.—Īn hortō ambūlābātīs.—Tū ā pātrē valdē āmārīs.—Vōs vītūpērāmīnī, nōs laudāmūr.—Nihīl est tībī cūm Cēsārē.—Crās vōbiscūm cōnābō.—Nōs laudābīmūr, vōs vītūpērābīmīnī.—Nihīl vōbīs est cūm bōnis.—Hērī ambūlābātīs.—Hōdiē pugnābītīs.—Laudābāmīnī.—Vulnērābīmīnī.—Vōcātīs.—Vōcāmīnī.—Āmātīs.—Ānsāmīnī.—Cantābātīs.—Vōcābāmīnī.

III. Translate into Latin.

To-day ye were supping with us (125, II., b).—Ye love us, we love you.—Ye were singing, we were hearing.—Ye have nothing to do with the king (129, II.).—Thou wast greatly loved by Cæsar.—Ye shall be praised by our master.—Ye shall be blamed by the good (82, I., R.).—Ye are called by the messenger.—Thou fightest with thyself* (125, II., b).—Ye shall sup with us to-morrow.—Thou wilt fight to-morrow.—Thou wast loving.—Thou wast loved.—Thou wilt blame.—Thou wilt be blamed.—Ye are praising.—Ye are praised.—Thou woundest.—Thou art wounded.

LESSON XXIII.

Pronouns, Personal and Possessive, continued.—Verbs, Second Person, Second Conjugation.

(133.) THE following are some of the *endings* for the *second* person, in verbs of the

* Tēcūm.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	SINGULAR ENDINGS.		PLURAL ENDINGS.	
		Act.	Pass.	Act.	Pass.
Pres.	mōn-	ēs.	ēris.	ētis.	ēmīnī.
Imp.	mōn-	ēbās.	ēbāris.	ēbātis.	ēbāmīnī.
Fut.	mōn-	ēbis.	ēbēris.	ēbītis.	ēbimīnī.

(134.) The *Adjective-Personal* (or *Possessive*) Pronouns of the Second Person are, *tūūs, ā, ūm, thy*; and *vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm, your*.

- (a) Derived from *tūī*, N. *tūūs, ā, ūm, thy, thine*.
G. *tūī, æ, ī, of thy, &c.*
- (b) Derived from *vestrī*, N. *vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm, your*
G. *vestrī, vestræ, vestrī, of your*

(135)

EXERCISE.

I. Vocabulary.

<i>Thou art, ēs</i> (2d person sing. ind. pres. of <i>esse</i>).	<i>Of, concerning, dē</i> (prep. abl.).
<i>Ye are, estis</i> (2d person pl. of <i>do</i>).	<i>To laugh, ridērē.</i>
<i>I was, ērām</i> (1st imperf. <i>do</i>).	<i>To rejoice, gaudērē.</i>
<i>Cause,</i> } <i>causā.</i>	<i>Safety, sālūs, (sālūt) is</i> (f.).
<i>For the sake of,</i> } <i>causā</i> (abl.).	<i>Leader, guide, dux, (dūc) is</i> (m.).
<i>To learn, discērē.</i>	<i>Why, cūr</i> (adv.).
	<i>Because, that, quōd</i> (conj.).

II. Examples.

- (a) *Nē* is an interrogative particle used in asking questions.

It is annexed to the word to which it especially refers; *e. g.*

(1) Do you teach the boy? | *Tū nē puērūm dōcēs?*

(2) Do you teach the boy? | *Dōcēs nē puērūm?*

(3) Do you teach the boy? | *Puērūm nē dōcēs?*

In (1) *tū* has the emphasis; in (2) *dōcēs*; and in (3) *puērūm*.

- (b) Ye are warned, for the sake of your (own) safety. | *Vestræ sālūtis causā mōnēmīnī.*

Rule of Position.—*Causā*, for the sake of (the abl. of *causā, a cause*), is always placed after the genitive which depends on it.

- (c) I was your leader. | *Dux ēgō vestēr ērām.*

III. Translate into English.

Vidēs nē servū meūm? (135, II., 2).—*Tuæ sālūtis causā* (135, II., b) *mōnēris.*—*Cūr ridētis?*—*Vestræ sālūtis causā mōnēmīnī.*—*Gaudeō quōd tū ēt pātēr tuūs vālētis* (125. III., *)

—Vidēbāsnē militēs?—Dē culpā tuā mōnēbāris.—Cūr ridēbātis.—Hostiūm adventū nōn tīmēbīs.—Tuæ sālūtis causā mōnēbēris.—Nōs discēmūs, vōs dōcēbimīni.—Tīmētisnē Cēsāris adventū?—Esnē tū beātūs?—Culpā tuā est (*the fault is thine*).—Puēri in hortō vōbiscūm ambulābant.—Māgistēr ēgō vestēr oram (135, II., c).

IV. Translate into Latin.*

[The *emphatic* words are in italics.]

Did you *see* your master?—Do you *fear* the approach of Cæsar?—Are *you* happy?—You were warned (advised) for the sake of your own safety.—Are you and your father *well*? (125, III., *).—The fault was yours.—You shall see the enemy, but (*sēd*) shall not fear (them).—I am your friend.—I was your friend.—You teach, but we learn.—You shall *teach*, but we shall learn.—Why do you not (nōn) fear the master?—You were warned of (*d e*) your fault.—Do you *see* your slaves?—Are *you* Cæsar?—Why do you fear the master?—You shall see great cities and many men.—We shall sup with you to-morrow.—You shall be warned, for the sake of your own safety.—We rejoice that you and your daughter are well (125, III., *)

LESSON XXIV.

Verbs, Second Person, Third and Fourth Conjugations

(136.) THE following are some of the *endings* of the *second* person in verbs of the

THIRD CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	ACTIVE ENDINGS.		PASSIVE ENDINGS.	
		2d Sing.	2d Plur.	2d Sing.	2d Plur.
Pres.	reg-	īs.	ītīs.	ēris.	imīni.
Imper.	reg-	ēbās.	ēbātīs.	ēbāris.	ēbāminī.
Fut.	reg-	ēs.	ētīs.	ēris.	ēmīni.

(137.) The following are some of the *endings* of the *second* person in verbs of the

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	STEM.	ACTIVE ENDINGS.		PASSIVE ENDINGS.	
		2d Sing.	2d Plur.	2d Sing.	2d Plur.
Pres.	aud-	īs.	ītīs.	īris.	imīni.
Imp.	aud-	iebās.	iebātīs.	iebāris.	iebāminī.
Fut.	aud-	ies.	iētīs.	iēris.	iēmīni.

* When *you, your* occur, translate them both in sing. and plur., for the sake of practice.

(138.) *Observe,*

- (a) That the present endings of the 3d and 4th conjugations are nearly alike, the vowel (i) of the *fourth* being long (ī).
 (b) That the imperfect and future endings of the *fourth* conjugation differ from those of the third by prefixing the letter i.

EXERCISE.

(139.) *Vocabulary.*

Plant, plantā, m.

To sow to plant, sērērē.

To find, invēnirē.

Orator, ōrātōr, (ōrātōr) is (m).

Voice, vox, (vōc) is (f).

To read, lēgērē.

Whence, undē (adv.).

Long, longē (adv.).

Badly, mālē.

To punish, pūnirē.

So, tām (adv.).

Bird, āvis, (āv) is (f)

(140.) *Translate into English.*

3d Conjugation.—Cūr nōn scribīs.—Arbōrēs ēt plantās sērēbātīs.—Hōdiē ād Cēsārēm mittērīs.—Cūr tām mālē scribīs?—Ād castrā rēducēmīnī.—Lēgīs-nē Cīcērōnīs ōpērā?—Scribīs-nē ēpistolām ād Cēsārēm? 4th Conjugation.—Undē vēnīs?—Cūr tām longē dormīs?—Māgistrūm bōnūm invēniēs.—Audīs-nē māgistrī vōcēm?—Cūr nōn vēniētīs?—Ā Cēsārē audirīs.—Ā māgistrō pūniēmīnī.—Ōrātōrēm audiētīs.—In hortō dormiebātīs.—Cantūm āviūm audītīs.

(141.) *Translate into Latin.* [Refer to 135, II.]

3d Conjugation.—Are you writing a letter?—Thou wast planting a tree to-day.—Were (you) reading the works of Cicero?—Why do you read so badly?—Are you writing a letter to the messenger?—Thou wilt read Cæsar to-day.—Thou art sent to the camp.—Thou wilt be led by the ambassadors. 4th Conjugation.—Why do you not come?—Ye shall hear the voice of Cæsar.—Thou wilt sleep in the camp.—Ye shall be heard by the master.—Thou shalt be punished.—Ye are heard.—Thou shalt hear the singing of the birds.

LESSON XXV.

Pronouns.—Substantive-Personal and Adjective-Personal, Third Person.

(142.) THE *Substantive Pronoun* of the *third person* is thus declined :

F

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	—	sūi, of himself, herself, itself.	sibi, to himself, &c.	sē, himself, &c.	sē, by himself, &c.
Plur.	—	sūi, of themselves.	sibi, to themselves.	sē, themselves.	sē, by themselves, &c.

(143.) The *Adjective Pronoun* of the *third person* is declined like an adjective of the first class: thus,

Derived from sūi, | N. sūus, ā, ūm, *his, hers, its, his own.* .
 | G. sūi, æ, ī, *of his, hers, its, &c.*

Rem. Observe that sūi is not a regular pronoun of the third person, like the English *he, she, it*, but reflexive; e. g., puēr sē laudāt, *the boy praises himself*. It therefore has no *nom.* case. [The *nom.* pronouns *he, she, it*, are not often expressed in Latin; but when they *must* be, a *demonstrative* pronoun, generally *hic, is, or ille*, is employed.]

EXERCISE.

(144.) *Vocabulary.*

Hand, mănūs, ūs (f.) (112, 2).
To love (with esteem), dīlīg-ērē.
To live, viv-ērē.
To contend, contend-ērē.
To defend, defend-ērē.
To burn, incend-ērē.
Townsmān, oppīdānūs, l.
A Sequanian, Sēquānus, l.

Among, intēr (prep.).
Corn, frāmētūm, l.
From (prep.) a or ab.†
A legion, lēgiō, (lēgiōn) is (f.).
To rule, command, impēr-ārē (with dat. of person).
To send away, } dīmītt-ērē.
dismiss, }

(145.) *Examples.*

- (a) *Cæsar calls Divitiacus to himself.* Cæsār Dīvītiacūm ad sē vōcāt.
 (b) *The girl writes the letter with her own hand.* Puellā ēpistōlām mănū suā scribīt.
 [Rem. Sē is often doubled, for the sake of emphasis.]
 (c) *Men always love themselves.* Hōmīnēs sempēr sēsē dīlīgunt.
 (d) *The good live not for themselves, but for all.* Bōmī nōn sibi, sēd omīnībūs vīvunt.

(146.) *Translate into English.*

Hostēs intēr sē contendunt.—Oppīdānī sē suāquē* ab hostībūs dēfendēbant.—Helvētīī oppīdā suā omniā incendunt.—Cæsār trēs lēgiōnēs sēcūm hābēt.—Consul lēgātōs ab sē dīmīttēt.—Sāpiens omniā suā* sēcūm portāt.—Helvētīī ēt Sēquānī ob-

* Suā=*his, her or their (property)*; the noun being understood.

† A is used before consonants only; ab before either vowels or consonants.

aidēs intēr sēsē dābant.—Bōnī sēsē nōn dīligunt.—Helvētī frūmentū omnē* sēcūm portābant.—Imprōbī sībī sempēr vīvunt.—Sāpiens sībī sempēr impērāt (147).

(147.) *Rule of Syntax.*—The *Dative* is used with some verbs signifying *to command, to rule, to obey*.

(148.) *Translate into Latin.*

Good men do not praise themselves.—The townsmen were fighting with each other (*inter se*).—The wise man always carries *all* his (property) with him.—The bad† always love themselves.—The general has three legions with him.—The townsmen will carry all their corn with them.—The bad do not rule themselves (147).—The Æduans will defend themselves and their (property) from the soldiers.—Cæsar was dismissing the messenger from himself.—The Germans will burn their villages.

LESSON XXVI.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

(149.) THE *Demonstrative Pronouns* are so called because they are used to *point out* an object; *e. g. this, that, these, those*.

(150.) *Īs, that* (often used for *he, she, it* (143, R.)) is thus declined; also *īdēm, the very same*, compounded of *īs* and *dem*.

	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N.	īs, eā, id.	īī, ēs, ēā.	īdēm, eādēm, idēm.	īīdēm, eādēm, eādēm.
G.	ējūs.	eōrūm, eārūm, eōrūm.	ējūsēm.	eōrūdēm, eārūdēm, eōrūdēm.
D.	ēī.	īīs, or eīs.	eīdēm.	īīdēm.
Acc.	ēūm, ēām, id.	eōs, eās, eā.	ēūdēm, eandēm, idēm.	eōsdēm, eāsēm, eādēm.
Abl.	eō, eā, eō.	īīs, or eīs.	eōdēm, eādēm, eōdēm.	īīsdēm.

(151.) The following forms of the verb *esse, to be*, must now be learned.

* Frūmentū omnē = *all their corn*.

† Improbī.

TENSES.		SINGULAR.		
	1st.	2d.	3d.	
Present.	sūm, <i>I am.</i>	ēs, <i>thou art.</i>	est, <i>he, she, &c., is.</i>	
Imperfect.	ērām, <i>was.</i>	ērās.	ērāt.	
Future.	ērō, <i>shall or will be.</i>	eris.	erit.	
		PLURAL.		
	1st.	2d.	3d.	
Present.	sūmūs, <i>we are.</i>	estīs, <i>ye are.</i>	sunt, <i>they are.</i>	
Imperfect.	ērāmūs, <i>were.</i>	erātīs.	erant.	
Future.	erimūs.	eritīs.	erunt.	

EXERCISE.

(152.) Vocabulary.

To keep off, }
To prevent, } prōhibērē.

To refrain, tempērārē.

Merchant, mercātōr, (mercātōr) is (m.).

Colour, cōlōr, (cōlōr) is (m.).

And, atquē (conj.).

Plato, Plātō, (Plātōn) is.

Elegant, ē ēgans, (elegant) is.

Gladly, willingly, libentēr (adv.).

Way, journey, itēr, (itinēr) is (n.).

Kingdom, regnūm, l.

Flower, flōs, (flōr) is (m.).

Writer, scriptōr, (scriptōr) is (m.).

Never, nunquām (adv.).

(153.) Examples.

a) The Helvetians contend with the Germans, and keep them off from their boundaries.

Helvētīi cūm Germānis contendunt, eōs quē suis finibūs prōhibent.*

(b) The father calls his (own) son to him (self).

Pātēr filiūm suūm ad sē vōcāt.

(c) The father calls his daughter and her son to him (self).

Pātēr filiām suām et filiūm ejūs ad sē vōcāt.

☞ Observe carefully, that if *his, hers, its*, refers to the principal subject of the sentence, it is expressed by the *possessive* (suūs, ū, ūm); but if not, by the *genitive* (ejūs) of the demonstrative (is, eā, id).

(154.) Translate into English.

(1) Is, eā, id, used for *he, she, it* (personal).

li āb injuriā tempērant.—Is est in provinciā tuā.—Mercātorēs ad eōs sēpē vēniunt.—Ab iis multā (82, I., R.) poscimus—Belgæ cūm Œduis contendunt, eōsqūe suis finibūs (163, a, prōhibent.

(2) Is, used as *demonstrative, this, that*; also, id eīn, as *the same*

* *Suis finibus* is in the ablative. All verbs of *separating, depriving, &c.* may take a noun in the ablative, with the direct object in the accusative

In eo itinere Cæsar Crassum videt.—Dumnorix, eo tempore (118, II., c) regnum tenebat.—Non semper idem floribus (125, II., a) est color.—In ea provincia sunt quattuor legiones.

(3) Distinction between ejūs and suūs, ā, ū m.

Cicero est scriptor clarus; ejūs librōs libenter legimus.—Cæsar ad se Dumnorigem atque filium ejūs vocabit.—Plato est scriptor elegans; ejūs opēra libenter lego.

Dux ego vester eram.—Es-ne tu Socrates?—Estisne beati?—Cæsar lux vester erat.

(155.) *Translate into Lat.n.*

They were walking in the garden yesterday.—The king will give them (dat., 54) rewards.—They are in Gaul.—Merchants never come to them.—We were demanding rewards of (ab) them.—In that province Cæsar finds many deserters.—In that province there are three legions.—At that time (abl., 118, II., c) Cæsar was leading the army.—Horses (125, II., a) have not always the same colour.—Cæsar calls Divitiacus and his brothers to him (self).—Cæsar is an elegant writer; we read his works willingly.—I am your leader.—You shall be our leader.—Cæsar was our leader.—The Æduans contend with the Helvetians, and keep them off their boundaries.

LESSON XXVII.

Demonstrative Pronouns, continued.

(156.) THE Demonstrative hīc, hæc, hōc, *this*, points out an object which is present to the speaker, and is called demonstrative of the first person; e. g., *this book (of mine)*, hīc liber.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	hīc, hæc, hōc.	hūjūs.	huic.	hunc, hanc, hōc.	hōc, hāc, hōc.
Plur.	hī, hæ, hæc.	hōrūm, hārūm, hōrūm.	his.	hōs, hās, hæc.	his.

Rem. Hīc is used also (as was stated 143, R.) for *he, she, it*; e. g., hīc dicit, *he (this man) speaks*.

(57.) Istē, istā, istūd, *this, that*, points out an

object which is present to the *person spoken to*, and is called the demonstrative of the *second person*; *e. g.*, *that book (of yours)*, *istē liber*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	istē, istā, istūd.	istiūs.	istī.	istīm, istām, istūd.	istō, istā, istō.
Plur.	istī, istæ, istā.	istorūm, ārūm, orūm.	istīs.	istōs, istās, istā.	istīs.

Rem. *Istē* is often used to denote contempt; *e. g.*, *istē-ne dicit?*
Does *that fellow* speak?

(158.) *Illē, illā, illūd*, points out an object *remote from the speaker* (*that*, the *former*, opposed to *hic*), and is called the demonstrative of the *third person*. It is used often for the personal pronoun *he, she, it* (143, R.).

 It is declined throughout like *istē, istā, istūd*.

Rem. In the genitives, *istiūs, illiūs, ipsiūs*, the penult *i* is long, contrary to the general rule (24, 1) that a vowel before another is short.

(159.) *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm*, is properly an *adjective* pronoun, as it is *added* to other pronouns; *e. g.*,

I (and not another) *praise myself*.
I praise myself (and not another).

Ēgō mē ipsē laudā.
Ēgō mē ipsūm laudā.

EXERCISE.

(160.) Vocabulary.

Opinion, sententiā, ō.
To please, plācērē.
To displease, displicērē.
Soul, ānīmūs, ī.
Proverb, prōverbīūm, ī.
Lazy, ignāvūs, ā, ūm.
Excellent, } prāclārūs, ā, ūm.
Celebrated, }
Reason, rātiō, (rātiōn) īs (f.).

Animal, ānīmāl, (ānīmāl) īs (neut.).
Pleasing, agreeable, grātūs, ā, ūm
Base, turpīs, ē (104).
Friend, amicūs, ī.
To boast, prādicārē.
To obey, pārērē (with *dat.*, 147).
Old, vētus, (vētēr) īs (198, R., 2).
Song, carmēn, (carmēn) īs (n.).
Precept, prāceptūm, ī.

(161.) Examples.

(a) This *opinion* pleases me, Hæc sententiā mīhī plācēt
that *displeases* (me). illā displicēt.

Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *pleasing, obeying, persuading, commanding, favouring, and the reverse, take the Dative case.*

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| (1) That friend of yours is
an illustrious man. | Istē tuūs āmicūs vīr clārus
est. |
| (c) The soul itself moves it-
self. | Ānimūs ipsē sē mōvēt. |
| (d) It is base to boast of one's
self. | Turpē est dē seipsō præ-
dicārē. |

Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive is used as the subject of a verb, and is then regarded as a noun in the neuter gender; e. g., *prædicārē* (to boast), in (d), is nom. to est. and *turpē* (base) agrees with it in the neuter.

(162.) *Translate into English.*

(a) Hī puērī māgistrō pārent.—Hæ littēræ valdē mē dēlectant.—Cicērōnīs librī valdē mīhī plācent: eōs libentēr lēgō.—Hōc bellūm grāvē est.—Hīc puēr bōnus est, illē Ignāvūs.

(b) Istā tuā filiā pulchrā est.—Istūd tuūm carmēn mīhī (106, II., c) grātūm est.—Præclārā sunt istā tuā præceptā.—Vētūs illūd prōverbiūm mīhī plācēt.

(c) Omnē ānimāl seipsūm dilīgīt.—Impērātōr ipsē mīlītībūs (147) impērāt.—Ēgō mē ipsē nōn laudābām.—Tū teipsūm laudābis.—Sāpiēns sibi ipsi impērāt.

(d) Jūcundūm est āmārē.

(163.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) That illustrious precept was-pleasing-to (placēbāt) Cato.—That brave general will command the soldiers.—The soldiers willingly obey this brave general.—This precept pleases me, that displeases (me).—The works of Cæsar please me very much; I read them gladly (libentēr).

(b) That horse of yours is a beautiful animal.—I keep in memory (mēmōriā teneō) that excellent precept of yours.—These songs of yours are pleasing (grātā) to me.—That letter of yours was delighting me very much.

(c) The soul rules itself (161, c) by reason (rātīōnē, b5, a).—The poet himself praises himself (159).—Cæsar himself will command the legions (161, r).—The soldiers willingly (libentēr)

obey Cæsar himself.—Do you (135, II., 1) praise yourself?—Wise men themselves always rule themselves (147).

(d) It is pleasant to love (one's) friends.—It is base to boast of (one's) friends.—It is agreeable to please (one's) father

LESSON XXVIII.

(164.) THE *Relative Pronoun* (*who, which*), qui, quæ, quod, is thus declined :

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	qui, quæ, quod.	cujūs.	cui.	quem, quām, quod.	quē quā, quō.
Plur.	qui, quæ, quæ.	quorū, quārum, quōrum.	quibūs.	quos, quās, quæ.	quibūs.

Rem. Quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque (*whosoever, whichever, whatsoever*) is declined like qui, quæ, quod: cunque being simply annexed to the different cases.

(165.) The *Relative* commonly refers to some preceding word, which is therefore called the *antecedent*; e. g., The man who lives well, is happy. Here man is the antecedent; who, the relative. The sentence in which the relative occurs is called the *relative sentence*; the other the *principal* or *antecedent sentence*; e. g. (above), the man is happy, is the principal sentence: who lives well, the relative sentence.

EXERCISE.

(166.) Vocabulary.

Poor, ægens, (egent) is (108).	Fountain, fons, (font) is (m.).
Enough, sātis (adv.). [ā, ūm.	Water, aquā, æ.
Nearest to, neighbours to, proximūs,	Winter-quarters, hibernā, ōrūm (pl.)
English, Anglūs, ā, ūm.	To winter, hiēmārē.
To dwell, incolērē (intrans.).	Arethusa, Arēthūsā, æ.
To inhabit, incolērē (trans.).	To return, restore, reddēre.
Blood, sanguis, (sanguin) is (m.).	Virtue, virtūs, (virtūt) is (f.).
Also etiām (conj.).	To repel, prōpulsārē.
Heart, cōr (cord) is (n.).	To vaunt, ostentārē.
To despise, contemnērē.	Fame, famā, æ.
Magnanimous, magnānīmūs, ā, ūm.	To do, to make, facērē.
Honest, honourable, hōnestūs, ā, ūm.	One, ūnūs, ā, ūm.

(167.) Examples.

(a) The boy, who reads, learns.	Puer, qui lēgit, discit.
---------------------------------	--------------------------

<i>The girl, who reads, learns.</i>	P u e l l ā, q u æ l ĕ g i t, d i s c i t.
(b) <i>The boy, whom we see, is handsome.</i>	P u ĕ r, q u æ m v i d ě m ū s, e s t p u l c h ě r.
<i>The girl, whom we see, is handsome.</i>	P u e l l ā, q u æ m v i d ě m ū s, e s t p u l c h r ā.

Rule of Syntax.—The Relative Pronoun must agree with its antecedent in *gender* and *number* (as in (a)), but its *case* is fixed by the construction of the relative sentence (e. g., in (a) *quī* is nomin. to *legit*: in (b) *quæm* is acc., governed by *vidēmus*).

e) <i>I who write.</i>	E g ō, q u ī s c r i b ō.
<i>We who write.</i>	N ō s, q u ī s c r i b i m ū s

Rule of Syntax.—The *verb* in the relative sentence agrees with the relative in *number*, but takes the *person* of the antecedent.

(d) <i>He is poor who has not enough.</i>	(1) Ėgens est is, q u ī n ō n s ā t i s h ā b ě t.
	(2) Ės ėgens est, q u ī n ō n s ā t i s h ā b ě t.
	(3) Q u ī n ō n s ā t i s h ā b ě t, ės ėgens est.
	(4) Q u ī n ō n s ā t i s h ā b ě t, ėgens est.

Rule of Position.—The relative generally stands at the beginning of its sentence, and (1) as near to its antecedent as possible. (2) *Ės* and *quī* are made emphatic when *Ės* begins the principal sentence and *quī* the relative sentence; (3) and still more emphatic when the relative sentence stands first. (4) The antecedent is often omitted entirely.

(168.) *Translate into English.*

(a) Proximī sunt Germānīs, q u ī t r a n s R h ē n ū m i n c ō l u n t. . . Omnē ānīmāl, q u ō d s a n g u i n ě m h ā b ě t, h ā b ě t ė t i ā m c ō r. —Cæsar, trēs l ĕ g i ō n ě s, q u æ i n p r ō v i n c i ā h i ě m ā b a n t, e x h i v e r n i s ė d u c i t. —Omniā (82, I., R.) q u æ p u l c h r ā s u n t, h o n e s t ā s u n t.

(b) Fēlix est rex, q u æ m o m n ě s c i v ě s ā m a n t. —Ėn h ā c i n s ū l ā e s t f o n s ā q u æ d u l c i s, q u ī n ō m ě n e s t A r ė t h ū s ā (125, II., a).

—Ariōvistūs obsidēs reddīt, quōs hābēt āb Æduīs.—Galbæ sunt partēs trēs, quārū ūnām Belgæ incōlunt.

(d) (1) Beātī sunt iī, quōrū vitā virtūtē (abl., 55, a) rēgītūr.—(2) Īs fortīs est, quī injūriām prōpulsāt.—(3) Quī se ostentāt, īs stultūs dīcītūr (*is called a fool*).—(4) Quī famām bōnām contemnīt, virtūtēm contemnīt.—Fortīs et magnānīmūs est, nōn quī fācīt, sēd quī propulsāt injūriām.

(169.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) The songs which we hear are pleasant (grata) to us (106, II., c).—The king who rules wisely is happy.—All animals which have blood have also hearts.—Cæsar leads across the Rhine the five legions which were wintering in the province.

(b) Happy is the teacher whom all (his) scholars love.—In that (eā) island (there) is a city whose name is (*to which the name is**, 125, II., a) Syracuse (Syracūsæ).—In this (hāc) city there is a fountain whose name is Arethusa.—Of Britain (there) are three parts, of which (gen.) the English inhabit one.

(d) (1) Happy is he whose life is ruled by the precepts of virtue.—He is wise who diligently serves (cōlīt) the gods.—(2) They are brave who repel an injury.—(3) They who vaunt themselves are called fools.—(4) Who repels an injury, is brave and magnanimous.

LESSON XXIX.

Interrogative Pronoun.

(170.) THE *Interrogative Pronoun* is precisely like the *Relative* in form, excepting that for the nom., sing., and masc., it has quīs, and for the nom. and acc., neut., quīd; thus, quīs, quæ, quīd.

(171.) Quisnām, quæsnām, quidnām, express a more emphatic interrogation than the simple quis, quæ, quīd, the syllable nam answering to our English "pray;" e. g.,

Pray, what are you doing? | Quidnām agīs?

* Sūt, plural, because Syracūsæ is plural.

(172.) In asking questions, the different cases of *quis* can be used as substantives or as adjectives, excepting that

(1) In the nom. sing. masc., *quis* is used as a substantive
In the nom. sing. masc., *qui* is used as an adjective.

(2) In the nom. and accus., neut., *quid* is used as a substantive.

In the nom. and accus., neut., *quod* is used as an adjective

(1) <i>Who comes?</i>	<i>Quis venit?</i>
<i>What man comes?</i>	<i>Qui hōmō venit?</i>
<i>Who is the man?</i>	<i>Quis homo est?</i>
(2) <i>What do you fear?</i>	<i>Quid tīmēs?</i>
<i>What danger do you fear?</i>	<i>Quōd periculūm tīmēs?</i>

(173.) The answer *yes* is given by repeating the verb which asks the question; *no*, by repeating the verb with *nōn*. *Vērō* (certainly), added to the verb in an affirmative answer, gives it more emphasis; e. g.,

<i>Are you writing?</i>	<i>Scribis-nē?</i>
<i>I am writing.</i>	<i>Scribō.</i>
<i>Are you reading?</i>	<i>Lēgis-nē?</i>
<i>I am not reading.</i>	<i>Nōn lēgō.</i>
<i>Will you do what I ask?</i>	<i>Fāciēs-nē quā* rōgō?</i>
<i>I will certainly do (it).</i>	<i>Fāciām vērō.</i>

EXERCISE.

(174.) Vocabulary.

<i>Novus, novus, ā, ūm.</i>	<i>Between, among, inter (prep., acc.)</i>
<i>Novus, novī (neut. gen. of novus, used with a neut. adj. or pronoun).</i>	<i>Beast, brute, bestiā, æ.</i>
<i>Nūm, interrogative particle, used when no is expected as the answer</i>	<i>An evil, mālūm, ī.</i>
<i>To do, agere.</i>	<i>Without, sine (prep., abl.).</i>
<i>To be among, interessē (inter + esse); but quid interest? = what is the difference?</i>	<i>Figure, figurā, æ.</i>
	<i>Mortal, mortālīs, ē.</i>
	<i>Certainly, vērō (affirmative particle).</i>
	<i>To carry, vehere.</i>
	<i>Immortal, immortalis, † ē.</i>

* *Hæc, quæ*, plural, should be translated *this, what*, singular.

† Observe the force of *in* prefixed to adjectives. *Mortalis* = *mortal*
in + mortalis = *immortalis, immortal*.

(175.) *Examples.*(a) *What is the news?*

Quid est novī? (=What is there of new?)

(b) *Is there anything new?*

Nūm est quidnām novī?

(There is not, is there?)

(Num expects the answer no.)

(c) *Why do you laugh?*

Quid ridēs?

(176.) *Translate into English.*

Quis nōs vocāt?—Cūjūs hīc libēr est?—Quēm vidēs?—Quid agīs.—Quid intērest intēr hōmīnēm ēt bestiām?—Quām dōmūm invēniēs sinē mālīs?—Quid lēgīs?—Ēpistolām.—Quae amīcitiā est intēr imprōbōs?—Nūm Cēsārēm tīmēs?—Nōn tīmeb. —Quā in urbē (125, IV., N., †) sūmūs?—Quis hōmō est?—Ēgō sūm Cēsār.—Nūm ānīmūs figurām hābēt?—Sunt nē hōmīnēs mortālēs?—Sunt vērō.—Quid tīmēs? Cēsārēm vōhīs.

(177.) *Translate into Latin.*

Who calls me?—Whose are those books?—What men do you see?—What are you writing?—A letter.—What book are you reading?—What is the difference between the good and the wicked?—Who is the soldier?—What is the difference between wolves and dogs?—Do you not fear the enemy?—I do not fear (them.)—What man will you find without a fault (culpā)?—In what town are we?—Whose house is this?—What city will you find without evils?—What is the difference between men and beasts?—What do you fear? You are carrying the king.—Are men immortal (nūm)?—They are not.

LESSON XXX.

Indefinite Pronouns.

(178.) THE *Indefinite* Pronouns denote an object in a general way, without reference to a particular individual; e. g., *any one, some one, &c.* They are,

1. Quidām, *a certain one, &c., plural, some.*2. Quivīs, } *any you please.*
Quilibēt }

3. *Quisquā*, *any, any one* (e. g., when it is denied that there are any) [Neut. *quicquā* (*subst.*); *quodquā* (*adj.*). This pronoun is used chiefly in negative sentences.]
4. *Quispiā*, *somebody, some* (neut.).
5. *Āliquis*, *some one, something* (neut.); *any* (adj.).
6. *Quisquē*, *each*, *unusquisquē*, *each one* (stronger than *quisquē*)
7. *Ecquis?* used interrogatively, (does) *any one? anything?*

☞ Observe carefully that each of the above takes *quid* in neuter nom., and acc., when used *substantively*; and *quod* when used *adjectively*.

EXERCISE.

(179.) Vocabulary.

The tenth, *dēcimū*, ā, ūm.

A javelin, *trāgūlū*, ō.

To see, to notice, *conspiciōrē*.

Judgment, discretion, *consiliū*, ī.

Eternity, *eternitās*, (*eternitāt*) īs (f.).

Maker, artificer, *fābēr*, *fābrī* (m.).

Fifth, *quintū*, ā, ūm.

Youth, *jūventū*, (*jūventūt*) īs (f.).

Fortune, *fortūnā*, ō.

Forever, *in eternū*.

Belong, *pertinērē*.

Art, ars, (*art*) īs (f.).

Form, *formā*, ō.

To discover, *invēnirē*.

For, *etēnīm*, conj. (always stands first in its clause).

Cultivation, humanity, *hāmānitās*, ātis (f.).

Common, *commūnis*, īs, ō.

Bond, *vinēlū*, ī.

Dignity, *dignitās*, (*dignitāt*) īs (f.).

Body, *corpūs*, (*corpōr*) īs (n.).

(180.) Examples.

(a) *Something new.*

Each one of us.

A certain thing new.

Some dignity.

Āliquīd nōvī.

Unusquisquē nostrū.

Quiddām nōvī.

Āliquīd dignitātīs.

Rule of Syntax.—The indefinite pronouns may be used *partitively*, and then govern the genitive.

(b) *A certain one of the soldiers.*

Some of the soldiers.

Quiddām (sing.) ex militībūs.

Quiddām (plur.) ex militībūs.

Rem. The ablative with *ex* is used instead of the genitive, especially with *quiddām*.

(181.) Translate into English.

Quidam ex militībūs dēcimae lēgiōnis veniebāt.—*Quintō die* 118, II., c) *trāgūlā ā quōdām militē conspicitūr.*—*Viri*, in quibūs *āliquīd consiliī* (180, a) *est*, *magnānīmī sunt.*—*Tempūs*

est pars quædã æternitãtis.—Cuius (125, II., a) animã corpũ est.—Quilibet est faber fortunæ suæ.—Unicuiquẽ* (125, II., a) nostrũ (180, 120) est animũ immortalis.—Quisquẽ nostrũ (180) in æternũ vivet.—Animũ nõn habet formã aliquã, nec figurã.—Aliquid novĩ invenies.—Etẽnim omnes artes, quæ ad humanitãtẽ pertinent, habent quoddã communẽ vincũlum.

(182.) *Translate into Latin.*

[The pronouns of the lesson are italicized in the exercise.]

Some of the soldiers of the fifth legion are wounded (pres.).—On the fifth day (118, II., c) the enemy is noticed by a *certain* soldier of the tenth legion.—Men, in whom there is *some* dignity (180), are magnanimous.—To *each* man (= of men) there is a soul and a body.—I will give the book to *any-one-you-please* of the scholars. *Each one* of us shall live forever.—You will discover a *certain thing new*.—*Some* of the soldiers are in the city.—For all the arts which belong to cultivation have a *certain* common bond.—Youth is a *certain* part of life.—Is not (estne) *any man-you-please* the maker of his own fortune?—Has the soul (*use num*) *any* form or figure?

LESSON XXXI.

Correlative Pronouns

(183.) CORRELATIVE Pronouns are such as *answer* to each other; e. g., *how great? so great. How many? so many, &c.*

[This correlation is often expressed in English by adverbs or conjunctions: *such a man as: as* is the general, *so* are the troops, &c.]

(184.) The Correlative Pronouns are

Demonstrative.	Relative.	Indefinite.
talis, <i>such.</i>	qualis; <i>as, of what kind.</i>	qualiscunquẽ, <i>of whatever kind.</i>
tantũs, <i>so great, so much.</i>	quantũs, <i>as great.</i>	quantuscunquẽ, <i>however great.</i>
*tõt, <i>so many.</i>	*quõt, <i>as many.</i>	aliquantũs, <i>somewhat great.</i>
*tõtĩdẽm, <i>just so many.</i>		*aliquõt, <i>some.</i>
		*quotquõt, <i>however many.</i>

* Ûnus and quisquẽ are both declined in ãnusquisquẽ Ûnũs has *gen. ãniũs, dat. ãnũ*

Rem. 1. Quālis? of what kind? quantūs? how great? quōt? how many? are also used interrogatively.

2. Those marked thus () are indeclinable; the rest are declined like adjectives.*

EXERCISE.

(185.) Vocabulary.

Where, ubi (adv.).

Toil, ōpĕră, æ.

Pleasure, vōluptās, (vōluptāt) is (f.).

Reward, præmiūm, i.

Gold, aurūm, i.

Money, pecūniā, æ.

Fear, tīmōr, (tīmōr) is (m.).

Or, vĕl (conj.).

Advantages, bonā (neut. adj.).

To afford, præbĕrĕ.

To covet, expĕtĕrĕ. [is (f.).

Liberality, libĕrālītās, (libĕrālītāt;)

(186.) Examples.

(a) *So much toil (= of toil).*

How much pleasure? (= of pleasure?)

No reward (= nothing of reward).

Much gold (= of gold).

Tantūm ōpĕră.

Quantūm vōluptātīs?

Nīhīl præmiī.

Multūm aurī. (But, much money = magnā pecūniā not multūm pecūniæ.)

A pretty large piece of ground.

Aliquantūm āgrī.

Rule of Syntax.—The neuters, tantūm, quantūm, āliquantūm; also, multūm, nīhīl, quīd, āliquīd, and others, are used as *neuter nouns*, and followed by the genitive (Synt., 695, b., R.).

Obs. Tantūm, quantūm in neut, with genitive = *so much, so many, how much, how many*; but in masc. and fem, agreeing with the noun, *so great, how great*; e. g., *how many books?* quantūm librōrūm; *so great fear*, tantūs tīmōr.

(b) *As is the master, so are the scholars.*

Quālis est māgistr, tālēs sunt discipulī; or (with est and sunt omitted), quālis māgistr, tālēs discipulī

(187.) Translate into English.

Quāles sunt dūcēs, tālēs sunt milītēs.—*Fortūnæ bonā* (82 II.), *quantūcūquē sunt, incertā sunt.*—*Tantūs tīmōr omnēm ex ercītūm occupābāt.*—*Ūbī tantām virtūtēm invēniēs?*—*Quantūm vōluptātīs virtūs præbēt!*—*Fratrī est* (125, II., a) *āliquan-*

tūm pēcūniā.—Virtūs nīhīl prēmīi vėl pecūniā expēdit.—Pātēr mīhī nagnām pecūniām dābīt.—Quantūm (186, *Obs.*) librōrūm hābēs?—Quōt homīnēs, tōt sententiāe.

(188.) *Translate into Latin.*

As are the generals, so are the soldiers.—As is the king, so are the leaders.—As are the masters (herī), so are the slaves.—As are the fathers, so are the children.—So great an army is coming.—The advantages of the body, however great they may be (sunt), are uncertain.—Where will you find so great liberality?—How many (186, *Obs.*) rewards does virtue afford?—Good (men) covet no (186, *a*) reward.—Will your father give (135, II.) you much money?—Has your brother much gold?—As are the chiefs, so are the citizens.—My father has (125, II., *a*) a pretty large piece of ground.

NUMERALS. (XXXII.—XXXIII.)

LESSON XXXII.

Numerals.—Partial Table.

(189.) NUMERALS are divided into the four classes following, of which the first three are *adjectives*, the fourth, *adverbs*.

	CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
	One, two, &c.	First, second, &c.	One a piece, one by one, one at a time, &c.	Once, twice, &c.
I	ūnus, ā, ūm.	primus, ā, ūm.	singūli, ae, ā.	sēmēl.
II	duo, ae, ō.	sēcundus, ā, ūm.	binī, ae, ā.	bīs.
III	trēs, ēs, triā.	tertius, ā, ūm.	ternī, ae, ā.	tēr.
IV	quattuor.	quartus, ā, ūm.	quāternī, ae, ā.	quatēr
V	quinqū.	quintus, ā, ūm.	quinī, ae, ā.	quinqūēs.
VI	sēx.	sextus, ā, ūm.	sēni, ae, ā.	sexies.
VII	sēptēm.	septimus, ā, ūm.	septēni, ae, ā.	septies.
VIII	ōctō.	octāvus, ā, ūm.	octōni, ae, ā.	octies.
IX	nōvēm.	nōnus, ā, ūm.	nōvēni, ae, ā.	nōvies.
X	dēcēm.	dēcimus, ā, ūm.	dēni, ae, ā.	dēcies.
XI	undēcīm.	undēcimus, ā, ūm.	undēni, ae, ā.	undēcies.
XII	duōdēcīm.	duōdēcimus, ā, ūm.	duōdēni, ae, ā.	duōdecies.

Rem. For the declension of *ūnus* and *duo*, see 194. *Trēs* is declined like a plural adjective of *second* class, 194. The remaining cardinals are undeclined. The ordinals and distributives are declined like adjectives of the first class.

EXERCISE.

(190.) Vocabulary.

In all, altogether, omninō.

Multitude, multītūdō, (multītūdīn)

īs (f.).

Hour, hōrā, ae.

To be distant, distārē.

Millē, millīā,* (mill) iūm (pl. n.).

Year, annus, l.

Month, mensis, (mens) īs (m.).

Another, altēr, ā, ūm (194, R. 1.).

Thirty-six, sex et trigintā.

To levy, conscribērē.

Night-watch, vigīlīa, ae.

From, after, dē (with abl.).

To strive, to hasten, contendērē.

Italy, Itālīā, ae.

* Millē, plur. millīā = 1000. Millī (passuum, of paces understood) = a mile.

(191.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| (a) <i>They fight four hours.</i> | Hōrās quattuōr pugnant. |
| (b) <i>The city is distant five miles.</i> | Urbs distāt quinquē milliā. |
| (c) <i>A ditch eleven feet wide.</i> | Fossā undēcīm pēdēs lātā. |

Rule of Syntax.—The accusative answers to the questions *how long?* (whether of *time* or *space*), *how broad?* *how high?* &c.; *e. g.*, in (a) *hōrās*; in (b) *milliā*; in (c) *pēdēs*.

- (d) *How long?* may also be expressed by a noun in the genitive, depending on another noun; *e. g.*, *a ditch of ten feet*, fossā dēcēm pēdūm.

(192.) *Translate into English.*

Erant omnīnō itīnērā duō.—Galliæ sunt partēs trēs, quārum unām incolunt Belgæ, altērām Āquitānī.—Ūnūs ē multitudīnē vulnerātūr.—Hōrās sēx pugnābant.—Urbs distāt dēcēm milliā.—In annō duōdēcīm mensēs sunt.—Cæsār duās lēgiōnēs conscribīt.—Cæsār trēs lēgiōnēs quæ in Galliā hiēmābant edūcīt.—Cæsār trēs lēgiōnēs ex hibernis edūcīt.—Sunt omnīnō itīnērā quattuōr.—Cæsār dē quārtā vīgiliā lēgiōnēs edūcīt.—Consul lēgiōnēm dēcimām in castrā rēdūcīt.—Cæsār cūm quinquē lēgiōnībūs in Itālīam contendīt.—Erāt omnīnō in Galliā lēgiō unā.

(193.) *Translate into Latin.*

There are in all three ways.—There are of Gaul three parts, of which the Sequanians inhabit one.—There are of the city five parts.—Four of (= out of) the multitude are wounded.—The soldiers fight seven hours.—In three years are thirty-six months.—The villages are distant nine miles.—The wood is distant four miles.—The consuls will levy six legions.—Cæsar will lead out five legions from Italy.—The general was levying two legions in Gaul.—Cæsar will lead out the soldiers in the second watch.—The consul, in the third watch leads back the soldiers into the camp.—The tenth legion fights (pugnat).—There are altogether in Gaul two legions.—Cæsar brings back the fifth legion.—Cæsar brings back the fifth legion after the second watch.

LESSON XXXIII.

Numerals, continued.(194.) DECLENSION of *unūs*, *duō*, and *trēs*.

	One, Sing.		Two, Plur.		Three, Plur.
N.	<i>unūs, ō, ūm.</i>	N. V.	<i>duō, duae, duō.</i>		<i>trēs, trēs, triā.</i>
G.	<i>unūs, iūs, iūs.</i>	Gen.	<i>duōrum, duarum, duorum.</i>		<i> trium, trium, trium.</i>
D.	<i>uni, i, i.</i>	D. Ab.	<i>duobus, duabus, duobus.</i>		<i>tribus, tribus, tribus.</i>
	<i>the rest regular.</i>	Acc.	<i>duos and duō, duas, duō.</i>		<i>trēs, trēs, triā.</i>

Rem. (1.) Like *unūs* are declined

*Aliūs, ō, ūd, another.**

Altēr, ō, ūm, the one, the other (of two).

Neutēr, trā, trām, neither of the two.

Nullūs, ō, um, no one.

Sōlus, ō, ūm, alone.

Tōtūs, ō, ūm, the whole.

Ullūs, a, ūm, any one.

Ūtēr, trā, trām, which of the two.

Ūterquē, traquē, trumque, each of the two, both; and other compounds of ūtēr.

(2.) Like *duō* is declined *ambō, ō, ō, both.*

EXERCISE.

(195.) Vocabulary.

What one, quōtūs, ō, ūm.

Most, plērusquē, ōquē, īquē; e. g., most men, hōmīnēs plērīquē; most insects, insectā plērāquē.

Virgil, Virgiliūs, i.

More, magis (adv.).

A beam, trabs, (trēb) is (f.).

Insect, insectūm, i.

Horace, Hōratiūs, i.

To migrate, mīgrārē.

Writer, scriptōr, (scriptōr) is (m.).

Mother, mātēr, (matr) is (f.).

[Refer to the column of distributives (189).]

(196.) Examples.

(a) *My father will give us two books apiece.*

Pātēr nobīs bīnōs librōs dābīt.

(b) *What hour is it? The third.*

Quōtā hōrā est? Tertiā.

(c) *He will come for my sake alone.*

Meā unīūs causā (abl.) vēniēt.

(d) *Which pleases you? Neither.*

Ūtēr tūbī plācēt? Neutēr.

(e) *The beams are three feet distant (apart) from each other.*

Trabēs intēr sē distant tērnōs pēdēs (191, c).

* When *aliūs* is repeated, it means *some, others*.

(197.) *Translate into English.*

Mātēr nōbīs quāternōs lībrōs dābīt.—Nōbīs sunt (125, II., a) ternī ēquī.—Binæ omnībūs āvībūs ālæ sunt.—Insectā plērāquē sēnōs, āliā octōnōs, pēdēs hābent.—Quōtā hōrā est? Nōnā.—Milītēs utriusquē exercitūs sunt fortēs.—Tuā ūniūs causā vēnient.—Virgiliūs atquē Horātiūs poētæ sunt præclārī; ūtēr tibi māgis placēt? (161, a.) Virgiliūs.—Bīs in annō milītēs vēniunt.—Septembēr est nōnūs annī mensīs.—Trābēs intēr sē distant bīnōs pēdēs (191, c).

(198.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Some of the words will be found in 194, R. 1.]

We have (125, II., a) four dogs apiece (196, a).—The master gives us five books at a time.—All men have (125, II., a) two eyes apiece.—Most insects have six (senos) feet; some (194*) nine, others (194*) ten, others (194*) twelve.—What o'clock (hour) is it?—The fifth.—The eighth.—The eleventh.—The twelfth.—The generals of each army are brave.—Why do you come? For your sake alone (196, c).—Cicero and Cæsar are excellent writers; which pleases you? Neither.—Which pleases you more? Cæsar.—The birds migrate twice in the year.—The soldiers will come eight times a year.—October is the tenth month of the year; November the eleventh; December the twelfth.—The beams are four feet distant from each other.—The beams are seven feet apart from each other

§ 17.

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN *ið*

LESSON XXXIV.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation in ið.

(199.) SOME verbs of the third conjugation, instead of taking the simple verb-stem for the tense-stem in the tenses for incomplete action, add *i* to the verb-stem in these tenses. They form the infinitive, however, in *ëre*, like other verbs of the third.

(200.) INFIN. ACTIVE, *căp-ërë*, to take.

SINGULAR.			
Present.	<i>căp-i-ð.</i>	<i>căp-is.</i>	<i>căp-ît.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>căp-i-ëbăm.</i>	<i>căp-i-ëbas.</i>	<i>căp-i-ëbat.</i>
Future.	<i>căp-i-ăm.</i>	<i>căp-i-ës.</i>	<i>căp-i-ët.</i>
PLURAL.			
Present.	<i>căp-i-müş.</i>	<i>căp-i-tis.</i>	<i>căp-i-unt.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>căp-i-ëbămüş.</i>	<i>căp-i-ëbatıs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ëbant.</i>
Future.	<i>căp-i-ëmüş.</i>	<i>căp-i-ëtis.</i>	<i>căp-i-ënt.</i>

INFIN. PASSIVE, *căp-i*, to be taken.

SINGULAR.			
Present.	<i>căp-i-ör.</i>	<i>căp-ë-ris.</i>	<i>căp-i-tür.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>căp-i-ëbär.</i>	<i>căp-i-ëbarıs.</i>	<i>căp-i-ëbatür.</i>
Future.	<i>căp-i-är.</i>	<i>căp-i-ëris.</i>	<i>căp-i-ëtür.</i>
PLURAL.			
Present.	<i>căp-i-mür.</i>	<i>căp-i-mini.</i>	<i>căp-i-untür.</i>
Imperfect.	<i>căp-i-ëbämür.</i>	<i>căp-i-ëbäminı.</i>	<i>căp-i-ëbantür.</i>
Future.	<i>căp-i-ëmür.</i>	<i>căp-i-ëmını.</i>	<i>căp-i-ëntür.</i>

EXERCISE.

(201.) *Vocabulary.*

[In all cases, verbs of the class described above will be indicated in the vocabularies by the ending *ið*, after the infinitive form; e. g., *to make*, *făcëre (ið)*.]

Pardon, favour vēniā, m.

Excuse, excūsātiō, (excūsātiō) is
(f.).

To receive, accept, accipere (id).

Way, road, itēr, (itīnēr) is (neut.).

To undertake, suscipere (id).

To make, facere (id).

And, quē.*

Ship, nāvīs, (nāv) is (f.).

To repair, to renew, to rebuild, rēf
cere (id).

Long, longūs, ā, ūm.

Wall, mūrūs, l.

Harbour, portūs, ūs (m.).

(202.) Example.

Willingly Cæsar gives pardon and receives the excuse.

Libentē Cæsār dāt vēniām,
excūsātiōnemquē* accipit

(203.) Translate into English.

Labiēnūs multā Germānōrūm (78, II., b) oppida cāpiēbāt.—
Helvētī pēr prōvinciām nostrām itēr faciunt.—Vulnērā grāviā
ā militibūs accipiuntūr.—Æduī bellū magnū suscipiēbant.
—Libentē Cæsār nuntiōs accipit, iisque (201, N.) vēniām dāt.
—Impērātōr obsidēs civitātis libentē accipiet.—Nuntiū ā
patrē crās accipies.—Crassūs nāvēs longās, quæ in portū sunt,
rēficīt.—Consul mūrōs urbīs rēficīt.

(204.) Translate into Latin.


The enemy were making (their) way through our province.—
The Romans were rapidly (cēlērītēr) making their way through
Gaul.—We shall receive a messenger from the city to-day.—
The Helvetians were undertaking a severe and great war.—
The soldiers receive many and severe wounds.—We shall make
(our) way through Britain.—Cæsar will willingly receive the
excuse of the Æduans, and grant them (iisque) favour.—The
gifts of a father are gladly (libentē) received.—The long ships
are repaired by Cæsar.—The general was rebuilding the old
(vētērēs) ships which were in the harbour.—We shall re-
build the old walls.

(205.) Observe the formation of the following words:

Accipere (to receive), = ad (to) + capere (to take).

Suscipere (to undertake), = sub (under) + capere.

Rēficere (to rebuild), = rē + facere (to make again).

 In the composition of verbs with prepositions, a frequently passes into i as in these examples.

* Et joins words or sentences which are considered independent and of equal importance with each other; quē joins a word or sentence close to another, as an appendage to it.

DEPONENT VERBS.

LESSON XXXV

Deponent Verbs.

(206.) DEPONENT verbs are such as have the *passive* form, but an *active* meaning; e. g., hortör, *I exhort* (not *I am exhorted*).

(207.) The forms of deponents in the tenses for incomplete action of the indicative mood are precisely the same as those of passive verbs (Lessons XII., XIII.); we therefore need only give the *first* persons.

(208.) DEPONENT FORMS.

INDICATIVE.			
1st conj.	hortör, <i>I exhort.</i>	hortäbär, <i>I was exhorting.</i>	hortäbör, <i>I will exhort.</i>
2d conj.	fäteör, <i>I confess.</i>	fätëbär, <i>I was confessing.</i>	fätëbör, <i>I will confess.</i>
3d conj.	sëquör, <i>I follow.</i>	sëquëbär, <i>I was following.</i>	sëquär, <i>I will follow.</i>
4th conj.	mëtiör, <i>I measure.</i>	mëtiëbär, <i>I was measuring.</i>	mëtiär, <i>I will measure.</i>
INFINITIVE.			
	1. hort-äri, to exhort.	2. fät-ëri, to confess.	3. sëqu-i, to follow.
			4. mëti-iri, to measure.

[2] In the vocabularies deponent verbs are always given by the *infinitive* forms. Observe that the ending -äri shows that the verb is of the 1st conj.; -ëri, the 2d; -i, the 3d; -iri, the 4th.]

EXERCISE.

(209.) Vocabulary.

[Transitive deponents govern the accusative, unless it is otherwise mentioned in the vocabularies.]

To embrace, amplect-i.

To gain, to possess one's self of, pöt-iri (with gen. or abl.; generally gen. in Cæs.).

To endeavour, cön-äri.

To follow, sëqu-i.

As, as if, tanquam (adv.).

To strive after, pursue, persëqu-i (për + sëqui, to follow through).

Glory, glöriä, æ.

All, tötüs, ä, üm (194, R., 1).

Bravery, virtue, virtüs, (virtät) is (f.).

Long, diä (adv.).

Sin, fault, peccätüm, l.

(210.) *Example.*

The Helvetians endeavour to pass (= to make way) through our province. | *Helvëtiī pār prōvinciām nos-
trām itēr fācērē cōnantūr.*

Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive is used in Latin (as in English) to complete the imperfect ideas expressed by certain verbs; *e. g., I wish, I can, I hasten, I endeavour, &c.,* as *fācērē* in the above example.*

(211.) *Translate into English.*

Pāter filiū et filiā amplectitur.—*Impērātōr milītēs dū hortābātūr.*—*Dumnōrix totius (194, R. 1) Galliæ potitur.*—*Peccatā meā fātēbōr.*—*Principēs totius Galliæ potiri cōnābantūr.*—*Rōmānī per Britanniā itēr fācērē cōnantūr.*—*Glōriā virtutēm tanquām umbrā sēquūtūr.*—*Magnōs hōmīnēs virtutē (55) mētīmūr, nōn fortunā.*—*Milītēs sempēr glōriām persēquantūr.*—*Milītēs dūcēm libentēr sēquēbantūr.*

(212.) *Translate into Latin.*

The father will embrace (his) sons and daughters.—The chiefs possess themselves of all the province.—Do you *confess* (135, II.) your fault?—The Helvetians were endeavouring to pass through Gaul.—Glory will follow bravery as a shadow.—We were exhorting the soldiers yesterday.—We shall gladly follow Cæsar.—They are rapidly making their way through our province.—You measure men by (their) fortune, not by (their) bravery.—The chiefs will endeavour to lead the army across the Rhine (113, II., a).—Generals always strive after glory.—Are you *exhorting* (135, II.) your son?—The Romans always followed glory.

* Observe carefully that a *purpose* is never expressed by the simple infinitive in Latin. It would not be Latin to say *discērē vēnīt, he comes to learn.*

§ 19.

ADVERBS.

LESSON XXXVI.

Adverbs.

[THIS section need not be learned by heart in the first course but the distinction of *primitive* and *derivative* should be acquired; and the section should be afterward referred to whenever examples occur.]

(213.) *Adverbs* (17) are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*.

[We give but a few here; a fuller list will be given hereafter.—See *Summary of Etymology*, 680.]

(214.) *Primitive Adverbs*:

1. *Negative*.—Nōn, *not*; haud, *not*; ne (interrog. or imper.), *not*; nē quidēm (always separated by some word), *not even*.
2. *Of Place*.—Ūbl, *where*; ibl, *there*; quō? *whither?* hūc, *hither*, illūc, *thither*; undē, *whence*; indē, *thence*, &c.
3. *Of Time*.—Nunc, *now*; tum or tunc, *then*; nūpēr, *lately*; crās, *to-morrow*; hōdiē, *to-day*; hērī, *yesterday*, &c.
4. *Of Quality*, &c.—Admōdūm, *very*; ān, *whether*; cār, *why* (in terrog.); ētiām, *also*; fērē, *almost*, &c.

(215.) *Derivative Adverbs* are nearly all formed from adjectives or participles by adding ē or itēr to their stems.

1. Add ē to the stem of adjectives of the *first class*; e. g.,

Adjectives.	Adverbs.
Alt-ūs, <i>high</i> .	Alt-ē, <i>high</i> .
Libēr, <i>free</i> .	Libēr-ē, <i>freely</i> .
Clār-ūs, <i>illustrious</i> .	Clār-ē, <i>illustriously</i> .
&c.	&c.

Rem. Bōpūs makes bēnē, *well*, and mālūs (*bad*), mālē, *badly*. All others end in ē (*long*).

2. (a) Add itēr to the stem of adjectives of the *second and third class*es; e. g.,

Adjectives.	Adverbs.
Cēlēr, <i>swift</i> .	Celer-itēr, <i>swiftly</i> .
Brēv-is, <i>brief</i> .	Brev-itēr, <i>briefly</i> .

- (b) But those which end in ns do not take the connecting vowel i
e. g.,

Prudens, *prudent*.
Sapiens, *wise*.

Pruden-tër, *prudently*.
Sapien-tër, *wisely*.

Rem. Audax, *bold*, makes audac-tër, *boldly*.

3. Some are derived from *nouns* by adding tûs or tîm to the stem by means of a connecting vowel, e. g., cœl-îtûs, *from heaven*; fund-îtûs, *from the ground, totally*; græg-a-tîm, *by flocks, &c.*

(216.) Cases of adjectives, especially in the *neuter* gender, are often used as adverbs; e. g., dulcë, *sweetly*; primûm, *first*; falsô, *falsely, &c.*

EXERCISE.

(217.) Vocabulary.

Well, bënë, derived irregularly from bônûs, *good*.

Bravely, fortîtër, derived regularly (215, 2, a) from fortis, *brave*.

Sharply, spiritedly, acritër, derived regularly from acër (acr-is), *sharp*.

Swiftly, celeritër, derived regularly from cëlër, *swift*.

Happily, beatë, derived regularly (215, 1) from beatûs, *happy*.

Honestly, honestë, derived regularly from honestûs, *honest*.

Almost, fërë.

Rightly, rectë, derived regularly from rectûs, *right*.

Impiously, impië, derived regularly from impiûs, *impious*.

In flocks, grægâtîm.

To labour, labôrärë.

To blame, to accuse, find fault with, incūsärë.

Socrates, Söcrätës, (Söcrät) is.

Not even, nêquidë (always separated by one or more words).

(218.) Examples.

(a) To live honestly and rightly is to live well and happily. | Hönestë et rectë vivërë est bënë et beatë vivërë.

Rule of Position.—The adverb is generally placed before the word which it qualifies.

(b) Almost all men love themselves. | Omnës fërë hōmīnēs sēsë dīŋ gunt.

Fërë is generally placed between the adjective and noun.

(c) He does not prize even Socrates. | Nē Söcrätëm quīdë m laudät Socrates.

(219.) Translate into English.

Hostës nobiscûm (125, II., b) acritër pugnābant.—Ēquī in agris celeritër currēbant.—Bënë vivërë est beatë vivërë.—Cervi grægâtîm sempër currunt.—Sempër sapiens rectë vivit.—Diū

et acriter militēs pugnābant.—Omnēs fere hominēs impiē vivunt.—Omnēs fere āvēs bis in annō migrant.—Nē Cicēronēm quidēm laudābit.—Nē hōc quidēm (not even with this) delectābitur.

(220.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Æduans were fighting long and bravely.—Cæsar sharply accuses the Helvetians.—Horses and stags run swiftly.—The farmers were labouring long in the fields.—Almost all men love their (own) children.—Cæsar led almost all the Germans across the Rhine (113, II., a).—I waited for you long.—The bad do not live happily.—To live happily is to live rightly.—You will not be delighted even with this.—Not even this will delight (my) father.—Not even Cæsar will be praised.—Almost all birds fly in flocks.—They do not praise even Virgil.—Almost all wise (men) live happily.—Almost all men strive-after glory.—To live prudently is to live happily.—The commander will blame the lieutenant sharply.

PREPOSITIONS. (XXXVII.—XXXVIII.)

LESSON XXXVII.

Prepositions.

[THIS section (221) need not be learned by heart in the first course, but should be constantly referred to whenever examples occur.]

(221.) The following prepositions govern the *accusative* case :

Ād, <i>to.</i>	Juxta, <i>near to, beside.</i>
Āpud, <i>at.</i>	Ōb, <i>on account of.</i>
Antē, <i>before</i> (of time and place).	Pōnēs, <i>in the power of.</i>
Adversus, adversum, <i>against.</i>	Pēr, <i>through.</i>
Cis, citra, <i>on this side.</i>	Pōnē, <i>behind.</i>
Circa and circum, <i>around, about.</i>	Post, <i>after</i> (both of time and space).
Circitēr, <i>about, towards</i> (indefinitely of time or number).	Prætēr, <i>beside.</i>
Contrā, <i>against.</i>	Prōpē, <i>near.</i>
Erga, <i>towards.</i>	Proptēr, <i>near, on account of.</i>
Extra, <i>beyond, without.</i>	Sēcundum, <i>after, in accordance with.</i>
Infra, <i>beneath, below</i> (the contrary of <i>supra</i>).	Sūpra, <i>above.</i>
Intēr, <i>between, among.</i>	Trans, <i>on the other side.</i>
Intra, <i>within</i> (the contrary of <i>extra</i>).	Versus (is put after its noun), <i>towards a place.</i>
	Ultra, <i>beyond.</i>

(222.) The following govern the *ablative* case :

A, āb, <i>from, by.</i>	Præ, <i>before, owing to.</i>
Clam, <i>without the knowledge of.</i>	Prō, <i>before, for.</i>
Cōram, <i>in the presence of.</i>	Sinē, <i>without.</i>
Cūm, <i>with.</i>	Tēnūs (is put after its noun), <i>as far as, up to.</i>
Dē, <i>down from, concerning.</i>	
Ē, ex (ē before consonants only, ex before both consonants and vowels), <i>out of, from.</i>	

The following lines contain the prepositions governing the *ablative*, and can be readily learned by heart :

Absquē, a, āb, abs, and dē,
Cōram, clam, cūm, ex, and ē,
Tēnūs, sinē, prō, and præ.

(223.) The following govern the *accusative* or *ablative*.

1. In, (a) *with the accus.*, (1) *into, on, to* (to the question *whither?*) (2) *against.* (b) *With the ablative*, in, on (to the question *where?*)
2. Sūb, (a) *with the accus.*, (1) *under* (to the question *whither?*) (2) *about*

or towards (indefinitely of time). (b) *With the ablative*, under (to the question *where?*)

3. *Sūpēr*, (a) *with the accus.*, above, over. (b) *With the ablative*, upon, concerning.

4 *Subtēr*, under, beneath (but little used).

EXERCISE.

(224.) *Vocabulary.*

The Garonne (river), *Gārumnā*, æ.

An Aquitanian, *Āquitānūs*, i.

Aquitania, *Āquitāniā*, æ.

The Leman, or *Geneva* (lake), *Lē-mannūs*, i.

Jura (mountain), *Jūrā*, æ (m. 25, a).

To extend or carry, *por-dūcērē* (pēr + dūcērē).

State, *civitas*, (civitat) is (f).

Royal power (kingdom), *regnū*, i.

History, *histōriā*, æ.

Fable, *fabulā*, æ.

To bound (limit), *contīnērē* (con + tēnērē).

Part or side, *pars*, (part) is (f).

On one side, *unā ex partē*.

The Rhone (river), *Rhōdānūs*, i.

To divide, *dividērē*.

Lake, *lēcūs*, ūs (m.), (112, R. 1)

To remain, *mānērē*.

(225.) *Examples.*

(a) *The river Garonne separates the Gauls from the Aquitanians.*

Gallōs āb Āquitānīs Gārum-nā flūmēn dividit.

Rule of Syntax.—Two nouns expressing the same person or thing take the same case, and are said to be in *apposition* with each other; e. g., in the above example, *Gārumnā flūmēn*.

(b) *Cæsar hastens into Gaul.*

Cæsār in Galliām contendit.

(c) *There was altogether in Gaul one legion.*

Ērāt omnīnō in Galliā lēgiō unā.

(226.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsār ā lēcū ād montēm, mūrūm perdūcīt.—*Āpūd* Hērōdō-tūm, pātrēm histōriæ, sunt multæ fabulæ.*—*Cæsār ā lēcū Lē-mannō ād montēm Jūrām, mūrūm perdūcīt.*—*Mercātōr in urbē mānēt.*—*Puērī in dōmō sunt.*—*Princeps regnū in civitatē oc-cūpāt.*—*Consul exercitū in finēs Sēquānōrū dūcīt.*—*Hel-vētīi contīnentūr unā ex partē* (125, IV., N.†) *flūmīnē Rhēnō; altērā ex partē montē Jūrā, tertiā ex partē lēcū Lēmannō ēt flūmīnē Rhōdānō.*

* *Apud* is used with the names of authors (instead of *in*, with the name of their works), e. g., *āpūd Cicerōnēm lēgimēs, we read in Cicero*

(227.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar was extending walls and ditches (fossasque) from the river to the camp.—The soldiers remain in the camp.—Cæsar will seize the royal power in the state.—The river Rhine separates the Gauls from the Germans.—Cæsar hastens into Italy and levies (conscribĕrĕ) five legions.—The deserters remain in the town.—The general will lead the soldiers into Italy.—Aquitania is bounded on one side by the river Garonne; on another side by mountains; on the third side by the river Rhone.—You will find (invenies) many fine (præclārā) precepts in (apud) Cicero.—You will find many fables in Herodotus, the father of history.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Prepositions in Composition.

(228.) Most of the prepositions given in Lesson XXXVII. are used *as prefixes* in composition with verbs, and modify their signification; e. g., pōnĕrĕ, *to place*; post-pōnĕrĕ, *to place after*.

(229.) The following prepositions are never used alone, but always as *prefixes* in composition:

1. Amb, *round, about* (from ambo, both); ambĭrĕ (from amb+ĭrĕ, *to go round*), *to walk round, to canvass for votes*.
2. Con, *together* (a variation of cum, with); con-jungĕrĕ (con+jungĕrĕ), *to join together, to unite*.
3. Di or dis, *asunder* (a variation of dĕ, from); dis-cĕdĕrĕ (dis+cĕdĕrĕ, *to give place asunder*), *to depart*.
In, with adjectives, means *not*; in-doctĭs, *unlearned*; with verbs, means *in, into*; e. g., ir-rumpĕrĕ (in+rumpĕrĕ), *to burst into*.
4. Re, *back, again*; rĕ-ficĕrĕ (rĕ+fĕcĕrĕ, *to make again*), *to refit*.
5. Sĕ, *aside, sĕ-dŭcĕrĕ (sĕ+dŭcĕrĕ, to lead astray), to reduce*.

EXERCISE.

(230.) *Vocabulary.**Again* (adv.), rursus.*To join together*, conjungere.*To burst ino*, irrumpere.*To burst into the camp*, in castrā irrumpere.*Mediterranean*, Mēditerrāneus, ā, ūm.*To separate*, sēpārāre (sē+pārāre).*Cohort*, cōhors, (cōhort) is (f)*To station*, collōcāre (con+lōcāre).*To distribute*, distribuere (dis+trābuere).*Africa*, Africā, æ.*Europe*, Europā, æ.*Horseman*, equēs, (equit) is (m.)(231.) *Translate into English.*

Consul rursus lēgiōnēs in hibernā rēducit.—Lēgātūs quinquē cōhortēs cū exercitū conjungit.—Militēs omnēs in oppidū irrumpunt.—Mārē Mēditerrāneū Africā ab Europā sēparāt.—Belgæ sē cū Germānīs conjungebant.—Impērātōr exercitū in hibernīs collōcāt.—Germānī equitēs in castrā (223, 1, a) irrumpere cōnantūr.—Galbā exercitū in hibernīs collōcāt, lēgiōnēsq̄ in civitatēs distribuit.

(232.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar will lead the cohorts back again into winter-quarters.—All the Germans were bursting into the camp.—The Belgians will unite themselves with Cæsar.—The brave soldiers were trying to burst into the town.—The illustrious general was stationing the soldiers in winter-quarters.—The legions are distributed among (in, with accus.) the states.—The legions are led back into winter-quarters.—The Mediterranean Sea separates Spain (Hispaniā) from Africa.—Cæsar will join all the horsemen with the army.

§ 21.

ANALYSIS OF TENSE-FORMATIONS. (XXXIX —XLI.)

LESSON XXXIX.

Active Voice.

(233.) (a) THE student must have observed that in *all* the tenses for incomplete action in the active voice the *person-endings* are as follows :

Sing.	1st person, <i>o</i> or <i>m</i> .	2d person, <i>s</i> .	3d person, <i>t</i> .
Plur.	1st person, <i>mūs</i> .	2d person, <i>tīs</i> .	3d person, <i>nt</i> .

(b) He must have observed, also, that these endings are added to the proper *tense-stem* in each tense. We take up the tenses in order.

(234.) PRESENT TENSE.

(a) *Person-endings*, *o*, *s*, *t*, *mūs*, *tīs*, *nt*.

(b) The *Tense-stem* is the simple verb-stem.

(c) To connect the person-endings with the *tense-stems*, certain *connecting vowels* are used. In the present tense these are, for

(1.) First conjugation, *a* ; e. g., *ām-a-t*.

(2.) Second “ *e* ; e. g., *mōn-e-t*.

(3.) Third “ *i* ; e. g., *rĕg-i-t*.

(4.) Fourth “ *i* ; e. g., *aud-i-t*.*

Rem. 1. Observe that in the 1st person of the 1st and 3d conjugations the connecting vowel does not appear ; *a m-o*, *reg-o* (not *am-a-o*, *reg-i-o*).

Rem. 2. In the 3d person plural, the third conjugation uses *u* instead of *i* ; e. g., *reg-u-nt* ; the fourth inserts *u* ; e. g., *aud-i-unt*.

* *Ama*, *mone*, *audi*, are the proper *crude forms* of these verbs respectively. They are classed together, in a philosophical treatment of the language, as *one* conjugation of *pure verbs* ; while those of the *third* conjugation form the conjugation of *consonant verbs*.

(235.)

TABLE.

	Tense-Stem.	Connect. Vowel.	Person-Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.			
				1.	2.	3.	4.
1.	ām-	a.	o.	āmo (ama-o).	mōnē-o.	rēg-o.	audi-o.
2.	mōn-	e.	s.	āmā-s.	monē-s.	rēg-is.	audi-s.
3.	reg-	i.	t.	āmā-t.	monē-t.	rēg-i-t.	audi-t.
4.	and-	i(u).	mus.	āmā-mus.	mōnē-mūs.	rēg-i-mūs.	audi-mūs.
			tis.	āmā-tis.	mōnē-tis.	rēg-i-tis.	audi-tis.
			nt.	āmā-nt.	mōnē-nt.	rēg-u-nt.	audi-u-nt.

Rem. Observe that the vowels are long before the person-endings in 1st, 2d, and 4th conjugations, except where they come before *o* or *t*. In those before *o*, the general rule (24, 1) prevails; and it is also an invariable rule, in Latin, that no vowel in a final syllable can be long before *t*.

(236.)

EXERCISE.

[The pupil should hereafter analyze the tense-forms, as they occur, somewhat as follows:]

Āmās: verb-stem, am-; pres. tense-stem, ām-; connecting vowel, a; 2d pers. ending, s.

Mōnēmūs: verb-stem, mon-; pres. tense-stem, mōn-; connecting vowel, e; 1st plur. ending, mūs.

Rēgītīs: verb-stem, rēg-; pres. tense-stem, rēg-; connecting vowel, i; 2d plur. ending, tīs.

Audiunt: verb-stem, aud-; pres. tense-stem, aud-; connecting vowels, i and u; 3d plur. ending, nt.

In like manner, analyze

Festīnās,	hābēt,	vidētīs,	convōcō,	festīnātīs.
Vīgilāmūs,	prōhibent,	lēgīt,	hābētīs,	pugnāt,
Vōcātīs,	poscīmūs,	dormimūs,	mūniunt,	laudant,
Rēvōcānt,	vēniunt,	audītīs,	ambulāmūs,	vulnerāmūs.

LESSON XL.

*Analysis of Tense-Formations, continued.**Active.*

(237.)

IMPERFECT TENSE.

(a) *Person-endings*, m, s, t, mūs, tīs, nt.

(b) *The tense-stem,*

(1.) In 1st conj. adds āb to the verb-stem; e. g., ām-āb.

(2.) In 2d conj. " āb " e. g., mōn-āb.

(3.) In 3d conj. " āb " e. g., rēg-āb.

(4.) In 4th conj. " iāb " e. g., aud-iāb.

(c) The *connecting vowel* a is used to join the tense-stems and person-endings; e. g., *āmāb-ā-m*.

	Tense-Stem.	Con. Vow.	Person-Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.			
			m.	1. <i>āmābā-m.</i>	2. <i>mōnēbā-m.</i>	3. <i>rēgēbā-m.</i>	4. <i>audīēbā-m.</i>
1.	<i>ām-āb-</i>		s.	<i>āmābā-s.</i>	<i>mōnēbā-s.</i>	<i>rēgēbā-s.</i>	<i>audīēbā-s.</i>
2.	<i>mōn-ēb-</i>		t.	<i>āmābā-t.</i>	<i>mōnēbā-t.</i>	<i>rēgēbā-t.</i>	<i>audīēbā-t.</i>
3.	<i>rēg-ēb-</i>	a.	mus.	<i>āmābā-mūs.</i>	<i>mōnēbā-mūs.</i>	<i>rēgēbā-mūs.</i>	<i>audīēbā-mūs.</i>
4.	<i>aud-iēb-</i>		tis.	<i>āmābā-tīs.</i>	<i>mōnēbā-tīs.</i>	<i>rēgēbā-tīs.</i>	<i>audīēbā-tīs.</i>
			nt.	<i>āmābā-nt.</i>	<i>mōnēbā-nt.</i>	<i>rēgēbā-nt.</i>	<i>audīēbā-nt.</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

(238.) I. We treat the 1st and 2d conjugations first. In these,

(a) The *person-endings* are, o, s, t, mūs, tīs, nt.

(b) The *tense-stems*, precisely like the *imperf.* in the same conjugations,

(1.) In 1st conj., add āb to the verb-stem; e. g., *ām-āb.*

(2.) In 2d conj., " ēb " e. g., *mōn-ēb.*

(c) The *connecting vowel* i is used to join the tense-stems and person-endings; e. g., *āmāb-ī-t*; *mōnēb-ī-t*. But in the third person plural, u is used instead of i; e. g., *āmāb-u-nt*.

Rem. In the 1st person the connecting vowel is dropped (as in 234, C. 1); thus, *āmāb-o* (not *āmāb-i-o*).

(239.)

TABLE.

	Tense-Stem.	Connecting Vowel.	Person-Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.	
				1.	2.
1.	<i>ām-āb-</i>		o.	<i>āmāb-o.</i>	<i>mōnēb-o.</i>
			s.	<i>āmābī-s.</i>	<i>mōnēbī-s.</i>
			t.	<i>āmābī-t.</i>	<i>mōnēbī-t.</i>
2.	<i>mōn-ēb-</i>	i.	mus.	<i>āmābī-mūs.</i>	<i>mōnēbī-mūs.</i>
			tis.	<i>āmābī-tīs.</i>	<i>mōnēbī-tīs.</i>
		u.	nt.	<i>āmābū-nt.</i>	<i>mōnēbū-nt.</i>

(240.) II. The 3d and 4th conjugations present some irregularity in the future.

(a) The *person-endings* are, m, s, t, mūs, tīs, nt.

(b) The *tense-stem*,

(1) In the 3d conj., is the simple verb-stem; e. g., *rēg.*

(2) In the 4th conj., it adds i to the verb-stem; e. g., *aud-i.*

(c) The connecting vowel *e* is used to join the tense-stem and person-endings; *rĕg-ĕ-mūs*, *aud-ĭ-ĕ-mūs*. But in the *first* person *a* is substituted for *e* in both conjugations; *e. g.*, *rĕg-ā-m*, *aud-ĭ-ā-m*, not *reg-ĕ-m*, *audĭ-ĕ-m*.

(241.)

TABLE.

Tense-Stem.	Con'g. Vowel.	Pers. Endings.	FORMS COMPLETE.	
<i>rĕg-</i>	<i>a.</i>	<i>m.</i>	3. <i>rĕgā-m.</i>	4. <i>audā-m.</i>
		<i>s.</i>	<i>rĕgē-s.</i>	<i>audiē-s.</i>
		<i>t.</i>	<i>rĕgē-t.</i>	<i>audiē-t.</i>
<i>audĭ-</i>	<i>e.</i>	<i>mūs.</i>	<i>rĕgē-mūs.</i>	<i>audiē-mūs.</i>
		<i>tīs.</i>	<i>rĕgē-tīs.</i>	<i>audiē-tīs.</i>
		<i>nt.</i>	<i>rĕgē-nt.</i>	<i>audiē-nt.</i>

(242.) (a)

EXAMPLES.

Āmābātīs: verb-stem, *ām-*; tense-stem, *āmāb-*; imperf. con. vowel, *a*; 2d plur. ending, *-tīs*.

Āmābitīs: verb-stem, *ām-*; tense-stem, *āmāb-*; fut. con. vowel, *ī*; 2d plur. ending, *-tīs*.

Audīēmūs: verb-stem, *aud-*; fut. tense-stem, *audĭ-*; connecting vowel, *e*; 1st plur. ending, *-mūs*.

[The pupil should keep up the habit of finding any tense-form which he may need to use, by putting together its proper parts; *e. g.* stem, ending, &c., rather than by recurring to the paradigms.]

(b) Analyze the following:

<i>Laudābām,</i>	<i>laudābō,</i>	<i>laudābītīs,</i>
<i>Dōcēbāmūs,</i>	<i>munīēbāmūs,</i>	<i>lēgām,</i>
<i>Occīdēbant,</i>	<i>dormīēbātīs,</i>	<i>scribēmūs,</i>
<i>Dormiām,</i>	<i>audiēt,</i>	<i>dōcēbunt,</i>
<i>&c.</i>	<i>&c.</i>	<i>&c.</i>

LESSON XLI.

Analysis of Tense-Formations, continued.

PASSIVE VOICE.

(243.) THE passive-endings are,

Sing. 1st person, *r*; 2d person, *rīs* or *rē*; 3d person, *tār*.Plur. 1st person, *mūr*; 2d person, *mīnī*; 3d person, *ntār*.

(244.) These endings are affixed to the tense-stems formed as in the active voice, and with the same con

necting vowels. Only the following apparent irregularities are to be noticed.

(a) In the 1st pers. pres. indic. the ending *r* is added to the full present active form; *e. g.*, *āmo*, *āmo-r*; *dōceo*, *dōceo-r*. &c.

(b) In the 3d conj., 2d pers. sing., pres., *e* is used for connecting vowel instead of *i*; *e. g.*, *rēg-ē-rīs*, *rēg-ē-rē*, instead of *rēg-ī-rīs*, &c.

(c) In the 1st and 2d conj., future, 2d pers. sing., *e* is used for connecting vowel instead of *i*; *e. g.*, *mōneb-ē-rīs*, *āmāb-ē-rīs*, instead of *āmāb-ī-rīs*, *mōneb-ī-rīs*.

(245).

EXERCISE.

Examples.—*Dōcentūr*: verb-stem, *dōc-*; pres. tense-stem, *dōc-*; connecting vowel, *e*; 3d plur. pass. ending, *-ntūr*.
Āmābāmūr: verb-stem, *am-*; imperf. tense-stem, *āmāb-*; imperf. conn. vowel, *a*; 1st plur. pass. ending, *-mūr*.

Audientūr: verb-stem, *aud-*; fut. tense-stem, *audi-*; fut. conn. vowel, *e*; 3d plur. pass. ending, *-ntūr*.

Rēgōr: verb-stem, *rēg-*; pres. a.t. 1st pers., *rego-*; 1st pers. pass. ending, *-r*.

(246.) Analyze

Rēgēbāmūr,

occidēmūr,

laudentūr,

Dōcēbīmūr,

audiēmīnī,

vidēbīmūr,

Timēbārīs,

dōcēbērīs,

dōcēbuntūr,

Dōcēbāmīnī,

āmātūr,

rēgītūr,

&c.

&c.

&c.

P A R T I I.

FULLER EXHIBITION OF THE FORMS OF WORDS.



§ 1.

ADDITIONAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

LESSON XLII.

[THE student should now learn thoroughly the following rules of quantity, most of which he has seen illustrated frequently already.]

GENERAL RULES.

- (246.) (1) A vowel before another is *short*; *e. g.*, *vī-a*.
(2) A vowel before two consonants, or a double one, is *long by position*; *e. g.*, *bēllum*.

Rem. A mute followed by a *liquid* in the same syllable renders the preceding *short* vowel common in verse; *e. g.*, *volū-cris*. (In *prose*, the short vowel remains short.)

- (3) All diphthongs and contracted syllables are long; *e. g.*, *aū-rūm*, *cō-go* (for *co+ago*).

SPECIAL RULES.

(1.) *Final Syllables.*

1. *Monosyllables.*

(247.) (a) Most monosyllables ending in a *vowel* are *long*; but the particles *quē*, *vē*, *nē*, *ptē*, &c., attached to other words, are *short*.

(b) Most monosyllables ending in a *consonant* are *long*; but the nouns *cōr*, *fēl*, *mēl*, *vīr*, *ōs* (*ossis*); the pronouns *quīs*, *quīd*, *quōt*; and the particles *nēc*, *īn*, *ān*, *ād*, *sēd*, with *all* ending in *m* and *t*, are *short*; also *ēs*, 2d person of *sūm*.

2. *Dissyllables and Polysyllables.*

(A) *Final Vowels.*

(248.) *a* final is *short* in nouns, except the *abl.* of the 1st declension; *long* in verbs, and in indeclinable words, except *ītā*, *quīā*, *ējā*.

(249.) *e* final is *short* in nouns (except 5th declension) and verbs (except imperatives); *long* in adverbs derived from adjectives of the first class, with *fermē*, *ferē*, *ohē*.

(250.) *i* final is *long*; but *mīhī*, *tībī*, *sībī*, *ibī*, *ūbī*, are *common*; *aī*, *quasī*, *short*.

- (251.) *o* final is *common*; but *long* in dat. and abl. cases of nouns and adjs. used as adverbs (e. g., *falsŭ* &c.); *egŏ*, *duŏ*, *ŏctŏ*, are *short*.
 (252.) *u* final is always *long*; e. g., *diŭ*.

(B) *Final Consonants.*

- (253.) All final syllables ending in a consonant (except *s*) are *short*.

Rules for s final.

- (254.) Final *ās*, *ēs*, *ŏs*, are generally *long*; e. g., *amās*, *docēs*, *equŏs*

Rem. 1. *ēs s* *short* (1) in nom. sing. of nouns which have short penult in the gen., e. g., *mīlēs* (*mīlīt-īs*).

2. *ŏs* is *short* in comp *ŏs*, imp *ŏs*.

- (255.) Final *īs* and *ūs* are generally *short*; e. g., *reg-īs*, *domin-ūs*.

Rem. 1. *īs* is *long* (1) in dat. and abl. plural of nouns; (2) in 2d pers. sing. of verbs of 4th conjugation; (3) compounds of *vis*; e. g., *mavis*, *quamvis*, &c.

2. *ūs* is *long* (1) in nouns of 3d decl. which have *ū* long in the penult of gen.; e. g., *virtūs* (*ātīs*), *palūs* (*ūdīs*); (2) in gen. sing., and N., A., V. plur. of 4th declension.

(2.) *Derivation and Composition.*

- (256.) Derivative and compound words generally retain the quantity of the primitive and simple words; e. g., *āmo*, *āmicus*; *pŏno*, *impŏno*.

(3.) *Increase.*

[A noun is said to *increase* when it has more syllables in the gen. than in the nom. (e. g., *mīl-ēs*, *mīl-īt-īs*; here *īt* is the increase); a *verb*, when it has more syllables than the 2d pers. sing. indic. (e. g., *ām-as*, *ām-at-īs*; here *at* is the increase.)]

- (257.) In the increase of *nouns*, *a* and *o* are generally *long*; *e*, *i*, *u*, *y*, *short*.

- (258.) In the increase of *verbs*, *a*, *e*, and *o* are generally *long*; *i*, *u*, *short*.

(4.) *Penults.*

- (259.) Every perfect tense of two syllables has the first *long* (as *vidī*), except *bībī*, *fīdī*, *tūlī*, *dēdī*, *stētī*, and *scīdī*.

- (260.) Penults of adjectives, (1) *īdus*, *īcus*, *short* (2)

In *us*, *doubtful* (often *long*); (3) *ilis* and *bilis*, derived from *verbs*, *short*; from *nouns*, *long*.

[All exceptions to the above rules that are not stated will be marked in the vocabularies.]

(261.)

EXERCISE ON QUANTITIES.

[Give the quantity of the *unmarked* syllables of the following words, with the rule for each.]

1. *Final Vowels.*

Ipsē, *agmīne*, *diē*, *rēgēre*, *rēge*, *dōcēbēre*, *re*, *mōve*, *mōvēre*, *bēne* (adv. from *bōnūs*), *Cēsāre*, *optīme* (adv., from *optīmūs*), *me*, *dōmīni*, *vīgīlia*, *audi*, *adventu*, *ire*, *hi*, *consīlio*, *consūle*, *de*, *tertia*, *vīgīliæ*, *contra*, *rōga*, *mōneo*. *ita*, *fructu*, *āmo*.

2. *Final Consonants.*

Obsēdes, *bōnas*, *vīgīlias*, *āmat*, *mīles* (*mīltis*), *mīlites*, *rōgāvēras*, *has*, *bōnum*, *lampas* (*lampādis*), *pēdes* (*pēditis*), *pēdites*, *illas*, *adventus* (gen.), *rēgis*, *sīmul*, *audis*, *linter*, *auditis*, *vīgīliis*, *cāput*, *virtus* (*virtūtis*), *dōmīnia*, *mānus*, *rēgītur*, *rēgītis*, *mānis*, *mānivēras*.

3. *Increase.*

Āmatis, *militis*, *audiris*, *obsidem*, *mōnemus*, *monebātis*, *īneris*, *rōgabes*, *mōnebamur*, *audimus*, *mōnebimini*, *vōluptatis*, *sermonis*, *murmure*, *pēdites*, *clāmōrem*, *mīlites*, *vulturem*, *āmatis*, *mōnebātis*, *mōnetote*, *audite*, *lēgimas*, *pedem*, *sēgetis* (from *sēges*).

4. *Penults.*

Mālēdicus, *mīrificus*, *bēnēficus*, *fācilis* (from *fācio*), *puērilis* (from *puer*), *inēbibilis* (from *āmo*), *servilis* (from *servus*).

§ 2.

TENSES OF VERBS FOR COMPLETED ACTION.—PARTIAL STATEMENT. (XLIII.—XLVI.)

LESSON XLIII.

Tense Forms for Completed Action.—Indicative.

(262.) IN Part I. we made use only of those tenses of the verb which express action as *continuing* or *incomplete*, viz., the present, imperfect, and future. There are three tenses also for *completed* action, viz., perfect (*I have written*), pluperfect (*I had written*), future perfect (*I shall have written*). The stem for all these is the same.

(263.) The endings for these three tenses are,

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	1st.	2d.	3d.	1st.	2d.	3d.
Perfect.	i.	isti.	it	imūs.	istis.	{ ērant, or ēre.
Pluperf.	ērām.	ērās.	ērāt.	ērāmūs.	ērātis.	ērant
Fut. Perf.	ērō.	ēris.	ērit.	ērīmūs.	ērītis.	ērint.

(264.) By adding these endings to the perfect-stem *fu-* of the verb *essē*, to be, we obtain the forms perfect (*I have been*), pluperfect (*I had been*), future perfect (*I shall have been*).

Tense-Stem.	Perfect.	Pluperfect.	Future Perfect.
Fu-	i.	ērām.	ērō.
	isti.	ērās.	ēris.
	it.	ērāt.	ērit.
	imūs.	ērāmūs.	ērīmūs.
	istis.	ērātis.	ērītis.
	ērant, or ēre.	ērant.	ērint.

(265.) *Double use of the Perfect.*—It must be carefully observed that the Latin perfect has two uses, one answering to the English perfect, and the other to the English imperfect

Thus, *fui* means not only *I have been*, but *I was*. We call the former the perfect *present*; the latter the perfect *aurist*,* which expresses *momentary action in past time*; e. g., *Crassus was chief of the embassy*—*Crassus princeps lēgatiōnis fuit*.

EXERCISE.

(266.) *Vocabulary.*

To be over, to preside over, to command, præsēs (præ+esse, to be before).

To be wanting, de-essē (dē+essē, to be from).

To be in, to be present at, interessē (inter+essē, to be among).

Sick, æger, gra, grum (77, a).

Praise, laus, (laud) is (f).

After, post (prep. acc.).

Before, ante (prep. acc.).

Because, quia (conj., 248).

How long? quamdiū (adv.).

Afterward, postea.

Virtuous, prōbūs, ā, um.

School, schol-a, æ, f.

(267.) *Examples.*

(a) *If we shall have been always virtuous in life, after death also we shall be happy.*

*Sī in vitā sempēr prōbī fuērī-
mūs, etiām post mortēm
beatī ērimūs.*

(b) *The Roman soldiers were present at many battles.*

*Militēs Rōmānī praeliis multis
interfuērunt.*

Rule of Syntax.—The compounds of *essē* with the prepositions *præ, inter, ob, pro, de*, take the *dative case*.

(268.) *Translate into English.*

Thēmistōclēs vir magnūs ēt clārūs fuīt.—*Cūr hērī in scholā nōn fuistī?*—*Quia cūm patre in hortō fuī.*—*Quamdiū in urbē fuistis?*—*Sex diēs (191, c).*—*Antē bellūm in urbē fuerāmūs.*—*Crassūs lēgātūs (225, a) cōpiis Rōmānōrūm præfuērāt.*—*Nunquām deērit tibi laus hominūm, si sempēr prōbūs fueris.*—*Ægernē (135, II., a) fuistī hērī?*—*Antē Cicerōnis atātēm oratōrēs multī ēt clārī fuerant, nec postea dēfuērunt.*—*Cæsār praeliis multis interfuit.*

(269.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Recollect the double use of the perfect (*present* and *aurist*, 265).]

Divitiacus commanded (præfuit) the forces of the Æduans

* The *aurist* use of the perfect is more common in Latin than the *present*.

—If you shall have been always virtuous in life, after death also you shall be happy.—If we are always virtuous, the praise of men shall never be wanting to us.—We were not in school yesterday, because we had been in the garden with (our) father.—*Had you been* (135, II., a) in our garden?—Have you been sick?—How long have you been in the city? Four days (191, c).—The lieutenant had been in the city before the war.—Before the age of Cæsar there had been many and great generals; nor were they wanting afterward.—Cæsar and the Roman soldiers were present at many battles.

LESSON XLIV.

Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action, continued.

(270.) THE tense-stem of the perfect tense is formed in most verbs as follows:

- (1) In 1st conj. by adding *āv* to the verb-stem; e. g., *ām-āv*.
 (2) In 2d conj. “ *ū* “ e. g., *mōn-ū*.
 (4) In 4th conj. “ *iv* “ e. g., *aud-iv*

[The *third* conjugation is treated in the next lesson.]

(271.) By adding the perfect-endings (263) to the tense-stems formed (as in 270), we obtain the following perfect-tense forms of *āmārē*, *to love*; *mōnērē*, *to advise*; *audirē*, *to hear*.*

	PRF. STEMS.	ENDINGS.		
1st conj.	āmāv-	<i>I, thou, he, we, ye, they,</i>		{ <i>have loved.</i> <i>have advised.</i> <i>have heard.</i>
2d conj.	mōnū-	{ <i>i, isti, It, imūs, istis, erunt, or</i>		
4th conj.	audiv-			
		{ <i>ērē,</i>		

* In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, it is obvious that the perfect is made up of the crude-form of the verb and *fui*; e. g., *ama-fui* = *āmāvi*; *monē-fui* = *monui*; *audi-fui* = *audīvi*.

EXERCISE.

(272.) Vocabulary.

<i>Preceptor</i> , præceptōr, (præceptōr) is (m.).	<i>Pleasant</i> , jūcundus, ā, ūm.
<i>Tribune</i> , tribūnus, ī (m.).	<i>All night</i> , p̄r tōtām noctēm.
<i>Sister</i> , sōrōr, (sōrōr) is (f.).	<i>Diligently</i> , dīligentēr (215, 2, b).
<i>Disgrace</i> , ignōmīniā, æ (f.).	<i>From every side</i> , undīquē (adv.).
	<i>To excite</i> , excitāre.

(273.) Examples.

(a) <i>I loved the boy.</i>	Puērūm ā māvi.
(b) <i>From my boyhood I have loved my mother.</i>	Ā puērō (i. e., from a boy) matrēm ā māvi.

[Obs. In (a) the perfect aorist is used; in (b) the perfect present.]

(274.) Translate into English.

Cæsār omnēs undīquē mercātōrēs ad sē (145, a) convōcāvit. —Ā puērō fratrem et sōrōrem āmāvi. —Cūr per tōtām noctem vīgilāvistī? —Quīā pātēr aegēr fuīt. —Mīltēs diū et ācrītēr pugnāvērunt. —Hōs puērōs* magistēr dīligentēr docuit linguām Latīnām.* —Tuā ipsiūs (159) causā (135, II., b) tē sēpē monui. —Tīmōr ignōmīniæ Germānōs ad virtutem excitāvit. —Jūcundūm āviūm (78, II., b) cantūm audīvīmūs. —Dormīvistīnē? —Nōn dormīvi. —Cæsārīs adventūs oppidānos terruīt.

[Inflect all the verbs in this lesson through the perfect tense, and form the perfect according to (270).]

(275.) Translate into Latin.

Cæsar called together all the lieutenants from every side to himself (145, a). —From my boyhood I have loved my preceptors. —The good preceptor taught me* the Greek language. —Cæsar called-together all the lieutenants and tribunes (tribunōs-que, 202, N.) of the soldiers to himself. —The slaves have watched all night. —(Your) father has often advised you for your own sake (135, II., b). —The Gauls took-possession-of Rome. —The love of glory has always excited the Romans to bravery. —We have diligently taught the boys. —Why did you not sleep? Because my mother was sick. —They have heard the pleasant singing of the birds. —We have fortified all the

* Verbs of *teaching* take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.

towers of Gaul.—The coming of Cæsar terrified the Æduans and Helvetians.—I have often walked in Cæsar's garden, on-the-other-side-of the Tiber (trans Tibērīm).

LESSON XLV.

Tenses for Completed Action, continued. — Perfect Tense, Third Conjugation.

(276.) THE perfect tense-stem of most verbs of the third conjugation is formed by adding *s* to the verb-stem; *e. g.*,

		Perfect-stem.
rēg-ērē,	to rule,	rēg-s = rex-
scrib-ērē,	to write,	scrib-s = scrips-
lūd-ērē,	to play,	lūd-s = lus-

(277.) *Rules of Euphony.*

(1) A *c*-sound before *s* forms *x*; d ū c-s = d ū x; r ē g-s = rex.

Rem. *c*, *g*, *h*, *gu*, *qu*, are classed among *k*-sounds. *v* also (generally) before *s* forms *x*; v ī v-s = v ī x.

(2) *b* before *s* is changed into *p*; *e. g.*, scrib-s = scrips-
n ū b-s = n ū ps.

(3) A *t*-sound is (generally) dropped before *s*; l ū d-s = l ū s;
claud-s = claus.

Rem. *t* and *d* are the *t*-sounds.

(278.) By adding the perfect-endings (263) to the stems of r ē g-ērē, scrib-ērē, l ū d-ērē, we obtain the perfect tense-forms (*have ruled, have written, have played*).

PERFECT-STEMS.	ENDINGS.	
(rēg-s =) rex-	<i>I, thou, he, we, ye, they,</i>	{ <i>have ruled.</i> <i>have written.</i> <i>have played.</i>
(scrib-s =) scrips-	{ <i>i, isti, it, imūs, isti, erunt, or</i>	
(lūd-s =) lūs-	{ <i>ērē.</i>	

EXERCISE.

(279.) *Vocabulary.*

Suddenly, sūbitō.

To say, dicērē.

To draw (as a sword), strīgērē.

Sword, glādiūs, i.

Trial, iūdicīum, i.

To lead together, condūcērē.

To divide, dividērē.

Household, fāmiliā, æ.

Orgetorix, Orgētōrix, (Orgētōrix) is

A dependent, cliens, (client) is (c.).

Nature, natūrā, æ.

Stoic, stoicus, i.

(280.) *Examples.*

(a) *Did not Cæsar say these things?*

Nō nō Cæsār hęc dixit?

(Nonnē is used in asking questions when the answer *yes* is expected.)

(b) *Did Cæsar say this (i.e., is it possible that he did)?*

Num Cæsār hęc dixit?

(Num is used when the answer *no* is expected.)

(281.) *Translate into English.*

[Recollect double use of perfect (265).]

Cæsār duās lēgiōnēs conscripsit; trēs ex hibernis ēdūxit.—Prīncipēs Germānōrū omnēs suās cōpiās Rhēnum (113, II., 2) transduxērunt.—Consul glādiū strinxit.—Nonnē (280, a) glādiō strinxistis?—Num impērātōr glādiū strinxit?—Orgētōrix ad iūdicīum omnēm suām fāmiliām et omnēs clientēs conduxit.—Cæsār exercitū in duās partēs divisit.—Nonnē ēpistolām ad patrēm scripsisti?—Stoici divisērunt natūrām hōmīnis in ānimū et corpūs.—Multās littērās hōdiē scripsimūs.

[What is the force of *ē* in *eduxit*? of *con* in *conduxit*? of *trans* in *transduxit*? Describe the formation of the perfect, and the euphonic changes, in all the verbs of this lesson.]

(282.) *Translate into Latin.*

The soldiers *suddenly* drew their swords.—Cæsar levied five legions in Italy.—Cæsar levied six legions in Italy, and led out four from (their) winter-quarters in Gaul.—The Æduans endeavour to *lead* (113, II., a) all their forces *across* the Rhine.—The general divided the army into five parts.—Did Cæsar say these (things) yesterday (280, b)?—*Did* you not write a letter to your brother?—*Have* you written a letter to the king (280, b)?—Orgetorix led-together all his household to the trial

—Orgetorix led-together to the trial all his household and all (his) dependents.—Why have you drawn (your) sword?—Why have you not written to (your) father?—The Æduans levied many soldiers.—We have divided the nature of man into soul and body.

LESSON XLVI.

Tenses for Completed Action, continued.—Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses.

(283.) (a) THE *pluperfect* tense simply adds to the perfect tense-stem the *imperfect* of *esse* (to be); viz., *ērām*, *ērās*, &c.

(b) The *future perfect* simply adds to the perfect tense-stem the *future* of *esse*; viz., *ērō*, *eris*, &c.; but in 3d plural it changes *u* into *i*; viz., *erint*, instead of *erunt*.

(284.) Thus, from *ām-āre*, *mōn-ērē*, *rēg-ērē* *aud-irē*, we have,

PRF. STEM.	PLUPERFECT-ENDING.	
	<i>I, thou, he, we, ye, they,</i>	
1. <i>āmāv-</i>	} <i>ērām, ērās, ērāt, ērāmūs, ērātīs, ērant,</i>	{ <i>had loved.</i> <i>had advised.</i> <i>had ruled.</i> <i>had heard.</i>
2. <i>mōnū-</i>		
3. <i>rex-</i>		
4. <i>audīv-</i>		
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
1. <i>āmāv-</i>	} <i>ērō, eris, erit, ērāmūs, ērītīs, erint,</i>	{ <i>shall have loved.</i> <i>shall have advised.</i> <i>shall have ruled.</i> <i>shall have heard.</i>
2. <i>mōnū-</i>		
3. <i>rex-</i>		
4. <i>audīv-</i>		

EXERCISE.

(285.) *Vocabulary.*

Defiles, angustias, arum (pl.).

To err, errare.

To draw, ducere.

A principle, principium, i.

To attack, oppugnare.

Near, juxta (prep. acc.).

Already, jam (adv.).

To take by storm, expugnare

(286.) *Translate into English.*

(a) *Pluperfect*.—Militēs diū et acritēr pugnāverant.—Pātēr filiū sēpē mōnūerāt.—Duās lēgiōnēs in Italiā conscripserāt.—Helvētī jam pēr angustias cōpiās suas transduxerant.—

Cæsar castellâ Galliæ munivêrât et trës lëgiônës ex hibernis eduxêrât.

(b) Future Perfect.

Rem. The *future perfect* is sometimes used in Latin, when in English we should use the simple perfect or *future*; e. g.,

When I (shall) have written the letter, I shall come to you. | **Quum epistolâm scripsêrô, ad te vëniâm.**

Quum amicûm in hortûm duxêrô, ad te vëniâm.—**Haud errävêrô, si â Platônë principiûm duxêrô.**—**Quum hostës castellâ expugnävêrint, urbem ipsâm (159) oppugnâbunt.**—**Haud errävêris, si â Cicêronë principiâ duxêris.**

(287.) Translate into Latin.

(a) Pluperfect.—The general had drawn his sword.—Near the city the soldiers had fought long and spiritedly.—Cæsar had levied one legion in Italy, and led-out seven from (their) winter-quarters in Gaul.—The Helvetians had already led their forces across the Rhine (113, II., a), through the boundaries of the Sequanians.—I had often advised you for your own sake (135, II., b).

(b) Future Perfect (R., 286, b).—When we have written the letters, we shall come to the city.—We shall not have erred, if we shall have drawn (ducêrê) our principles from Plato.—When Cæsar shall have taken-by-storm the city, he will attack the tower itself (159).

K

§ 3.

NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION.—FULLER TREATMENT. (XLVII.—LVII.)

[THE third declension contains more nouns than all the others together. It also involves greater difficulties; and we therefore give it a full treatment in the following section, which should be carefully studied.]

LESSON XLVII.

(288.) THE *genitive-ending* of the third declension is *is*.

Rem. To find the *stem* of any noun of this declension, strike off *is* from the gen.; e. g., *G., nōminis* (*of a name*), stem, *nōmin*.

(289.) ENDINGS FOR ALL THE CASES.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
N.	—	—	N.	ēs.	ē (īā).
G.	is.	is.	G.	ūm (iūm).	ūm (iūm).
D.	i.	i.	D.	ibūs.	ibūs.
A.	ēm (im).	like Nom.	A.	ēs.	ē (īā).
V.	like Nom.	like Nom.	V.	ēs.	ē (īā).
A.	ē (ī).	ē (ī).	A.	ibūs.	ibūs.

(290.) The *nom.-ending* is not given, because of the many forms in which that case occurs. The most common *nom.-ending* is *s*; but the stem itself is often employed as the *nom.*; and is often, again, changed. We make *six* classes, which must be carefully distinguished, viz.:

(291.) CLASSES.

- I. Nouns which add *s* to the stem in the nominative without any vowel change. (*Feminines*.)
- II. Nouns which insert a connecting vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s*. (*Feminines*.)
- III. Nouns which change the stem-vowel (*i* into *e*) before adding *s*. (*Masculines*.)
- IV. Nouns which add *ē* to the stem. (*Neuters*.)

V. Nouns which present the *unchanged* stem in the nominative without adding s. (*Masculines*, except -al, -ar, -ur, which are *Neuter*.)

VI. Nouns which present the stem *changed* in the nominative without adding s. (*Masculines*, *Feminines*, and *Neuters*.)

(292.) [Before entering upon the paradigms, the student should learn thoroughly the following *rules of euphony*, which prevail generally in Latin nouns and verbs.]

(1) c or g before s unites with it to form x; e. g., leg-s is written lex; arc-s=arx; voc-s=vox, &c.

(2) d or t before s is dropped; e. g., laud-s=laus. quiet-s=quies; parent-s=parens.

(293.) CLASS I.—*The Nominative adds s to the Stem, without any Vowel change. (Feminines.)*

Sing.	City (L).	Citadel (L).	Praise (L).	Race (nation), L.	Quiet (L).
N. and V.	urb-s.	arx (arc-s).	laus (laud-s).	gens(gent-s).	quies.
Gen.	urb-īs.	arc-īs.	laud-īs.	gent-īs.	quies-īs.
Dat.	urb-i.	arc-i.	laud-i.	gent-i.	quies-i.
Acc.	urb-ēm.*	arc-ēm.	laud-ēm.	gent-ēm.	quies-ēm.
Abl.	urb-ē.	arc-ē.	laud-ē.	gent-ē.	quies-ē.
Plur.	Cities.	Citadels.	Praises.	Races (nations).	
N., A., V.	urb-ēs.	arc-ēs.	laud-ēs.	gent-ēs.	quies-ēs.
Gen.	urb-iūm.	arc-iūm.	laud-iūm.	gent-iūm.	quies-iūm.
D. and A.	urb-ībūs.	arc-ībūs.	laud-ībūs.	gent-ībūs.	quies-ībūs.

On this class, observe carefully that,

(294.) As to the *case-endings*, i ū m is the gen. plur. ending of those nouns whose stems end in *two* consonants; e. g., urb-s, urb-īs, urb-iūm; nox, noct-īs, noct-iūm; cōhors, cohort-īs, cōhort-iūm.

(295.) As to *gender*, they are mostly feminine. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which add s to the stem, without changing the stem-vowel, to form the nom., are *feminine*.

[*Rem. Exceptions.* The following are *masculines*:

l. dens (dent-īs), <i>tooth</i> .	*bīdens (bīdent-īs), <i>hoe</i> .
mons (mont-īs), <i>mountain</i> .	*torrens (torrent-īs), <i>torrent</i> .
fons (font-īs), <i>fountain</i> .	*trīdens (trīdent-īs), <i>trident</i> .
pons (pont-īs), <i>bridge</i> .	*ōriens (ōrient-īs), <i>east</i> .
rūdens (rudent-īs), <i>rope</i> .	*occīdens (occident-īs), <i>west</i> .

* These nouns in ens are properly adjectives, with a masc. noun understood; e. g., oriens sol, torrens amnis, &c.

2. *Grex* (grĕg) is, a *flock*; also a few nouns in *ix* and *ax*.
 3. *Pāriēs*, (pāriet) is, *wall*; *pēs* (pĕd-is), *foot*; *lāpis*, (lāpid) is, *stone*,
vās (vād-is), *surety*.]

[The rules of gender should be learned by heart; the lists of exceptions need not be, unless they are very short. All exceptions are marked in the vocabularies; and the lists should be referred to whenever cases occur.]

To Class I. belong the nouns of the following endings, of which the pupil has had frequent examples:

Libertās, *libertāt-is*, *liberty*; *dignitas*, *dignitāt-is*, *dignity*; and, in short, all nouns in *ās*, *ātis*.

Virtūs, *virtūt-is*, *virtue*; and all others in *ūs*, *ūtis*.

Pālūs, *palūd-is*, *swamp*; and others in *ūs*, *ūdīs*.

In the following exercise several of the exceptions will be found.

EXERCISE.

(296.) Vocabulary.

Highest (the top), *summus*, ā, ūm.

Middle, *mēdiūs*, ā, ūm.

To leave, *rēlinquĕrĕ* (perf.-stem, *rēliqu-*).

To secede, *sēcēdĕrĕ* (perf.-stem, *sēc-*).

To take care of, *cūrāre*.

To touch upon, to reach, *attingĕrĕ*.

To seek, to aim at, *pētĕrĕ*.

To cut down, rescindĕrĕ.

Romulus, *Rōmulus*, I.

Hercynian, *Hercynius*, ā, um.

Senate, *sēnātūs*, ūs (m.).

Agrippa, *Agrippā*, s (m.).

Where, *ubīnām*?

The common people, *plebs*, (plĕb) is.

Patricians (of Rome), *patrēs*, (patr) ūm (pl.).

An interreign, *interregnum*, I.

Speedy, *cītūs*, ā, ūm.

[The nouns which occur in the preceding lesson are not named in the vocabulary: the learner will find them, and observe their gender.]

(297.) Examples.

(a) *On the top of the mountain.*

In summō montē.

(b) *On the tops of the trees.*

In summis ārbōribūs.

(c) *In the middle of the city.*

In mediā urbē.

(d) *Where in the world?*

Ubīnām gentiūm?

(298.) Translate into English.

Magnā pars plēbīs urbēm rēliquit, ēt in montēm (295, R. 1) sēcēssit.—Tūm patrēs Agrippām ād plēbēm mīsērunt (401, 3, b) —Hercyniā sylvā finēs multārūm gentiūm attingit.—Cassiūs, lēgātus (225, a), trēs cohortēs in arcēm oppidī duxit.—Ūbī nām gentiūm sūmūs?—Deūs cūrāt gentēs.—Āquīlā in sum

mīs montībūs nīdificant.—Magnūs (78, II., b) āviūm grēx (295, R., 2) summām arcēm pētunt.—Milītes pontēm (295, R., 1) rescindunt.—Lēgēs Rōmānōrum justā fuērunt.—Summūs mons (295, R., 1) ab hostibus tēnētūr.—Cāsār ad utramquē (194, R. 1) partēm pontīs præsīdium rēliquit.—Post Rōmāli mortēm unīūs (194) annī interregnūm fuit.—Sāpientēs mortem nōn timent.—Mors citā vēniēt.

[All the nouns should be declined, the rule of gender given, and the exceptions referred to if necessary. The formations of the verbs should be carefully analyzed.]

(299.) *Translate into Latin.*

The laws were just.—The fountain was beautiful.—The Hercynian forest touches the boundaries of five nations.—The common-people left the city, and seceded to the mountain.—The doves built-their-nest in the top of the citadel (297, a).—A large flock of birds flew over the city.—The soldiers fought long on the middle of the bridge (297, c).—Then the senate sent an ambassador to the common-people.—God takes care of cities and nations.—The Belgians inhabit one part of Gaul, the Aquitanians another.—Where in the world (297, d) are we? in what city do we live?—Cæsar fortified each part of the bridge.

LESSON XLVIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(300.) CLASS II.—*The Nominative inserts a Connecting-vowel (ē or ī) before adding s to the Stem. (Feminines.)*

	e inserted.	i inserted.
Singular.	Cloud (f.).	Ship (f.).
N. and V.	nūb-ē-s.	nāv-ī-s.
Gen.	nūb-īs.	nāv-īs.
Dat.	nūb-ī.	nāv-ī.
Acc.	nūb-ēm.	nāv-ēm or īm.
Abl.	nūb-ē.	nāv-ē or ī.
Plural.	Clouds.	Ships.
N. A. V.	nūb-ēs.	nāv-ēs.
Gen.	nūb-iūm.	nāv-iūm.
D. and Abl.	nūb-ībūs.	nāv-ībūs.

On this class, observe carefully,

(301.) As to the *case-endings*: [(1) The acc.-ending *īm* instead of *ēm* is used: 1. *sometimes* (but rarely) in the words *clavis*, *key*; *messis*, *harvest*; *nāvis*, *ship*: 2. *commonly* in *febris*, *fever*; *pelvis*, *basin*; *puppis*, *stern*; *restis*, *rope*; *sēcūris*, *axe*; *turris*, *tower*: 3. *always* in *amussis*, *a rule*; *sītis*, *thirst*; *tussis*, *cough*; *vis*, *force*.]

[(2) The abl.-ending *ī* instead of *ē* is used (not, however, to the exclusion of *e*) in all those words which take *īm* in the acc.; *e. g.*, *turris*, *turrim*, *turri*: *vis*, *vim*, *vī* (always). Also in *ignis*, *fire*; *civis*, *citizen*.]

(3) The gen. plur. ending *iūm* instead of *ūm* is used in most nouns which insert *e* or *i* before adding *s* to the stem. [*Prolēs*, *canis*, *panis*, *vatēs*, *juvēnis* have *ūm*.]

(302.) *Rule of Gender*.—Nouns which insert a vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s* in the nominative are *feminines*.

[*Rem. Exceptions*:

<i>Amnis</i> (m.), <i>river</i> .	<i>Ens</i> (m.), <i>sword</i> .	<i>orbis</i> (m.), <i>circle</i> .
<i>Annalis</i> (m.), <i>chronicle</i> .	<i>fascis</i> (m.), <i>bundle</i> .	<i>panis</i> (m.), <i>bread</i> .
<i>Axis</i> (m.), <i>axle</i> .	<i>follis</i> (m.), <i>bellows</i> .	<i>piscis</i> (m.), <i>fish</i> .
<i>Callis</i> (m.), <i>path</i> .	<i>fānis</i> (m.), <i>rope</i> .	<i>postis</i> (m.), <i>post</i> .
<i>Cānalis</i> (m.), <i>canal</i> .	<i>fustis</i> (m.), <i>club</i> .	<i>sentis</i> (m.), <i>bramble</i> .
<i>Caulis</i> (m.), <i>stem of a</i>	<i>ignis</i> (m.), <i>fire</i> .	<i>unguis</i> (m.), <i>finger nail</i> .
<i>Collis</i> (m.), <i>hill</i> . [<i>plant</i> .	<i>mensis</i> (m.) <i>month</i> .	<i>vectis</i> (m.), <i>lever</i> .
<i>Crinis</i> (m.), <i>hair</i> .		<i>vermis</i> (m.), <i>worm</i> .]

EXERCISE.

[In the vocabularies, the Roman numerals I., II., &c., placed after nouns, refer to the *class* to which they belong.]

(303.) Vocabulary.

To dread, *formidārē*.
Pilot, *gubernatōr*, *is* (m.).
To bring, *agērē* (perf.-stem, *ēg-*).
To procure, *compārāre*.
A Carthaginian, *Carthāginiensis*, *is*.
To raise, to kindle, *excitārē*.
Power, *pōtestās*, (*pōtestāt*) *is* (f, I.).
Barbarian, *barbārūs*, *I*.
Vehemently, greatly, *vēhementēr*
 (215, 2, *b*).
To build, *edificāre*.

A fleet, *classis*, *is* (f, II.).
And, *ac*.
Twenty, *vīgintī* (indecl.).
Lofty, *altūs*, *ā*, *ūm*.
Thirteen, *trēdecīm* (indecl.).
The Druids, *Druides*, *ūm* (m, pl.).
Thirst, *sītis*, (*sīt*) *is* (f, II.).
To relieve, *lōvārē*.
To dispute, *dispūtārē*.
To terrify, *terrērē* (perfect-stem *terr-*).

(304.) Translate into English.

Nūbēs *sapē* *lūnām* *obscurant*.—*Civēs* *classēm* *hostiūm* *for*

midant.—Cæsār nāvēs longas ædificāvit, ēt nautās gūbernātō-
rēsque (202, N.) compārāvit.—Crassūs ād oppidūm turrēs
altās ægit.—Vētērēs Romānī vim Carthāgīniensium non formi-
dāverunt.—Cæsār turrēs trēdēcīm excitāvit.—Militēs ignēs
magnōs in summō montē (297, a) excitāverunt.—Druides dē
deōrūm immortalīūm vī āc potestātē dispūtant.—Classīs adven-
tūs cīvēs terruit.—Āquā sitīm (301, 1) lēvāt.—Nōvā nāviūm
figūrā vēhēmentēr (215, 2, b) barbārōs terruit.

(305.) *Translate into Latin.*

Lofty towers are raised by Cæsar.—The general prepared
twenty long ships.—The lieutenant brought the towers to the
wall of the city.—The power of the Romans terrified the Gauls.
—Wine does not relieve thirst.—The sun is often obscured
by the clouds.—The approach of the fleet and the soldiers ter-
rified the citizens.—A great fire is kindled on the top of the
mountain by the Æduans.—The general stationed the ships
near the wall of the city.—The clouds are black.—The coming
of our fleet and the strange (nōva) figure of the ships terrified
all the barbarians.

LESSON XLIX.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(306.) CLASS III.—*The Nominative changes the
Stem-vowel (ī into ē) before adding s to the Stem.*

Vowel i changed into e.		
Singular.	Soldier (m.).	Book (m.).
N. and V.	mīlēs (milet-s).	cōdex (codecs).
Gen.	milit-īs.	cōdic-īs.
Dat.	milit-ī.	cōdic-ī.
Acc.	milit-ēm.	cōdic-ēm.
Abl.	milit-ē.	cōdic-ē.
Plural.	Soldiers.	Books.
N. A. V.	milit-ēs.	cōdic-ēs.
Gen.	milit-ūm.	cōdic-ūm.
D. and A.	milit-ībūs.	cōdic-ībūs.

On this class, observe that,

(307.) As to the *case-endings*, they are all regular

(308.) As to *gender*, they are *masculine*. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which change the stem-vowel *i* into *ē* before adding *s* in the nominative are *masculine*.

Exc. *Mergēs* (f.), (*mergītis*), *a sheaf*.

EXERCISE.

(309.) Vocabulary.

To double, dūplicārē.

Brutus, Brūtūs, i.

Sharp, spirited, ācēr, ācris, ācrē
(105, R. 1).

Defender, vindex, (vindic) is (m.,
III.).

Liberty, libertas, (libertāt) is (f., I.).

Foot-soldier, footman, pēdēs, (pēdit)
is (m., III.).

Embark upon, conscendērē, con-
scandere (perf-stem, conscend),
(for upon, in with the accusative).

To depart, discēdērē.

I began, cōpi. Perfect, *defective*.

To sustain, sustinērē (sub and tē-
nērē), perf-stem, sustinu.

At his own expense, sumptū suō
(abl.).

Expense, sumptūs, ūs.

To support, ālērē (perf-stem, alu)

Greatness, magnitūdē, (magnitūdīn)
is (f.).

A Briton, Brītanūs, i.

Guest, hospēs, (hospit) is (m. and f.,
25, a).

To injure, to maltreat, violārē.

Companion, cōmēs, (cōmīt) is (m.
and f., 25, a).

Narrow, angustūs, ā, ūm.

Place, lōcūs, i (nom. pl., lōcī and
lōcā).

Conspiracy, conjuratio (nīs) (f.)

(310.) Translate into English.

Cæsār nūmērūm obsidūm dūplicābit.—Brūtūs ērāt ācēr
libertātis vindex.—Ēquītēs ēt pēdītēs īn nāvēs con-
scendērunt.—Dumnōrix cūm ēquītībūs discēdērē cōpīt.—
Dumnōrix magnūm nūmērūm equitū suō sumptū ālūt.—
Militēs omnēs magnitūdīnēm sylvārūm tīmuērunt.—Brī-
tannī antiquī hospitēs nunquām violāvērunt.—Cōmītēs
principīs angustō īn lōcō ēquitū nostrōrūm vīm diū
sustīnuērunt.

(311.) Translate into Latin.

The chiefs began to go away with all the horsemen.—The
horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers did not sustain the attack (vim) of
the enemy.—The general supported the soldiers at his own
expense.—The companions of Dumnorix sustained bravely the
attack of our footmen.—The Germans maltreated the ambas-
sadors.—The companions of the lieutenant are embarking-upon
the ships.—The greatness of the woods terrifies the horsemen
and the footmen.—Dumnorix always maltreats (his) guests.—
The messenger began to depart with all the guests.—Brutus,

the defender of liberty, made (fēcīt) a conspiracy.—The townsmen for a long time supported a large number of footmen at their own expense.—The chiefs doubled the number of horsemen.

LESSON L.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(312.) CLASS IV.—*The Nominative adds ě to the Stem.*

	Sea (n.).	Sea.	Net (n.).	Net.
N., A., V.	mār-ĕ.	mār-ĭā.	rēt-ĕ.	rēt-ĭā.
Gen.	mār-ĭa.	mār-iŭm.	rēt-ĭs.	rēt-iŭm.
Dat., Abl.	mār-i.	mār-ibŭs.	rēt-i.	rēt-ibus.

On this class, observe that,

(313.) As to the *case-endings*, the abl. is always *i*, the nom. plur. *ĭā*, and the gen. plur. *iŭm*.

(314.) As to *gender*, they are all *neuter*. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which add *e* to the stem (instead of *s*) in the nom. are *neuter*.

EXERCISE.

(315.) *Vocabulary.*

By sea and land, terrā mārīque, *abl.*
(not mārī et terrā).

To wash, alluere (ad+luere).

To use, ūti (dep. — governs *abl.*).

To be accustomed, consuescere (*perfect-stem*, consuēv).

Navigation, navigatiō, (navigatiōn)
is (ĕ).

Vast, vastŭs, ā, ūm.

Open, āpertŭs, ā, ūm.

Ocean, oceanus, ī.

The Venetians, Vēnētī, oram (pl.).

Broad, latŭs, ā, ūm.

But, autē̄m (not so strongly adversative as *sed*, and always placed after one or more words of the sentence).

Other, different, alius (194, R. 1)

Bed, cubilē, (cūbīl) is (IV.).

Splendid, splendidŭs, ā, ūm.

A dock-yard, nāvālē, (nāval) is (IV.);

To commit, to join (as battle), committēre (*perf.-stem*, commis)

In the mean time, intērīm (adv.)

Huntsman, vēnātor (īs), m.

Far, longē (adv.).

(316.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>(a) <i>Fr Marseille is washea on three sides by the sea.</i></p> <p>(b) <i>In our sea (i. e., the Mediterranean) we were accustomed to use long ships.</i></p> | <p>Massilia enim tribus ex partibus marī (abl., 93, II., b, R.) allūitūr.</p> <p>Nostrō marī (55) longīs navibus utī consuevīmūs.</p> |
|---|---|

Rule of Syntax.—The deponent verb ūtī, *to use*, governs the ablative; e. g., navibus, in (b).

(317.) *Translate into English.*

Longē aliā nāvīgatiō est in angustō marī atquē in vastō atquē āpertō oceānō.—Longae fuērunt navēs quibus (abl., 316, b) nostro marī (55) utī (infin.) consuevīmūs.—Venētī autem lātīs navibus ūtī consuevērunt.—Mihī (125, II., a) cubilē est terrā.—Rōmānōrūm cubiliā magnā fuerunt et splendidā.—Imperātōr quinquē nāves ex navālī ēdūxit et praelium commisit.—Turris ērāt proximā portui (106, II., c) navālibusque.—Cēsār, intērīm, omnēs nāves quae erant in navālibūs incendit.—Venātōr rētē diligentēr pārābāt.—Venātōres rētiā cervīs (54) pārābant.

(318.) *Translate into Latin.*

The farmers were preparing nets for the (54) oves.—Corinth is washed on two sides by the sea.—The ships which (316, b) the Venetians were accustomed to use in our sea were long.—In the vast and open ocean we use broad ships.—Navigation is far different (longē aliā) in a narrow river and in the open sea.—I had (125, II., a) a high tree (for my) bed.—Cæsar was pursuing Pompey by sea and land.—The tower was very near to the dockyard.—The general, in the mean time, was rebuilding all the old ships in the port and dockyards

LESSON LI.

Nouns — Third Declension, continued.

(319.) CLASS V.—*The Nominative presents the Stem unchanged.*

1. *Masculine Forms.*

Singular.	Honour (m.).	Consul (m.).	Goose (m.).	Brother (m.).
N. and V.	hönör.	consül.	ansër.	frätër.
Gen.	hönör-is.	consül-is.	ansër-is.	frätër-is.
Dat.	hönör-i.	consül-i.	ansër-i.	frätër-i.
Acc.	hönör-ëm.	consül-ëm.	ansër-ëm.	frätër-ëm.
Abl.	hönör-ë.	consül-ë.	ansër-ë.	frätër-ë.
Plural.	Honours.	Consuls.	Geese.	Brothers.
N., A., V.	hönör-ës.	consül-ës.	ansër-ës.	frätër-ës.
Gen.	hönör-üm.	consül-üm.	ansër-üm.	frätër-üm.
D. and Abl.	hönör-ibüs.	consül-ibüs.	ansër-ibüs.	frätër-ibüs.

On these, observe,

(320.) As to *case-endings*, they nearly all take the *regular* endings throughout; but those whose stem ends in *ter* or *ber* drop the *e* in all cases but the *nom.*; *e. g.*, frätër, frätëris; imbër (*a shower*) imbrës.

Rem. Imbër, lintër, ventër, take *üm* for *gen. pl.* ending.

(321.) As to *gender*,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which present the unchanged stem in the *nom.* (except those whose stems end in *al*, *ar*, *ur*, *ör*) are *masculine*.

[Exception (1.) In *or*: arbör, öris (*tree*), is *feminine*; and ädör, öris, (*pure wheat*), æquör, öris (*sea*), marmör, öris (*marble*), are *neut.* (Obs., *masculines* have *ö* (*long*) in the stem; *neuters* *ö* (*short*)). The ending *ul* generally belongs to names of male beings (*e. g.*, consul): if applied to females, it may be *feminine* also (*e. g.*, exul, a female exile).

Exception (2.) *ër*: linter (*boat*) is *masc.* or *fem.*: the following are *neuter*: cädäver (*corpse*), äber (*teat*), ver (*the spring*), verber (*lash*) also, all names of *plants* in *er*: *e. g.*, piper (*pepper*), zingiber (*ginger*), &c.]

EXERCISE.

(322.) *Vocabulary*

Noise, clämör (öris, V., 1).

Cassius, Cassius, i.

Yoke, jügüm, i.

Archer, sägittariüs, i.

Slinger, funditor (öris, V., 1).

Succour, subsidiüm, i.

Rain, imbër (is, 390).

Cavalry, æquitätüs, üs (m.).

Continuance, continüätid, (continüätion) is (f.).

Skin, tent made of skins, pellis, (pellis) is (f. II.).

Desert, dësertüm, i.

Shepherd, pastör (öris, V., 1).

Hunter, venätör (öris, V., 1).

(323.) *Translate into English.*

Impērātor ad se mercātōres undīque convōcavit.—Militēs omnes māgno cum clāmōre in oppīdum irrupērunt.—Helvētii Cassium consūlem occidunt, exercitumque ejus (153, c) sub jūgum* mittunt.—Cāsār sagittāriōs et funditores subsidiō† (dat.) oppīdānis† (dat.) mīsit.—Militēs continuātiōne imbrum (320, R.) sub pellibus continentur.—Incōlæ desertōrum sunt pastōres, venatōres, et mercātōres.—Divitiæ mercātōrum sunt incertæ.—Cāsār omnem ãquitātum funditores sãgittāriosque pontem (113 II., a) transduxit et ad hostes contendit.

(324.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Britons slew the general, and sent all the soldiers under the yoke.—The archers and slingers killed the chief.—By the continuance of the rains, the merchants are kept in the town.—The townsmen burst into the tents (pelles) with a great noise.—The archers and the slingers hasten to the town.—The consul Cassius led all the slingers over the bridge.—The Britons killed the scouts (exploratores), and sent the archers and slingers under the yoke.—The scouts hasten to the consul.—The general sent twenty soldiers for a succour† (dat.) to the merchants.†—The inhabitants of the town are merchants.—The riches of merchants, however great (184) they are, are uncertain.—The soldiers slew all the inhabitants of the desert.—The illustrious consuls led all the footmen over the bridge (113, II., a).

* A conquered army was made to march under a sort of yoke or gallows as a mark of disgrace.

† *Rule of Syntax.*—*Double Dative.* Two datives, one of the person, the other of the thing, may be used with *esse*, and with verbs of *giving*, *coming*, *sending*, &c.

LESSON LII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(325.) CLASS V.—*The Nominative presents the Stem unchanged.*

2. Neuter Forms.

Singular.	Animal (n.).	Spur (n.).	Lightning (n.).	Marble (n.).
N., A., V.	ānīmāl.	calcār.	fulgūr.	marmör.
Gen.	ānīmāl-is.	calcār-is.	fulgūr-is.	marmör-is.
Dat.	ānīmāl-i.	calcār-i.	fulgūr-i.	marmör-i.
Abl.	ānīmāl-i.	calcār-i.	fulgūr-ē.	marmör-ē.
Plural	Animals.	Spurs.	Lightnings.	Marbles.
N., A., V.	ānīmāl-iā.	calcār-iā.	fulgūr-ā.	marmör-ā.
Gen.	ānīmāl-iūm.	calcār-iūm.	fulgūr-um.	marmör-ūm.
D. and Abl.	ānīmāl-ibūs.	calcār-ibūs.	fulgūr-ibūs.	marmör-ibūs.

On these, observe.

(326.) (a) As to *case-endings*, those in *al, ar*, make *abl. l.*
nom. plur. ĭă, *gen. plur. ĭŭm*.

(b) As to *gender*, they are *neuter*. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which present in the nom. the unchanged stem in *a*, *a*, *r*, *ü*, and *ö* (short), are *neuter*.

Exceptions in al: Šal (*salt*) is *masc.* and *neut.* in the sing., and *masc.*, šalēs, in plur. Lar, lārīs (*household god*), *masc.*

Exceptions in ur: Fär (*thief*), furfär (*bran*), turtur (*turtle-dove*), vultur (*vulture*), are masc.

Exceptions in *ðr*. (Recollect that *ðr*, *ðrís* (with *o* long), is a *masculine* (321); and that *arþðr*, *ðrís* (*tree*), is *fem.*)

Rem. Ōs, ossis (*bone*), is neut.

EXERCISE.

(327.) Vocabulary.

Level, plain, planūs, ā, ūm.

A plain, the sea, æquor, is (V., 2),
(derived from æquus, *plain*: see
below, 328).

Revenue, tax, vectigal, (vectigal) is
(V., 2).

To create, creare.

Hatred, odium, ōdiŭm, ī.

Many, very many, complūrēs, & or iū (gen. ūm or iūm), used only in plural.

Class, gēnīs, (gēnēr) is, neut.

Temple, templum, i.

To place, póněřě.

Abode, dōmīcīliūm, i.

To goad, concitare.

Frugality, parsimonia, etc.

Indeed, quřdēm (adv.).

Placid, plácídus, ř. ům.

A marble temple, a temple of marble.
templum de marmore.

Sharp, ācūtās, ā, ūm.

Glare, splendor, (splendor) is (V., 1)

To farm, rēdīmēre (rēdērn-).

(328.) *Example.*

<i>The sea is level, from which also the poets call it æquor (the sea).</i>	<i>Mārē plānūm est; ex quo ētiām æquor illū poētæ vōcant.</i>
---	---

☞ Here the antecedent of quo is the sentence mārē plānūm est

(329.) *Translate into English.*

Magnūm hōc fuit vectīgāl, sēd magnūm creāvit ōdiūm. .
Dumnōrix, complūrēs annōs (191, a, Rule) omniā Æduōrum
vectīgālīā rēdēmērāt.—Complūrā (or complūriā) sunt gēnē-
rā animālīūm.—Templūm de marmōrē in fōrō pōnām.
Crassūs dōmūm magnām de marmōrē splendīdō ædificāvit.
—Fulgūrā milītēs vēhēmentēr terruērunt.—Terrā est dōm
īciliūm hōmīnūm ēt ānimālīūm.—Milītēs subitō ēquōs cal-
cārībūs (abl., 55, a) concītārē cōpērunt.—Calcāria ācūtā
sunt.

(330.) *Translate into Latin.*

Glory is a great spur to brave men.—The horses fear the
sharp spurs.—The glare of the lightnings terrified the horses.
—Almost (ferē, 218, b) all animals are useful to men.—These
were great revenues indeed, but they created great hatreds.—
The seas were level and placid.—Frugality is a great revenue.
—We shall place a temple of splendid marble in the midst (in
mediō fōrō, 297, c) of the forum.—The poets call (mārē) the
sea æquor, because (quīā) it is level.—The woods are the
abode of many animals.—Pompey for many years had farmed
the revenues of Asia.—The cavalry (ēquītēs) began to put
spurs to their horses (= to goad the horses with spurs).

LESSON LIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.(331) CLASS VI.—*The Nominative presents the Stem changed.*

1. Masculine Forms.

(a) n of the Stem dropped.		(b) r of the Stem changed to s.		(c) Verbalis in io (all fem.).
Singular.	Speech (m.).	Dust (m.).	Flower (m.).	Reason (f.).
N. and V.	sermō.	pulvis.	flōs.	rātiō.
Gen.	sermōn-is.	pulvēr-is.	flōr-is.	rātiōn-is.
Dat.	sermōn-i.	pulvēr-i.	flōr-i.	rātiōn-i.
Acc.	sermōn-ēm.	pulvēr-ēm.	flōr-ēm.	rātiōn-ēm.
Abl.	sermōn-ē.	pulvēr-ē.	flōr-ē.	rātiōn-ē.
Plural.	Speeches.		Flowers.	Reasons.
N., A., V.	sermōn-ēs.	pulvēr-ēs.	flōr-ēs.	rātiōn-ēs.
Gen.	sermōn-ūm.	pulvēr-ūm.	flōr-ūm.	rātiōn-ūm.
D. & Abl.	sermōn-ībūs.	pulvēr-ībūs.	flōr-ībūs.	rātiōn-ībūs.

On this class, observe,

(332.) As to *case-endings* : 1. Final n of the stem is *generally* dropped in Latin nouns in the nominative. (In *sanguis, sanguin-is* (*blood*), it is changed into s.)

2. Final r of the stem is *often* changed into s, as in *pulvis, flōs, mōs, &c.*

(333.) *Rule of Gender.*—Nouns which simply drop n of the stem in the nom. are *masculine* (except *abstract nouns in io*).

Special Rem.—*Abstract nouns in io* (ōnis) are *feminine*; e. g., *ratio, reason*; *ultio, revenge*. (They are a very large class, formed by adding io to the supine-stem of verbs.)

(334.) *Rule of Gender.*—Nouns which change ōr of the stem into is, ōr into ōs, are *masculine*; e. g., *pulvis* (*pulvēr*), *flōs* (*flōr*).

EXERCISE.

(335.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>Manner, custom, mōs, (mōr) is</i> (VI., 1, b).	<i>Speech, language, sermō, (sermōn) is</i> (VI., 1, a).
<i>Robber, latro, (latrōn) is</i> (VI., 1, a).	<i>Surrender, dēditiō, (deditiōn) is</i> (VI., 1, c).
<i>Pirate, prædō, (prædōn) is</i> (VI., 1, a).	<i>Rebellion, rēbelliō, (rēbelliōn) is</i> (VI., 1, c).
<i>Centurion, centūriō, (centuriōn) is</i> (VI., 1, a).	<i>The Sacred Way, Viā Sacrā.</i>
<i>Lion, leō, (leōn) is</i> (VI., 1, a).	

Speech (in the abstract), or an *oration*, oratĭo, (oration) is (VI., 1, c).

Hand, mĕnŭs, ūs (f.).

Egyptian, Ægyptiŭs, i.

Sweet, pleasant, suāvis, is, ō.

To wander, errāre

To employ, ūti (with abl., 316, b).

To finish, conficĕre (10).

The rest, the remaining, rēliquŭs, ō, ūm.

To slay, trucidāre.

Nurse, nŭtrix, (nutric) is (I.).

Devoid of, expert, (expert) is (107).

To draw, trāhĕre (trax-; 277, 1).

Eloquent, disertŭs, ō, ūm.

Adorned, ornātŭs, ō, ūm.

To go, irĕ.

By chance, fortĕ (adv.).

As, sicŭt.

Kind, blandŭs, ō, ūm.

(336.) Examples.

(a) *After the manner of robbers.* Mōrĕ latrōnŭm.

(b) *After his (her or their) own manner.* Mōrĕ suō.

(c) *Devoid of reason.* Rātiōnĭs expers.

Rule of Syntax.—Adjectives signifying *abounding, want, privation, &c.*, govern the genitive (sometimes abl.).

(d) *We say, a cloud of dust; the Latin says, a power of dust*—vis pulvĕris.

(337.) Translate into English.

1. (*Masculines, Class VI., 1, n dropped.*)—Centuriōnĕs milĭtŭm Labiĕnŭm libentĕr sĕquĕbantŭr.—Lĕgātŭs sĕrmōnem longŭm conficĭt.—Multī Æduī Cæsāris sĕrmonĭ (dat., 267, b) interfuerunt.—Impĕrātōr rēliquōs latrōnĕs prædōnĕsque trucidāvit.—Africā nŭtrix est leōnŭm fĕrōciŭm.

2. (*Verbal Nouns in ion, all Feminine.*)—Helvĕtĭi lĕgātōs iĕ (concerning) dēdĭtĭōne ad Cæsārĕm misĕrunt.—Barbāri rĕbelliōnĕm turpĕm fĕcĕrunt.—Lĕgātŭs, ōrātiōnĕ acrī (abl., 55, a), barbārōs ad dēdĭtĭōnĕm traxit.—Ōrātiō disertā ēt ornātā omnĭbŭs (161, a) plācĕt.—Fĕræ sunt rātiōnĭs et ōrātiōnĭs expertes.

3. (*Nouns changing ĕr of the Stem into is, ōr into ōs; all Masculines.*)—Pulvis et umbrā sŭmŭs.—Milĭtes, eōdĕm tempōrĕ (118, II., c) magnā vīm pulvĕris vidĕbant.—Ībām fortĕ viā sacrā (abl., 55, a) sicŭt mĕŭs est mōs.—Ægyptiī, mōrĕ prædōnŭm (336, a), nāvĕs incendĕre (infīn., 210) consueverunt.—Suāvĕs tui mōrĕs mĭhĭ (161, a) valdĕ plācent.—Prædōnĕs, mōrĕ suō, oppidā incendĕrĕ cœperunt

(338.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. (*Masculines, Class VI., 1, n dropped.*)—Cæsar employs kind language* (abl., 316, b), and draws the barbarians to a surrender.—Many of the Helvetians heard the severe speech (78, II., b) of Cæsar.—The bands of robbers and pirates wander by sea and land.—The general slew all the wicked pirates.—Is (135, II., a) Africa the nurse of lions?—Is Europe (num, 280, b) the nurse of fierce lions?

2. (*Verbals in io, all Feminine.*)—Cæsar drew-out from (their) winter-quarters the four legions which he had levied (conscriptorât) in Italy.—The eloquent oration pleased all.—The barbarians made a base rebellion after (their) surrender.—Lions are devoid of reason and speech.

3. (*Nouns changing ōr of the Stem into is, ōr into ōs; Masculines.*)—The flowers are beautiful.—The customs of the Germans were good.—Death turns (vertit) all things into dust.—At the same time (118, II., b), a great cloud of dust (336, d) was seen by the soldiers.—I was sleeping in the garden, as is my custom.—The Æduans, after the manner of pirates, slew the ambassadors.

LESSON LIV.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(339.) CLASS VI.—*The Nominative presents the Stem changed.*

2. *Feminine Forms.*

n of the Stem dropped, and l changed into ō.		
Singular.	Image (f.).	Hail (f.).
N. and V.	imāgō.	grandō.
Gen.	imāgin-īs.	grandin-īs.
Dat.	imāgin-i.	grandin-i.
Acc.	imāgin-ēm.	grandin-ēm.
Abl.	imāgin-ē.	grandin-ē.
Plural.	Images.	Hail.
N., A., V.	imāgin-ēs.	grandin-ēs.
Gen.	imāgin-ūm.	grandin-ūm.
D. and Abl.	imāgin-ibūs.	grandin-ibūs.

* Sermo.

On these, observe,

(340.) *Rule of Gender.*—Nouns which drop n, and change i into o in the nom., are *feminine*.

- *Exceptions.* O-dō (*order*), cardō (*hinge*), turbō (*whirlwind*), are *masculine*. Nēmō (*nobody*), margō (*margin*), are *common* (Homo, *man*, is *masc.* by the general rule, 25, a.)

Rem. Cārō (*flesh*) makes gen. carnīs, dat. carnī, &c., contracted from carīnis, carīni, &c.

EXERCISE.

(341.) *Vocabulary.*

Sleep, somnūs, i.

Same, idēm, eādēm, idēm (150).

Multitude, multitūdō, (multitūdīn) is (VI., 2).

To set forth, expōnērē.

Swallow, hīrundō, (hīrundīn) is (VI., 2).

Harbinger, prænuntiā, æ.

Spring, vēr, is (321, exc. 2).

Resemblance, similitūdō, (similitūdīn) is (VI., 2).*

To preserve, keep, servārē.

To call (name), appellārē.

Council, conciliū, i.

Lily, liliūm, i.

Virgin, virgō, (virgīn) is (VI., 2).

Prayer, prex, nom. not used, (prēc) is (I.).

To celebrate, to extol, cēlebrārē.

Origin, origō, (origīn) is (VI., 2).

To collect, cōgērē, cōn+āgērē (perf. stem, cōēg).

Order, rank, ordō, (ordin) is (VI., 2) (m.).

Whirlwind, turbō, (turbīn) is (VI., 2, 340, exc.).

Safe, salvūs, ā, ūm.

(342.) *Translate into English.*

1. Somnūs imāgō mortis est.—Lēgātī eādēm quæ Cæsār dixērāt multitūdīnī expōnunt.—Hīrundīnēs prænuntiæ vērīs sunt.—Gallī oppidūm ex similitūdīnē flōris Liliūm appellābant.—Consul mātrūm virgīnum-que prēcībūs excītatūr.—Poētæ cēlebrant Rōmūlūm, ōriginēm gentis.

2. Principēs Æduōrūm magnām multitūdīnēm hōmīnūm ex agrīs cōēgērunt.—Milītēs ordinēs nōn servant.—Cæsār centūrionēs primōrūm ordinūm ad conciliū convocat.—Cicērō in magnīs turbīnībūs nāvēm reipublicæ (351, 3) gūbernāvit, ēt salvām in portū collōcāvit.

(343.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. Speech (sermō) is the image of the mind.—Sleep is often the harbinger of death.—The soldiers feared the force of the

* Similitūdō flōris = *resemblance to a flower*.

naui.—The centurions were setting-forth the same (things) which the general had commanded.—The brave soldiers are moved by the prayers of the mothers and the virgins.

2. The consuls collect a great multitude of men from the towns.—Cæsar dismisses from (ab) the council the centurions of the first ranks.—The archers and the slingers did not keep their ranks.—Cæsar calls (*vöcārē*) to the council the centurions of all the ranks.—The brave consul in the great whirlwinds will govern the ship of state (351, 3).—Cæsar will place the ship of state safe in the port.

LESSON LV.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.

(344.) CLASS VI.—*The Nominative presents the Stem changed.*

3. Neuter Forms.

Singular.	(a) Vowel changed.		(b) Vowel and Cons. changed.		(c) Cons. changed.
	Song (n.).	Strength (n.).	Work (n.).	Body (n.).	Law (n.).
N., A., V.	<i>carmen.</i>	<i>röbūr.</i>	<i>öpūs.</i>	<i>corpūs.</i>	<i>jūs.</i>
Gen.	<i>carmīn-īs.</i>	<i>röbör-īs.</i>	<i>öpēr-īs.</i>	<i>corpör-īs.</i>	<i>jūr-īs.</i>
Dat.	<i>carmīn-i.</i>	<i>röbör-i.</i>	<i>öpēr-i.</i>	<i>corpör-i.</i>	<i>jūr-i.</i>
Abl.	<i>carmīn-ē.</i>	<i>röbör-ē.</i>	<i>öpēr-ē.</i>	<i>corpör-ē.</i>	<i>jūr-ē.</i>
Plural.	Songs.		Works.	Bodies.	Laws.
N., A., V.	<i>carmīn-ä.</i>	<i>röbör-ä.</i>	<i>öpēr-ä.</i>	<i>corpör-ä.</i>	<i>jūr-ä.</i>
Gen.	<i>carmīn-üm.</i>	<i>röbör-üm.</i>	<i>öpēr-üm.</i>	<i>corpör-üm.</i>	<i>jūr-üm.</i>
D., Abl.	<i>carmīn-ībūs.</i>	<i>röbör-ībūs.</i>	<i>öpēr-ībūs.</i>	<i>corpör-ībūs.</i>	<i>jur-ībūs.</i>

On this class, observe,

(345.) As to *gender*, they are all *neuter*. Hence,

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which, in the nominative, change the stems *īn* into *ēn*, *ör* into *ūr*, and *ēr*, *ör*, or *ūr* into *us*, are *neuter*.

Exceptions. (1.) In *ēn*: only *pectēn*, *pectīnīs* (masc.), *a comb.*

(2.) *ör* into *ūr*: none.

(3.) *ēr* into *ūs*: none.

(4.) *ör* into *ūs*: only *lēpūs*, *lēpōrīs* (masc.), *a hare*.

(5.) *ūr* into *us*: *mūs*, *murīs* (masc.), *mouse*; *tellus. ārīs* (fem.), *earth*

(346.) Under this head may be classed the following nouns of rare endings:

1. Poēmă, ătis (*neuter*), a poem. Nouns of this form are derived from the Greek, and are all neuters. They prefer the ending *is* to *ibūs* in the dat. and abl. plur.

2. Hălēc (*neuter*), hălēcis, brine, and lăc (*neuter*), lactis, milk, are the only Latin nouns ending in *c* in the nom.

3. Căpăt, capitis, head, is the only Latin noun ending in *t* in the nom. It is neuter.

EXERCISE.

(347.) Vocabulary.

Arrogance, arrogantia, æ.

Crime, crimēn, (crimīn) is (VL, 3, a).

To want (lack), to be free from, cărēre (with abl).

Folly, stultitiā.

Wonderful, mirificūs, ā, ūm (mirus +facio).

Naked, nūdūs, ā, ūm.

Strong, validūs, ā, ūm.

The whole affair, omnis rēs.

To delay, tardāre.

Gift, mănūs, (munēr) is (VL, 3, o).

Quickly, citō (adv.).

Hare, lepūs, (lepōr) is (m., 345, 4).

Milk, lăc, (lact) is (n., 346, 2).

Flesh, cārō, (carn) is (f., 340, R.).

Young man, jūvénis, is (m.): gen pl., ūm.

Danube, Dănūbiūs, i (m.).

Jugurtha, Jūgurthā, æ.

If, si (conj.).

(348.) Examples.

(a) To condemn to death.

Căpitis (or căpītō) condemnārē (= to condemn of the head).

Rule of Syntax.—With verbs of condemning, the punishment (if capital) is put in the gen. or abl.

(b) To be free from a crime.

Criminē cărēre (= to want crime).

Rule of Syntax.—The ablative case is used with verbs (and adjectives) of abounding and wanting.

(349.) Translate into English.

Socrătēs arrogantia ēt stultitia crimine carēbat.—Rhēnūs et Rhōdānūs magnā sunt fluminā.—Magnā et mirificā sunt omniā Dei ōpērā.—Galli sempēr nūdō corpōrē (synt., 716, 2) pugnābant.—Corpōrā Germānōrūm vāldā et mirificā fuerunt.

Magnitūdō ōpērūm omnēm rēm tardābat.—Sī mūnērā

tardās, nihīl das; hīs dāt, quī cītō dat.—Vēnātōr lēpōrēs tīmīdos in sylvis persēquītūr.—Athēniensēs Socratēm cāpītē condemnārunť.*—Cūr tālēm vīrūm cāpītis condemnāstis?—Britannī lactē et carnē vīvunt.

(350.) *Translate into Latin.*

The bodies of the young men were strong.—The man (vir) was free from the crime of folly.—The Danube and the Rhine are great rivers.—Do the Gauls (num, 280, b) fight with naked body?—The works of Cicero are excellent: I read them (e a) with pleasure (libentēr).—The Romans condemned Jugurtha to death (348, a).—Did the Athenians (280, b) condemn Socrates to death?—The captives were condemned (imperf. pass.) to death.—The timid hare was wandering in the woods and fields.—Is-it-possible-that (280, b) the Britons live (on) (abl.) milk and flesh?—Your pleasant songs (161, b) delighted (delectāre) me.

• LESSON LVI.

Irregular Nouns.

(351.) We give here the declension of a few irregular nouns.

1. Jūpītēr.

Nom.	Jūpītēr.
Gen.	Jōvis.
Dat.	Jōvī.
Acc.	Jōvēm.
Abl.	Jōvē.

* The *perf.* and *plup.* tenses are often thus contracted: *amārdi* for *amāvērūt*; *vigīlastis* for *vigilavistis*.

2. Bōs, *an ox or cow.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Bōs.	Bōvēs.
Gen.	Bōvīs.	Boūm.
Dat.	Bōvī.	Bōbūs or Būbūs
Acc.	Bōvēm	Bōvēs.
Voc.	Bōs.	Bōvēs.
Abl.	Bōvē.	Bōbūs or būbūs.

[In *double nouns*, each noun is inflected; e. g.,]

3. Rēspublīcā (rēs+publīcā), *a republic, state*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Rēspublīcā.	Rēspublīcæ.
Gen.	Reīpublīcæ.	Rērumpublīcārūm.
Dat.	Reīpublīcæ.	Rēbuspublīcīs.
Acc.	Rempublīcām.	Rēspublīcās.
Voc.	Rēspublīcā.	Rēspublīcæ.
Abl.	Rēpublīcā.	Rēbuspublīcīs.

4. Jusjūrāndūm (jūs+jūrāndūm), *an oath.*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Jusjūrāndūm.	Jūrājūrāndā.
Gen.	Jūrisjūrāndī.	_____
Dat.	Jūrījūrāndō.	_____
Acc.	Jusjūrāndūm.	Jūrājūrāndā.
Abl.	Jūrējūrāndō	_____

Rem. The genitive, dative, and ablative plural are not used

EXERCISE.

(352.) *Vocabulary.*

Faith, promise, fidēs, eī.

To bind, obstringērē, (ōb+stringērē)
(perf.-stem, obstrinx).

To take care of, cūrārē.

Folly, stultitiā, æ.

To lose, amittērē, (ā+mittērē) (perf.-stem, amīs).

To intrust, committērē, (con+mittērē) commīs (with dat.).

Especially, maximē (adv.).

To worship, cōlērē (perf.-stem, cōlā.).

Apis, Āpis, is (m.).

Sacred, sanctūs, ā, ūm.

Formerly, ōlim.

Guardian, custōs, (custōd) is (m. and f.).

Juno, Jūnō, (Jūnōn) is (f.).

Husband or wife, conjux, (conjūg) is (m. and f.).

Nation, nātiō, (nātiōn) is (f.).

An Egyptian, Ægyptiūs, ī.

But especially, maximē autēm.

Minerva, Mīnervā, æ.

(353.) *Translate into English.*

Principēs intēr sē fidēm et jusjūrandū dābant.—Ariovistūs civitātēm jūrejūrandō (55) ēt obsidībūs obstrinxīt.—Āpūd Rōmānōs, consūlēs rem publicām cūrāvērunt.—Multae nātiōnēs pēr stultitiām respUBLICās suās amiserunt.—Vetēres maxīmē Jōvēm cōluērunt.—Ægyptiū Āpīm, sanctūm bōvēm (225, a), ōlīm cōluērunt.—Jūpītēr est hūjūs urbis custōs.—Jūnō ērāt Jōvis conjux.—Civēs irām Jōvis timent.—Cornuā boūm sunt magnā.

(354.) *Translate into Latin.*

The robbers will give an oath among themselves.—Cæsar binds all the Germans by a promise and an oath.—Cæsar bound the chiefs of the state by an oath and by hostages.—The senate intrusts (committit) the whole republic to Cicero.—The consuls will take care of our republic.—The ancients worshipped many gods, but especially Jupiter.—We have lost the republic by (per) our own folly.—Jupiter is the guardian of our house.—Apis, the sacred ox, is the guardian of this city.—Minerva was the daughter of Jupiter.—Good men do not fear the anger of Jupiter.

(355.)

LESSON LVII.

*Summary of Rules of Gender from the Nominative Formation.****I. MASCULINES either**

Add *s*, and change the stem-vowel before it; *e. g.*,
gurgōs, *gurgīt-is*, *whirlpool*; *mīlēš*, *mīlīt-is*, *sol-*
dier: *cōdex*, *cōdic-is*. *book*.

2. Present the stem *er*, *ul*, or, without adding *s*; *e. g.*,
ansēr, *ansēr-is*, *goose*; *consul*, *consul-is*, *consul*;
hōnōr, *hōnōr-is*, *honour*.

3. Drop *n* without adding *s*; *e. g.*, *sermo*, *sermōn-is*,
speech; *carbo*, *carbōn-is*, *coal*.

4. Change *ēr* of the stem into *is*, *ōr* into *ōs*; *e. g.*,
cinis, *cinēr-is*, *ashes*; *pulvīs*, *pulvēr-is*, *dust*;
flōs, *flōr-is*, *flower*.

II. FEMININES either

1. Add *s* without changing the stem-vowel; *e. g.*, *urb-s*,
urb-is, *city*; *nox*, *noct-is*, *night*; *vox*, *vōc-is*, *voice*;
quies, *quīēt-is*, *quiet*.

2. Insert a vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s*; *e. g.*, *nūb-e-s*,
nub-is, *cloud*; *nāv-i-s*, *nav-is*, *ship*

3. Drop *n*, and change *i* into *o*; *e. g.*, *īmāgo*, *īmāgīn-is*,
image; *grando*, *grandīn-is*, *hail*.

III. NEUTERS either

1. Add *e* to the stem; *e. g.*, *māre*, *mār-is*, *the sea*.

2. Present the unchanged stem *al*, *ar*, *ur*; *e. g.*, *ānī-*
māl, *animāl-is*, *animal*; *calcār*, *calcār-is*, *spur*;
fulgūr, *fulgūr-is*, *lightning*.

3. Change *īn* of the stem into *ēn*, *ōr* into *ūr*, and *ēr*, *ōr*,
or ūr into *us*; *e. g.*, *carmēn*, *carmīn-is*, *song*; *ēbūr*,
ēbōr-is, *ivory*; *ōpūs*, *ōpēr-is*, *work*; *corpūs*, *cor-*
pōr-is, *body*; *crūs*, *crūr-is*, *leg*.

* Abundant illustrations of these rules have been given. The student should now learn them thoroughly by heart, and apply them in the subsequent lessons

Exceptions.

I. 1. Only *mergēs*, *mergītis* (f.), *sheaf*.

- I. 2. { *er*, *feminine*: *linter*, *boat*.
er, *neuter*: *cădăvăr*, *ubăr*, *verbăr*, *văr*, *tubăr*, *spin-
thăr*, with all the names of plants in *er*.
ör, *feminine*: *arbör*, *tree*.
ör, *neuter*: *cör*, *ădör*, *æquör*, *marmör*.
Rem. The *neuters* have *ö* (*short*) in the stem; the *mas-
culines*, *ö* (*long*).
I. 3. { The *abstract nouns* in *io* are all *feminine*; *e. g.*, *rătio*
(f.), *rationis*, *reason*.

I. 4. *ös*, *öris* (n.), *mouth*.

- II. 1. { *Masculines*. *Viz.*, *fons*, *mons*, *pons*, *dens* and its
compounds; with *rudens*, *torrens*, *occidens*.
örrens.
Grex, *Greek nouns* in *ax*, and a few in *ix*; *lä-
pis*, *väs*, *päriēs*, *pēs*.*
II. 2. { *Masculines*. *Latin nouns* ending in *nīs*; *e. g.*, *ignīs*
(m.), *fire*; with
Piscīs, *orbīs*, *callīs*, and *canālīs*;
Unguīs, *caulīs*, *axīs*, and *annālīs*;
Fascīs, *sentīs*, *fustīs*, *collīs*, *ensīs*;
Vectīs, *vermīs*, *postīs*; *follīs*, *mensīs*.
II. 3. { *Masculines*. *Ordo*, *cardo*, *turbo*.
Common. *Homo*, *nēmo*, *margo*.

III. 1. *None*.

- III. 2. { *Säl*, *masculine* and *neuter* in singular; *masculine* in
plural. *Lär*, *lärīs*, *masculine*.
Für, *furfür*, *turtür*, *vultür*, *masculine*.
III. 3. { *Masculine*: changing *in* into *ön*, only *pectën*, *comb*;
changing *ör* into *üs*, only *löpüs*, *hare*; chang-
ing *ür* into *us*, only *müs*, *mouse*. *Feminine*:
tellüs, *earth*.

* There are also a few *Greek* words that are *masculine*. *As*, *assla*
coin, is *masculine*; *väs*, *väsīs*, *vase*, and *ös*, *ossīs*, *bone*, are *neuter*.

§ 4.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. (LVIII.—LX.)

(356.) ADJECTIVES are inflected both in English and Latin to express *degrees* of quality; e. g.,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative
<i>Brave,</i>	<i>braver,</i>	<i>bravest.</i>
<i>Fort-is,</i>	<i>fort-iör,</i>	<i>fort-issimüs.</i>

LESSON LVIII.

The Comparative Degree.

(357.) The *comparative* has the ending *iör* for the *masc. & fem.* and *iüs* for the *neut.* These endings are added directly to the *stem* of the adjective; e. g.,

Masculine.		
<i>Brave, fort-is;</i>	<i>braver, fort-iör;</i>	<i>fort-iüs.</i>
<i>Hard, dūr-us;</i>	<i>harder, dūr-iör;</i>	<i>dūr-iüs.</i>
<i>Beautiful, pulch-er } (stem, pulchr-);</i>	<i>more beautiful, pulchr-iör;</i>	<i>pulchr-iüs</i>

Rem. If the stem ends in a *vowel*, the comparative is formed by the use of *māgis*, *more*, instead of the ending; e. g.,

<i>pious, pi-us;</i>	<i>more pious, māgis piüs.</i>
<i>fit, idōne-us;</i>	<i>more fit, māgis idōneüs.</i>

(358.) DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N. and V.	dūr-iör.	dūr-iüs.	dūr-iörēs.	dūr-iörä.
Gen.	dūr-iöris.	dūr-iöris.	dūr-iörüm.	dūr-iöräm.
Dat.	dūr-iöri.	dūr-iöri.	dūr-iöribüs.	dūr-iöribüs.
Acc.	dūr-iörēm.	dūr-iüs.	dūr-iörēs.	dūr-iörä.
Abl.	dūr-iörē.	dūr-iörē.	dūr-iöribüs.	dūr-iöribüs.

Rem. In the later writers, *i* is used for abl. sing. ending frequently instead of *ē*.

EXERCISE.

(359.) *Vocabulary.*

Like, similar to, similis (takes *dat.*, sometimes *gen.*, 106, II., c).

Amiable, amābilis, is, ē.

Eloquent, eloquens.

Excellent, præstans.

Ignorance, ignōrātiō, (ignorance) is.

Knowledge, scientia, æ.

Silver, argentum, i.

Vile, paltry, vilis, is, ē.

Justice, iustitiā, æ.

Dear, precious, cārūs, ā, ūm.

Few, pauci, æ, ā (used only in pl.).

Indeed, quidem (adv.; always stands next after the word to which it refers).

Swift, celer (105, R. 1).

Than, quā (conj.).

To seek, querere.

Antonine, Antoninus, i.

Future, futurūs, ā, ūm.

(360.) *Examples.*

(a) *A pirate is more like a wild beast than a man.*

Prædo fëræ (106, II., b) est simīlior quam hōmīni (dat.).

(b) *Nothing is more amiable than virtue.*

Nihil est amābilius quam virtūs, or

(c) Nihil est virtutē amābilius.

(c) *Rule of Syntax.*—The conjunction *quam* (*than*) is frequently omitted, and then the noun with the comparative must be put in the *ablative* case.

Cicero was more eloquent than Cæsar.

Cicero fuit Cæsare eloquentior.

(361.) *Translate into English.*

Nihil est virtute præstantius.—Virtus est præstantior quam robur (344).—Ignoratio malorum utilior est quam scientia.—Aurum gravius est argento.—Argentum vilius est auro, virtutibus aurum.—Lupi ferociores sunt quam canes.—Tullus Hostilius ferocior erat Romulo.—Justitiam querimus; rem (app., with justitiam, 225, a) auro carior rem.—Pauca (dat. gov. by carior, 106, II., b) carior fides est, quam pecunia.—Mihi (dat.) amicus fuit me ipso carior.—Omnes suos (*i. e.*, his friends) caros habet (*he holds*); me (acc.) quidem se ipso cariorum.—Nemo Romanorum (*parative gen.*) eloquentior fuit Cicerone.

(362.) *Translate into Latin.*

1 With quam.—The horse is swifter than the dog.—Igno-

rance of future evils is better than knowledge (of them).—Lions are fiercer than wolves.—Antonine was more pious (357, R.) than Cæsar.—The son was more amiable than the father.—A robber is more like a wolf (dat., 106, II., b) than a man.

2. *Without quam* (with *ablative*).—Justice is a thing more precious than gold.—Gold is more paltry than virtue.—Nothing is more amiable than virtue.—To Crassus his friends were dearer than himself.—He (*had*) held all his own (*friends*) dear, but Cicero even dearer than himself.—What (170) is heavier than water? Gold.—What is more excellent than strength? Virtue.

LESSON LIX.

Superlative Degree.

(363.) THE *superlative* ending is *issimūs*, which is added to the stem of the adjective.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Deer</i> , cār-us;	<i>dearer</i> , cār-ior;	<i>dearest</i> , cār-issimūs.
<i>Brave</i> , fort-is;	<i>braver</i> , fort-ior;	<i>bravest</i> , fort-issimūs.
<i>Happy</i> , fēlix (felic-s);	<i>more happy</i> , fēlic-ior;	<i>most happy</i> , fēlic-issimūs.

(364.) But adjectives whose stems end in *er* add the ending *rīmūs*.

Unhappy, miser; *most unhappy*, miser-rīmūs.

Swift, celer; *swiftest*, celer-rīmūs.

Beautiful, pulcher; *most beautiful*, pulcher-rīmūs.

(365.) Several adjectives whose stems end in *l* add *issimūs*.

Easy, facil-is; *easiest*, facil-issimūs.

EXERCISE.

(366.) *Vocabulary.*

Cyrus, Cŷrūs; l.

Hannibal, Hannibāl, (Hannibāl) is.

Difficult, difficilis (di-fācilis).

Moderation, mōdūs, ī.

Darius, Dārius, ī

To preserve moderation, mōdum hā
bērē (= *to have moderation*).

Carthage, Carthāgo, (Carthāgīn) is

Metal, mētallum, ī.

To stain, mādārē.

(367.) *Examples.*

- (a) *Socrates was very wise.* | Sōcrates sāpientissimus fuit.

A high degree of quality (very good, very wise, &c.) is expressed in Latin by the *superlative*.

- (b) *Of all these, the Belgians are the bravest.* | Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgæ.

Rule of Syntax.—The genitive plural is used with the superlative degree: the *most learned* of the *Romans*; doctissimūs Romanōrum (partitive gen., synt., 697).

- (c) *Among the Helvetians the noblest was Orgetorix.* | Āpud Helvētios nobīlissimus fuit Orgētōrix.

(368.) *Translate into English*

Urbs Syracusæ (app., 225, a) Græcārum urbium est pulcherrimā.—Præstantissimī Persārum rēges fuērunt Cyrus et Darius.—Pompeius magnam belli glōriam mortē (55, a) turpissimā mēcūlāvit.—Hannībal fortissimūs erat omnium Carthāgīniensium.—Gallōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgæ.—Cicēro ālōquentissimus fuit Romānōrum.—Difficillimum est mōdum hāberē (161, d).—Āpud Ēduos nobīlissimus et fortissimus fuit Divitiācus.

(369.) *Translate into Latin.*

Plato was very wise (367, a).—Plato was the wisest of all the Greeks (367, b).—The city Rome was the most beautiful of all the Roman cities.—Of all these, the Britons are the bravest.—The most excellent leaders of the Romans were Cæsar and Pompey.—Carthage was a very beautiful city.—Of all things, the most difficult is to preserve moderation.—Of all (men), the most happy (beatus) is the wise (man).—The hardest of all metals is iron.—Among the Greeks Thēristocles was the noblest.—Cæsar led the bravest soldiers across the very broad river.

LESSON LX.

Irregular Comparison of Adjectives.

(370.) SEVERAL adjectives are quite *irregular* in their comparison. The following are the most important.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>good</i> , <i>bōnūs</i> .	<i>better</i> , <i>méliōr</i> .	<i>best</i> , <i>optimūs</i> .
<i>bad</i> , <i>mālūs</i> .	<i>worse</i> , <i>pējor</i> .	<i>worst</i> , <i>peſsimūs</i> .
<i>great</i> , <i>māgnūs</i> .	<i>greater</i> , <i>mājōr</i> .	<i>greatest</i> , <i>maximūs</i> .
<i>much</i> , <i>multūs</i> .	<i>more</i> , { <i>plūs</i> (n. sing.). <i>plūrēs</i> , & (pl.).	<i>most</i> , <i>very many</i> , } <i>plūrimūs</i> .
<i>small</i> , <i>parvūs</i> .	<i>less</i> , <i>minōr</i> .	<i>least</i> , <i>minimūs</i> .
<i>old</i> , <i>sēnex</i> .	<i>older</i> , <i>sēniōr</i> .	<i>wanting</i> .
<i>young</i> , <i>jūvenīs</i> .	<i>younger</i> , <i>jūniōr</i> .	<i>wanting</i> .
<i>outward</i> , <i>extērius</i> .	<i>more outward</i> , <i>extēriōr</i> .	<i>outermost</i> , <i>extremūs</i> .
<i>below</i> , <i>infērus</i> .	<i>lower</i> , <i>infēriōr</i> .	<i>lowest</i> , <i>infimūs</i> , or <i>imūs</i> .
<i>above</i> , <i>sūpērūs</i> .	<i>higher</i> , <i>sūpēriōr</i> .	<i>highest</i> , <i>sūprēmūs</i> , or <i>summūs</i> .
<i>hind</i> , <i>postērūs</i> .	<i>hinder</i> , <i>postēriōr</i> .	<i>hindmost</i> , <i>postrēmūs</i> .

(371.) Several adjectives have no positive, but form the *comparative* and *superlative* from a preposition, adverb, or obsolete word.

	Comparative.	Superlative.
(<i>on this side</i> , <i>citra</i> .)	<i>nearer</i> , <i>citēriōr</i> .	<i>nearest</i> , <i>citimus</i> .
(<i>within</i> , <i>intra</i> .)	<i>inner</i> , <i>intēriōr</i> .	<i>inmost</i> , <i>intimus</i> .
(<i>beyond</i> , <i>ultra</i> .)	<i>farther</i> , <i>ultēriōr</i> .	<i>farthest</i> , <i>last</i> , } <i>ultimūs</i> .
(<i>near</i> , <i>prōpe</i> .)	<i>nearer</i> , <i>prōpiōr</i> .	<i>nearest</i> , <i>next</i> , } <i>proximūs</i> .
(<i>bad</i> , <i>deter</i> .)	<i>worse</i> , <i>dētēriōr</i> .	<i>worst</i> , <i>dēterrimūs</i> .
(<i>before</i> , <i>præ</i> .)	<i>former</i> , <i>priōr</i> .	<i>first</i> , <i>primūs</i> .

Rem. 1. *Divēs*, *rich*; *richer*, *ditior*, *divitior*; *richest*, *ditissimus*, *divitissimus*. (Cicero uses the longer form, Cæsar the shorter.)

2. Compound adjectives in *dīcus*, *ficus*, *vōlus*, add *entior* for the comp., and *entissimus* for the superl.; e. g., *bēnē-vōlus* (*benevolent*), *bēnēvōl-entior*, *bēnēvōl-entissimūs*.

EXERCISE.

(372.) *Vocabulary.*

Disgraceful, *unworthy*, *indignūs*, &
ām (in-+*dignus*).

Infamy, *disgraceful crime*, *flāgi-
tium*, I.

Wisdom, *sāpientiā*, &.

The Suevians, *Suēvī*, *ōrum*.

Warlike, *bellicōsus*, &, *ūm*.

Condition, *conditio*, (*conditio*n) *is*.

America, *Amērica*, &.

Emperor, *impērātōr*, *ōris* (355, I., 2)

(373.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| (a) <i>It is disgraceful to be conquered by a superior; more disgraceful (to be conquered) by one inferior and lower.</i> | Indignum est a sup̄iore vincī; indignius ab inf̄iore atque hūmiliore. |
|---|---|

[Here the infin. pass. vincī is used as a neut. noun, nom. to est, and indignum agrees with it in the predicate.]

- | | |
|--|--|
| (b) <i>What is better for man than wisdom?</i> | Quid est hōmīni mēlius s̄a pientiā (360, c)? |
|--|--|

[Here hōmīni is in the dat. (advantage or disadvantage, 106, II, b).]

(374.) *Translate into English.*

Nihil est mēlius quam (360, b) s̄apientiā.—Hiberniā mīnor est quam Britanniā.—Nihil est p̄jūs flāgitio.—Hostēs celerit̄ lōcā (309) sup̄iora occūpābant.—Maximā pars Aquitaniæ obsidēs ad Cæsārem misit.—Suevōrum gens est longē maximā et bellicosissimā Germānōrum omnium (367, b).—Ariovistus agrum Sēquānum, quī optimus erat tōtius Galliæ occūpavit.—Infimā est conditio et fortunā servōrum.—Primus et maximus rēgum Romanōrum fuit Rōmulus.

(375.) *Translate into Latin.*

It is disgraceful to be conquered by a junior, more disgraceful by a senior.—What is better than virtue? what worse than vice?—What is better for man than honour? Wisdom.—Europe is less than Asia; Asia than America.—The bravest of the Belgians were seizing the higher grounds (lōcā).—The greatest part of Gaul made (fecit) a surrender.—The first and greatest of the Roman emperors was Cæsar.—The poor are often more benevolent (371, R. 2) than (quam) the rich.—The worst (men) are often more-happy than (quam) the best.—Among the Helvetians (by) far the richest and noblest was Orgetorix.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

(376.) ADVERBS *derived from adjectives* admit of comparison. The *comp.* is the *neuter* form of the comparative of the adjective: the *superlative* substitutes ē for u s.

<i>Learnedly,</i>	<i>more learnedly,</i>	<i>most learnedly,</i>
doct-ē;	doct-i ũ s;	doct-issim ē.
<i>joyfully,</i>	<i>more joyfully,</i>	<i>most joyfully,</i>
læt-ē;	læt-i ũ s;	læt-issim ē.
<i>Happily,</i>	<i>more happily,</i>	<i>most happily,</i>
fēlic-ī t ē r;	fēlic-ī ũ s;	fēlic-issim ē.
<i>Well, bēnē;</i>	<i>better, mēli ũ s;</i>	<i>best, optimē.</i>

[No separate exercise upon these is necessary.]

§ 6.

SUPINE.

(377.) THE *Supine* presents the action of the verb under the form of a noun in two cases, the *accusative* and *ablative*. The *former supine* ends in ūm, the *latter* in ū; which endings are added to the *supine-stem* of the verb.

LESSON LXI.

Supines.

(378.) THE SUPINE-STEM is formed by adding to the verb-stem,

- (1) In 1st conj., āt; *e. g.*, ām-āt-.
- (2) In 2d conj., it; *e. g.*, mōn-it-.
- (3) In 3d conj., t; *e. g.*, reg-t = rect
- (4) In 4th conj., it; *e. g.*, aud-it-.

[*Rem.* Many supines, however, use different connecting vowels, or take s (and not t) before um and u. For this reason, therefore, all supine-stems will be given in the following vocabularies: Where no supine-stem is given, it is to be understood that the verb has no supine.]

(379.) The supine in ūm is a verbal noun of the *accusative* case, and is put after verbs of motion to express the *design* of that motion; *e. g.*,

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>(a) <i>Ambassadors come to Cæsar to ask assistance.</i></p> <p>(b) <i>To go to sleep (to sleeping).</i></p> | | <p>Lēgātī ād Cæsārēm vēniunt
rōgātūm* auxiliūm.</p> <p>Irē dormītūm.</p> |
|--|--|--|

(380.) The supine in ū is a verbal noun of the *ablative* case, and is used after adjectives signifying *good* or *bad*, *easy* or *difficult*, *pleasant* or *unpleasant*, &c.

* Rōgātūm = *accus.* answering to the question *whether*

- | | |
|--|---------------------|
| (a) <i>It is (a thing) easy to do</i>
(or, <i>to be done</i>). | Est faciġle factũ.* |
| (b) <i>It is (a thing) wonderful</i>
<i>to tell</i> (or, <i>to be told</i>). | Est mirabilē dictũ. |

(381.) The following are nearly all the supines in u which are in use: dictũ, auditũ, cognitũ, factũ, inventũ, mēmōrātũ.

EXERCISE.

(382.) Vocabulary.

<i>To ask, demand, postulāre</i> (postulāt).	<i>To besiege, oppugnāre</i> (oppugnāt).
<i>To congratulate, grātulārī</i> (grātulāt), <i>dep.</i>	<i>Hand, band of men, mēnus, ūs.</i>
<i>To come together, convēnīre</i> (convēnīre, convēn-, convent-).	<i>Wonderful, mirābilis, ē</i> (104).
<i>To complain, quērōr</i> (quest).	<i>Very easy, perfaciġlis, ē</i> (104).
<i>Custom, consuetūdō</i> , (consuetūdīn) is (f., 355, II., 3).	<i>To do, faciēre</i> (fact).
<i>To collect corn, frumentārī</i> (frumentāt).	<i>To say, tell, dicēre</i> (dict).
<i>A Treviran, Trēvir</i> i (65).	<i>Best, optimūs, ē, ūm</i> (370).
	<i>To find, invēnīre</i> (in+vēnīre), invent.
	<i>To happen, accidēre.</i>
	<i>To endure, tōlērāre</i> (tōlērāt).
	<i>Senate, sēnātūs, ūs.</i>

(383.) Example.

<i>Divitiacus came to Rome to ask assistance.</i>	Divitiācūs Rōmām vēnit auxiliũm postulātũm.
---	---

Rule of Syntax.—The accusative is used with the names of towns and small islands, to answer to the question *whither*; e. g., in (a) Rōmām.

(384.) Translate into English.

1. *Supine in ūm.*—Prīncipēs civitātis ad Cēsārem grātũ lātũm convēnērunt.—Trēvirī magnā mēnũ (55, a) castrā opugnātũm vēnērunt.—Lēgātī ab Œduis vēnērunt, questũm.—Cēsār ex consuetūdīnē ūnām lēgiōnēm misit frumentātũm.—Lēgātī Rōmām ad sēnātũm vēnērunt auxiliũm postulātũm.

2. *Supine in ū.*—Est perfaciġle factũ.—Est jũcundũ auditũ.—Quēdā (178, 1) sunt turpiā dictũ.—Quōd optimũ est factũ, faciā.—Virtūs difficilis est inventũ.—Multā accidunt durā tōlērātũ.

* Factũ = ablative of respect, wherein.

(385.) *Translate into Latī*

[Words in Italic to be reviewed by supines.]

1. *Supine* in um.—The consuls, according to (ex) custom, sent a large band to collect corn.—All the chiefs of the Æduans were coming to Rome to ask assistance.—All the ambassadors, according to custom,* came-together to Cæsar to congratulate (him).—The soldiers of the tenth legion came to the general to complain.—The Germans came (in) a large band to attack the town.

2. *Supine* in u.—It is (a thing) wonderful to be heard.—What (quod) is base to be said, I will not say.—What is difficult to be done, I will do.—A true (verus) friend is difficult to be found.—Some-things are very easy to be done.

* According to custom = ex consuetudine.

TENSES OF VERBS FOR COMPLETED ACTION.—PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT.—FULLER STATEMENT. (LXII.—LXIX.)

(386.) It has been stated (262) that the *tense-stem* of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses is the same. In Lessons XLIV., XLV. we gave *one* mode of forming this *tense-stem* for each conjugation. There are several other modes, which we now proceed to state, taking up the conjugations separately. To make the tables complete, we shall repeat the *first* method at the head of each.

LESSON LXII.

Forms of Perfect-stem.—First Conjugation.

(387.) THERE are four ways of forming the perfect-stem in the *first conjugation*.

- I. By adding *äv* to the verb-stem ; ä m-ärë, ä m-äv
- II. “ ü “ sön-ärë, sön-ü
- III. reduplicating* the first consonant with *ë* ; } d-ärë, dëd
- IV. lengthening the stem-vowel ; jüv-ärë, jüv

On this table, observe that *Class*

- I. contains *most* of the verbs of the first conjugation.
- II. contains *eleven* simple verbs (of which a list may be found, 664,
- III. contains but *two* simple verbs, viz., *därë, to give, and stärë, to stand.*
- IV. contains but *two* simple verbs, viz., *jüvärë, to assist, and lävärë to wash.*

(388.) To form the *perfect, pluperfect, or future perfect* of a

* To *reduplicate* a consonant is to *prefix* it to a stem with some connecting-vowel ; thus, *mord-*, reduplicate with *o*, *momord* ; *st-äre*. reduplicate with *e*, *stest-*, but the *second s* is dropped, *stët-*.

verb of any of the above classes, simply add the endings of those tenses respectively to the perfect-stem; thus: ●

Infinitive.	Perfect-stem.	Perfect tense.	Pluperfect.	Future Perfect.
<i>To forbid</i> , vêt-ărě, vêt-ŭ-	{	I.	ărăm.	ărě.
		isti.	ărās.	ărīs.
<i>To give</i> , d-ărě, d-ăd-		It.	ărăt.	ărīt.
		imūs.	ărămūs.	ărīmūs.
<i>To help</i> , jŭv-ărě, jŭv-		istīs.	ărătīs.	ărītīs.
		ărunt, or ăre.	ărânt.	ărint.

EXERCISE.

(389.) [] Hereafter, in all the vocabularies, the perfect and supine stems of verbs will be given in parentheses, immediately after the infinitive. When no perfect or supine stem is given, it will be understood that those forms of the verb are wanting; and where two are given, that the verb uses both. Thus: *to help*, jŭv-ărě (jŭv-, jăt-); *to glitter*, mic-ărě (mic-); *to fold*, plic-ărě (plicav-, plică-, plicat-, plicăt-). In these examples mic-ărě has no supine; plic-ărě has two perfect and two supine forms.]

(390.) Vocabulary.

<i>To demand</i> (command), imp-ărare (ăv-, ăt-).	<i>Door</i> , f-ărīs, (f-ăr) Is (300).
<i>To give</i> , d-ăre (d-ăd-, d-ăt-, 387, III.).	<i>To creak</i> , cr-ăp-ărě (cr-ăp-ŭ-, cr-ăp-ăt-).
<i>Hunger</i> , f-ăm-ăs (īs), (300).	<i>To chide</i> , r-ăp-ăre, inc-ăre-ăre (in-ă- cr-ăp-ărě, cr-ăp-ŭ-, cr-ăp-ăt-).
<i>To tame</i> , d-ăm-ăre (d-ăm-ŭ-, d-ăm-ăt-, 387, II.).	<i>A little while</i> , pa-ŭllis-ăp-ăr (adv.).
<i>To shine</i> , or <i>flash forth</i> , ăm-ic-ăre (ăm-ic-ŭ-, ă-+m-ic-ăre, 387, II.).	<i>To withstand</i> , r-ăs-ist-ărě (r-ăs-ăt-, r-ăs-+st-ăre).
<i>To surround</i> , circ-um-st-ăre (st-ăt- and st-ăt-).	<i>To halt</i> , con-st-ăre (con-st-ăt-, con-+st-ăre).
<i>The sand</i> , d-ry ground, ărid-um, i- (neut. of ăridus, d-ry).	<i>As soon as</i> , s-im-ŭlat-que (adv.).
<i>An attack</i> , imp-ăt-ŭs, ăt- (110).	<i>To slay</i> , k-ill, inter-f-ic-ăre (inter-f-ec-interfect).
<i>To assist</i> , ad-jŭv-ărě (jŭv-, jăt-, ad-+jŭv-ăre).	<i>To make</i> , f-ăc-ăre, ăt- (f-ăc-, f-ăc-ăt- 199).

(391.) Examples.

- (1) St-ăre = *to stand*; con-st-ăre, *to stand together*, to *halt*; circum-st-ăre, *to stand-around*, to *surround*. (The compounds of st-ăre, with prepositions of one syllable, have st-ăt- for perfect-stem; those with two, st-ăt-.)
- (2) *To resist or withstand* | ă-lic-ŭi r-ăs-ist-ăre.
any one.

Partial Rule of Syntax.—Many verbs compounded with prepositions govern the dative.

- (3) *To put any one to flight.* | *Āliquem in fūgam dāre*
 (= *to give unto flight*).
 (4) *To make an attack.* | *Impētum faciēre.*

[The Latin words in the following exercises which illustrate the *lessons* are spaced.]

(392.) *Translate into English.*

Oppidāni, obsides quos Cēsār impērāv-ērāt, dēd-ērunt.—
 Venātōres famē (abl., 55, *a*) lūpos dōmu-ērunt.—Ex monte
 subitō (adv.) flammā emicu-ērunt.—Impērator oppidānos
 frumentō (55) adjūv-it.—Num crēpu-ērunt fōrēs?—Cē-
 sār vēhēmenter (215, 2, *b*) milītēs incrēpu-it.—Hostes
 nostrīs paullisper restit-ērunt.—Hostes mīltibus (391, 2)
 circumstēt-ērunt, multosque interfēc-ērunt.—Nostrī in
 hostes impētum fēc-ērunt, atque eōs (391, 3) in fūgam dēd-
 ērunt.—Nostrī simūlatque in aridō constit-ērunt, in hostes
 impētum fēc-ērunt atque eōs in fūgam dēd-ērunt.

(393.) *Translate into Latin.*

. The flame shone-forth.—From (ex) the-top-of the mountain
 (297, *a*) the flame suddenly shone-forth.—The huntsman had
 tamed the wolf.—The townsmen had given the hostages.—
 The Belgians gave all the hostages that (*rel. pron.*) Cēsar had
 demanded.—The general had reproved the lieutenant and
 (que) the soldiers.—Our (men) were-withstanding the enemy
 (dat.)—Our (men) bravely withstood the enemy, and (que)
 killed many.—The Belgians surrounded our (*men*) (dat., 391,
 2), and killed many.—The Romans often put the Belgians to
 flight.—Our men halted upon (*in*) the dry-ground.—As-soon-as
 our men halted upon dry-ground, they bravely withstood the
 enemy (391, 2).—Our men put-to-flight the enemy whom
 (dat., 391, 2) they had bravely withstood.

LESSON LXIII.

Perfect-stem.—Second Conjugation.

(394.) THE perfect-stem in *second conjugation* is
 formed in *five* ways.

- I. *By adding ū to the verb-stem*; mōn-ērē, mōn-ū-.
 II. " ēv " dēl-ērē, dēl-ēv-.
 III. " s " măn-ērē, man-s-.
 IV. *reduplicating the first con-* } mōrd-ērē, mō-mōrd-
 sonant and vowel; }
 V. *lengthening the stem-vowel*; vīd-ērē, vīd-.

(395.) On this table, observe that *Class*

I. contains *most* of the verbs of the second conjugation.*

II. contains only flērē, *to weep*; nērē, *to spin*; dēlērē, *to destroy* with the compounds of the obsolete words plērē, *to fill*; ōlērē,† *to grow*; suēre,† *to be accustomed*. [For a list, see 665, II.]

III. contains *many* verbs, of which a list may be found (665, III.)
 The rules of euphony must be applied here.

(a) b before s sometimes passes into s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To command,</i>	jub-ēre,	jub-si=jussī,	jussūm (jub-sum).

(b) t-sound before s dropped.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To laugh,</i>	rid-ēre,	rid-si=risī,	risūm (rid-sum).

(c) k-sound + s = x. Any k-sound before t = c.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To increase,</i>	aug-ēre,	aug-si=aux-i,	auctūm (aug-tam)

(d) k-sound after l or r dropped before s.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To glitter,</i>	fulg-ēre,	ful-si (ful(g)s-i),	ful-sum (ful(g)sum)

IV. contains *four* simple verbs. See list (665, IV.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To bite, champ,</i>	mord-ēre,	mō-mord-i,	morsūm (mord-sum).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To vow, promise,</i>	spond-ēre,	spō-pond-i,	sponsūm (spond-sum).

[The compounds of these verbs drop the reduplication; e g.,

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To answer,</i>	rēpond-ēre,	rēpond-i,	rēponsūm (respond-sum).]

V. contains *eight* simple verbs, for which see list (665, V.). •

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To favour,</i>	fāv-ērē,	fāv-i,	fautum.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To move,</i>	mōv-ērē,	mōv-i,	mōtum.

EXERCISE.

[Refer to 386 and 389.]

(396.) Vocabulary.

<i>Carthage,</i> Carthāgo, (Carthāgīn) is (339).	<i>To fill up,</i> complēre (complēv-, complēt-, 395, II.) [con+plēre].
<i>To destroy,</i> dēlērē (dēlēv-, dēlēt-, 395, II.).	<i>Good will,</i> vōlūtās, (voluntat) is (293).

* Many examples of this class have already occurred.

† Some of these have s co in present indicative: adolesco, consuesco

To remain, mănērē (mans-, mans-, 394, III.).

To come, vênirē (vên-, vent-).

A slayer, intersector, ōris (319).

To see, vidēre (vid-, vis-, 395, V.).

To open, āpērirē (āpērū-, apert-).

Gate, portā, æ.

To flee, fūgēre (io), (fūg-, fugit-).

Bit, bridle, frænū, I (plur. ī and æ).

Saguntum, Sāguntum, ī.

Hill, collis, is (m., 302, R.).

Scipio

(surnamed)

Africanus,

Numantia, Nūmantia, æ.

A defence, fortification, mūnitio (nis), (f., 333, R.).

Even up to, as far as, usquē (adv.).

Great, ingens, (ingent) is (107).

Standard, signū, I.

Tooth, dens, (dent) is, (m., 295, R.)

Scipio, nis

Africanūs, I.

(397.) *Example.*

On the very day of his arrival.

Eōdem quo vênērat diē (= the very day on which day he had come).

(398.) *Translate into English.*

Hannibal Sāguntum dēlēvit, Scīpio Carthāgīnem.—Scīpio Africānus urbes duas pōtentissimas, Carthāgīnem ēt Nūmantiam dēlevit.—Cæsār hās mūnitiones dilligēter auxit.—Galli partem collis, usquē ad mūrum oppīdi, castris (55, a) complēvērāt.—Adventūs lēgātī summā spē et vōluntātē urbēm complēvit.—Diū barbārī in fidē mansērāt.—Itā complēres diēs (191, a) mansērāt castrā.—Cæsār eōdēm diē (118, II., c) in Æduōs castrā mōvit.—Imperātor, eōdem quō vênērat diē (397) castrā mōvit.—Brūtus et Cassius, interfectōres (225, a) Cæsāris, bellum ingens mōvērunt.*—Lēgiōnes, sīmūlatquē nostrā signā vīderunt, portās āpēruērunt.—Equus frēnōs mōmordīt.—Spōpondistīnē prō amicō? Spōpondī.

(399.) *Translate into Latin.*

Scipio destroyed Carthage, a most powerful city.—God has filled the world with all blessings (*bona, neut.*).—Socrates never laughed.—The forces of the Gauls had filled the whole (*omnem*) place, even-up to the wall of the town.—The Gauls had filled-up the higher (*sūpērior*) part of the hill with (their) very-crowded (*densissimus*) camp.—The coming of Cæsar filled the army with the highest hope and good-will. For many years the barbarians had remained in friendship and

* In the sense of *excited, stirred up.*

fidelity (fideque).—Cæsar moved (his) camp into the (territory of the) Æduans on the very day of his arrival.—The enemy saw our soldiers, and fled.—The horses were champing the bits.—The wolf bit the dog with his teeth (55, a).

LESSON LXIV.

Perfect-stems.—Third Conjugation.

(400.) THE perfect-stem in the *third conjugation* is formed in *six* ways.

- I. *By adding s to the verb-stem*; scrib-erë, scrip-s-.
- II. " ü " cöl-ërë, cöl-ü-.
- III. " v, or iv " pët-ërë, pet-iv-.
- IV. *reduplication*; curr-ërë, cücurr-.
- V. *lengthening the stem-vowel*; fūg-ërë, fūg-.
- VI. *taking the simple verb-stem*; volv-ërë, volv-.

We shall take up these separately, treating in this lesson only the first.

•(401.) CLASS I.—*Perfect-stem formed by adding s to the Verb-stem.*

Most verbs of the third conjugation come under this class. It has already been illustrated, but we here give a fuller account of the rules of euphony, in connexion with the various stem-endings.

1. b before s or t passes into p.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To write,</i>	scrib-ërë,	scrips-i (scrib-s-i),	scriptum (scrib-tum).
<i>To marry,</i>	nāb-ërë,	nups-i (nub-s-i),	nuptum (nub-tum).

2. A c-sound +s = x (c, g, h, v, gu,*qu are classed with c-sounds. If a stem ends in ct, the t is dropped, and the c unites with s to form x). Any k-sound before t = c.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To lead,</i>	dūc-ërë,	dux-i (duc-s-i),	duc-tum.
<i>To cover,</i>	tēg-ërë,	tex-i (teg-s-i),	tec-tum (teg-tum).
<i>To draw.</i>	trāh-ërë,	trax-i (trah-s-i),	trac-tum (trah-tum).

	Infinitive	Perfect	Supine
<i>To live,</i>	<i>viv-ērē,</i>	<i>vix-i (viv-s-i),</i>	<i>vix-tum (viv-tum).</i>
<i>To quench,</i>	<i>extingu-ērē,</i>	<i>extinx-i (extingu-s-i),</i>	<i>extinc-tum</i>
			<i>(extingu-tum)</i>
<i>To boil,</i>	<i>cōqu-ērē,</i>	<i>cox-i (coqu-s-i),</i>	<i>cox-tum (coqu-tum).</i>

We class here also,

	Infinitive	Perfect	Supine
<i>To flow,</i>	<i>flu-ērē (fluv-),</i>	<i>flux-i (fluv-s-i),</i>	<i>flux-um (fluv-sum)</i>
<i>To build,</i>	<i>stru-ērē (struc-),</i>	<i>strux-i (struc-s-i),</i>	<i>struc-tum.</i>

3. d or t before s either (a) is dropped, or (b) passes into s.

	Infinitive	Perfect	Supine
(a) <i>To divide,</i>	<i>divid-ērē,</i>	<i>divis-i (divid-s-i),</i>	<i>divi-sum (divid-sum)</i>
(b) <i>To yield, go,</i>	<i>cēd-ērē,</i>	<i>cess-i (ced-s-i),</i>	<i>ces-sum (ced-sum).</i>
<i>To send,</i>	<i>mitt-ērē,</i>	<i>mis-i (mit-s-i),</i>	<i>mis-sum (mit-sum).</i>

4. (a) m or r before s sometimes passes into s.

	Infinitive	Perfect	Supine
<i>To press,</i>	<i>prēm-ērē,</i>	<i>press-i (prem-s-i),</i>	<i>pres-sum (prem-sum).</i>
<i>To bear,</i>	<i>gēr-ērē,</i>	<i>gess-i (ger-s-i),</i>	<i>ges-tum (ger-tum).</i>

(b.) But if m be retained, it assumes p before it.

	Infinitive	Perfect	Supine
<i>To take,</i>	<i>sūm-ērē,</i>	<i>sum-ps-i (sum-s-i),</i>	<i>sump-tum (sum-tum).</i>

5. If the stem ends in rg, the g is dropped before s.

	Infinitive	Perfect	Supine
<i>To scatter, sow,</i>	<i>sparg-ērē,</i>	<i>spars-i (sparg-s-i),</i>	<i>spar-sum.</i>

EXERCISE.

(402.) Vocabulary.

<i>To bind, surround,</i>	<i>cingere (cinx-, cinct-, 401, 2).</i>	<i>Rampart,</i>	<i>vallūm, i.</i>
<i>To draw up,</i>	<i>instruere (instrux-, instruct-, 401, 2).</i>	<i>Triple, triplex,</i>	<i>(triplic) is (107).</i>
<i>To shut,</i>	<i>claudere (claus-, claus-, 401, 3, a).</i>	<i>Janus,</i>	<i>Janus, i.</i>
<i>To retreat,</i>	<i>recedere (re+cedere, cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b).</i>	<i>Numa,</i>	<i>Numa, æ.</i>
<i>To approach,</i>	<i>accedere (ad+cedere, cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b).</i>	<i>Veteran,</i>	<i>veterānus, æ, ūm.</i>
<i>To grant,</i>	<i>concedere (con+cedere, cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b).</i>	<i>In three divisions,</i>	<i>tripartitō (adv.)</i>
<i>To bear, carry on,</i>	<i>gerere (401, 4, a).</i>	<i>Suddenly,</i>	<i>repentē (adv.).</i>
<i>To spend,</i>	<i>consumere (con+sumere, sumpt-, sumpt-, 401, 4, b).</i>	<i>By-night,</i>	<i>noctū (adv.).</i>
		<i>There,</i>	<i>ibi (adv.).</i>
		<i>Dragon,</i>	<i>drāco, (drācōn) is (333).</i>
		<i>Arms,</i>	<i>armā, ōrum (used only in plural).</i>
		<i>Neighbouring,</i>	<i>finitimus, æ, ūm.</i>
		<i>State,</i>	<i>civitas, (civitat) is (293).</i>

(403.) Examples.

(a) <i>In all directions.</i>	<i>In omnes partes.</i>
(b) <i>Upon an expedition.</i>	<i>In expeditiōnem.</i>

(404.) *Translate into English.*

In tuā epistolā nihil mīhi scripsistī de tuis rebus.—Bar-
nari vallō et fossā (55, a) hibernā cinxerunt.—Cæsār triplī-
cem āciem instruxit lēgiōnum vētērānarum.—Rōmāni tem-
plum Jāni hīs post Numæ regnum clausērunt.—Impērātor
exercitum in duas partes dīvisit.—Cæsār tripartitō milites
ēquitesque in expēditionem misit.—Prīncipes rēpentē ex
oppidō cum cōpiis rēcēssērunt.—Milites noctū usquē ad
castrā accessērunt.—Cæsār obsidibus (54) libertātem cen-
cessit.—Germāni cum Helvētiis bellum gesserunt.—Māg-
num et grāvē ōnūs armōrum milites pressit.—Explorātor ad
castrā hostium accessit, atque ibī māgnam partem diēi con-
sumpsit.—Cadmus dentēs drācōnis sparsit.

(405.) *Translate into Latin.*

The ambassador wrote nothing concerning his own affairs.—
The scout approached even-up to the walls of the town.—The
lieutenant sent-away messengers in all directions.—Cæsar sent-
away the horsemen in three divisions into the neighbouring
states.—Cadmus slew (interfēcit) the dragon and sowed
his (eius) teeth.—Cæsar drew up the veteran legions in (abl.)
a triple line.—The soldiers spent a great part of the day in the
camp.—The enemy approached the town by-night.—The
townsmen shut the gates.—The Helvetians retreated by night
with all (their) forces.—Cæsar sent-away the scouts in three
divisions upon an expedition.—The general sent-away the mes-
sengers by night in all directions.—The soldiers approached
even-up-to the rampart, and there spent a great part of the day

LESSON LXV.

Perfect-stem.—Third Conjugation, continued.

(406.) CLASS II.—*Perfect-stem adds ū to the Verb-stem.*

(a) *Without change of the verb-stem (see list, 666, II., a),*

2. g.,

To nourish, maintain,

al-ērē,

āl-ū-ī,

al-tum.

To honour, cultivate,

col-ērē.

cōl-ū-ī,

cul-tum.

(b) With change of verb-stem (666, II., b).

To place,	pōn-ērē,	pōs-ā-i,*	pōs-i-tum
To beget,	gign-ērē,	gēn-ū-i,	gēn-i-tum.

CLASS III.—Perfect-stem adds v or iv to the Verb-stem.

(a) Adds v (and lengthens stem-vowel, if short). (List, 666 III., a.)

[These generally drop n, r, or sc,† or change the order of the letter They must be carefully observed, as they occur in the vocabularies.]

To despise,	spērn-ērē,	spērēv-i,	spērē-tum (spērn-tum)
To be accustomed,	suesc-ērē,	suēv-i,	suē-tum.

(b) Adds iv (list, 666, III., b).

To seek, strive after,	pēt-ērē,	pēt-iv-i,	pēt-i-tum.
------------------------	----------	-----------	------------

EXERCISE.

(407.) Vocabulary.

Spaniard, Hispanūs, I.
 Command, jussūs, ūs.
 Against, contrā (prep., acc.).
 People, pōpūlūs, I.
 Immediately, stātīm.
 Avenus, Āviēnūs, I.
 To instigate, stir up, instigāre
 (āv-, āt-).
 To place in, to put into, impōnērē
 (in+pōnērē, 406, b).
 To remove, rēmōvērē (rēmōv-, rē-
 mōt-, re+mōvērē).
 To arrange, distribute, dispōnērē
 (dis+pōnērē, 406, b).
 To relate, commēmōrārē (av-, āt-,
 con+mēmōrārē).

Property, fāmīliā, ō.

To cross over, transirē (trans+irē,
 iv-, it-).
 To decrec, determine, dēcernērē
 (dēcrēv-, dēcrēt-, de+cernērē).
 To discourse, dissērērē (dissere-,
 dissert-, dis+sērērē).
 To plunder, dirīpērē (ripu-, rept-
 di+rāpērē).
 A beast of burden, jumentum, I.
 Sacred rites, sacrā, orum (n., pl.)
 Instead of, prō (prep., abl.).
 Advice, counsel, consiliūm, I.
 On account of, ob (prep., acc.).
 To despise, spērnērē (406, III., a).
 Winter, hiems, (hiēm) is (393).

(408.) Examples.

(a) By the command of Cæsar.

Jussū (abl., 55, a) Cæsaris.

* Pōnē=pōsīno; pōsui=pos-iv-i.

† In these verbs the n or sc does not properly belong to the root, but is employed simply to strengthen the present indicative and infinitive; to know, nō-ere, strengthened nosc-ere, &c.

‡ Observe that the compounds of rāpērē, fīcērē, cāpērē, with prepositions, change a into i in the infinitive; dirīpērē, conficērē accipērē.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| (b) <i>To place on shipboard.</i> | In nāvēs impōnērē (<i>put into ships</i>). |
| (c) <i>With (near) the army.</i> | Ād exercītum. |
| <i>On the borders of the Æduans.</i> | Ad fines Æduōrum |

Ād is often used by Cæsar in the sense of *near* or *with* (i. e., *along with*).

(409.) *Translate into English.*

Hispānī, jussū Cæsārīs, eos exercītūs quōs (165) contrā pōpūlum Rōmānum multos jam annos (191, a) āluērunt, stātim dimīsērunt.—Aviēnē (voc.), quōd (*because*) in Itāliā milītes pōpūli Rōmāni contrā rempūblicam instigāstī (349, N.); et, prō militibus, tuam fāmiliam in nāves impōsuistī; ōb eas res, āb exercītū meō te rēmōveo.—Cæsār lēgiones quas in Itāliā, hibernōrum causā (135, II., b), disposūērat, ad se rēvēcāvit.—Cūr consīlium meum sprēvistī?—Cæsār, his de causīs quas commēmōrāvī, Rhēnum transīre dēcrēvērāt.—Multī sālūtem sibi (dat.) in fugā pētīvērunt (*or* petīērunt, 349, N.).—Cæsār tōtam hiēmē (191, a) ipse ad exercitum (408, c) mănere dēcrēvit.—Cæsār duās lēgiones ad fines Æduōrum pōsuit.

(410.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Spaniards had maintained an army (for) many years (191, a).—Orgetorix maintained, at-his-own-expense (sumptū suō), a large number of soldiers.—Cæsar placed the camp on-the-borders-of (408, c) the Sequanians.—Socrates discoursed concerning (de) the immortality of the soul.—The pirates plundered many towns.—Cæsar distributed three legions in Italy, for-the-sake-of winter-quarters.—Thou-hast-despised my counsels; thou-hast-instigated the soldiers against the republic; thou hast put beasts-of-burden instead of soldiers into the ships: on-account-of these things, I remove thee from my army.—The Romans honoured most-religiously (maximā religione) the sacred-rites of Jupiter.—Cæsar, for (de) these reasons, had determined to cross the Rhine.—Many soldiers sought safety for themselves (by) flight.—The inhabitants sought peace from (a) the Romans.

LESSON LXVI.

Perfect-stem.—Third Conjugation, continued.(411.) CLASS IV.—*Perfect-stem reduplicates the first Consonant.*

[Some of these present *vowel-changes*, which must be carefully observed. (a) When the first vowel is *i* or *u*, the first consonant is reduplicated with that vowel; (b) in other verbs, with *ē*. (c) The compounds of *dārē*, *to give*, with *ī*.]

(a) First vowel *i*, *o*, or *u*.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To learn</i> ,	disc-ērē,	dī-dīc-ī (<i>s dropped</i>),	(no supine).
<i>To demand</i> ,	posc-ere,	pō-posc-ī,	(no supine).
<i>To beat</i> ,	tund-ērē,	tū-tūd-ī,	tū-sum (tud-sum).

(b) Other verbs reduplicate with *e* (note *vowel-changes* in stems).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To fall</i> ,	cād-ērē,	cē-cīd-ī (<i>i short</i>),	cā-sum (cad-sum).
<i>To drive, repel</i> ,	pell-ērē,	pē-pūl-ī,	pul-sum.
<i>To fell, kill</i> ,	cād-ērē,	cē-cīd-ī (<i>i long</i>),	cæs-um.

(c) Compounds of *dārē*.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To add</i> ,	ad-dērē,	ad-dīd-ī,	ad-dī-tum.
<i>To lose</i> ,	per-dērē,	per-dīd-ī,	per-dī-tum.

• EXERCISE.

(412.) *Vocabulary.*

The whole, ūnīversus, ā, ūm.

Duty, service, mūnus, (mūnēr) is (345).

Walls, mæniā, īm (pl., neut.).

Coming together, conflict, congressus, ūs.

Seventy, septuaginta (indecl.).

To touch, tangērē (tātīg-, tact-, 411, b).

To spare, parcērē (pēperc-, parcīt-, para-; governs *dative*).

To surround, cingēre (401, 2).

Nobody, nēmo, (nemīn) is (m. and f., 25, a).

Woman, mūlier, īs (f., 25, a).

Child, infant, infans, (infant) is (c. 25, a).

Thirty, trīginta.

Eighty, octōginta.

Immense, immensus, ā, ūm.

Sum-of-money, pēcūnia, æ.

To add, addēre (411, c).

(413.) *Examples.*

(1) *To demand peace of* Cæsar.

(a) Cæsārēm pācēm poscērē; or (b) pācēm a Cæsārē poscērē.

Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *demanding* (*a*) govern two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing; but (*b*) the *person* may be put in the ablative with the preposition *ā* or *āb*.

- | | |
|---|--|
| (2) <i>About twenty.</i> | Circiter viginti. |
| (3) <i>To give one's self wholly up</i> | Tōtum sē dārē (= <i>to give one's self whole up</i>). |
| (4) <i>The leader spared women.</i> | Dux mulieribus pēpercit. |

Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *sparing* govern the dative.

☞ Observe, the perfect of *cādērē*, *to fall*, is *cēcīdī*; of *cādērē*, *to fell or kill*, *cēcīdī*.

(414.) *Translate into English.*

Lēgātī ad Cēsarem vēnērunt, eumque pācem (413, 1, *a*) pōposcērunt.—Hōc ā mē (413, 1, *b*) mūnus ūniversā prōvinciā pōposcit.—Puerī linguam Latīnam dīdīcērant.—Ā Grācis Galli urbes mēnibus cingērē dīdīcērunt.—Nostri, in primō congressū, circiter septuaginta cēcīdērunt; in hīs Quintus Fulgīnius.—Arbōr vētus cēcīdīt, quam (165) ferrō (55, *a*) nēmo cecīdit.—Lēgātus, simūlac prōvinciam tētigit, inertīe (dat.) tōtum se dēdit.—Postquam Cēsār vēnit, obsīdes, armā, servos pōposcit.—Milites nōn mulieribus, nōn infantibus, pēpercerunt.—Cēsār lēgiōnibus cohortēs circiter trīginta addīdit.—Mors nullī (194, R. 1) homīnum (*partit. gen.*) pēpercit (413, 4).

(415.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Æduans demanded peace of Cēsar (413, 1, *b*).—The whole province demanded peace of the Romans (413, 1, *a*).—Of-our-men (nostri, nom., pl.) about eighty fell; among them, Labienus.—Have you (135, II., *a*) learned the Latin language?—The farmer felled very-many (plurimas) trees in the wood.—As soon as the lieutenant touched the province, he plundered many towns.—The general demanded seventy hostages, and an immense sum of money.—The old trees fell.—This service the general demanded of me.—The leader spared all the temples of the gods; but the soldiers spared not (non) women nor (non) children.—Cēsar added to the foot soldiers about twenty cohorts.—Cēsar added to the foot-soldiers thirty horse-soldiers.

LESSON LXVII.

Perfect-stem.—Third Conjugation, continued(416.) CLASS V.—*Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel of the Verb.*(a) *Without vowel-change.*

To read, gather,	lĕg-ĕrĕ,	lĕg-i,	lec-tum.
To conquer,	vinc-ĕrĕ,	vic-i,	vic-tum.

(b) *With vowel-change.*

To drive,	ag-ĕrĕ,	ĕg-i,	ac-tum.
To break,	frang-ĕrĕ,	frĕg-i,	frac-tum.

(c) *io verbs (199).*

To fly,	fŭg-iĭ,	fŭg-ĕrĕ,	fŭg-i,	fŭg-i-tum.
To take,	căp-iĭ,	căp-ĕrĕ,	cĕp-i,	cap-tum.
To cast,	jăc-iĭ,	jăc-ĕrĕ,	jĕc-i,	jac-tum.
To dig,	fŏd-iĭ,	fŏd-ĕrĕ,	fŏd-i,	fos-sum.
To make, do,	făc-iĭ,	făc-ĕrĕ,	fĕc-i,	fac-tum.

EXERCISE.

(417.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>Remains, remnant, rĕliquiæ, ârum</i> (pl.) (57, B.).	<i>To hurl, conficĕrĕ</i> (jĕc-, ject-, con-+ jăcĕrĕ).
<i>To collect, colligĕrĕ</i> (lĕg-, lect-, con-+ lĕgĕrĕ).	<i>To undertake, suscipĕrĕ</i> (cĕp-, cept-, sub-+căpĕrĕ).
<i>To receive, take back, rĕcipĕrĕ</i> (cĕp-, cept-, rĕ-+căpĕrĕ).	<i>To finish, conficĕrĕ</i> (fĕc-, fect-, con-+ facĕrĕ).
<i>Headlong, prăceps, (prăcipit) is</i> (adj., 107).	<i>To begin, incipĕrĕ</i> (incĕp-, incept- in-+căpĕrĕ).
<i>To receive, accipĕre</i> (cĕp-, cept-, ad-+ căpĕre).	<i>Safe, tătus, ō, ūm.</i>
<i>To bring-together, to compel, cŏgĕrĕ</i> (coĕg-, coact-, con-+ĕgĕrĕ).	<i>Cappadocia, Cappădŏcia, æ.</i>
<i>To break through, perfingĕrĕ</i> (frĕg-, fract-, per-+frangĕrĕ).	<i>A district, păgus, i.</i>
<i>Dart, javelin, tĕlum, i.</i>	<i>Ægypt, Ægyptus, i (f.).</i>
	<i>Easily, făcilĕ</i> (adv.).
	<i>Trial, jădicium, i.</i>
	<i>Family of slaves, fămilia, æ.</i>

(418.) *Examples.*

(a) <i>To betake one's self back.</i>	Sĕ rĕcipĕrĕ
<i>He went back to his house.</i>	Sĕ dŏmŭm rĕcĕpĭt.
(b) <i>Within the memory of our</i>	Patrum nostrŏrum mĕ
<i>fathers.</i>	mŏriă (abl., 55, a).

(c) *Lucius Cassius, the consul.* | L. Cassius, consul.

The (*prænomen*) first name is rarely written out. L. stands for Lucius T for Titus, &c. Consul is in apposition (225, a) with *L. Cassius*.

(d) *In mid-summer.* | *Mēdiā æstātē* (118, II. c).

(419.) *Translatē into English.*

Servus meus orationes et historias et carmina legit.—Legatus reliquias exercitus colligit, innumerisque tutis per Cappadociam se in Asiam recepit.—Nostri acriter impetum fecerunt atque precipites hostes egerunt.—Labienus, cum his copiis quas a Cesare acciperat, ad fines Aeduorum contendit.—Pompeius magnam ex Asia et Aegypto classem coegerat.—Milites facile (adv.) hostium aciem perfrangerunt atque in eos impetum fecerunt.—Hic pagus unus, patrum nostrorum memoria, L. Cassium consulem (418, c) interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jugum (323, N.) miserat.—Hostes subito tela in nostros conjecerunt.—Pompeius bellum verò (in the spring, 118, II., c) suscepit, mediā æstātē confecit.

(420.) *Translate into Latin.*

The general had collected (*cōgōre*) great forces.—Pompey brought-together a great army from Asia and Egypt.—Have you read the books of Cicero?—The general collected the remnant of his army, and betook himself into Gaul.—Our (men) drove the enemy headlong, and slew many.—Labienus had received four legions from Caesar.—Labienus, with the legions which he had received from Caesar, hastened to the confines of the Aeduans.—Orgetorix brought-together to the trial all his family-of-slaves from every side.—The enemy brought-together all (their) ships into one place.—The Romans easily broke-through the line-of-battle of the Aeduans.—Caesar finished the great war in-mid-summer (418, d) which he had begun in-the-spring (118, II., c).

LESSON LXVIII.

Perfect-stem. — Third Conjugation, concluded.

(421.) CLASS VI.—*Perfect-stem = simple Verb-stem.*

(a) Stems ending in u or v (list, 666, VI., a).

<i>To sharpen,</i>	accū-ērē,	accū-i,	accū-tum.
<i>To roll,</i>	volv-ērē,	volv-i,	volv-tum.

(b) Consonant-stems (list, 666, VI., b).

<i>To turn,</i>	vert-ērē,	vert-i	ver-sum.
-----------------	-----------	--------	----------

(c) Compounds of cando and fendo (*obs.*) belong here

g.

<i>To burn,</i>	incend-ērē,	incend-i,	incen-sum
<i>To defend, ward off,</i>	dēfend-ērē,	dēfend-i,	dēfen-sum.

EXERCISE.

(422.) *Vocabulary.*

1 *he back, tergum, i.*

2 *to flow together, confluere (conflux-, conflux-, con+fluēre, 401, 2).*

Discipline, disciplinā, æ.

Austerity, severity, sēvēritas, (severitat) is (293).

To dissolve, dissolvēre (solv-, solūt-, dis+solvēre).

To return, rēvertēre (rēvert-, revers-, rē+vertēre).

To appoint, to station, to determine, constituere (stitū-, stitūt-, con+stitūere).

To divide, to distribute, distribuere (bū-, būt-, dis+tribuere).

Desirous, covetous, cūpidus, ā, ūm (governs genitive).

To know, learn, cognoscere (cognōv-, cognīt-, con+noscere).

To turn, vertere (421, b).

(423.) *Examples.*

(a) *The general appointed a day for the council.*

Impērātor diem concēlii (dat.) constituit.

(b) *What (number of) long ships he had.*

Quidquid nāvium (180) longārum habēbat.

(c) *To divide or distribute among.*

Distribuere (with acc. of thing, and dat. of person).

(424.) *Translate into English.*

Hostes tergā vertērunt.—Divitiæ (57, R.) quæ ad Rōmam confluxērunt, mōrum disciplinam sēvēritatemque dissolvērunt.—Cæsar diem cum lēgātis constituit.—Dies, quam Cæsar constituerat: cum lēgātis, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum

(150) *rēvertērunt*.—*Mīlites sēse* (145, c) *fortīter* (215, 2) *dēfendērunt*.—*Hostes cōpias suas in tres partes distribuerant*.—*Cæsar, quidquid nāvium longārum hābēbat, lēgātis præfectisque* (423, c) *distribuit*.—*Prōcellæ fluctūs vastos ad littorā volvērant*.—*Cæsar exercitum flūmen* (113, II., a) *transducere constituit*.—*Cæsar Dumnōrigem Ædum sēcum* (125, II., b) *ducere constituit, quod (conj.) eum cupidum impērii* (synt., 698, b, 1) *cognōverat*.—*Ædū ex itinēre dōmum* (113, III., R.) *revertērunt*.

(425.) *Translate into Latin.*

The soldiers defended the city very bravely (376).—The general stationed the foot-soldiers near (ad, 408, c) the wall of the town.—On-the-next-day (118, II., c) Cæsar stationed all the horse-soldiers in-front-of (prō) the camp.—The chiefs of the states returned to Cæsar.—The day which Cæsar had appointed for the council came, and the chiefs of the states returned to him.—Our (men) turned their backs.—The riches of the Romans had dissolved (their) discipline and austerity of manners.—What money (423, b) he had he distributed among (423, c) the lieutenants and soldiers.—The Æduans divided their forces into two parts.—The tempests rolled vast waves to the stars.—The general determined to take (ducere) the lieutenant with him.—The seas were rolling great waves to the shores.

LESSON LXIX.

Perfect-stem.—Fourth Conjugation.

(426.) THE perfect-stem in the fourth conjugation is formed in five ways.

- | | | | |
|------|------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| I. | By adding <i>iv</i> to verb-stem ; | <i>aud-irē,</i> | <i>aud-iv .</i> |
| II. | “ “ “ | <i>āpēr-irē,</i> | <i>āpēr-ū.</i> |
| III. | “ s “ | <i>sēp-irē,</i> | <i>sep-s.</i> |
| IV. | lengthening stem-vowel ; | <i>vēn-irē,</i> | <i>vēn.</i> |
| V | taking simple verb-stem ; | <i>compēr-irē,</i> | <i>compēr</i> |

(427.) On this table, observe that *Class*I: contains *most* of the verbs of the fourth conjugation.[Numerous examples have already occurred. Any peculiar *supines* are given in the vocabularies.]II. contains *four* simple verbs (see list, 667, II.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To open, uncover,</i>	ăpăr-irē,	ăpăr-ŭ-ī,	ăper-tum.
<i>To leap,</i>	săl-irē,	săl-ŭ-ī,	sal-tum.

III. contains *eight* simple verbs (see list, 667, III.).

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To bind,</i>	vinc-irē,	vinx-ī (vinc-s-ī),	vinc-tum.
<i>To think,</i>	sent-irē.	sens-ī (sent-s-ī),	sen-sum (sent-sum).

IV. contains but *one* verb.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To come,</i>	vēn-irē,	vēn-ī,	ven-tum.

V. contains *two* verbs.

	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>To ascertain, find,</i>	compēr-irē,	compēr-ī,	comper-tum.
<i>To discover,</i>	rēpēr-irē,	rēpēr-ī,	rēper-tum.

EXERCISE.

(428.) *Vocabulary.**To leap down, dēsălīre* (dēsălŭ- and dēsili-, dēsult-, dē+sălīre).*To come near, to approach, apprōpinquare* (ăd+prōpinquare, av-, at-), with *dat.**To agree, consentire* (con+sentire, 427, III.).*To disagree, dissentire* (dis+sentire, 427, III.).*To come to, reach, arrive at, pervēnire* (pēr+vēnire, 427, IV.).*To come together, assemble, convenire* (cōn+venire, 427, IV.).*To find, invēnire* (in+vēnire, 427 IV.).*Thither, to that place, eō* (adv.).*To open, āperire* (427, II.).*When, quum.**Youth, jūventūs, (jūventūt) is* (f.).*To lay waste, pōpŭlārī, dep.* (pōpŭlāt-).*After that, postquam* (adv.).*Example.*(a) *In a battle of cavalry.* | Ēquestri praeliō.*Rule of Syntax.*—The ablative is used to express the *man* ner of an action, especially with an adjective.(429.) *Translate into English.*

Mīlites ex nāvibus dēsălīērunt et hostibus (391, 2) apprōpinquārunt (349, N.).—Oppidāni portas āpēruērunt, et se atque oppidum Cēsāri dēdērunt.—Hostes inter se dissensērunt.—Omnes cives ūnā mentē (abl., 428, a) consensērunt.

runt.—*Helvëtiî jam per angustias cōpias suas transduxērunt, et in Æduorum fines pervēnērunt, eōrumque agros pōpūlabantur.*—*Cæsar cum Lābiēno Nūmantiam (713) pervēnit, ibique consūles invēnit.*—*Quum milītes eō convēnērunt, nāves ūnum in lōcum coegērunt.*—*Eō postquam Cæsar pervēnit, obsīdes et arma pōposcit.*

(430.) *Translate into Latin.*

After-that the townsmen saw the standards, they opened the gates, and gave themselves (up) to Cæsar.—The Germans, in the cavalry battle (428, a), leaped-down from (their) horses.—The general led the army through the pass, and on the seventh day arrived at the boundaries of the Germans.—The townsmen leaped-down from the wall.—All the soldiers agreed (with) one mind and voice (v o x).—When Cæsar arrived-at the town, the townsmen opened the gates.—When the general reached Numantia, he called together the citizens.—When the horsemen reached the town, the townsmen opened the gates.—The lieutenant led-back the soldiers to the town, and there found the general.

§ 8.

FORMS OF TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION, PASSIVE.

LESSON LXX.

Tenses of Verbs for Completed Action.—Indicative Passive.

(431.) THE tenses for completed action, passive (*perfect, pluperfect, future perfect*), are compounded of the perfect participle passive and of the tenses of the verb *esse, to be*: thus, *āmātūs sum, I have been loved; āmātūs es, thou hast been loved, &c.*

(432.) (a) The perfect participle of any verb is the form or which the *supine* is the accusative, and is inflected (like an adjective of three terminations) with the endings *ūs, ā, ūm*: thus:

<small>Supines.</small>	<small>Perf. Part.</small>	
Āmāt-ūm,	āmāt-ūs, ā, ūm,	<i>loved.</i>
Mōnīt-ūm,	mōnīt-ūs, ā, ūm,	<i>advised.</i>
Rect-ūm.	rect-ūs, ā, ūm,	<i>ruled.</i>
Audīt-ūm,	audīt-ūs, ā, ūm,	<i>heard.</i>

(b) The perfect participle, then, of any verb, is formed by adding the inflection-endings *ūs, ā, ūm* to the supine-stem.

(433.)

PARADIGM

PERFECT PASSIVE.	
āmātūs, ā, ūm,	Singular. sūm, <i>I have been loved.</i> ēs, <i>thou hast been loved.</i> est, <i>he, she, it, has been loved.</i>
	Plural. sūmūs, <i>we have been loved.</i> estis, <i>ye or you have been loved.</i> sunt, <i>they have been loved.</i>
PLUPERFECT.	
āmātūs, ā, ūm,	Singular. ērām, <i>I had been loved.</i> ērās, <i>thou hadst been loved.</i> ērāt, <i>he, she, it, had been loved.</i>
	Plural. ērāmūs, <i>we had been loved.</i> ērātis, <i>ye or you had been loved.</i> erant, <i>they had been loved.</i>
FUTURE PERFECT.	
āmātūs, ā, ūm,	Singular. ēro, <i>I shall have been loved.</i> ēris, <i>thou wilt have been loved.</i> ērit, <i>he, she, it, will have been loved.</i>
	Plural. ērīmūs, <i>we shall have been loved.</i> ērītis, <i>you will have been loved.</i> erunt, <i>they will have been loved.</i>

(434.) Vocabulary.

To rout, to defeat, pellere (pēpūl-, puls-, 411, b).

To divulge, enuntiare (ē+nuntiāre, āv-, āt-).

Sure, certain, certus, a, um.

To drive back, repellere (rēpūl-, repuls-, rē+pellere).

Private information, indicium, l.

Beginning, initium, l.

Casticus, Casticus, l.

Conference, colloquium, l.

To hold, obtinere (obtīnū-, obtēn-, ob+tēnere).

Departure, discessus, ūs.

Nobility, nobilitas, (nobilitat) is cf. 293).

(435.) Examples.

(a) To inform any one.

Aliquē certiorē facere (= to make any one more certain).

(b) Cæsar was informed.

Cæsar certior factus est (= Cæsar was made more certain).

(c) All Gaul is divided into three parts.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres.

The perfect passive participle is sometimes used with *est* as an adjective, and is then to be rendered as a *present tense*; e. g., in (c), *est divisa*=*is divided*.

(436.) *Translate into English.*

Miles vulnerātus est.—Bella gesta ērant.—Exercitus Cassii ab Helvētiis pulsus ērat, et sub jūgum missus ērat.—Ea res Helvētiis (54) per indīcium enuntiata est.—Helvētī de Cæsāris adventu certiores facti sunt.—Ūbi de Cæsāris adventu Helvētī certiores facti sunt, lēgātos ad eum misērunt.—Barbāri tēlis (93, II., b, R.) et mūnitione rēpulsi sunt.—Īnītiū fūgæ a Dumnōrige et ejus ēquitibus factum est.—Lēgāti a Divitiāco, Æduo (225, a) ad Cæsarem missi erant.—Pāter Castīci regnum in Sēquānis multos annos (191, *Rule*) obtīnuērat et a sēnātu pōpuli Rōmāni āmicus (80, a) appellātus ērat.—Dies collōquio (54) constitūtus est, ex eō diē quintus.

(437.) *Translate into Latin.*

The centurions of the first ranks were wounded on the same day (118, II., c).—Cæsar was informed (435, a) of (de) the approach of the enemy.—The general had been informed of the departure (*discessus*) of the Germans.—The beginning of the flight had been made by the soldiers of the tenth legion.—The tenth legion had been defeated by the Germans, and had been sent under the yoke.—The conspiracy of the nobility was divulged to the Helvetians through private-information.—The war had been carried-on (for) many years (191, *Rule*).—The enemy were driven-back by the darts of the soldiers.—Ambassadors were sent by Cassius the consul (225, a) to the chiefs.—The Æduans were called friends (80, a) by the senate of the Roman people.—The townsmen were wounded by the darts of the soldiers.—The horsemen of the enemy were driven-back by the darts of the soldiers.—A day had been appointed for the conference

§ 9.

PARTICIPLES. (LXXI.—LXXV.)

(438.) THE *Participle* presents the idea of the verb under the form of an adjective : (a) the *rising* sun ; (b) I saw the boy *writing* a letter. Sometimes, as in (a), its use is wholly adjective ; again, as in (b), it governs the case of its verb. There are two *active* participles in Latin, the participle of the *present* and the participle of the *future* ; two *passive*, the *perfect* and the *verbal* in *dus*.

LESSON LXXI.

Present Participle Active.

(439.) (a) THE endings of the present participle active for the four conjugations are,

1.	2.	3.	4.
-ans,	-ens,	ens,	-iens.

(b) By adding these endings to the stems respectively of the verbs *ā-m-āre*, *mō-n-ēre*, *rē-g-ērē*, *aud-īrē*, we obtain the present participle active :

<i>Loving,</i>	<i>advising,</i>	<i>ruling,</i>	<i>hearing.</i>
Ā-m-ans,	mō-n-ens,	rē-g-ens,	aud-ī-ens.

(440.) The present participle is declined like an adjective of the third class (108).

Singular.	Plural.
N. V. Āmans.	N. V. Āmantēs, āmantiā.
Gen. Āmantīs.	Gen. Āmantīūm.
Dat. Āmantī, &c.	Dat. Āmantībūs, &c.

Rem. The abl. sing. ending is *i* when the part. is used strictly as an adj. ; e. g. in *florentī rosā*, in a *blooming* rose.

(a) Observe carefully that the Latin present participle active expresses *incomplete* or *continued* action; the language has no *active* participle to express *complete* action. We cannot translate the English *having loved* by any Latin active participle.

(b) But *deponent* verbs (206) have both participles, the *present* and the *perfect*; *exhorting*, *hort-ans*; *having exhorted*, *hort-âtus*.

EXERCISE.

(441.) Vocabulary.

To rise, *öriri* (*dep.*, *ort.*).

To desire, *cüpērē* (*id.*, *iv.*, *it.*, 406, III., *b*).

Labour, *toił*, *lăbör*, (*lăbör*) *is* (*m.*, 319).

Watching, *watchfulness*, *vigilantiä*, *s*.

Especially, *præsertim* (*adv.*).

To depart, *discēdērē* (*dis*+*cēdere*, 401, 3, *b*).

To weep, *flērē* (*flēv.*, *flēt.*, 395, II.).

To look upon or at, *intuērī* (*dep.*).

All, the whole, *cunctus*, *ä*, *üm*.

To worship, adore, *ädöräre*.

Eye, *öculus*, *i*.

A Persian, *Persä*, *s*.

To doubt, *dübitārē* (*av.*, *ät.*).

To set out, *pröfīcisci* (*dep.*, *pröfect.*).

To sit, *sēdērē* (*sēd.*, *sess.*, 394, V.).

Firmament, heaven, *cælum*, *i*.

To shine, *mīcäre* (389, *EF*).

The sun, *söl*, (*söl*) *is* (*m.*, 319).

Full, *plēnüs*, *ä*, *üm* (with *gen.*).

To be wanting, *de-essē* (with *dat.*).

Star, *stellä*, *s*.

To set (e. g., as the heavenly bodies), *occidärē* (*occid.*, *occäs.*, *ob*+*cädērē*).

To throw before, *pröjicērē* (*jēc*-*ject*, *pro*+*jäcērē*).

(442.) (a) Recollect that, to form pres. part. act., you add to the stem *ans* in 1st conj.; e. g., *am-ans*: *ens* in 2d and 3d conj.; e. g., *mön-ens*, *dīc-ens*: *iens* in 4th conj.; e. g., *aud-iens*. Also, add *iens* in the *id* verbs (199) of 3d conj.; e. g., *cüp-io*, *cüp-iens*; *fac-io*, *fac-iens*.

(b) In *deponent* verbs, the same rules apply: *hort-äri*, *hort-äns*; *ör-iri*, *ör-iens*; *intu-eri*, *intu-ens*, &c. The perf. act. part. in deponents adds *üs*, *ä*, *üm* to the supine-stem: *hort-äri*, *hortat-üs*, &c.

(c) The participle is used to *abridge* discourse.

(1) He heard me when I { He heard me saying that.
said that= { *Mē id dīcentēm audīvit.*

(2) God, who governs all { God, governing all things.
things= { *Deüs, omniä gūbernāns.*

(3) To him that desires= { (The man) desiring.
Cāpiēti.

(*) He threw himself at $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He threw himself before Cæsar, at} \\ \text{his feet.} \end{array} \right.$
Cæsar's feet, $\left(\begin{array}{l} \text{Sē Cæsari ād pēdēs prōjēcit.} \end{array} \right.$

(e) Can enim, vero, or autem stand first in a clause or sentence? (No.)

(443.) *Translate into English.*

Mē id dicentem audivistine?—Persæ sōlem oriētem (442, c) ādōrant.—Lābiēnus, suos (*his men*) hortātus, cūpientibus signum dat.—Nōn enim lābor aut vīgīlantia, cūpienti præsertim āliquid (178, 5), Cassio deērat (267, b).—Cæsar ab hibernis in Itāliam discēdens, lēgātos convōcat.—Mūlieres flentes sēse Cæsari (442, d) ad pēdes prōjēcērunt.—Nēmo, cunctam intūens terram, dē dīvinā prōvidentiā dūbitābit.—Cæsar, in Italiā prōficiscens, lēgātos omnes ad sē rēvōcāvit.—Divitiācus, flens, ā Cæsare hęc (*these things*) pētēbat.—Cicēro Cātōnem vidit in hortō sēdentem.—Quantā (184, R. 1) est sāpientia Dei, omniā gūbernantis?

(444.) *Translate into Latin.*

[The words which illustrate the lesson are in *Italic*.]

The firmament is full of *shining* (438, a) stars.—No one, *when he looks at* (= looking, 442, c, 1) the firmament and stars, will doubt respecting (d e) the wisdom of God.—Did they hear me (135, II., a) *when I said* (= saying) that (i d)?—The barbarians were-worshipping the *setting* sun.—Labienus, *having exhorted* (440, b) his men, made an attack upon the enemy (in hostes).—Cæsar willingly gave the signal to the soldiers *when they desired it* (= desiring).—To *him that desires* (= desiring) anything, no labour will-be-wanting (267, b).—Cæsar, *departing* from winter-quarters, gives rewards to the soldiers.—The eye, not *seeing* itself (s ē, acc.), sees other-things (āliā).—The Æduans, *weeping*, threw themselves at the feet of Cæsar (442, d).—I saw my brother *sitting* in the garden yesterday.—How-great is the power of God, *who governs* (= governing) the world?

LESSON LXXII.

Participle Future Active.

(445.) THE ending of the future participle active is *urūs*, which, added to the *supine-stem*, forms the participle; *e. g.*,

About to love, or *one who will love*, *āmāt-ūrūs*.

About to advise, or *one who will advise*, *mōnīt-ūrūs*.

(446.) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The different tenses of *esse* (*to be*), joined with the participle future active, form what is called the *periphrastic conjugation*.

Pres. { *āmātūrūs sūm*, *I will love, am about to love, intend to love.*
āmātūrūs es, *thou*, &c., &c.
 So through all the persons.

Past. { *āmātūrūs ērām*, *I was about to love, intended to love, &c.*
āmātūrūs ēras, *thou*, &c., &c.
 So through all the persons.

Fut. { *āmātūrūs ēro*, *I shall be about to love, shall be on the point of lov-*
ing, &c.
āmātūrūs ēris, *thou*, &c., &c.
 So through all the persons.

EXERCISE.

(447.) *Vocabulary.*

To call upon, *invocāre* (*in*+*vōcāre*, *āv*-, *āt*-).

To collect into a flock, *congrēgāre* (*āv*-, *āt*-).

Foreign, *aliēnus*, *ā*, *ūm*.

To procure, *compārāre* (*āv*-, *āt*-, *con*+*pārāre*).

To last, *dūrāre* (*dūrāv*-, *dūrat*-).*

To implore, *implōrare* (*in*+*plorāre*, *āv*-, *āt*-).

Alone, *sōlus*, *ā*, *ūm* (194, 1).

To cross over, *trājicere* (*trājēc*-, *traject*-, *trans*+*jācere*).†

Ammon, a surname of Jupiter, *Hammōn*, *Is*.

To behold, *spectāre* (*āv*-, *āt*-).

To proceed, *pergēre* (*perrex*-, *perrect*-).

To consult, *consūlēre* (*consūlu*-, *consult*-).

(448.) *Example.*

The Athenians sent ambassadors to consult the oracle.

Athēniensēs lēgātos mīsērunt, ōrācūlum consultārōs.

* *Dūrāre*, transitive, = *to harden*; intrans., = *to become hard*, *i. e.*, to last.

† *Transjicere*, transit., = *to convey over*; intrans., = *to cross over*

Rule of Syntax.—The future active participle is used after a verb of motion to express the *design* of that motion.

(449.) *Translate into English.*

1. *Ävēs, in äliēnas terras migrātūræ, congregantur.*—*Cæsar, in Galliam præfectūrus, centuriōnes convocat.*—*Germanī, bellum gestūrī, Deōs invocāverunt.*—*Sapiens bonā (neut. pl.) comparat semper durātūrā.*

2. *Periphrastic Conjugation.*—*Cæsar de quartā vigiliā castrā mōtūrus est.*—*Scripturus sum.*—*Dumnōrix impērium suæ civitātis obtentūrus erat.*—*Impērator, cum solē decimā lēgiōne præfectūrus erat.*—*Ædūi auxiliū ā pōpulo Rōmano implōrātūri sunt.*—*Germanī bellum gestūrī erant.*

3. *Future Participle used to express a purpose* (448).—*Scīpio in Africam trājēcit, Carthāginem delētūrus.*—*Ingens hōmīnum multitūdō in urbem congrēgātur, lūdos spectātūrā.*—*Alexander in Asiam contendit, regnum Persarū occūpātūrus.*—*Alexander ad Jōvem Hammōnem pergit, consul tūrus de origine suā.*

(450.) *Translate into Latin.*

1. The soldiers, *when-about-to-set-out* for (in) Spain, called-upon the gods.—Many (men) have procured possessions (*bonā*) *which-will-not-last* (=not about-to-last).—The general, *when-about-to-cross* the river, sends-away the horse-soldiers.—Cæsar, *intending-to-send* a messenger, calls together the centurions.

2. *Periphrastic Conjugation.*—Dumnorix was *about-to-seize-upon* the royal-power.—The general is *about-to-set-out* from the camp with five legions.—The Æduans are *about-to-carry-on* a fierce war.—The hostages were *intending-to-implore* aid from the general.

3. *Future Participle to express a purpose.*—The Æduans sent ambassadors *to-implore* help from Cæsar.—The enemy crossed the river *in-order-to-besiege* the town.—The men flock (congregor) from-every-side to the town, *to-behold* the games.

LESSON LXXIII.

Perfect Participle Passive.

(451.) (a) THE perfect passive participle is formed (as stated 432, b) by adding the adjective-endings ūs, ā, ūm to the supine-stem; e. g.,

Inf.	Supine-stem.	Perf. Part.	
amāre,	amāt-,	amāt-ūs, ā, ūm,	loved, or having been loved.
vincere,	vict-,	vict-ūs, ā, ūm,	{ conquered, or having been conquered.

(b) It is declined throughout like an adjective of the first class (76), and must agree with the substantive in gender, number, and case; e. g., puer laudātūs, puellā laudātā.

(c) The deponent verbs use the perfect participle form actively; e. g., hortātus, having exhorted.

EXERCISE.

(452.) *Vocabulary.*

Suaden, rēpentinūs, ā, ūm.

To alarm, perturbāre (āv-, āt-).

To seize, snatch up, arripere (arrip-
io, arripū-, arrept-, ad-+rēpere).

Auxiliaries, auxiliā, ōrum.*

To put-to-flight, discomfit, fugare.

To drive-on or together, compellere
(compul-, compuls-, con-+pellere).

To induce, adducere (dux-, duct-,
ad-+ducere).

Influence, auctoritas, (auctoritāt) Is.

To prevail upon, permovere (mōv-,
mōt-, per-+movere, i. e., to move
thoroughly).

A wagon, carrūs, I.

To buy up, cōmēre (ēm-, empt-
con-+ēmere).

Aristides, Aristides (Aristid) Is.

Pharsalus, Pharsalus, I (f., 25, a).

To depart-out-of, excedere (excess-
excess-, ex-+cedere).

Rhetoric, rhetoricā, ae.

To expel, expellere (expul-, ex-
puls-).

To stimulate, inducere (dux-, duct-).

Strong-desire, cupiditas, (tāt) I
(293).

(453.) *Examples.*

(a) *At Corinth.*

At Rome.

At Carthage.

At Athens.

Corinthi.

Romae.

Carthaginiē.

Athenis.

Rule of Syntax.—The town or city where is put in the ablative

* Auxilium in sing. = aid, assistance; in plur. = auxiliary troop.

if the name be of the *third* declension or plural number :
otherwise in the *genitive*.

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| (b) <i>From Rome.</i> | R o m ā. |
| <i>From Carthage.</i> | C a r t h ā g ī n ē. |

Rule of Syntax.—The town or city *whence* is put in the *ablative*

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------|
| (c) <i>To Rome.</i> | R ō m ā m. |
| <i>To Athens.</i> | A t h ē n ā s. |

Rule of Syntax.—The place *whither* is put in the *accusative* if it be a town or small island.

Rem. With the names of countries or large islands, the prep. *in* or *ad* is employed: *to Italy*, in *Itāliam*; *to Egypt*, ad *Ægyptum*.

- | | |
|--|--|
| (d) <i>The soldiers, having been defeated, took to flight.</i>
(<i>Lat.</i> The soldiers, <i>defeated</i> , <i>threw themselves into flight</i> .) | Mīlītēs, pulsī, in fūgā sē
conjēcērunt. |
| (e) <i>The chief, when he was expelled from his country, fled to Rome.</i> | Princeps, patriā expulsus,
Rōmā fūgīt. |
| (f) <i>As large a number as possible.</i> | Quam maximus nūmērus. |
| (g) <i>A sudden occurrence.</i> | Rēpentinā rēs. |

(454.) *Translate into English.*

Nostrī (*our men*), rēpentinā rē (55, a) perturbātī, armā arripiunt.—Auxiliā perturbātā, in fūgā sē conjēcērunt.—Mīlites hostes fūgātos in flūmen compulērunt.—Helvētīi, his rēbus adductī, lēgātos ad Cēsārem dē dēditionē mittunt.—Gallī, his rēbus adductī, et auctoritātē Orgetorigis permōtī, jumentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numērum coēmērunt.—Prīncipēs, adventū Romanōrum permōtī, lēgātos ad Cēsārem dē dēditionē mittunt.—Aristides, patriā expulsus, Lācēdēmōnem fūgīt.—Dionysius, Syracūsīs expulsus, Cōrinthī pūeros dōcēbat.—Prīncipes, oppidō expulsī, Rōmā (453, c) vēnērunt.—Lēgātus, rēpentinā rē perturbātus, centūriōnes convōcāt.

(455.) *Translate into Latin.*

The Helvetians, prevailed upon by the influence of Cæsar, led (their) army across the Rhine.—The chiefs, induced by

• these considerations (= things), give hostages and an immense sum-of-money to the lieutenant.—Pompey, *when he had been defeated* (= *defeated*, 453, *d*) at Pharsalus, fled to Alexandria —Jugurtha, *when he was expelled from Africa*, came to Rome —The soldiers, *alarmed* by the sudden occurrence (453, *g*), take to flight (453, *d*).—For (enim) Pompey, *although-he-had-been-defeated* (= *defeated*) (in) no (nullō) battle, departed-out-of Italy. —Our (men) drove on the *alarmed* and *discomfited* enemy into the River Rhine.—The Helvetians, *induced* by these considerations (= things), bought-up as large a number as possible (453, *f*) of horses and beasts-of-burden.—The orator, *having-been-expelled-from* Athens, taught rhetoric at Carthage (453, *a*, R.).—The general, *induced* by these considerations, gave great rewards to the soldiers.—Orgetorix, *stimulated* by a strong-desire of royal-power, made a conspiracy of the nobility

LESSON LXXIV.

Participles.—Ablative Absolute.

[THE ablative absolute is a very important part of Latin construction, and should be thoroughly learned.]

(456.) The participle is used in the *ablative with a noun*, when it is independent of the subject and object of the sentence.

- | | |
|---|---|
| (a) <i>When Tarquin was reigning, Pythagoras came into Italy.</i> | Pythāgōras, Tarquīnio regnante, in Itāliam vēnit. |
|---|---|

Here *Tarquin* is independent of *Pythagoras*, the subject of the sentence.

(457.) The want of a perfect active participle in Latin is frequently supplied by the *ablative absolute* with a passive participle.

- | | |
|--|---|
| (b) <i>Labienus, having taken possession of the mountain, was waiting for our men.</i> | Lābiēnus, montē occupātō, nostrōs expectābat. |
|--|---|

Here it would be impossible to say *Labiēnus, occupatus mentem*, as *occupatus* is passive, not active.

(458.) A noun may be put in the ablative absolute with another noun *without* a participle.

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) <i>In the prætorship of Cæsar.</i>
(b) <i>In the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.</i> | Cæsare prætorē (= Cæsar being prætor).
M. Messalā et M. Pisōnē consūlibus (= Messala and Piso being consuls). |
|---|--|

[This construction is used mostly to designate the *time* of an event.]

EXERCISE.

(459.) Vocabulary.

To avail, *vālerē* (*vālū-*).

Tiberius, *Tībērius* (i).

To die, *mōriri* and *mōri* (*mortū*), *dep.*

A pleading, *dictio*, (*dictiō*) *is* (333).

Catiline, *Cātilinā*, *æ.*

Christ, *Christūs*, *i.*

To finish, *perficere* (*per-facere*, *perfēc-*, *perfect-*); also, *conficere* (*fēc-*, *fect-*).

To reign, *regnāre* (*āv-*, *āt-*).

Night, *nox*, (*noct*) *is* (294).

Territories, *finēs* (*pl. of finis*, 300).

(460.) Translate into English.

Nihil præceptā valent, nisi adjūvante nātūrā (456, a).—*Deō jūvante, facilis est labor.*—*Tībērio regnante, Christus mortuus est.*—*Concilio dimisso, principes ad Cæsarem revertērunt.*—*Diē constitūtā causæ dictionis, Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum millia decem, undique coegit.*—*Cæsar, opere perfecto, præsidia disposuit.*—*Cæsar, hostibus pulsīs* (457, b) *in finēs Æduorum pervēnit.*—*Cæsar, duōbus bellis confectis, in hibernā exercitum duxit.*—*Bellō confectō, principēs civitātum ad Cæsarem, grātulātum* (379), *convēnērunt.*—*Cātilinā, Cicerōnē consūlē* (458), *conjurātiōnem fēcit.*—*Nātūrā dūcē, nunquam errabimūs.*—*Orgetorix, Marcō Messalā et Marcō Pisōnē consūlibus, conjurātiōnem nobilitātis fēcit.*

(461.) Translate into Latin.

Our precepts will avail, *when nature assists* (= *nature assisting*).—*When the sun rises* (= *the sun rising*), the night flees.—*When the council was dismissed* (= *the council being dismissed*), the chiefs began to beseech Cæsar.—*When the council was dismissed*, Cæsar called the lieutenants to himself.

Cæsar, when the work was finished (= the work being finished) fortified the towers.—Cæsar, having defeated Pompey (= Pompey being defeated), returned to Rome.—Cæsar, having finished the war, led-back his army into the territories of the Æduans.—In the consulship of Cicero, Catiline was expelled from Rome.—When God assists (= God assisting), it is not difficult to labour.—With God for our guide (= God leader), we shall never err.

LESSON LXXV.

Ablative Absolute, continued.

EXERCISE.

(462.) *Vocabulary.*

To abstain from, abstinere (abstinē-, abstent-, abs+stinēre), with abl.

A plan, purpose, consilium, i (not concilium).

To harass, lacessere (iv-, it-, 406, III., b).

From higher ground, e loco superiori.

A spear, pilum, i.

*Phalanx, phalanx, (phalang) is (293)
To hinder, prohibere (hibē-, hibē-
pro+hābere).*

Cnæus Pompey, Cnæus Pompēius.

Of one's own accord, ultro (adv.).

To change, commutare (av-, at-)

To be born, nasci (nātus), dep

Senate-house, curia, æ.

Augustus, Augustus, i.

(463.) *Translate into English.*

Labiēnus, montē occīpāto, nostrōs expectābat, præliōque abstinēbat.—Barbārī, consilio commūtātō, nostrōs lacessere cœperunt.—Milites, e locō sup̄iōre pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfregērunt (416, b).—Cognitō Cæsāris adventū, Ariōvistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit.—Cnæō Pompeiō et Marcō Crassō consūlibus, Germani flūmen Rhenum transivērunt.—Nullo hoste prohibente, Crassus legiōnem in Helvētiōs perduxit, ibique hiemāvit.—His rebus cognitīs, imp̄rator ip̄s ad exercitum contendit.—Hāc audītā pugnā, magna pars Aquitaniæ obsides ultro misit.—Belgæ, omnibus vicis oppidisque incensis, ad castrā Cæsāris contendērunt.—Augustō regnante, Christus nātus est

(464.) *Translate into Latin.*

The barbarians, *having changed their plan* (= plan being changed), made an attack upon our men.—The soldiers, *having-broken-through the phalanx*, began to harass the enemy.—The Belgians, *having heard of this battle*, sent ambassadors to Cæsar.—The soldiers, *having taken-possession-of the mountain*, easily put the enemy to flight (391, 3).—Cicero, *when he knew of the conspiracy*, went to the Senate-house.—*As no enemy hindered* (= no enemy hindering), the lieutenant led the army across the Rhine.—*When this battle was heard (of)*, the Belgians, of-their-ownaccord, sent hostages and ambassadors to Cæsar.—*In the consulship of Cicero and Antony*, Augustus was born.

§ 10.

INFINITIVE.—(LXXVI.—LXXIX.)

LESSON LXXVI.

Infinitive Forms.

(465.) THE infinitive expresses action as complete or incomplete, but without reference to person or time; *e. g.*,

ACTIVE.

Action *Incomplete*, { to love, or to be loving, loving
(Inf. Pres. Act.) { am-āre.
Action *Completed*, { to have loved,
(Inf. Perf. Act.) { amāv-issē.

PASSIVE.

Action *Incomplete*, { to be loved,
(Inf. Pres. Pass.) { am-ārī.
Action *Completed*, { to have been loved,
(Inf. Perf. Pass.) { amātūs, ā, ūm, esse or fuisse

[*Rem.* The names *present* and *perfect* do not distinguish properly the two forms of the infinitive, but, as they are in universal use, we have to adopt them. The student must remember that the *present* expresses action incomplete, and the *perfect* action complete; but that the *time* of the action must depend upon the verb with which the infinitive is connected in the sentence.]

(466.) FORMS OF THE INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
Active.	Passive.	Active.	Passive.
1. am-ārē.	am-ārī.	amāv- } mōn-ārī. } rex- } audiv- }	amātūs, ā, ūm, mōnītūs, ā, ūm, rectūs, ā, ūm, auditūs, ā, ūm, }
2. mōn-ārē.	mōn-ārī.	issē.	
3. rēg-ārē.	rēg-ī.	essē (or fuissē).	
4. aud-ārē.	aud-īrī.		

Rem. Observe that *perf. inf. act.* simply adds the ending -issē to the *perf. stem* of the verb; and *perf. inf. pass.* is formed by the *perf. pass. part.* of the verb, combined with *essē* (sometimes *fuissē*).

EXERCISE.

(467.) Vocabulary.

To lay waste, vastāre (āv-, at-).*Ought, debēre* (dēbu-, dēbit-).*To be vacant, vācāre* (intransit.).*I am able, possum; I was able, pōtui.**Peace, pax, (pāc) is* (293).*A very few, perpauci, æ, a.**Evil deed, malēficium, i.**To break through, perrumpere* (per rūp-, perrupt-).

(468.) Examples.

(a) *I wish to learn.**The enemy began to cross the river.*

Cūpio discere.

Hostes flūmen transire cōpērunt.

Rule of Syntax.—The infinitive is used, as in English, to complete the imperfect ideas expressed by many words.

☞ Such words are, *to wish, to be able, ought, to be accustomed, to hasten, to determine, &c.*; also, the adjectives *dignus, indignus, audax, &c.*

(b) *The Helvetians intend.*(c) *Sometimes by day, oftener by night.*(d) *To keep-off-from the road.*(e) *In sight of.*

Helvētiis est in ānīmō (= it is in mind to the Helvetians).

Nonnunquā interdiū, sæpius noctū.

Itinērē prōhibēre (153, a).

In conspectū.

(469.) Translate into English.

Cæsar in Galliā hiēmāre constituit.—Ædui se suaque ab Helvētiis dēfendēre non pōtuērunt.—Agri vastāri non debent.—Hostes per mūnitiones perrumpere cōnāti sunt.

—Agri Suēvorum vācāre dicunt.—Milites incōlas expellere non potuērunt.—Multitudo puērorum mūliērumque fugere coepit.—Helvētīi maximum nūmērum jūmentōrum et carrōrum cōmēre constituērunt.—Germāni cōpiās suas Rhēnum transducere cōnāti sunt.—Helvētīi cum proximis civitatibus pācem et āmicītiā confirmāre constituērunt.

(470.) Translate into Latin.

[Place the infinitive before the verb on which it depends.]

Our towns ought not to-be-taken-by-storm.—In sight of our army, the fields ought not to be laid-waste.—The enemy endeavoured sometimes-during-the-day, oftener by-night, to burst

through the fortifications.—The Æduans were not able to expel the enemy from (their) territories (153, a). On one side,* the lands are said to be vacant.—The boys and the women began to fly in-every-direction (passim, adv).—The Helvetians intend to make (their) way through our province.—A very few are able to keep-off the Helvetians from the road.—The Helvetians ought to cross-over without any (ullo) evil-deed.—The remaining multitude of boys and women began to fly in-every-direction.

LESSON LXXVII.

Accusative with Infinitive.

(471.) VERBS signifying *to know, to see, to feel, to think, to say*, with some others, have frequently a sentence depending on them, the subject of which is in the *accusative*, and the verb in the *infinitive*.

<i>He saw that war was preparing on all sides.</i>		Undique bellum parari videbat.
--	--	--------------------------------

Here bellum, the subject, is accusative before the infinitive parari after the verb videbat, *he saw*.

(472.) Many dependent sentences which are introduced in English by the conjunction *that*, are expressed in Latin by the *accusative* and *infinitive*. To translate such sentences into Latin, observe the following method :

1. Omit the word *that*.
2. Change the nominative following *that* into the Latin accusative.
3. Change the English verb into the Latin infinitive.

The messenger says <i>that the horsemen are hurling darts.</i>		Nuntius dicit, equites tela conjicere.
--	--	--

(473.) If the predicate of the sentence containing the *accusative* and *infinitive* be an adjective, it must agree with the *accusative* subject in gender, number, and case.

* Una ex parte.

He knows that Cicero is eloquent.

Scit Cicerōnem esse eloquentem.

I perceive that the water is cold.

Sentio aquam frigidam esse.

EXERCISE.

(474.) Vocabulary.

To think, existimāre (av-, at-).

To encamp, considere (consēd-, consess-, con-+sidere).

To know, scire (sciv-, scit-).

Stone, lapis, (lāpid) is (m.).

Nearer, propius (adv., 376).

To favour, favere (fav-, faut-, 395, V.), (governs dat.).

While, dum (adv.).

To lose, amittere (a-+mittere, 401, 3, b).

(475.) Examples.

(a) The messenger says that the horsemen are hurling darts.

Nuntius dicit equites tela conjicere.

(b) The messenger said that the horsemen were hurling darts.

Nuntius dixit equites tela conjicere.

(c) The messenger said that the horsemen had hurled darts.

Nuntius dixit equites tela conjecisse.

(d) Word is brought to Cæsar.

Cæsari nuntiātum est (= it is told to Cæsar).

(e) To have about himself.

Circum se habere.

(476.) Translate into English.

Helvētīi existimant, Rōmānos discēdere.—Explōrātor tūxit, hostes consēdisse.—Cæsar scit, Dumnōrigem favere Helvētīis.—Helvētīi dicunt, se omnem sēnātum amisisse.—Cæsari nuntiātum est, milites magnitudinem sylvarum timere.—Nuntius dixit, equites tela conjicere.—Galba certior factus est, Gallos omnes discessisse.—Explōrātōres dicunt, oppidum ab hostibus tenēri.—Dum hæc in collōquio geruntur, Cæsari nuntiātum est, equites Ariovisti propius accēdere, et lapides telaque in nostros conjicere.

[Be careful, in translating the following English into Latin, to write first the leading sentence, and after it the accusative and the infinitive, observing the rules in (472), and following the order of words in the examples given above.]

(477.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar knows that *this (thing) is true* (473).—The scouts say that *the horsemen of Ariovistus are approaching* (475, a).

—The ambassadors said that the *Helvetians had lost* all their cavalry and all their senate.—Word was brought to Cæsar *that the horsemen of Ariovistus were hurling* stones against (in, with accus.) our (men).—Word-was-brought to Cæsar *that Ariovistus had-departed* from the camp.—Cæsar was informed by the scouts *that the enemy had encamped* under (s ū b, with abl.) the mountain.—The lieutenant says *that the mountain is held* by the enemy.—The general thinks that *our plans are told* to the enemy.—Word was brought to the general *that all the Gauls had departed* by night.—The chiefs say *that Divitiacus always has* a great number of horse-soldiers about himself.

LESSON LXXVIII.

Accusative with Infinitive.—Perfect Infinitive Passive.

(478.) It has been stated (466, R.) that the perfect infinitive passive is formed by the perfect participle passive, combined with *esse* (sometimes *fuisse*).

When the accusative is used with this infinitive, the participle must agree with the accusative in *gender, number, and case*;
e. g.,

- | | |
|--|---|
| (a) <i>The messenger says that the Æduans have been conquered.</i> | Nuntius dicit, Æduos victos esse. |
| (b) <i>Ariovistus said that all the forces had been routed in one battle.</i> | Ariovistus dixit, omnes cōpias ūno prælio fūsas esse. |
| (c) <i>The horsemen brought-back-word that the town had been taken-by-storm.</i> | Equites rēnuntiāverant, oppidum expugnātum esse. |

Observe that in (a) the part. *victos* agrees with the accus. *Æduos* in (b), *fūsas* with *cōpias*; in (c), *expugnātum* with *oppidum*.

EXERCISE.

(479.) *Vocabulary.**To find-out, rēpēre* (427, V.).*To frighten completely, perterrere* (perterra-, perterrīt-, per + terrere).*Tributary, stipendiarius, ā, ūm.**To bring back word, rēnuntiare* (av-, āt-).*To rout, fundere* (fūd-, fūs-, 414, a).*To overcome, sup̄erare* (ēv-, āt-).*Bond, chain, vinculum, ī.**To hold in memory, to remember* mēmōriā tēnere.*To put (or cast) in chains, in vincula conjicere.*(480.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsar rēpēriēbat īnitium fūgæ a Dumnōrige factum esse. — Imp̄rātor dixit, ēquitātum esse perterrītum. — Cæsar mēmōriā tēnēbat, L. Cassium consūlem occisum esse ab Helvetiis. — Ariōvistus dicit, Æduos sibi (54), stipendiarios esse factos. — Cæsar certior factus est, lēgātos in vincula conjectos esse. — Ēquites rēnuntiāvērunt, castra esse mūnita. — Dixit bella gesta esse. — Rēpēriēbat etiā Cæsar, īnitium fūgæ a Dumnōrige atque ejus ēquitibus factum esse; eorumque fūgā (55, a) rēliqum ēquitātum perterrītum esse. — Ariōvistus dixit omnes Gallorum cōpias ūno a sē prælio (55, a), fūsas ac sup̄eratas esse.

(481.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar found-out that the cavalry had been completely-frightened by the flight of Dumnorix. — The Æduans say that they (se) have been routed by the Germans. — Cæsar remembered (= held in memory) that the consul's army had been defeated by the Helvetians. — Cæsar remembered that the consul had been slain, and his (ejus) army sent under the yoke (323, N.). — Cæsar was informed by the chiefs that hostages had been given. — The lieutenant said that the ambassador had been cast into chains. — Ariovistus said that all the forces had been overcome by himself. — Ariovistus said that the Gauls had been overcome by himself in one battle. — The Æduans say that they (se) have been made tributary to Ariovistus (dat.).

LESSON LXXIX.

Infinitive Future Active and Passive.

(482.) By the combination of the *future participle active* with *essē* (or *fuissē*), an *infinitive future active* is formed; e. g.,

āmātūrūs, ā, ūm, *essē*, to be about to love, to intend loving.

āmātūrūs, ā, ūm, *fuissē*, { to have been about to love, to
have intended loving.

(483.) Finally, by combining the *supine* with the verb *īrī*,* we form the *infinitive future passive*; e. g.,

āmātūm *īrī*, to be about to be loved.

doctūm *īrī*, to be about to be taught.

Rem. 1. This form, being derived from the *supine*, is applied alike to nouns of all genders and of both numbers.

2. As there is no *future infinitive* in English, we must translate the Latin *future infinitive* by a periphrasis, as above.

EXERCISE.

(484.) *Vocabulary.*

To persuade, persuadere (par+suadere, suās-, suās-); governs *dat.*

To refrain, temperare (āv-, āt-, followed by āb with *abl.*)

To neglect, negligere (nēglex-, nēglect-, nēc+lēgēre).

To compel, cogere (coēg-, coact-, cōn+lēgēre).

To restore, reddere (reddid-, reddīt-, rē+dāre, 411, c).

Unfriendly, inimicus, ā, ūm (in+amicus).

To demand-back, repetere (repētiv-, repētīt-, rē+pētēre).

To refuse, recusare (av-, at-).

(484, a.) *Example.*

The general said that he would come with the tenth legion alone.

Impērātor dixit sē cum solā dēcimā lēgione ventūrum.

Rem. The *essē* in the future infinitive is frequently omitted: e. g., in the above, ventūrum.

* *īrī* is the infinitive passive form of the verb *īrē*, to go. It is not in use, except in combination as above.

(485.) *Translate into English.*

Future Infinitive Active.

Dumnōrix existimat sē regnum obtentūrum esse.—
 Helvētīi existimābant sē finitīmis (*dat.*) persuāsūros.—
 Cæsār existimābat, finitīmos tempēratūros ab injuriā.—
 Cæsār dicit, se Æduorum injūrias non neglectūrum.—
 Helvētīi existimābant, sē Æduos vī (301) coactūros.
 —Ariōvistus dixit, Æduis (54) sē obsides reddītūrum
 esse.—Cæsār dicit sē, proximā noctē (118, II., c), de quartā
 vigiliā, castrā mōtūrum.—Impērātor, hōmines inimicō animō
 (722,) tempēratūros ab injuriā et mālōficio, non existī-
 mabat.

(486.) *Translate into Latin.*

Future Infinitive Active.

Cæsar said that he would move his camp.—Dumnorix thought
 that he would hold the military-command of his own state.—
 The general says that he is-about-to-demand-back the host-
 ages.—The Æduans say that they-are-about-to-implore assist-
 ance from (*a*) the Roman people.—Dumnorix assures (them)
 that he is-about-to-seize the royal-power with his own (*suō*)
 army.—Ariovistus said that he would not restore the hostages.
 —Cæsar did not think that the allies would-refrain from injury
 —Cæsar thought that he would-compel the Germans by force.
 —Ariovistus said that he would-refuse the friendship of the
 Roman people.

§ 11.

THE GERUND.

LESSON LXXX.

(487.) (a) The *gerund* expresses the action of the verb under the form of a noun of the second declension, in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *abative* cases (ī, ō, ūm, ō).

(b) The *gerund-stem* is formed by adding to the verb-stem,

In the 1st conjugation,	-and;	<i>e. g.</i> , ām-and-.
" 2d "	-end;	<i>e. g.</i> , mōn-end-.
" 3d "	-end;	<i>e. g.</i> , rēg-end-.
" 4th "	-iend;*	<i>e. g.</i> , aud-iend-.

(c) The gerund of any case is formed by annexing the case-ending to the gerund-stem; *e. g.*, *gen.*, āmand-ī; *dat.*, āmand-ō; *acc.*, āmand-um; *abl.*, āmand-ō.

(488.) As the infinitive is used as a verbal noun in the *nominative* and *accusative* cases, so the *gerund* is used in the remaining cases; *e. g.*,

Nom.	Scribērē,	<i>writing.</i>
Gen.	Scribendī,	<i>of writing.</i>
Dat.	Scribendō,	<i>to or for writing.</i>
Acc.	{ Scribērē,	} <i>writing.</i>
	{ Scribendūm,	
Abl.	Scribendō,	<i>with writing.</i>

(489.) The rules for the use of the cases of nouns apply also to the cases of the infinitive and gerund; *e. g.*,

Nom.	<i>Writing is useful,</i>	scribēre est ūtile.
Gen.	<i>The art of writing is useful,</i>	{ ars scribendi est ūtilis.

* Also in the 10 verbs (199); *e. g.*, cāp-io, cāp-iendī.

Dat.	<i>Paper is useful for writing,</i>	{ charta scribendō est ūtilis.
Acc.	{ <i>I learn writing,</i> <i>I learn during writing,</i>	{ scribēre disco. inter scribendum disco.
Abl.	<i>We learn by writing,</i>	scribendō discimus.

Rem. With a preposition, the *accusative gerund* must be used, and not the infinitive; *ad* (inter, ob) scribendum, not *ad* (inter, ob) scribēre.

(490.) The gerund governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived; *e. g.*,

<i>The art of training boys is difficult.</i>		<i>Ars puerōs edūcandi difficilis est.</i>
---	--	--

EXERCISE.

(491.) Vocabulary.

To make war, bellare (av., at-).
To plunder, to obtain-booty, prædāri (prædāt-), dep.
Wearied, defessus, ā, ūm.
Sufficiently, sātis (adv.).
To think, cogitare.
Opportunity, time for, spātium, l.

To deliberate, deliberāre (av. at-).
To take, sūmere (sumps-, sumpt-).
Agriculture, agricultūra, æ.
Desire, stūdiū, l.
Life, age, ætas, (ætat) is (293).
Mind, mens, (ment) is (355, II.,

(492.) Examples.

(a) <i>Time was given for</i> (= opportunity was given of) <i>taking-up arms.</i>		Spātium armā capiendi dātum est.
(b) <i>For the sake of collect- ing-corn.</i>		Frūmentandi causā (ab lat.).

(493.) Translate into English.

Spes prædandī hōmīnes ab agricultūrā revocābat.—Spa-
 tum defessis ex pugnā excedendī nōn dātum est.—Brève
 tempus ætātis sātis est longum ad bonē beatēque vivendum.
 —Hōminis mens discendō alitur.—Pars equitātis, præ-
 dandī causā, missa est.—Nox finem oppugnandī fecit.—
 Magna pars equitātis, frūmentandī causā, missa erat.—
 Cognōverat enim Cæsar, magnam partem equitātis, prædandī
 frumentandīque causā, trans Rhēnum missam fuisse (471).

—Impērātor diem ad dēlibērandum sūmit.—Impērātor dixit, sē diem ad dēlibērandum sumptūrum (484, a).—Spes prædandī, stūdiūquē bellandī incōlas ab āgricul tūrā et lābōre rēvocābat.—Dōcendō dōcēmur.

(494.) *Translate into Latin.*

The desire of *plundering* and *making-war* has recalled the farmers from (their) fields.—Time *for* (492, a) *hurling* the darts was not given to the soldiers.—Time *for* (of) *fighting* was not given to the horsemen.—The horsemen were sent into the territories of the Æduans for the sake of *collecting-corn*.—The mind of man is nourished *by thinking*.—Time *for departing-out-of* the town was not given to the wearied citizens.—The citizens ask time *for* (of) *deliberating*.—Wisdom is the art of *living* well.—Cæsar recalled the tenth legion into Gaul, for-the-sake-of *wintering*.—We learn *by teaching*.—Opportunity of *attacking* the town was not given to the soldiers, though they desired it (= *desiring* it).

§ 12.

THE GERUNDIVE, OR VERBAL ADJECTIVE IN DŪS, DĀ, DŪM.

(495.) (a) THE gerundive expresses the action of the verb (generally with the additional idea of *necessity* or *continuance*) under the form of an adjective of the *first class* (76).

(b) The gerundive-stem is precisely the same as the gerund-stem. The cases are formed by adding the endings of the adjective ; *e. g.*,

N. āmand-ūs, ā, ūm.

G. āmand-i, æ, ī, &c.,

and so through all cases and both numbers.

LESSON LXXXI.

The Gerundive used instead of the Gerund.

(496.) THE gerundive is used (to express continued action) as a verbal adjective, *agreeing* with the noun, instead of the gerund *governing* the noun ; *e. g.*,

Gen. <i>Of writing a letter.</i>	Scribendæ ēpistolæ, instead of scribendi ēpistolam.
Dat. <i>To or for writing letters.</i>	Scribendis ēpistolis, instead of scribendo ēpistolas.
Acc. <i>To write a letter.</i>	Ad scribendam ēpistolam, instead of ad scribendum ēpistolam.
Abl. <i>By writing a letter.</i>	Scribendā ēpistolā, instead of scribendo ēpistolam.

Rem. The gerundive *must* be used for the *dative* or *accusative* of the gerund when it has an active government. It *may* be used for it in any other case, unless the object of the gerund is a neuter adjective or pronoun; e. g., *of learning the true* = *vēra discendi*, not *verorum discendorum*; *of hearing this*, *hoc audiendi*, not *hujus audiendi*.

EXERCISE.

(497.) *Vocabulary.*

To choose, *dēligere* (*dēlēg*, *dēlect*, *dē+lēgere*).

To pursue, *consēquā* (*consēcāt*), *dēp*.

To fail, to be insufficient, *dēficere* (*dēfēc*, *dēfect*, *dē+fācere*).

To form a design, *consilium cāpere* (*io*).

Space-of-two-years, *biennium*, *i*.

To reckon, decm, *dūcere* (*dux* *duct*).

To discern, *cernere* (406, Cl. III., *a*).

Care, *cūra*, *æ*.

To apply, *adhūbere* (*adhībū*, *adhīb* *it*).

Negligent, *negligens*, (*negligent*) *is* (107).

(498.) *Example*

(a) *The Helvetians reckoned that the space-of-two-years was enough for themselves.*

Helvētīi biennium sibi sātis esse duxērunt.

(b) *The space of three-days.*

Trīdūi spātium.

(c) *The house was given to the robbers to plunder.*

Dōmus latrōnibus dirīpiendā dātā est.

The farmer gave his house to the robbers to plunder.

Āgricolā dōmum latrōnibus dirīpiendam dēdit.

☞ After verbs of *giving, going, sending, receiving*, and the like, the gerundive expresses a *purpose* or *object*.

(d) *For completing (=finishing) these things.*

Ād eas res conficiendās.

(499.) *Translate into English.*

Urbs ā dūce mīlitibus dirīpienda dātā est.—Urbem dux mīlitibus dirīpiendam dēdit.—Subitō Galli consilium belli gērendi cēpērunt.—Sūbitō Galli lēgiōnis oppugnandæ consilium cēpērunt.—Ad eas res conficiendas Orgētorix dēligitur.—Helvētīi, ad eas res conficiendas, biennium sibi sātis esse duxērunt.—Crassus lēgātos tribunosque mīlitum in finītīmas cīvītātes frūmentī pētendī causā dimisit.—Plāto Rōmam (453, c) ad cognoscendas Numæ lēges contēdit.—In vōluptāte spērendā virtūs maximē cernitur.—Multi

in æquis p̄randis, adh̄bent cūram, sed in āmicis dēligendis negligentes sunt.—Milites, ad urbem expugnandam, trīdūi spātium sibi sātis esse duxērunt.

(500.) *Translate into Latin.*

For completing these things (498, *d*) Cæsar gave to the Gauls the space of three days.—The Æduans had suddenly formed the design of besieging the town.—Crassus is chosen for carrying-on the war (498, *d*).—Pythagoras went to Sparta (453, *c*) to learn (498, *¶*) the laws of Lycurgus.—Cæsar reckoned that the space of two years was enough for himself, for overcoming the Gauls and finishing the war.—The general sent all the cavalry across the Rhine, for the sake of seeking corn.—Ariovistus hastened (contendēre), with all his forces, to attack the town (498, *¶*).—The Britons sent ambassadors to Cæsar, in-order-(ad)-to-see (498, *¶*) peace.

LESSON LXXXII.

The Gerundive used to express Necessity, &c.

THE GERUNDIVE AS SUBJECT.

(501.) (a) The gerundive in the nominative neuter (dūm) is used with esse to express necessity or duty. If the agent be expressed, it must be put in the dative.

One must write.

Scribendū est.

I must write.

Scribendū est mīhi.

¶ Here the gerundive is the subject of the sentence (the duty of writing is to me).

(b) This neuter nominative may be combined with all the tenses of esse; e. g.,

Scribendum est mīhi, *I must write.*

Scribendum erat mīhi, *I had to write.*

Scribendum erit, *I must write hereafter.*

&c..

&c.

(c) This neuter nominative may govern the case of its verb;
e. g.,*

We must help the citizens.

Civibus (dat.) subveniendum est.

One must use reason.

Ratione utendum est.

THE GERUNDIVE AS PREDICATE.

(502.) The gerundive is also used with *esse*, in all cases and genders, as a verbal adjective, agreeing with the noun, to express necessity or worthiness; e. g., *I am to be loved*, *amandus sum*; *thou art to be loved*, *amandus es*, &c. The person, if specified, is put in the dative.

I must love Tullia (= Tullia is to be loved by me.)

Tullia mihi amanda est.

All things had to be done by Cæsar (= Cæsar had to do all things).

Omnia Cæsari erant agenda.

Here the gerundive is the predicate.

EXERCISE.

(503.) Vocabulary.

Flag, vexillum, i.

To set-up, proponere (pro + ponere, pōn-, pōsit-, 406, b).

To go-forward, procedere (pro + cedere, 401, 3, b).

A little too far, paullo longius (adv.).

To think, putare (av-, at-).

To send for, arcessere (arcessiv-, arcessit-).

To understand, perceive, intelligere, (intellex-, intellect-).

To determine, statuere (statu-, statut-).

In vain, frustra.

More widely, latius (adv., 376).

(504.) Examples.

'a) Cæsar causes a bridge to be made (= takes care that a bridge should be made).

Cæsar pontem faciendum (esse) curat.

I must hear.

Mihi audiendum.

Est is often omitted with the gerundive, as in (a).

(b) The centurions thought that nothing should be done rashly.

Centuriōnes nihil temere agendum (esse) existimabant.

* The accusative is hardly ever used after the neut. gerundive.

(505.) *Translate into English.*(1.) *Gerundive in the nominative neuter (dũm).*

Militibus de navibus erat desiliendum. — Militibus simul et de navibus (erat) desiliendum, et cum hostibus erat pugnandum.

(2.) *Gerundive as a verbal adjective, agreeing with the noun.*

Cæsari omnia uno tempore (118, II., c) erant agenda, vexillum proponendum; revocandi milites; qui paullo longius processerant arcessendi; acies instruenda; milites hortandi; signum dandum. — Prohibenda est ira. — Bellum nobis est suscipiendum. — Cæsar sibi latius distribuendum exercitum putat. — Imperator dicit, jam sibi legatos audiendos. — Cæsar ubi intellexit frustra tantum laborem sumi (471), statuit expectandam classem. — Cæsar pontem faciendum curat atque ita exercitum traducit.

(506.) *Translate into Latin.*(1.) *Gerundive in nominative, neuter (dũm).*

We must leap-down from the ships. — We must read. — You must hear. — You must fight for liberty (pro libertate). — All must hear; we must read. — With whom (quibuscum) must I fight? — We must leap down from the walls and fight with the horsemen.

(2.) *Gerundive as a verbal adjective.*

I must do all things at once (= all things must be done by me at one time). — You must give the signal. — We had to set up the flag. — Cæsar must send ambassadors. — The soldiers must fortify the camp. — The general must encourage the soldiers. — The Helvetians cause bridges to be made over the river. — Cæsar thought that the army must be led-over. — Cæsar thought that the army must be divided by him (sibi), and distributed more-widely. — The general says that he must wait-for the fleet. — Divitiacus says that this-thing (hoc) must be done by all the Gauls.

§ 13

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

LESSON LXXXIII.

507.) THE imperative mood expresses the action of the verb as a *command, wish, entreaty, &c.*; *e. g.* *Love thou! Hear thy parents.*

(508.) FORMS OF THE IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE.				
	2d Sing.	3d Sing.	2d Plur.	3d Plur.
am-	ă or ăto.	ăto.	ătă or ătătă.	ătto.
môn-	ê or êto.	êto.	êtă or êtătă.	êtto.
rêg-	ê or îto.	îto.	îtă or îtătă.	îtto.
aud-	î or ătto.	îto.	îtă or îtătă.	îătto.
PASSIVE.				
ăm-	ăre or ătôr.	ătôr.	ămîni or ămînôr.	antôr.
môn-	êră or êtôr.	êtôr.	êmîni or êmînôr.	entôr.
reg-	êră or îtôr.	îtôr.	îmîni or îmînôr.	untôr.
aud-	îră or îtôr.	îtôr.	îmîni or îmînôr.	iuntôr.

Rem. 1. Observe that the 2d pers. sing. act. can be obtained from any verb by striking off *ră* from the infinitive; *e. g.*, *inf.*, ămă*ră*; *imper.*, ămă; and that the 2d pers. sing. pass. is the infinitive form precisely.

- The longer forms of the 2d person are used especially in reference to future time; *e. g.*, in laws, statutes, and the like.
- The *io* verbs of 3d conj. take the imperative endings of the 4th in the 3d pers. plur.: thus, *căpiunto*, let them take; *căpiuntor*, let them be taken. *Făcio* has 2d pers. sing. *făc*.

EXERCISE.

(509.) Vocabulary.

[Deponents take, of course, the passive endings.]

Enmity, înmîcîtiă, &c.

To despise, contemnáre (con+tem-
năre, temp-, tempt-).

Fleeing, fûgax, (fûgăc) 1s (107).

To pursue, follow, persăquí (persă-
căt-), dep.

Association, fellowship sôcietas (atis
293).

Frail, perishable, cādūcūs, ā, ūm
 (from *cāderē*, to fall).
To shun, avoid, vitārē (āv-, at-).
Judge, iudex, (iudic) īs (306).
To revere, vērārē (vērāt-, dep.

Show, spēciēs, spēciēs (117).
To trust, crēdēre (crēdī-, crēdī-
 411, c); governs *dat.*
Admire, admirārē (at-, dep

(510.) *Examples.*(a) *Do not hear.*

Nē audi.

Do not trust appearance
 (colour).

Nē crēdēs cōlōrē.

Rule.—With imperatives, *nē* must be used for *not*.
 (Nōn would be very bad Latin.)

(b) *Let the judge neither give*
nor take rewards.

Judex prēmia nē dātō nēvō
 capīto.

Neither — nor = nē — nēvō.

(c) *Instead of parents =*

Pārentum lōcō (abl.)

(511.) *Translate into English.*

Puerī (voc.), pārentēs ā mātē.—Magistrī puerōs linguām
 Lātīnām dōcento.—Magnā vīs est in virtūtibus; ēās (150)
 excitā, sī fortē dormiunt.—Abstīnētōtē omnī injuriā
 (abl.) atque inimicitīs.—Impērā irā (147).—Nē persē-
 quere omnia, quā spēciem gloriā hābent.—Hēc omnia, quā
 hābent spēciem gloriā contemnē: brevīā, fūgaciā, cādūcā
 existimā.—Nē creditē omnibus.—Judīces prēmium nē
 cāpiunto, nēvō danto.—Vitā sociētātem imprōbōrum.—
 Vērārē Deum, vērārē pārentes, et quōs pārentum
 lōcō (55, a) tibi (54) nātūrā dedit.—Pueri prāceptōres, ā qui-
 bus doctī sunt, ā manto et vērāntōr.

(512.) *Translate into Latin.*

Boys, *revere* (your) parents.—*Let the master teach* the boys
 the Greek language.—*Do not rouse-up* (your) vices: *rouse-up*
 (your) virtues, if perchance they sleep.—*Abstain ye from* (abl.)
 all vices and enmities.—My son, *rule* (your) anger (dat., 147).
 —*Do not admire* all things which have the show of glory.—
Do not ye fear death.—*Do not trust to the show of glory.*—
Love those whom Nature has given to you in place of parents.
 —*Do not seek* the association of the wicked.—*Neither take*
 (cāptre) *nor give* a reward.—*Hear* the wise and good.

§ 14.

SENTENCES

[THE student should now be made to understand something of sentences. The following simple statements can readily be understood.]

(513.) (a) The sentence, "*the messenger fled*," is a *simple* sentence, as it contains but one subject and predicate.

(b) The sentence, "*the messenger, who saw me, fled*," is a *compound* sentence, as it contains *more* than one subject and predicate.

(c) In the last example, "*the messenger fled*" is called the **PRINCIPAL SENTENCE**; and "*who saw me*," the **SUBORDINATE sentence**.

(514.) The following are some of the classes of subordinate sentences :

(a) *The accusative with the infinitive* ; e. g., *Nuntiūs dixit, ēquitēs tēlā conjicērē* (The messenger said *that the horsemen were hurling darts*). Here *ēquitēs tēlā conjicērē* (*that the horsemen were hurling darts*) is the *subordinate sentence* ; *nuntius dixit*, the *principal sentence*.

(b) *Conjunctive sentences*, i. e., such as are introduced by a conjunction or adverb of time ; e. g., *Cæsar, when he had crossed the river, drew up his army*. Here, *Cæsar drew up his army* is the *principal sentence* ; *when he had crossed the river*, the *subordinate sentence*.

(c) *Relative sentences* ; e. g., *Nuntius, quī missus est, dixit* (The messenger, who was sent, said). Here *nuntius dixit* is the *principal sentence* ; *quī missus est*, the *relative subordinate sentence*.

(d) *Interrogative sentences* (i. e.), such as are introduced by an interrogative word ; e. g., *Tell me what you are doing?* Here *what you are doing* is a *subordinate interrogative sentence*.

§ 15.

CONJUNCTIONS.—(LXXXIV.—LXXXV.)

LESSON LXXXIV.

Copulative Conjunctions.

(515.) COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS unite words or sentences together. They are,

<i>And.</i>	Ēt, quē, āc, atquē.
<i>Neither, nor.</i>	Nēc, něquē.
<i>Also.</i>	Etiām, necnōn, quōquē, itēm. itīdēm.

EXERCISE.

(516.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>Only, solum; not only, nōn solum.</i>	<i>Some (some persons), nōnnulli, æ, ā</i> (nōn+nulli).
<i>A debtor, dēbitor, i.</i>	<i>Javelin, trāgūlā, æ.</i>
<i>Formerly, at one time, quōndam.</i>	<i>To hurl under, subjicere (jēc-, ject-</i> <i>sub+jacere).</i>
<i>Rich, opulens, (opulent) is (107).</i>	<i>I profit, benefit, prorsum* (prō+sum).</i> <i>governs dat.</i>
<i>To hasten, to march rapidly, prōp-</i> <i>rārē (av-, at-).</i>	<i>To the same place, eodēm (adv.).</i>
<i>To give largess, to bribe, largiri</i> <i>(largit-), dep.</i>	<i>Too much, nimius, ā, ūm.</i>
<i>Once and again, sēmēl atquē itē-</i> <i>rum.</i>	<i>Top, summit, culmēn, (culmīn) is</i> <i>(345).</i>
<i>Estate, res familiaris, e (104).</i>	<i>To pray, orare (av-, at-).</i>
<i>A wheel, rōtā, æ.</i>	

(517.) *Examples.*

(a) <i>Darius equipped a fleet,</i> <i>and placed over it Datis and</i> <i>Artaphernes.</i>	Dārius classem comparavit, ei quē Dātim præfecit ēt Artāphernem.
---	--

(a) Ēt connects independent words and sentences; quē joins one word or sentence to another rather as an appendage. Thus, in (a), ēt

* Prorsum is inflected like sum, but inserts d before the vowels
e g., prod-esse, prōd-ēs, prod-est (not pro-es, pro-est).

joins *Datim* and *Artāphernem*; and *quē* joins the sentence "*placed over it*," &c., as an appendage to the *equipment* of the fleet.

- (b) *Fierce and barbarous men were coming into the province, and were hastening into Italy.* | *Hōmīnes fēri āc. barbāri in prōvinciam vēniēbant atquē in Italiam contendēbant.*

(b) *Ac* is used before *consonants*, but not before *vowels* or *h*. *Atquē* may be used before either *vowels* or *consonants*.

- (c) *Cæsar both had indulged and was greatly confident in the tenth legion.* | *Dēcimæ lēgiōnī Cæsar ēt indulserat ēt confidēbat maxīmē.*

(c) *Et* followed by *another et* means *both—and*.

- (d) (1) *Again and again.* | *Ētiām atquē ētiām*
 (2) *And again.* | *Ēt ētiām.*
 (3) *Not only—but also.* | *Nōn sōlūm—sēd ētiām.*

(518.) *Translate into English.*

Orgētōrix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam coegit, et omnes clientēs obsecratosque eodē (*adv.*) conduxit.—*Carthāgo* et *Cōrinthūs* atquē *Numantia*, opulentissimæ quondam et validissimæ civitates, deletæ sunt a *Rōmānis*.—*Cæsār* finem prōperandī (489) facit, pontemque ad flūmēn *Rhēnum* pōnit.—*Discipuli* et audiunt et amant præceptōrēs.—*Rōmāni* nōn solum *Itinērum* causā (135, II., R.) sed etiam possessionis, culminā montium occupāverunt.—*Nōn solum* virēs (*plural of vis*) sed etiam telā nostris (*dat.*) deficiēbant.—*His* rebus *Dumnōrix* et suam rem familiārem auxerat et facultates ad largiendū magnas comparāverat.—*Hostes* et e locō supēriore in nostros tela conjiciēbant et nonnulli intēr carrōs rōtasque trāgūlās subjiciēbant, nostrosque vulnerābant.—*Contemnuntur* ū quī nec sibi nec alteri (194, R. 1) prōsunt.—*Nec* meliōr vir fuit *Scīpiōne* (360, c) quisquam, nec clariōr.—*Ædui* neque obsides repētiverunt neque auxilium implorāverunt.—*Sapiētiā* neque paupertās neque mors neque vinculā terrent.—*Nīmius* somnūs neque corpōri neque animō (*dat.*, 516) prodest.—*Rōgo* tē, et oro; etiam atque etiam tē rōgo.—*Ædui* semel atque iterū cū *Germānis* contendērant.—*Mīlites* ex castris erūperunt (erumpere) atque omnem spēm salutis in virtutē posuerunt.

LESSON LXXXV.

Disjunctive and Adversative Conjunctions.

(519.) I. THE disjunctive conjunctions (meaning *or*) are *aut*, *vēl*, *vě*, and *sivě* or *seu*.

Rem. 1. *Aut* indicates a *real* difference of object; *e. g.*,

Here, soldiers, we must conquer or die! | *Hic vincendū aut moriendū, milites!*

When *aut* is used, but *one* of the conditions can be fulfilled, as in the above example.

Rem. 2. *Vēl* (derived from *vellō*) means *if you wish*, or *rather*. (Hence it is used for *even*.)

The nobles can either corrupt or correct the morals of the state (i. e., they can do whichever they please). | *Viri nobiles vēl corrumpere mōres civitatis, vēl corrigere possunt.*

Rem. 3. *Vě* is always affixed to another word; *duō*, *trēsve* = *two or three*.

Rem. 4. These conjunctions are frequently *repeated*.

<i>Either—or,</i>	{	<i>aut—aut.</i>
		<i>vēl—vēl.</i>
		<i>sivě—sivě.</i>
<i>Whether—or,</i>		<i>seu—seu.</i>

(520.) II. The adversative conjunctions express opposition (*but*).

The most important are,

Āt, *atquē*, *autēm*, *cāterūm*, *sēd*, *vērūm* (*but*).

Tāmēn (*however*); *vērō* (*truly*).

EXERCISE.

(521.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>To run up</i> , <i>accurrere</i> (<i>accurr-</i> and <i>accūcurr-</i> , <i>accurs-</i> , <i>ad+currere</i>).	<i>To pay up</i> , <i>persolvere</i> (<i>solv-</i> , <i>sōlūt-</i>).
<i>Very rich</i> , <i>perdivēs</i> , (<i>divit</i>) <i>is</i> (<i>per+divēs</i>), 107.	<i>To suffer full punishment</i> , <i>pōnā persolvere</i> .
<i>Chance</i> , <i>cāsus</i> , <i>ūs</i> . <i>By chance</i> , <i>cāsū</i> (<i>abl.</i>).	<i>Handsome</i> , <i>formosus</i> , <i>ē</i> , <i>ūm</i> .
<i>Goodness</i> , <i>bōnitās</i> (<i>ātis</i>).	<i>Eloquent</i> , <i>fācundus</i> , <i>ē</i> , <i>ūm</i> .
	<i>Ulysses</i> , <i>Ulysses</i> , (<i>Ulyss</i>) <i>is</i> .

To possess, possidēre (possēd-, poss-).
Weeping, flētūs, ūs.
Effect, effectūs, ūs.
Sorrow, sadness, tristitiā, m.
Generally, plerumquē (adv.).
Joy, gaudiū, l.

Daily, quōtidianūs, ā, ūm.
A living being, animans, (animant) is (107).
Motion, mōtūs, ūs.
Various, diversus, ā, ūm.
To swim, nātārē (av-, āt-).
Sometimes, interdum.

(522.) *Examples.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>(a) <i>Those are to be esteemed brave, not who do, but who ward off injury.</i></p> <p>(b) <i>Gyges was seen by nobody, but he himself saw all things.</i></p> | <p>Fortēs sunt hābendī, nōn quī faciunt, sēd quī prōpulsant injuriām.</p> <p>Gygēs ā nullō vidēbātur, ipse autēm omniā vidēbāt.</p> |
|---|---|

(a) Sēd indicates a *strong* opposition; it always stands first in its clause, as in (a).

(b) Autēm expresses a weaker opposition than sēd. Autēm and vērō *never* stand first in a sentence, but always after one or more words.

(523.) *Translate into English.*

Nostrī cēlērītēr accurrērunt; āt Germāni fortīter impētum glādiōrum excēpērunt.—Āmīci rēgis duō trēs vē (519, R. 3) perdīvītes sunt.—Sivē cāsū (55, a) sivē consiliō deōrum immortālium, poenās persolvērunt.—Nonnulli, sivē fēlicitāte (abl.) quādām, sivē bōnītāte nātūræ, rectām vitæ sēcūtī sunt viām.—Fortēs ēt magnānīmi sunt hābendī, nōn quī faciunt sēd quī prōpulsant injuriām.—Nōn formōsus ērat, sēd ērat facundus Ulysēs.—Āvārus nōn possidēt divitiās (57, R.) sed divitiās possident eūm.—Flētūs plerumquē est effectūs tristitiæ; interdum vērō ētiam (even) gaudiī.—Helvētii fēre quōtidianis præliis (55, a) cūm Germānis contendunt, quum aut suis finibus eōs prōhibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gērunt.—Ānimantium mōtūs diversus est; vėl ambulant ēt currunt, vėl vōlant, vėl nātant.—Corpūs mōritūr (dep.), vērūm ānimūs numquam mōriētūr.—Milites nostrī fortēs fuērunt, sēd āvāri

§ 16.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—(LXXXVI.—XCIL)

(524.) THE subjunctive mood expresses affirmation *doubtfully, indefinitely, or as conceived by the mind*; e. g., *I may write; I might write; I might have written; if I should write; if I had written.*

Rem.—The subjunctive has no future tense-form.

LESSON LXXXVI.

Subjunctive Present.

(525.) Forms of *ess ĕ (to be)* in subjunctive present.

Pres.	<i>sim,</i> <i>I may be.</i>	<i>sis,</i> <i>thou may- est be.</i>	<i>sīt,</i> <i>he, she, it may be.</i>	<i>simūs,</i> <i>we may be.</i>	<i>sītis,</i> <i>ye may be.</i>	<i>sint,</i> <i>they may be.</i>
-------	---------------------------------	---	---	------------------------------------	------------------------------------	---

(526.) Forms of regular verbs.

(a) The subjunctive present adds the person-endings

m, s, t, mus, tis, nt, for the *active*, and

r, ris or re, tur, mur, mini, ntus, for the *passive*,

to the verb-stem by means of the following connecting vowels, viz

		Active.	Passive.
1st conj.,	e; e. g.,	ām-ĕ-m,	am-ĕ-r.
2d conj.,	ĕa; ĕ. g.,	mōn-eā-m,	mōn-eā-r.
3d conj.,	a; e. g.,	rĕg-ā-m,	rĕg-ā-r.
4th conj.,	īa; e. g.,	aud-īa-m,	aud-īa-r.

(b) PARADIGM.—SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

ACTIVE.— <i>I may love, advise, rule, hear.</i>						
Stem.	Singular.			Plural.		
ām-	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētis.	ēnt.
mōn-	ēm.	ēas.	ēāt.	ēmūs.	ēātis.	ēant.
rĕg-	ām.	ās.	āt.	āmūs.	ātis.	ant.
aud-	īām.	īās.	īāt.	īāmūs.	īātis.	īant.
PASSIVE.— <i>I may be loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>						
Stem.	Singular.			Plural.		
ām-	ēr.	ērīs or ĕrĕ.	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīni.	ēntūr.
mōn-	ĕār.	ĕārīs or ārĕ.	ĕātūr.	ĕāmūr.	ĕāmīni.	ĕāntūr.
rĕg-	ār.	ārīs or ārĕ.	atūr.	āmūr.	āmīni.	antūr.
aud-	īār.	īārīs or ārĕ.	īātūr.	īāmūr.	īāmīni.	īantūr.

EXERCISE.

(527.) Vocabulary.

Value, pretiūm, l.

To obey, parēre (parū-); governs *dat.*

To despair, dēspērāre (āv-, āt-).

Otherwise, āltēr (*adv.*).

To hinder, impēdire (iv-, it-).

Carefully, stūdiōsē (*adv.*).

To exercise, exercere (exercū-, exercit-).

To grieve, dōlēre (dōlā-, dōlīt-).

Would that, ūtinam (*conj.*).

To fear, mētūre (mētū-).

Incredible, incredūbilis, e (104).

Mind (talent), ingēnium, l.

To be ignorant, ignōrāre (āv-, āt-)

To deny, nēgare (av-, āt-).

To know, noscēre (nōv-, nōt-).

To afford, prābere (prābā-, prābīt-)

To make one's self a judge, sē jādī cēm prāberē.

To apply, to employ, adhibēre (ū-, it-).

Cautious, cautūs, ā, ūm.

Rashly, tēmērē (*adv.*).

Ever, unquām (*adv.*).

Truly, obviously, prorsūs (*adv.*).

Finally, dēniquē (*adv.*).

(528.) Examples.

[The principal use of the subjunctive in Latin is in dependent sentences; but in this lesson we show its uses in *principal* sentences, in which it occurs only when something is said without *definiteness* or *certainty*.]

(a) 1. *No sane man can doubt about the value of virtue.*

Nēmo sānus dē virtūtis pretiō dūbītēt.

2. *May I be safe!*

Sīm salvūs!

3. *I hope you are well (= may you be safe).*

Salvūs sis!

4. *May I not be safe, if I write otherwise than I think.*

Nē sīm salvus, sī āltēr scribo ac sentio!

5. *I hope my father is alive (= would that my father may be alive).*

Ūtinam pāter vīvat.

6. *I wish he would come.*

Ūtinam vēniāt.

(a) The subjunctive present is used for the English potential, *may*, *can*, &c., and also to express a *wish*, when the thing wished is *possible*. A *negative* wish is expressed by *nē* prefixed, as in (4).

(b) 1. *Let us believe.*

Crēdāmūs.

2. *Let us obey virtue.*

Virtūtī pāreāmus.

3. *Do not despair.*

Nē dēspēres.

(b) The subjunctive present is used, instead of the imperative to soften a command. *Nē* is used for prohibition.

(c) *Who would not love virtue?* Quis virtutem nōn āmet?

What can I do?

Quid faciāmus?

Who is ignorant?

Quis ignōret?

Who can doubt?

Quis dūbitet?

(c) The subjunctive present is used in *direct* questions when any doubt is implied. (In English, we generally use *can*, *will*, *would*, &c., in such questions.)

(529.) *Translate into English.*

(a) Use of subjunctive as *potential*, or to express a *wish* (the latter indicated by !).

Tempus vēniat. — Salvūs sis! āmicē. — Fāveāt fortūnā! — Ūtīnam hōc vērūm sīt! — Diū vivās! — Nēmo bōnus dē Prōvidentiā Deī dūbitēt. — Mōriār, sī ālīter scribo āc sentio! — Ūtīnam nēmo tē impēdiat! — Ūtīnam dōmum meā vērīs āmicīs (55, a) impleam!

(b) Use of subjunctive as *imperative*.

Sē quisquē studiōsē exerceat. — Nātūrā, optīmā ducem. sēquāmur, oīquē pāreāmus. — Amēmus patriā, pāreāmus sēnātui, consulāmus bōnīs. — Suum quisquē noscāt ingēnium, ācremquē sē ēt bōnōrum ēt vītiorū suōrūm iūdicēm prābeāt. — Nē āmētis imprōbos. — Prudentiā adhibeāmus. — Cautiōrem adhibeāmus prudentiā. — In rēbus grāviōribus cautiōrem adhibeāmus prudentiā, sēd nēc in lēviōribus tēmērē unquam āgāmus. — Nē dōleās.

(c) Use of subjunctive in *direct* questions.

Quis hōc crēdat? — Quis fābūlās istās crēdat? — Quis imprōbos āc stultōs dilīgat? — Quis eūm dilīgat quēm mētuit? — Quis crēdat illūd quōd prorsūs incrēdibilē est? — Quis dē virtūtis prētiō dūbitet? — Quid faciāmus? — Quis nēgotiōnēs lēvēs, omnēs āvārōs, omnēs dēnique imprōbos esse servōs?

(530.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) No wise (man) can doubt concerning the benevolence of God. — My friends, I hope you are well (= may you be safe)

—I hope that (*utinam*) the commander is alive (= may live).—
I hope our friends may come!—May these things be true!—
May the citizens be wise.

(b) Let us not believe this.—Do not believe these fables.—
Let us exercise ourselves diligently.—Let us love our friends,
let us obey our parents, let us worship God.—Know your (own)
mind.—Let the soldiers take possession of the mountain.—Let
us not love the wicked.

(c) Who can say this?—Who can love a fool?—Who would
obey a wicked king?—What good (man) can doubt concerning
the value of virtue?—Who can deny that all avaricious men
are slaves?

LESSON LXXXVII.

Subjunctive Perfect.

(531.) Form of *esse* (to be) in subjunctive perfect.

<i>fuërim,</i> <i>I may have been.</i>	<i>fuëris,</i> <i>thou mayest have been.</i>	<i>fuërit,</i> <i>he, she, it may have been.</i>	<i>fuërimus,</i> <i>we may have been.</i>	<i>fuëritis,</i> <i>ye may have been.</i>	<i>fuërint,</i> <i>they may have been.</i>
---	---	---	--	--	---

(532.) Forms of regular verbs.

1. The subjunctive perfect active adds the endings

ërim, ëris, ërit, ërimus, ëritis, ërint,

to the indic. perf. stem of the verb; e. g., *ãmäv-ërim*, &c.

2. The subjunctive perfect passive is formed by combining
the perfect participle with the subjunctive present of *esse*:
e. g., *ãmätüs sim*, &c.

[ Deponents, of course, are formed like passives.]

3.


PARADIGM, SUBJUNCTIVE PERFECT.

ACTIVE.— <i>I may have loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>						
āmāv- mōnū- rex- audiv-	ērīm.	ērīs.	ērīt.	ērīmūs.	ērītīs.	ērīnt.
PASSIVE.— <i>I may have been loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>						
Sing.	{ āmātūs, ā, ūm, mōnītūs, ā, ūm, rectūs, ā, ūm, auditūs, ā, ūm,	{ sīm. sis. sīt.	Plur.	{ āmāti, æ, ā, mōnīti, æ, ā, rectī, æ, ā, auditī, æ, ā,	{ sīmūs. sitīs. sīnt.	

EXERCISE.

(533.) Vocabulary.

*Health, vāletūdō, (valetudin) is (339).**So, thus, itā (adv.)**Kindness, pardon, vēniā, æ.**To take captive, cāpērē (io, cāp-, capt-, 199).**Patience pātientia, æ.**To slay, cut to pieces, cædērē (cæcid-, cæs-, 413, 57).**It makes no difference, it matters not, nihīl rēfert.*

 Form the subjunctive perfect active and passive of the following verbs :

*Absūm, to be absent (no passive).**Prōsūm, to profit (do.).**Dēsūm, to be wanting (do.).**Vōcārē, to call.**Confirmārē, to assert.**Dicērē, to say (dix-, dict-).**Tradērē, to assert, deliver (tradid-, tradit-).**Laudare, to praise.**Vidēre, to see.**Invenīre, to find (inven-, invent-).**Scribērē, to write.**Fācērē (io-, fēc-, fact-), to do.**Lōquī (lōcūt-), to speak (dep.).**Censērē (censū-, cens-), to think.**Opprimērē (press-, press-), to repress, crush.**Constituēre (stītū-, stitūt-), to place**Oppugnārē, to assault.**Rēvōcārē, to recall, restore*

(534.) Examples.

(a) *Do not do it.**N ē fācērīs.*

(a) The subjunctive perfect (as well as the present) may be used in prohibitions, with *n ē*, or *nihīl*, instead of the imperative.

(b) *By your leave I would say.**Pācē tuā dixērīm; or, Vēniā tuā dixērīm.**Epīcurus may have said.**Dixērīt Epīcūrus.**Perchance some one may say.**Forsītān āliquis dixērīt.*

(b) The subjunctive perfect may be used with or without an adverb, to express a supposed case (that may be true).

(c) *I think I can assert this.**Hōc confirmāvērīm.**You will scarcely find a man of any nation.**Vix ullius gentis hōmīnem invēnērīs.*

(c) The subjunctive perfect (as well as present) is used to soften an assertion. (Such phrases as, *Probably I might, I think I can, I would, perhaps, &c.*, can be expressed in Latin by one word in the perfect subjunctive, as above.)

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| (d) (1) <i>Why do you laugh?</i> | Cūr rīdēs? |
| (2) Tell me <i>why you laugh.</i> | Dic* mīhi cūr rīdeās. |
| (1) <i>Where have you been?</i> | Ūbī fuisti? |
| (2) I do not know <i>where you have been.</i> | Nescio ūbi fuēris. |

The sentences marked (1) are *direct* interrogative sentences, and take the indicative mood; those marked (2) are *indirect* (or *subordinate*) interrogative sentences, and take the subjunctive. Hence,

(e) *Rule of Syntax.*—The subjunctive mood is used in all in direct interrogative sentences.

Rem. Such sentences are introduced by the interrogative pronouns quis, qui, quantus, qualis, uter, &c., or the adverbs ubi, unde, quando, quo, cur, num, utrum, an, &c.

(535.) *Translate into English.*

(a) Quōd dūbītas, nē fēcēris.—Id nē dixēris.—Nihīl in commōdō (*to the injury*) vāletūdīnis tuæ fēcēris.—Cūm imprōbis ac stultis nē lōcūtus sīs.

(b) Fāciat hōc āliquis.—Fēcērit hōc āliquis.—Dixērit Epīcūrūs, Deum*essē nullum.—Forsītan eūm āmāvēris.—Forsītan itā censuēris.—Puerūm magistrī mōnuērint.—Urbēm hostes oppugnāvērint.

(c) Frātēr (*voc.*), bōnā tuā vēniā dixērim, meā sententiā mēliōr est.—Pātentiā laudāvērim boum (351, 2) atque equōrum.—Ingēniā studiāquē oppressēris faciilius (376) quām rēvōcāvēris.

(d) Nescio cūr rīdeās.—Dic, cūr ad mē nōn vēnēris.—Helvētī ibī ērunt, ūbī eōs Cēsār constitūerit.—Magnō cūm pēriculō (89, II.) id fēcit.—Intelligit, quantō cūm pēriculō id fēcērit.—Multī in praelio cāsī sunt.—Multī in praelio captī sunt.—Ūbi (*when*) victōriā āmissā est (*is lost*) nihīl rēfert, quōt in praelio cāsī aut in fugā captī sint.—Dic mīhi ūbi fuēris.

(536.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) *Do not love the wicked.—Do not hear the foolish.*

* The imperative of dicēre is dic, not dicē.

(b) Some philosophers *may-have-denied* the soul to be immortal.—*Perhaps-you-have-advised* the young-man.

(c) *I think-I-can-advice* the young man.—*You may easily repress* the minds of young men.—*You cannot easily recall* the industry (studium) of men.

(d) The mind itself knows-not *what* (quālis) *the mind is*.—*I tell me where you were*.—*I-do-not-know why you did not come to me*.—*Tell (me), were you* (fuerisne) *in school yesterday?*—*It makes no difference how many are taken-captive*.—*The boy will remain* (erit) *there, where the master may appoint him*.—*I will tell you what I have seen*.—*I will tell you what I have heard*.—*Tell me what you have done*.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

Subjunctive Imperfect and Pluperfect. — Conditional Conjunctions and Sentences.

(537.) THE subjunctive imperfect simply adds the person-endings,

m, s, t, mus, tis, nt, for the *active*,
r, ris (re), tur, mur, mini, ntur, for the *passive*,
to the *present infinitive* form of the verb. Thus,

Inf. Pres.	Imperf. Subj. Act.	Imperf. Subj. Pass.
esse, to be.	essem, I might be.	
āmārē, to love.	āmāre-m.	āmāre-r.
rēgērē, to rule.	rēgēre-m.	rēgēre-r.

(538.) PARADIGM.—SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERFECT.

1. Easēm.— <i>I might, could, would, or should be.</i>								
essēm.		essēs.		essēt.		essēmūs.	essētīs.	essaēt.
2. ACTIVE.— <i>I might, could, would, &c., love, advise, rule, hear.</i>								
āmār- mōnēr- rēgēr- audir- }		ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ēt.	
3. PASSIVE.— <i>I might, could, would, &c., be loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>								
āmār- mōnēr- rēgēr- audir- }		ēr.	ērīs or ērē.	ētūr.	ēmār.	ēmīn.	ētūr.	

Rem.—The vowel *e* of the ending is *long*, except where it comes before *m* or *t* final, when it is short of necessity.

(539.) (a) The subjunctive pluperfect *active* simply adds the person-endings,

m, s, t, mus, tis, nt,

to the *past infinitive* form of the verb. Thus,

Past Infinitive.

fuissē, to have been.

āmāvissē, to have loved.

Pluperfect Subjunctive.

fuissē-m, I might have been.

āmāvissē-m, I might have loved.

(b) The subjunctive pluperfect *passive* is formed by combining the perfect participle with the subjunctive imperfect of *essē*;

E. g., *āmātūs essēm* (sometimes with the subjunctive pluperfect of *essē*; *e. g.*, *āmātūs fuissēm, &c.*).

(c) PARADIGM.—SUBJUNCTIVE PLUPERFECT.

1. <i>I might, could, would, should have been, &c.</i>												
fuissēm.		fuissēs. fuissēt.		fuissēmūs. fuissētis.		fuissēnt.						
2. ACTIVE.— <i>I might, could, &c., have loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>												
āmāv- mōnū- rex- audiv- }	issēm.		issēs.		issēt.		Issēmūs.	Issētis.	issēnt.			
3. PASSIVE.— <i>I might, could, &c., have been loved, advised, ruled, heard.</i>												
Sing.	{	āmātūs, ā, ūm,		{	essēm.	Plur.	{	āmāti, æ, ā,		{	essēmūs.	
		mōnītūs, ā, ūm,						mōnīti, æ, ā,				essētis.
		rectus, ā, ūm,						recti, æ, ā,				
		auditūs, ā, ūm,						auditi, æ, ā,				

Conditional Conjunctions and Sentences.

(540.) (a) The conditional conjunctions are *sī, if*; *sīn, but if*; *nīsī, or nī, if not, unless*.

(b) A conditional sentence is one which is introduced by a conditional conjunction; *e. g.*, *if men were good, they would be nappy*.

Rem. The sentence introduced by *if* is called the *conditional sentence*; the other, the *consequent sentence*: *if men were good* is the conditional; *they would be nappy*, the consequent.

EXERCISE.

(541.) Vocabulary.

To diminish, *minuere* (*minū-, mī-*
nūt).

To cross over, *transire* (*irreg.*).

The world, *orbis terrarū*.

To subdue, *subigere* (*subēg-, subact-,*
sub-āgēre).

Longer, *diutius* (*adv., compar.*).

I wish that, *utinam* (*conj.*).

(542.) Examples and Rules.

(a) Would that my father | *Ūtinam pater vivēret!*
were alive!

I wish he could come! | *Ūtinam venīret!*

☞ In these examples (which refer to *present time*), the thing wished is supposed to be impossible (the wish is *vain*).

I wish he had lived! | *Ūtinam vixisset!*

I wish he had come! | *Ūtinam venisset!*

☞ In these examples (which refer to *past time*), the thing wished is supposed to be impossible (the wish is *vain*).

(a) *Rule of Syntax.*—The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used to express an *impossible supposition*, or a *vain wish*; the *imperfect*, with reference to *present* or *future time*; the *pluperfect*, with reference to *past time*.

(b) Conditional Sentences.

(1) If he has (any) money, | *Sī pecūniam habet, dāt.*
he gives (it).

Here the man is supposed to *have* money; the condition expressed by 'if' is therefore *real*.

(2) If he has (any) money, | *Sī pecūniam habeat,*
he will give (it). | *dābit.*

Here the condition is *possible*, if not *real*. The man *may have* money.

(3) If he had any money, he | *Sī pecūniam habēret,*
would give it. | *dāret.*

Here the man is supposed to have *no* money: the condition is *unreal*. (Observe that it refers to *present* or *future time*.)

(4) If he had had any money, | *Sī pecūniam habuisset,*
he would have given it. | *dēdisset.*

Here the man is supposed not to *have had* any money; the condition is therefore *unreal* (referring to *past time*). Hence,

(b) *Rule of Syntax.*—In conditional sentences (1), a *real*

condition is expressed by the indicative; (2) a *possible* condition by the present or perfect subjunctive; (3) an *unreal* or *impossible* condition in present time by the imperfect subjunctive; and (4) an *unreal* or *impossible* condition in past time by the *pluperfect subjunctive*.

Rem. 1. In cases (3) and (4), the subjunctive must be used in the *consequent* as well as in the *conditional* sentence.

2. It follows that the perfect or pluperfect indicative can *never* be used with *si*. *If he had come* = *si vênissêť, not si vênérăt.*

(543.) *Translate into English.*

Ūtinam salvus essēs.—Sī hōc dīcis, erras.—Sī hōc aīcas, erres.—Sī hōc dīcēres, errāres.—Sī hōc dīxsses, errāvisses.—Sī vēnisses ād exercītum, āb impērātōre vīsus esses.—Frāter mīhi narrābat quīd āmicus tuus fēcisset (534, *d*).—Mēmōriā mīnuītur, nīśī ēām exercēās.—Sī Helvētīi flūmen transirē cōnentur, Cēsar eōs prōhibēbit.—Sī Helvētīi flūmen transīre cōnārentur, Cēsar eōs prōhibēret.—Sī Helvētīi flūmen transīre cōnātī essent, Cēsar eōs prōhibuissēt.—Sī obsīdes āb Helvētīis Cēsārī (54) dentur, cūm iīs pācem faciēt.—Sī obsīdes āb Helvētīis Cēsari dārentur cūm iīs pācem faciēret.—Sī obsīdes āb Helvētīis Cēsari dātī essent, cūm iīs pācem fēcisset.—Nōn sūpērārēmur, cīvēs (*voc.*) sī nostrī fortēs essent.—Nōn sūpērātī essēmūs, cīvēs, sī fortiōres milītes nōbīs (*dat.*, 125, II., *a*) fuissent.—Alexander tōtum fērē orbēm terrārum sūbēgit.—Alexander, sī diutīus vixisset, tōtum orbem terrārum sūbēgisset.

(544.) *Translate into Latin.*

I wish my father had lived longer.—I wish you had come.—Would-that the soldiers had been braver.—If you-would-read this book (542, b, 3), I would give (it) to you.—I wish the general had led the army across the Rhine.—If you had any thing (quīd), you would willingly give (it).—If they had had the money, they would willingly have given it.—If-you-had-loved the boy, you-would-have advised him.—If you-love the boy, you-will-advise him.—If the soldiers would come to the army, they-would-be-praised by the general.—If the Germans had-led (their) army across the Rhine, Cēsar would-have-made an attack upon (in) them.—If we-are brave, we shall not be overcome

LESSON LXXXIX.

Subordinate Sentences expressing a Purpose. — Ut and Nĕ.

(545.) THE subjunctive forms of the verb *possĕ*, to be able, are the following :

[Observe that *possĕ* is compounded of *pōt-*, the stem of *pōtīs*, *able*, and *essĕ*; thus, *pōt-essĕ*, contracted, *possĕ*. So all similar forms are contracted, and the *t* changed into *s* before *s*.]

<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	(Pōtīs sīm = pot-sīm = possīm.)
pōs- sīm.	sis. sīt. sīmūs. sītīs. sīnt.
<i>Subj. Imperf.</i>	(Pōtīs essem = potessem = possem.)
pōs- sēm.	sēs. sēt. sēmūs. sētīs. sēnt.
<i>Subj. Perf.</i>	(Pōtīs fuerim = pot-fuerim = potuerim.)
pōtū- ěrim.	ěris. ěrit. ěrimūs. ěritīs. ěrint.
<i>Subj. Plup.</i>	(Pōtīs fuissē = pot-fuissē = potuissem.)
pōtū- issēm.	issēs. issēt. issēmūs. issētīs. issent.

(546.) The *final* conjunctions (*i. e.*, such as denote a *purpose*, *aim*, or *result*) are *ūt* (or *ūtī*), *nĕ*, *quīn*, *quō*, *quōmīnūs*.

Ūt, or *ūtī*, *that*, *so that*, *in order that*.

Nĕ, *that not*, *so that-not*, *lest*.

Quīn, *but that*.

Quō, *in order that*, *to the end that*.

Quōmīnūs, *that* (after verbs of *hindering*).

EXERCISE.

(547.) *Vocabulary.*

To eat, ēdĕrĕ (601).

A Rauracian, Raurācūs, ī.

A Tulingian, Tulingūs, ī.

To burn up, exūrĕrĕ (exuss-, exust-).

Together, unā (*adv.*).

Basely, turpiter (215, 2).

To surround, circumvĕnirĕ (vĕn-, vent-).

To resist, rĕsistĕrĕ (restīt-, restīt-).

To fix, hence *to decide*, stātuĕrĕ (stātū-, stātūt-).

To decide on something quite severe, āliquīd grāvius stātuĕrĕ.

To enjoin, prācēpĕrĕ (io, prācēpcept-, prā+cāpĕrĕ).

To join battle, praeliūm committĕrĕ
End, finis, īs (m., 355, Ex. II., 2).

Subordinate Sentences expressing a Purpose, End, or Object.

(548.) *Examples and Rules.*

(a) I beseech you that you do this ;

or,

I beseech you to do this.

Tē obsĕcro, ūt hōc faciās.

The general commanded <i>that the soldiers should keep their stations</i> ;	}	Dux impērāvit, ūt milītes stātiōnēs suās servārent
or,		
The general commanded the soldiers <i>to keep their stations</i> .	}	
(b) I beseech you <i>that you do not do this</i> ;	}	Tē obsēcro nē hōc fācias.
or,		
I beseech you <i>not to do this</i> .	}	
The general commanded <i>that the soldiers should not desert their stations</i> ;	}	Dux impērāvit nē milītes stātiōnes suās dēsērērent.
or,		
The general commanded the soldiers <i>not to desert their stations</i> .	}	

(a) These examples show that a *purpose* or *aim* may be expressed in English by *that*, *in order that*, or (especially after verbs of *asking* and *commanding*) by the infinitive. In Latin, such sentences are expressed by *ut*, with the *subjunctive*.*

(b) An object to be *provided against* is introduced in English by *that not*, *in order that not*, or by *not*, with the infinitive. In Latin, such sentences are always expressed by *nē*, with the *subjunctive*.

(549.) *Translate into English.*

1. Ūt.

Ēdīmus ūt vivāmus, nōn vivīmus ūt edāmus.—Vēnio ūt discā m.—Vēnī ūt discērem.—Orgētōrix persuādēt Castīcō (*dat.*) ūt regnum occūpet.—In eō itinēre, persuāsīt Castīcō, cūjus pāter regnum in civitāte suā multōs annōs (191, a) obtīnuērat, ūt regnum in civitāte suā occūpāret.—Orgetōrix persuādet Dumnorīgi ūt idēm (150) cōnētur.—Orgetōrix persuāsīt Dumnorīgi ūt idēm cōnārētur.—Helvētīi persuādēt Raurācis, ūtī cūm iīs proficiscantur.—Helvētīi persuādēt Raurācis ēt Tulingīs, ūtī, oppīdis suis vicisque

* *Jubēre* takes accusative with infinitive.

exustis (457), unā cūm iis proficiscantur.—Cæsār castellā communī, ūt Helvētios prōhibēre possit.—Cæsar castella communīvit ūt Helvētios prōhibēre posset.—Cæsar rōgat Divitiācum ūt finem ōrandī fāciat.—Cæsar rōgāvit Divitiācum ūt finem ōrandī fācēret.—Helvētiis (147) Cæsar impērat ūtī perfūgās rēdūcant.—Helvētiis Cæsar impērāvit ūtī perfūgās rēdūcērent.

2. Nē.

Tē obsēcrāvi nē hōc fācēres.—Pāter filium obsēcrat nē quīd turpīter fācēret.—Milites, nē āb hoste circumvērērentur, audāciūs (376) resistēre āc fortiūs pugnāre cōpērunt.—Divitiācus Cēsārem obsēcrat, nē quīd grāviūs in frātre statuāt.—Divitiācus, multis cūm lācrymīs (89, II.) Cēsārem obsēcrāre cōpit, nē quīd grāviūs in frātre statuēret.—Præceptum est (perf. pres., *it has been enjoined to or upon*) Labiēnō, nē prælium committat, nisi Cēsāris cōpiæ vīsæ sint (542, b, 2).—Præceptum ērat Labiēnō, nē prælium committēret, nisi Cēsāris cōpiæ vīsæ essent.

[Recollect that a *purpose* or *aim* is often expressed in English by the *infinitive*; but in Latin *never*—always by *ut* with the subjunctive for a *positive aim*, by *ne* with the subjunctive for a *negative aim*.]

(550.) *Translate into Latin.*

The general commands the lieutenant (147) *not to do* (= *that he may not do*) this.—The general exhorted the soldiers *to make* (= *that they should make*) the attack sharply.—The father beseeches his daughter *to make* an end of praying.—Some-men (*quidam*) *live to eat*, not *eat to live*.—He comes *to see* the general.—He came *to see* the general.—The Helvetians persuade the Tulingians *to set out* together with them.—The captive beseeches the general *not to decide-on* any-thing at-all-severe against (*in*) him (*sē*).—Cæsar commands the Gauls (147) *to bring back* (= *that they should bring back*) the deserters.—The Romans, *that they might not be surrounded* by the Gauls, began to fight more bravely.—The commander enjoins-it-upon the lieutenant *not to join battle*.—The commander enjoined it upon the lieutenant *not to join battle*.

LESSON XC.

Succession of Tenses.—Ūt expressing a Result.

(551.) (1.) We cannot say in English, "*He comes, that he might see the general*;" or, "*He came, that he may see the general*;" but we must say, "*He comes, that he may see the general*," and, "*He came, that he might see the general*." It is obvious that this tense of the verb in the subordinate sentence depends upon that of the principal sentence; and this dependence is called *the succession of tenses*.

2. The tenses of the Latin verb are divided into *primary* and *historical*.

	Present.	Future.	Perf. Definite.
(a) <i>Primary</i> ,	{ <i>amāt</i> , <i>he loves</i> .	<i>amābit</i> , <i>he will love</i> .	<i>amāvīt</i> , <i>he has loved</i>
	Imperfect.	Pluperfect.	Perf. Aorist.
(b) <i>Historical</i> ,	{ <i>amābāt</i> , <i>he was loving</i> .	<i>amāverāt</i> , <i>he had loved</i> .	<i>amāvit</i> , <i>he loved</i> .

3. The *Rule* for the succession of tenses then is: If there be a *primary* tense in the principal sentence, there must be a *primary* tense in the subordinate sentence; if a *historical* tense in the principal, a *historical* tense in the subordinate.

[The examples in the preceding lesson illustrate this rule, and those in the present lesson will farther confirm it.]

EXERCISE.

(552.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>To strive, contend</i> , nīti (nīs- and nix-), dep.	<i>To cut or tear down</i> , scindere (scid-sciss-).
<i>Despair</i> , desperātiō, (desperation) is (333, R.).	<i>To begin</i> , incipere (incēp-, incept-, in+capere).
<i>To run together</i> , concurrere (concurr- and concūcurr-, concurs-).	<i>To afford means or facilities</i> , dare facultatem.
<i>Storm</i> , tempestas, (tempestat) is (293).	<i>Deceit</i> , dōlus, ī.
<i>To rise</i> (as a storm), cooriri (coort-, con+oriri).	<i>Rather</i> , magis.
<i>Palisade</i> (rampart of stakes) val-lum, ī.	<i>Integrity</i> , probitas, (probitat) is (293).
	<i>Course</i> , cursus, ūs.
	<i>Change</i> commutatio (ōnis, 333, R.)

*Subordinate Sentences expressing a Result**(553.) Examples and Rules.*

So great is the power of integrity, that we esteem it even in an enemy.

The Helvetians have been so taught by (= have so learned from) their fathers, that they contend (or, as to contend) rather with valour than deceit.

Tantā vis prōbitātis est, ut eām vel in hostē diligāmus.

Helvētīi itā ā patrībūs suis didicērunt, ut māgis virtūte quā dōlō nītantur.

(a) These examples show that a *result* (especially after the words *such, so, so great, &c.*) is expressed in English by *that* with the indicative, or, *as to* with the infinitive; in Latin, by *ut* with the subjunctive.

(b) *Rule of Syntax.*—*Ut*, signifying *that*, and introducing a *result*, governs the subjunctive.

Rem. *Ut*, expressing a *result*, generally follows the correlative words *talīs, tantus (such, so great)*; *ādēo, sic, itā (so)*; and verbs signifying *to accomplish, to bring to pass, &c.*

(554.) Translate into English.

Impērātor perficit, ut ī Sēquāni dēnt obsīdēs.—*Dumnorix perficit, ut ī Sēquāni dēnt obsīdes, nē itīnēre* (153, a) *Helvētiōs prohibeant* (548, b).—*Imperātor tantā vī* (55, a) *oppīdum oppugnat, ut desperātio ānīmos oppīdānōrum occupet* (551, 3).—*Impērātōr tantā vī oppīdum oppugnāvit ut despērātio ānīmos oppīdānōrum occupāret.*—*Tantus tīmor omnem exercītum occupāvit, ut omnīū ānīmos perturbāret.*—*Tantā tempestas sūbitō coortā est (perf. aor.) ut nāvēs cursum tēnērē nōn possent.*—*Impērātor tantam sībī* (54) *jām īn Galliā auctoritātem compārāverat, ut undīque ād eum lēgātiōnes concurrērent* (551, 3).—*Gallī vallum scindunt.*—*Gallī vallum scindēre ēt fossam complēre incipiunt.*—*Gallī sic nostrōs contemnunt, ut vallum scindēre ēt fossam complēre incipiant.*—*Oppīdum nātūrā* (55, a) *lēcī sic muniebātur, ut magnam ād dūcendum* (496) *bellum dārēt facultātem.*—*Auxiliōrum adventū* (55) *magnā rērum commutātio facta est.*

—Hōrum adventū tantā rērum commutatio factā est, ūt nos-
tri fortius pugnārent atque hostēs rēpellērent.

(555.) *Translate into Latin.*

[Recollect that *as to* with the English infinitive must be translated by *ut* with subjunctive.]

The commander *brought-it-to pass* that the Sequanians gave hostages.—The Sequanians gave hostages *that* they would *not prohibit* the Helvetians from (their) journey (153, a).—*So great-a* fear suddenly seizes the whole army, *that it alarms* the minds of all.—*So great* a tempest suddenly arises, *that the ships can not hold* their course.—The commander *procures* for himself *so great* authority in Italy, *that* even the senators *run-together* to him.—The Helvetians begin to cut-down the bridge.—The Helvetians *so despised* our men, *that they began* to cut down the bridge.—By the approach of the Æduans, *so great* a change was made *that* the Helvetians *began* to fight more bravely.—The Helvetians *had so learned* from their fathers, *as to contend* rather with valour than deceit.

LESSON XCI.

Periphrastic Conjugation, Subjunctive.—Use of quō, quin, quōminūs, with the Subjunctive.

(556.) THE want of a future subjunctive is supplied to some extent by the periphrastic conjugation, formed by combining the participles in *r ū s* and *d ū s* with the subjunctive tenses of *esse*, *to be*.

ACTIVE.		
Pres.	amātūrus sīm,	<i>I may be about to love.</i>
Imperf.	amātūrus essēm,	<i>I might be about to love.</i>
Perf.	amātūrus fuērim,	<i>I may have been about to love.</i>
Pluperf.	amātūrus fuissēm,	<i>I might have been about to love.</i>
PASSIVE.		
Pres.	amandūs sīm,	<i>I may be to be loved (one must love me).</i>
Imperf.	amandūs essēm,	<i>I might be to be loved.</i>
Perf.	amandūs fuērim,	<i>I may have been to be loved.</i>
Pluperf.	amandūs fuissēm,	<i>I might have been to be loved.</i>
Esse (to be).		
Pres.	fūtūrus sīm,	<i>I may be about to be.</i>
Imperf.	fūtūrus essēm,	<i>I might be about to be.</i>

EXERCISE.

(557.) *Vocabulary.*

To hold back, restrain, rētinēre (rē-tinū-, rētent-, rē-tēnēre).

To stand in the way, prevent, ob-stārē (obstāt-, obstat-, ob-stāre).

To sustain, sustinēre (tinū-, tent-, sub-tēnēre).

Novelty, nōvitas, (nōvitat) is (293).

To decree, consciscēre (consciv-, conscit-).

To commit suicide, sibi mortem consciscēre (= to decree death to one's self).

Cowardice, ignāvia, æ.

To take away from, ēripēre (ō-ēripu-, ērept-); governs *acc.* and *abl.*

To train, educate, ēdūcārē (av-, at-).

To deceive, fallērē (fēfell-, fals-).

It was Cæsar's fault, Për Cæsarem stētīt (= it stood through Cæsar).

To finish, perficēre (perfēc-, perfect-).

Suspicion, suspīcio, ōnis (333, R.).

(558.) *Examples and Rules.*

(a) *Cæsar erects forts, that he may the more easily keep off the Helvetians.*

Cæsar castellā commūnit, quō fācilius Helvētios prōhibēre possit.

(a) *Quō* is used to express a purpose (instead of *ut*), especially when a *comparative* enters the sentence.

Cæsar castellā commūnit *ut* possit (*that he may, &c.*).

Cæsar castellā commūnit quō fācilius possit (*that he may more easily, &c.*).

(b) (1) *There is no one but thinks;*

Nemo est quin pūtet.

or,

There is no one who does not think.

(2) *There is no one so brave as not to be confounded.*

Nemo est tam fortis quin perturbētur.

(3) *It is not doubtful but that the soldiers will fight bravely.*

Nōn dūbium est quin milītes fortitēr pugnātūri sint.

(4) *I did not doubt that the soldiers would fight bravely.*

Nōn dūbitābam quin milītes fortitēr pugnātūri essent.

(5) *They could not be restrained from hurling darts (= but that they should hurl darts).*

Nōn pōtērant rētinēri quin telā conjicērent.

libenter fecerunt.—Nōn tālis sūm quī te fallam.—Innocentiā est affectio tālis animi, quæ nō ceat nēmīni (54).

(570.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) Cæsar did badly *in-crossing* (*who crossed*, perf. subj.) the Rhine.—They err *who think* that the soul is not immortal.—The father censured his son *for setting-out** (= *who had set out*, plup. subj.) from the city.

(b) Cæsar sends forward scouts, *to choose* (= *who may choose*) a place fit for the camp.—Cæsar sent ambassadors to Ariovistus *to demand* (= *who should demand*).—The general brings back his forces to the hill, and sends forward the cavalry *to sustain* (= *who may sustain*) the attack.

* Prosciscor.


§ 17.

ORATIO OBLIQUA. (XCIV.)

LESSON XCIV.

Oratio Obliqua (Oblique Narration).

(571.) In relating the words of another, we may either, (1) represent him as speaking in the first person, and give his words precisely as they were uttered; *e. g.*, "He said, '*I will come*,'" or, (2) we may state what he said in a narrative form; *e. g.*, "He said *that he would come*." The former is called *Oratio recta* (*direct narration*); the latter, *Oratio obliqua* (*oblique narration*).

 The example above given shows that the moods must be different in the two modes of narration.

(572.) The sentences introduced in the *oratio obliqua* are either *principal* or *subordinate*; *e. g.*,

Ariovistus said that he would not wage war upon the Eduans, *if they paid the tribute yearly*.

In this example, the sentence in spaced printing is the principal sentence; the sentence in *italic* the subordinate sentence.

EXERCISE.

(573.) Vocabulary.

To bring upon, to wage, *inferre* (il-lat-), *irreg.*

Tribute, *stipendium*, *l.*

Yearly, *quotannis* (used as *adv.*).

To pay, *pendere* (*pēpend-*, *pens-*).

To show, point out, *ostendere* (*ostend-*, *ostens-*, and *ostent-*). -

To excel, *præstare* (*præstît-*, *præstit-*, and *præstat-*).


Because, *propterea quod*.

To get, to gain for another, *conciliare* (*av-*, *ât-*).

To get possession of, *pōtiri*, (*pōtît dep.* (governs *gen.* or *abl.*).

Very easy, *perfacilis*, *e* (with *dat.*).

Affirm, confirmare (*av-*, *ât-*).

 The Helvetians intend, *Helveticis est in animo* (= it is in mind to the Helvetians).

(574.) *Examples and Rules.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) Ariovistus said that he would not wage war upon the <i>Æduans</i> . | Ariovistus dixit, sē <i>Æduis</i> bellum nōn illātūrum esse. |
|---|--|

(a) *Rule of Syntax.*—In principal sentences in oratio obliqua, the *accusative with the infinitive* is used.

Rem. When they express a *command* or *wish*, the subj. is used.


- | | |
|--|---|
| (b) Ariovistus said that he would not wage war upon the <i>Æduans</i> , if they paid the tribute yearly. | Ariovistus dixit, sē <i>Æduis</i> bellum nōn esse illātūrum, si stipendium quōtannis penderent. |
|--|---|

(b) In subordinate sentences in oratio obliqua, the *subjunctive* is always used (e. g., penderent).

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| (c) The lieutenant denied that he had crossed the Rhine. | Lēgātus negāvit sē Rhēnum transissē.* |
|--|---------------------------------------|

He denies that he can give. | Negat sē possē dare.

(575.) *Translate into English.*

Cæsar dixit sē, postquam hostēs fūsi essent, castra munitūrum essē.—De dēcimā lēgiōne Cæsar nōn dūbitābat.—Cæsar dixit, sē de dēcimā lēgiōne nōn dūbitāre.—Cæsar dixit, sē cū solā dēcimā lēgiōne esse itūrum.† —Cæsar dixit sē cum solā dēcimā lēgiōne, de quā nōn dūbitāret, essē itūrum.—Impērātor dixit, maxīmas nātiōnes pulsas sup̄rātasque esse.—Helvētiis (54) perfācile erat tōtiūs Gallīæ imp̄riō (*abl.*) pōtīrī.—Dumnōrix ostendit, Helvētiis perfācile esse, quum virtutē (55, a) omnibus (*dat.*) præstārent, tōtiūs Gallīæ imp̄riō pōtīrī.—Dumnōrix ipse Casticō (54) regnum conciliātūrus erat.—Dumnōrix confirmat sē Casticō regnūm conciliātūrum esse.—Helvētiis est in animō iter p̄r prōvinciam facere; aliud iter habent nullum.—Sibi essē in animō (573, ) dicunt Helvētiū, sinē ullō mālificio iter p̄r prōvinciam facere, prop̄terea quōd aliud iter habeant nullum.—Impērātor nōn pōtest iter Helvētiis (54) p̄r prōvinciam dare.—Impērātor

* Past infin. of transirē

† Fut. infin. of irē, to go.

nēgat s ē, mōrē ēt exemplō pōpūli Rōmāni, posse īter Hel-
vētīis pār prōvinciam dāre.

(576.) *Translate into Latin.*

Cæsar said that he, after Pompey was conquered, would cross-over into Asia.—Cæsar had full confidence in (=did not doubt concerning) the fourth legion.—Cæsar said that he would attack the town with the fourth legion alone, in which he had full confidence.—Cicero said that the greatest cities had been attacked.—The lieutenant affirms that he will lead the army across the Rhine, if the enemy attempt to hinder (them) (prohibere).—The Helvetians say that they intend (573, ~~to~~), to seek peace of Cæsar.

§ 18.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. XCV.—XCVI.)

LESSON XCV.

Impersonals.—Pudet, Piget, Tædet, &c.

(577.) IMPERSONAL verbs are those which have no subject, and take the pronoun *it* before them in English; *e. g.*, pluīt, *it rains*.

(578.) (a) Some impersonals are *never used* in the personal form; *e. g.*, pigēt, *it grieves*, &c.; (b) others are simply the third person of personal verbs: *e. g.*, plācēt, *it pleases* (plācēō, I please). (c) Again, the third person singular of many intransitive verbs is used impersonally in the passive: curritūr. *they run* (it is run); *I am envied*, invidētur mihi; nunciātū est, *it was told*.

(579.) (a) The following impersonals (which express certain feelings) take the *accusative* of the person and *genitive* of the cause of the feeling.

Pigēt, piguit,	<i>it grieves.</i>
Pūdet, pūduīt,	{ <i>it shames,</i> <i>one is ashamed.</i>
Pœnitēt, pœnituit,	<i>it repents.</i>
Tædet, pertæsū est,	<i>it wearies, disgusts.</i>
Misērēt,	<i>one pities.</i>

Your folly grieves me.

Mē pigēt stultitiæ tuæ (= *it grieves me of your folly*).

(b) Sometimes the cause or object of the feeling is expressed by the *infinitive*, or a *sentence* with quōd.

I am not ashamed of having done this.

Nōn pūdet mē hōc fēcissē (= *it does not shame me to have done this*).

I repent of offending you.

Pœnitet mē quōd tē offendī (= *it repents me that I have offended you*).

EXERCISE.

(580.) *Vocabulary.*

Indolent, ignāv-us, ā, ūm.

Folly, ineptiæ, ārum (57, R.).

To sin, peccārē (āv-, āt-).

Business, nēgōtium, i.

Undertaken, susceptūs, ā, ūm (part. of suscipere).

To confess, fātērī (fass-), dep

Because, since, quōniām (conj.).

Almost, pænē (adv.).

Some day, āliquandō (adv.).

Innocent, innōcens, (innōcert) is

Lot, sors, (sort) Is (293). [(107).

(581.) *Translate into English.*

(a) Ignāvum pœnitēbit āliquando ignāviæ.—Nōn pœnitēt mē hujus consilii.—Tuī* mē mīseret.—Eōs inep-tiārum pœnitēbat.—Pœnitēbat mē peccāti.—Mīseret tē āliōrum, tuī* nēc mīseret, nēc pūdet.—Nōs mīseret cā-lāmitātis tuæ.—Nunquam Cæsārem suscepti negotiī pertæsum est.—Mē civitātis mōrum pīget, tædetque.

(b) Illum pœnitet quōd mē offendērit.—Socrāten nōn pūduit fātērī se multas rēs nescīre.—Tē id pūdui-fācēre.—Nōn pœnitet mē vixisse, quoniām nōn frustrā vixi.—Quē m pœnitet peccasse, pæne est innōcens.

(582.) *Translate into Latin.*

(a) Thou wilt repent of thy folly.—He will be ashamed of his indolence.—We shall be ashamed of thee.—We pitied them.—He was ashamed of us.—We shall never repent of our industry.—The boy will some-day be ashamed of his indolence.—Thou wilt some-day repent of thy folly.—We are weary of life.—He was ashamed of the citizens.—I am ashamed of you and your ignorance.—Many are grieved (at) their lot (*gen.*) (= It grieves many of their lot).—I am not only grieved at, but also (sed etiam) ashamed of, my folly (= It not only grieves, but also shames me of my folly).

(b) I repent of having-sinned.—I am ashamed of doing this.—A wise man is not ashamed to confess that he is ignorant-of many things.—I am weary of living (*vivere*).—I repent of having lived in-vain.—The boy repents of having offended (*quod, with perf. subj.*) the master.—The young man is ashamed of having lived in-vain.—The general repented of having moved (*inf.*) the camp.—The Helvetians repented of having crossed (*inf.*) the river.—The barbarians repented of having approached (*inf.*) the rampart (use *ad* before the accusative).

* *Gen. of tā.*

LESSON XCVI

Impersonal Verbs, continued.(583.) *Vocabulary.*

Ought, it behooves, oportet, ōbat, nit, &c. (with acc. and inf.).

It is becoming, dēcēt (with acc. and inf.).

It pleases, plācēt, placuit, &c. (with dat.).

It is of importance, it interests, interest (with gen.).

It concerns, it matters, refert (with gen.).

It is agreeable, libet, or libet (with dat.).

It is allowed, lawful (one must), licet (licuit and licitum est), dat.

It happens, contingit (dat.). Accidit (used rather of evil accidents).

It is expedient, expedit (dat.).

With my permission, mea voluntate (abl., 55, a).

(584.) *Examples and Rules.*

(a) *Boys ought to be diligent.*

Pueros oportet diligentes esse (= *it behooves boys to be diligent*).

It becomes a young man to be modest.

Dēcet vērēcundum esse adolescentem.

(a) *Oportet* and *dēcet* are followed by the accusative and infinitive.

[ *Oportet* is also followed by the subjunctive.]

(b) (1) *It pleased the majority to defend the camp.*

Mājōri parti placuit castrā dēfendēre.

(2) *Cæsar determined (=it pleased Cæsar) to send ambassadors to Ariovistus.*

Placuit Cæsāri ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mittēret.

(b) *Plācēt* (expressing a *purpose*) may be followed by the dative, with (1) the infinitive, or (2) the subjunctive with *ut*.

(c) *I may go (=it is allowed to me to go).*

Mīhi ire licet.

You may go.

Tibi ire licet.

I might have gone (=it was allowed to me to go).

Mīhi ire licuit.

I may be idle.

Mīhi otiosō esse licet.

I do not choose (=it is not agreeable to me).

Nōn libet mīhi.

(c) *Licēt, libēt*, and, in short, all impersonals which admit *to* or *for* after them in English, are followed by the dative.

(d) *It concerns all* (= it is the interest of all). *Intērest omnium.*

It concerns me.

Meā intērest.

It is your concern.

Tuā rēfert.

It is my business.

Meā rēfert.

(d) *Intērest* governs the genitive; but when a *personal pronoun* is to be used, the *possessive ablative* (*meā, tuā, &c.*) is used instead of the genitive (*meī, tuī, &c.*). *Rēfert* is rarely used except with these ablative forms.

(585.) *Translate into English.*

Omnium intērest vērā (accus. pl.) dicere.—*Intērest meā rectē facere.*—*Nōn libet mīhi prāliū committēre.*—*Cāsāri nōn plācuit prāliū committēre.*—*Intērest meā hōc (accus.) scribēre.*—*Lēgātus pētēbat, ut sibi discēdēre liceret.*—*Expēdit reipublicæ (dat., 584, c.).*—*Tibi licet id facere.*—*Meā vōluntātē tibi id facere licet.*—*Helvētīi rōgant ut (548, a) Cāsaris vōluntātē id facere liceat.*—*Cāsārem oportet ad Ariovistum venīre.*—*Ariovistus dixit; Cāsārem oportere (574, a) ad sē venīre.*—*Plācuit Cāsāri ut dēcimam lēgiōnem mittēret.*—*Amīcitiā immortalē esse oportet.*—*Mīhi negligenti esse nōn licet.*—*Nōbīs venīre licuit.*—*Libērōrum (65, R.) intērest pārentēs vivēre et salvōs esse.*—*Tibi ignāvō esse nōn licet.*—*Peccāre nēmīni licet.*—*Dēcet tē esse diligētem.*

(586.) *Translate into Latin.*

Boys ought to be modest (584, a).—You ought to do this.—You ought to have done this (*oportuit, with pres. inf., facerē*).—It becomes us to follow nature.—It becomes a young man to love his parents.—The general determined (= *it pleased the general*) to make the attack.—The Helvetians determined to send ambassadors to Caesar.—You may do this (584, c).—You may not do this.—I do not choose (= it is not agreeable to me) to ride-on-horseback.—I do not choose to come to the city.—It is every-body's interest (= it interests all) to do rightly (584, d).—It is my business to keep (my) word (*fides*).—You are not allowed to come.—We ought to praise the brave

§ 19.

(IRREGULAR VERBS. (XCVII.—CII.)

LESSON XCVII.

Pos-sūm, Pos-sē, Pōt-uī, to be able, (can).

(587.) *Pos-sūm* is compounded of *pōt-īis*, *able*, and the verb *sūm*. The *t* before *s* is changed to *s*; *e. g.*, *pōt-sūm*, *pos-sūm*; *pōt-sunt*, *pos-sunt*.

INDICATIVE.						
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>pos-sūm.</i>	<i>pōt-ēs.</i>	<i>pōt-est.</i>	<i>pos-sūmūs.</i>	<i>pōt-estīs.</i>	<i>pos-sunt.</i>
<i>Imp.</i> , <i>pōt-ērām</i> ; <i>Perf.</i> , <i>pōt-uī</i> ; <i>Plup.</i> , <i>pōt-uērām</i> ; <i>Fut.</i> , <i>pōt-ērō</i> ; <i>Fut. Perf.</i> , <i>pōt-uērō</i> : <i>all regular.</i>						
SUBJUNCTIVE.						
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>pos-sim.</i>	<i>pos-sis.</i>	<i>pos-sit.</i>	<i>pos-simūs.</i>	<i>pos-sitis.</i>	<i>pos-sint.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>pos-sēm.</i>	<i>pos-sēs.</i>	<i>pos-sēt.</i>	<i>pos-sēmūs.</i>	<i>pos-sētis.</i>	<i>pos-sent.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> , <i>pōt-uērīm</i> ; <i>Plup.</i> , <i>pōt-uissēm</i> : <i>regular.</i>						
<i>Infīn. Pres.</i> , <i>pos-sē</i> ; <i>Perf.</i> , <i>pōt-uissē</i> ; <i>Part.</i> , <i>pōt-ens</i> (used only as an adjective).						

EXERCISE.

(588.) Vocabulary.

Laughter, *risūs*, *us*, *m*.

To sow, *sērērē* (*sēv-*, *sāt-*).

Good deed, act of kindness, *bēnēficiūm*, *i*.

Reap, *mētērē* (*messū-*, *mess-*).

To do good to, to benefit, *prōdessē* (*prōfū-*, *prōt-sūm*); governs *dat*.

Hang over, *impendērē*.

To render, *reddēre* (*reddid-*, *reddīt-*).

Influence, *grātiā*, *æ*.

Fraud, *fraus*, (*fraud*) *īs* (293).

Restrain, *rētīnēre* (*rētīnu-*, *rētent-rētēnēre*).

With equanimity, *æquō ānīmō* (*abl = with equable mind*).

(589.) Examples.

(a) *To be very powerful.*

Plūrimūm posse (= to be very much able).

(b) *Of the whole of Gaul, the Helvetians are the most powerful.*

Tōtīus Galliæ plūrimūm Helvētīi possunt.

(c) *A very few can keep off (many).* | Perpauci prōhibere possunt

(d) *In the rest of Gaul.* | In reliquā Galliā.

[What is the rule for the Succession of Tenses? 551, 3.]

[What case do the compounds of sum (prosum, desum, &c.) govern 367, b.]

(590.) *Translate into English.*

Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmo pōtest.—Per risum multum pōtēris cognoscere stultum.—Sere (*imperative*) bēnēficia, ut possis (548, a) mētēre fructum.—Viri bōni sūmus, si (iūs) prōsūmus, quibus possūmus.—Semper ita vivāmus (528, b) ut ratiōnem reddere possimus (553, b).—Mons altissimus impendit ut fācile perpauci prōhibere possint (553, b).—Mons altissimus impendebat ut fācile perpauci prōhibere possent.—Sine agricultūra hōmīnes vivere nōn possunt.—Nostri hostes consēqui nōn pōtuērunt, quōd ēquites insulam cāpere nōn pōtuērunt.—Divitiācus plūrimū dōmi (*at home*) atque in reliquā Galliā pōtērat (589, a).—Fraus est accipere quōd nōn pōtēris reddere.—Nōn est dūbium quin tōtius Galliæ plūrimū Helvētii possint (558, b).—Germāni rētinēri nōn pōtērant quin in nostros tēla conjicērent (558, b, 5).—Cæsar pōtest iter Helvētiis (54) dāre.—Cæsar nēgat sē posse iter Helvētis dāre.—Cæsar nēgat sē, mōre et exemplō (55, a) pōpuli Rōmāni, posse iter ulli (194, R.) per prōvinciam dāre.

(591.) *Translate into Latin.*

Men cannot be happy without virtue.—Without arts we cannot live.—Let us always so live (528, b) that (553, b) we may be able to die with equanimity.—Let us sow good-deeds, that we may be able to reap fruit.—The chief was very powerful, not only (nōn solūm) at home, but also (sēd etiam) in the rest of Gaul.—Cæsar denies that (574, c) hē is able to give a passage to the ambassadors through the province.—Cæsar finds out (rēpērit) that the chief is very powerful (*accus. with inf.*).—Cæsar finds out that the chief is very powerful, not only at home, but also among the neighbouring states.—The enemy cannot be restrained from (quin) hurling darts against our soldiers.

LESSON XCVIII.

Vellē, to be willing.—Nollē, to be unwilling.—Mallē to be more willing, to prefer.

(592.) Nōlo' = nōn vōlo ; mālo = māgis vōlo.

(c) INDICATIVE.						
Pres. {	vōlō.	vis.	vult.	vōlūmūs.	vultis.	vōlunt.
	nōlō.	nonvis.	nonvult.	nōlūmūs.	nonvultis.	nōlunt.
	mālō.	māvis.	māvult.	mālūmūs.	māvultis.	mālunt.

Rem. The following tenses are regular: *Imperf.*, vōlēbām, nōlēbām, malēbām; *Perf.*, vōluī, nōluī, maluī; *Fut.*, vōlām, nōlām, malām; *Fut. Perf.*, vōluerō, nōluerō, maluerō.

(b) SUBJUNCTIVE.									
Pres.	{	vēl- nōl- māl.	}	īm.	is.	it.	īmūs.	ītīs.	int.
Imperf.	{	vell- noll- mall.	}	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.

Rem. 1. Regular are, *Perf.*, vōluērīm, nōluērīm, maluērīm; *Pluperf.*, vōluissēm, nōluissēm, maluissēm.

2. *Imperative*, nōli, nōlitō ; nōlite, nōlitōtē, nōluntō. (*Imperative* of vōlō and mālō wanting.)

3. *Participles*, vōl-ens, nōl-ens.

4. *Infinitives*: *Pres.*, vellē, nollē, mallē; *Past*, vōluissē, nōluissē, maluissē.

EXERCISE.

(593.) Vocabulary.

To be empty, unoccupied, vācārē (v-, at-), *intrans.*

Neighbour, finitīmūs, ā, ūm (with *dat.*).

Attentive, attentūs, ā, ūm.

Attentively, attentē (*adv.*).

Grant, concession, concessūs, ūs.

Content, contentūs, ā, ūm (with *abl.*).

To seem, vidērī (*pass.* of vidēre).

To return, to come back, rēverti (*revers.*), *dep.*

Old man, sēnex, (sen) Is (108, R. 1).

On the Ides of April, ād Idūs Aprīlis (the 13th of April).

April, Aprīlis, is, m. (25, a).

Docile, dōcīlis, ē (104).

(594.) Examples.

(a) *If they wish anything.* | Sī quīd vēlint.

(a) The verbs velle, nolle, malle, as transitive verbs, govern the accusative.

(b) *He is willing to hear.* | Vult audire.


(b) The verbs *vellē, nollē, mallē*, take the infinitive after them, as the complementary object (210).

(c) Cæsar is not willing *that* | Nōn vult Cæsar eūm locum
that country should remain | vācārē.
unoccupied.

(c) The verbs *vellē, nollē, mallē*, admit the accusative with the infinitive after them.

[What is the rule for *principal* sentences in oratio obliqua? (574, a.)
For *subordinate* sentences? (574, b).]

(595.) *Translate into English.*

Ēgo nōn eādem vōlo sēnex, (225, a) quæ vōlui ādōlescens.
—Sī vīs āmāri, āmā (*imperative*).—Nōn vult Cæsar eum
locum vācāre.—Nōluit Cæsar eum locum, unde Helvētīi
discessērāt, vācāre; nē Germāni finītīmī Gallīæ (54) essent
(548, b).—Bōnī hōmīnes, mīsēri quam imprōbi esse, mālunt.
—Fēre libenter hōmīnes id quōd vōlunt, crēdunt.—Idem
velle ēt idēm nolle, eā* firmā āmīcitiā est.—Dōcīlis est quī
attentē vult audire.—Quēm docīlem vōlīs faciēre, sīmū
attentum faciās oportet (584, a, ).—Nīsī Cæsar Rōmānis
(147) sōlūs impērāre vōluissēt (542, b), ā Brutō ēt Cassio nōn
interfectus esset.—Ariovistus dixit sē regnum malle (574, a)
Cæsarīs concessā (55, a) quām Ēduōrum bēnēficiō hābēre.—
Mālūmus, cū virtūte, paucīs (55, a) contentī essē, quā
sine virtūte multā hābēre.—Aristidēs bōnūs esse mālōbat
quam vīdēri.—Hābet iracundiā hōc malī (186, a, R.); nōn vult
rēgī.—Cæsar legātīs respondet (574, a) diēm sē ād dēliberan-
dum (489) sumptūrum (esse); sī quīd vōlint (542, b, 2) ād
Īdūs Aprīlis revertantur (574, b).—Tāmēn Cæsar, ūt spātium
intercēdērē possēt (548, a) dum milītēs convēnīrent, lēgātīs
respondit, diēm sē ād dēliberandum sumptūrum; sī quīd vel-
lent, ād Īdūs Aprīlis rēvertērentur.—Cæsar āb Helvētīis dis-
cēdēre nōlōbat.—Omniā ērunt faciīliā sī vōlēs (542, b).—
Ariovistus respondēt; sī quīd Cæsar a sē vōlit, illum ād se
vōnīre oportēre.—Ariovistus respondit, sī quīd Cæsar a sē vel-
let, illum ād se vōnīre oportēre.

* Eā is in apposition with the clause idem velle et idem nolle.

LESSON XCIX.

Fero, Ferre, Tuli, Latum, to bear, bring.

(596.) (a) PARADIGM OF IRREGULAR FORMS.

INDICATIVE.							
<i>Pres. Act.</i>	fērō.	fers.	fert.	fērīmūs.	fertīs.	fērunt.	
<i>Pres. Pass.</i>	fērōr.	ferrīs.	fertūr.	fērīmūr.	fērīmīni.	fēruntūr.	
INFINITIVE.							
<i>Act.</i>	<i>Pres., ferrē, to bear.</i>		<i>Perf., tūlissē, to have borne.</i>		<i>Fut., lātūrus essē.</i>		
<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Pres., ferri, to be borne.</i>		<i>Perf., lātūs essē, to have been borne.</i>		<i>Fut., fērendum essē.</i>		
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
<i>Imperf. Act.</i>	ferr.	ēm.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.
<i>Imperf. Pass.</i>	ferr.	ēr.	ēris (ē).	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīni.	entūr.
IMPERATIVE.							
Singular.				Plural.			
<i>Active.</i>	2. fēr, fertō.	3. fertō.		2. fertē, fertōtē.	3. fēruntō.		
<i>Passive.</i>	2. ferrē, fertōr.	3. fertōr.		2. fērīmīni.	3. fēruntōr.		

(b) The remaining tenses are formed regularly from fēr-, the present stem; tūl-, the perfect stem; and lāt-, the supine stem.

1. From fēr-,

Imperfect active and passive, fērēbam, fērēbār.

Future active and passive, fēram, es; fērār, ēris.

Participle active and passive, fērens, fērendūs. Gerund, fērendī, &c.

2. From tūl-,

Indicative perfect, tūli; pluperfect, tūlērām; future perfect, tūlērō.

Subjunctive perfect, tūlērīm; pluperfect, tūlissēm.

3. From lāt-,

Participle passive, lātūs: hence all the passive forms, lātūs sūm, ērām, ēro, sīm, essem, &c.; lātūrus sūm, sim, &c.

(c) The compounds are inflected in the same way; e. g., *inferre, to bring against; intūli, illātūm; * infēro, infero, infert, &c.*

(d) *Tollo, tollērō, to raise, to take away, forms its perfect and supine from tūli, lātūm, viz., sustūli, sublātūm.*

* in + latum = illātūm, n being changed into l before l.

EXERCISE.

(597.) Vocabulary.

Frequent, crēbēr, brā, brum (77, a).

Rumour, rūmōr, (rūmōr) is (319).

To bring to, bring, afferrē (attūl-, allāt-, ad+ferre).

To bring together, conferrē (contūl-, collāt-, con+ferre); *to betake one's self*, sē conferrē.

Poor, helpless, inops, (inōp) is (in+ops), *adj.*, 107.

To prefer, prāferrē (tūl-, lāt-, prae+ferre); governs *acc.* and *dat.*

Mean, sordid, sordidus, ā, ūm.

To bring against, inferrē (tūl-, lāt-), governs *acc.* and *dat.*

To make war upon one, bellum alicui inferrē.

Especially, præsertim.

Giant, gigas, (gigant) is, m. (N on p. 133).

To conspire, plot, conjūrāre (av-, āt-).

Impediment, impēdimentum, l.

Baggage, impēdimentā, ōrum (*pl.*).

Whatever, quicquid (n. of quisquis).

(598.) Examples.

- (a) *It is the part,*
It is the duty,
It is the mark,
It is the characteristic,
of a wise man.

Est sapiētis (= *it is of a wise man*).

- (b) *The poets say.*
They say.

Poetæ fērunt.
Fērunt.

Ferunt is used for *they say*, and followed by the accusative with the infinitive.

(599.) Translate into English.

Eās rēs Cæsar graviter fert.—Cæsar dicit, eās rēs sē graviter ferrē.—Sapiens bonā suā sēcūm (125, II., b) fert.—Terrā circā sōlem itā fertur ut circā eām sīmul lūnā fēratur.—Crebrī rūmōres ad Cæsārem affērēbantur, omnēs Belgās contrā pōpūlum Rōmānum conjūrāre, obsidesque inter sē dare.—Helvētīi nostrōrum impētūs (*acc. pl.*) sustinēre nōn possunt.—Diūtius quum Helvētīi nostrōrum impētūs sustinēre nōn possent (563, b) altērī sē in montem rēcēpērunt, alterī ad impēdimentā et carrōs sē contūlērunt.—Helvētīi in ūnum locum impēdimentā contūlērunt.—Fertē miserō (54) atque Inopī (54) auxiliū.—Est sapiētis (598, a) injūrias æquō animō ferre.—Est bonī (598, a) misēris atque inōpībus auxiliū ferre.—Quid quæque (178, 6) nox aut diēs fērat, incertum

est.—Pēcūniam praeferre amicitiæ sordidum est.—Amicitiam praeferre pecūniæ honestum est.—Ariovistus pōpūlō Rōmānō bellum intūlit.—Cæsāri nunciātum est (578, c) Ariovistum pōpūlō Rōmānō bellum intūlisse.—Æquō ānīmō fērāmus quicquid nōbis accidat.—Fērenda est fortunā, præsertim quæ abest ā culpā.—Improbī ād vōluptātem fēruntur.—Poētā fērunť (598, b), gīgantēs bellum diis (62, R. 3) intūlisse.—Demētrius, quum patriā pulsus esset (563, b) ād Ptōlēmāeum rēgem sē contūlit.—Catilināe sōcī armā contrā patriam fērēbant.—Dōmōs suās Helvētīi reliquērunt, ut tōtī (194, R. 1) Galliæ bellum inferrent (548, a).

LESSON C.

Fieri, to become, to be done, to happen.—Edere, or Esse, to eat.

1. Fieri.

(600.) Fieri forms the passive of *fācērē*, to make, to do. The tenses are formed regularly with the endings of the 4th conjugation, except the infinitive and the imperfect subjunctive.

INDICATIVE.			
<i>Pres.</i> ,	<i>fi-o, fi-s, fi-t, &c.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i> ,	<i>fiēbām, bās, &c.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> ,	<i>fiām, fiēs, &c.</i>	<i>Perf.</i> ,	<i>factūs sum, ēs, est, &c.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i> ,	<i>factūs ērām, ērās, &c.</i>	<i>Fut. Perf.</i> ,	<i>factūs ēro, ēris, &c.</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE.			
<i>Pres.</i> ,	<i>fiām, fiās, &c.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i> ,	<i>fiērēm, fiērēs, &c.</i>
INFINITIVE.			
<i>Pres.</i> ,	<i>fiērī</i> ;	<i>Perf.</i> ,	<i>factūs, ā, ūm, esse</i> ;
		<i>Fut.</i> ,	<i>factum irī, or futurūm esse, or fōrē.</i>
PARTICIPLES.			
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>wanting</i> ;	<i>Perf.</i> ,	<i>factūs</i> ;
		<i>Fut.</i> ,	<i>fāciendūs.</i>

Rem. Observe that in all the forms of this verb except *fieri* and *fierēm*, *rēs*, &c., the *i* is long, contrary to the general rule that a vowel before another is short.

2. Ēdērē (essē).

(601.) Ēdērē (or essē) to eat, forms all the tenses regularly with the endings of the third conjugation; but it has, in

addition, a few forms similar to those of *essē*, to be, which are shown in the following table :

INDIC. Pres.	edo.	ēdis or ēs.	ēdit or est.	ēdīmūs.	ēditis or estis.	ēdunt.
SUBJ. Imperf.	ēderēm or essēm.	ēderēs or essēs.	ēderēt or essēt.	ēderēmūs. or essēmūs.	ēderētis or essētis.	ēderent or essent.
IMPERATIVE.	ēde or ēs.	ēdito or esto.	ēditē or esto.	editōtē or estōtē.	ēdunto.	

Rem. *Ēs*, from *esse*, to be, is short; from *esse*, to eat, it is long (*ēs*).

EXERCISE.

(602.) Vocabulary.

To wander, *vāgārī* (dep.).

Fewness, small number, *paucitās*, (*paucitāt*) *is* (293).

To be born, *nasci* (nat-), dep.

To admonish, *admōnērē* (ad+mōnērē, mōnū-, mōnūt-).

Among, *apūd* (prep., acc.).

According to, *secundūm* (prep., acc.).

Less, *mīnus* (adv.).

Sickness, *agritūdo*, (*agritādīn*) *is* (340).

To eat up, corrode, *exēdere* (ex+ēderē).

Fate, *fātūm*, *i*.

Perpetual, *perpētūus*, *ī*, *ūm*.

Poor, paupēr, (*paupēr*) *is* (107).

To drink, *bibēre* (*bīb*-, *bibē*-).

(603.) Examples.

(a) *It happens* (it is brought to pass) *that they wander less widely.*

*Fī*t, ūt mīnus latē vāgēntur.

Ut with subjunctive, expressing a consequence, frequently follows *fī*t.

(b) *He was informed* (= he was made more certain).

Certior factus est (may be followed by acc. with infin.).

(c) *Cicero was made consul.*

Cicero consul factus est.

The verb *fī*erī admits a predicate-nominative after it.

(d) *Nothing could be done.* | Nihil fīerī pōtērat.

[Repeat the rule for the Succession of Tenses (551, 3).]

(604.) Translate into English.

His rēbus fīt, ut Helvētīl mīnus latē vāgēntur (603, a).—His rēbus fīebat, ut Helvētīl mīnus latē vāgārentur.—His rēbus fīt ut Helvētīl mīnus fācīle finītīmīs bellum inferrē possint.—Dē Cēsāris adventū Aedui certiores facti sunt.—Cae-

sar, litteris (55, a) Labiēni certior fiēbat, omnes Belgas contrā pōpulum Rōmānum conjūrārē, obsīdesque inter sē dāre.—Impērātor dixit, id fiērī posse.—Nostrōrum propter paucitātē nihil fiērī pōtērat.—Labiēnus praelium commisit, ut undique unō tempōrē (118, II., c) in hostes impētūs fiērēt.—Nēmo fīt cāsū (55, a) bōnūs.—Poētā nascitur, nōn fīt.—Si fatō (55, a) omniā fiunt (542, b, 1), nihil nos admōnēre pōtest ut cautiōres fiāmus.—Contrā vim sīne vī nihil fiērī pōtest.—Diligentiā (55, a) omniā fiunt faciiliā (603, c).—Āpud vētārēs Rōmānos, ex āgricōlīs interdum fiēbant consūlēs; ita Cincinnātus consul (603, c) factus est.—Omniā quae secundūm nātūrām fiunt, hābendā sunt (502) in bōnīs.*—Saepe quī ex paupēribus divites fiunt, divitiis (*abl.*, 316, b) ūtī nesciunt.—Vivimus ut ēdāmus; nōn ēdimus ut vivāmus.—Ēdēre oportēt ūt vivāmus, nōn vivēre ūt ēdāmus.—E s s ē (601) oportet ut vivās, nōn vivēre ut ēdās.—Perpētūā curā ānimum āvārī ex est.—Bibē, ās.—Bibīte, est ē—Ēgritudo ānimum ex est.

LESSON CI.

Ire, to go.—Quire, to be able (can).—Nequire, to be unable (cannot).

(605.) *Eđ, irē, ivī, itūm, to go*, mostly follows the 4th conjugation; but is irregular in the present tense, future indic., gerund, and supine, as appears by the following

PARADIGM.

TENSES.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		
<i>Pres.</i>	ēō, is, it, imūs, itīs, eunt.	ēām, ēās, ēāt, ēāmūs, ēātīs, ēant.		
<i>Imperf.</i>	ibām, ibas, ibat, &c.	irēm, irēs, irēt, &c.		
<i>Fut.</i>	ibō, ibīs, &c. . . . ibunt.	itārūs, sīm, sis, sīt, &c.		
<i>Perf.</i>	ivī or ii, ivisti, ivit or iit, &c.	ivērīm, ivērīs, ivērīt, &c.		
<i>Pluperf.</i>	ivērām, ivērās, &c.	ivissēm, ivissēs, ivissēt, &c.		
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	ivērō, ivērīs, &c.			

IMPER.	IMPERATIVE.	SUPINE.	PARTICIPLE.	GERUND.
ī. itō, itō.	<i>Pres.</i> , irē.	itūm.	<i>Pres.</i> , iens (euntīs).	eundī.
itē, itōtē.	<i>Perf.</i> , ivissē or issē.	itā.	<i>Fut.</i> , itārūs, ā, ūm.	eundō, &c.
euntō.	<i>Fut.</i> , itārūm essē.		<i>Verbal</i> , eundūs, ā, ūm.	

* Habendā sunt in bōnīs = *should be reckoned among blessings.*

Rem. 1. In the same manner the compounds are formed; e. g., *exirē*, *abirē*, &c.; but they generally drop the *v* in the perfect-stem; thus, *āb-i*, *ab-isti*, *ab-iit*, *abissē*, *abissēm*, &c.


2. Some of the compounds obtain a *transitive* force, and then take passive form like other transitive verbs; e. g., *præterirē*, *to pass by*; *prætēreōr*, *I am passed by*, &c.

(606.) *Queo*, *I can*, *I am able*; *nēqueo*, *I cannot*, *I am unable*, are conjugated like *eo*, *I go*; but they rarely occur except in the present tense.

EXERCISE.

(607.) *Vocabulary.*

<i>To go out</i> , <i>exirē</i> (<i>ex+irē</i>). <i>Takes</i> abl., <i>with or without prep. dē</i> .	<i>By what route?</i> <i>quō itinerē</i> (<i>abl.</i> 55, a).
<i>To return</i> , <i>rēdirē</i> (<i>re+irē</i> ; <i>d</i> inserted for euphony).	<i>To perish</i> , <i>pērirē</i> (<i>pēr+irē</i>).
<i>To undergo</i> , <i>sūbirē</i> (<i>sub+irē</i>); <i>governs accus.</i>	<i>Manfully</i> , <i>virilitēr</i> (215, 2).
<i>A return</i> , <i>returning</i> , <i>rēditio</i> , (<i>rēditio</i> n) <i>is</i> (333, R.).	<i>Tell me</i> , <i>dic</i> (<i>imperat. of dicēre</i>).
<i>Ready</i> , <i>prepared</i> , <i>pārātūs</i> , <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> (<i>part. of pārārē</i>).	<i>Whether—or</i> , <i>utrum—ān</i> .
<i>To pass over</i> , <i>transirē</i> (<i>trans+irē</i>).	<i>Taken away</i> , <i>sublatūs</i> , <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> (<i>part. pass. of tollērē</i>) (596, d).
<i>Before</i> , <i>præ</i> , <i>adv.</i> (<i>or prep. with abl.</i>).	<i>Of Zurich</i> , <i>Tigurinūs</i> , <i>ā</i> , <i>ūm</i> .
<i>Of Cannæ</i> , <i>Cannensis</i> , <i>ē</i> (104).	<i>To suffer</i> , <i>allow</i> , <i>pāti</i> (<i>pass.</i>), <i>dep.</i>
<i>Whither</i> , <i>quō</i> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>To fight</i> , <i>dēcertāre</i> (<i>av.</i> , <i>āt.</i>).
	<i>To be sick</i> , <i>ægrōtāre</i> (<i>av.</i> , <i>āt.</i>)
	<i>Light</i> , <i>lux</i> , (<i>lūc</i>) <i>is</i> (293).

 Recollect, *they went* = *ivērunt* or *iērunt*.

he departed = *ābiit*, rather than *ābivit*; and so of other compounds.

[Give the Rule for *ūt* (*purpose*), 548, a).

(608.) *Translate into English.*

Helvētīi dē finibus suis exeunt.—*Orgētorix Helvētīis* (*dat.*) *persuādet*, *ut dē finibus suis exeant.*—*Orgētorix Helvētīis* *persuāsīt*, *ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus copiis* (*property*) *exirent.*—*Dōmum* (113, III., R.) *rēdeunt.*—*Omniā pēriculā sūbeunt.*—*Helvētīi*, *dōmūm reditiōnis spē sublātā* (456), *pārātiōres ad omniā pēriculā sūbeundā* (496) *ērant.*—*Cæsar in Āsiam transiit.*—*Pompeius in Āsiam transiērat.*—*Dōmō* (*abl.*) *exirē possunt.*—*Ērant omnino itinēra duō*, *quibus itinēribus dōmō exire possent.*—*Æduī per fines suos Helvētiōs irē pātiuntur.*—*Pāgūs Tigurīnus dōmō exi-*

erat.—Hic pāgus ūnus, quum dōmō exisset, L. Cassium, consulem, interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jūgum miserat.—Helvētī in eā partem ibunt, ubi Cæsar constituerit.—Quo itinere (55, a) hostes ierunt?—Eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, Cæsar ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit.—Ibam forte Viā Sacrā (55, a) sicut meus est mos.—I præ, ego sequar.—Ex pugna Cannensi admodum pauci Rōmāni domum redierunt.—I, quo te fortunā vocet. (534, d).—Quicquid transiit temporis (186, a, *Rule*) perit.—Quidam ferro (55, a) decertare acerrime possunt, aegrotare viriliter non queunt.—Sine luce colores esse nequeunt.—Pompeius perit.—Dic utrum cueas an nequeas mecum ire.—Risus interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum cupientes (442, c) tenere nēqueamus (553, b, R.).

§ 20.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

LESSON CII.

Aio, Inquam, Novi, Memini, Cæpi, Odi.

(609.) *Aið*, *I say, say yes, affirm*, is used in very few tenses.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	áo.	áis.	áit.	—	—	áiant.
<i>Ind. Imperf.</i>	aiëbám.	-bás.	-bát.	-bámús.	batís.	bant.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	—	áis.	aiät.	—	—	aiant.
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	aiens (aients) used only as <i>adjec.</i>					

(610.) *Inquám*, *I say*, is used *between* the words of a quotation.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	inquam.	inquis.	inquít.	inquímus.	inquiet.
<i>Ind. Imperf.</i>	—	—	inquiëbát or inquíbat.	—	inquiëbant.
<i>Ind. Fut.</i>	—	inquiëš.	inquiet.	—	—
<i>Ind. Perf.</i>	—	inquisti.	inquít.	—	—
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	inquiam.	as.	at.	atís.	ant.

(611.) *Növī*, *I know*; *mēmīnī*, *I remember*; *cæpi*, *I have begun*, *I began*; *ōdī*, *I hate*, are perfect forms with present meanings. All the tenses made on the perfect stem exist, regularly formed.

INFINITIVE.			
növissë, to know.	mēmīnissë, to remember.	cæpissë, to have begun.	ōdissë, to hate.
INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.			
növ-	{ ī, istī, it, &c. ērām, ērás, ērāt, &c. ērō, ēris, ērit, &c. ērim, ēris, ērit, &c. issēm, issēs, issēt, &c.	Ind. Pres.,	<i>I know.</i>
memīn-		Ind. Past,	<i>I remembered.</i>
cæp-		Ind. Fut.,	<i>I shall begin.</i>
ōd-		Subj. Pres.,	<i>I may know.</i>
		Subj. Past,	<i>I might hate.</i>
IMPERATIVE, mēmentō, mēmentōtë (the others wanting).			

☞ Recollect, *növī* = *I know* (not *I have known*); *növeram*, *I knew* (not *I had known*), &c.; and so of the others. But *cæpi*, *növī*, &c may be used as *perf. pres.*, = *I have known*, *I have begun*, &c.

EXERCISE.

(612.) *Vocabulary.*


To fall back, to give way, pēdem rēferrē (= to draw back the foot).
Young, raw, inexperienced, tīro, (tīrōn) is (107).
Surly, fērōcūlūs, ā, ūm.
Lucius Varius, L. Varius, ī.
Forgetful, immēmōr, (immēmōr) is (107); governs genit.
Calmly, quietly, tranquillitēr (tranquill-us, 215, 2, a).

Cruelty, sāvītīā, s.
Demonax, Demōnax, (act) is (a philosopher of Hadrian's time).
To philosophize, phīlōsōphāi (dep.).
In no way, by no means, nullō mōdō (abl.).
Conscious, consciās, ā, tīm (with dat. of person, gen. of thing).
Livy, Līvius, ī.

(613.) *Examples.*

- (a) *He exhorts them to remember.*
 (b) *Aristides, when asked what was just, replied, "Not to covet what belongs to others."*

Hortātūr eōs ut mēmīnērīnt.
Aristīdēs interrōgātus quid justum esset? "Āliēnā," inquit, "nōn concupiscere" (= "Not to covet," said he, "what," &c.).


 *Inquam* is used in quoting the very words of another (oratio recta), and is always placed among the words quoted (as "said he" in English). *Ait* is used generally in quoting the sense, not the exact words of another (oratio obliqua).

- (c) *He began to build the city.*

The city began to be built.


Urbēm aedificāre cōpit.

Urbs aedificārī cōptā est.

 If a *passive* infinitive is used with the word *begin*, you must employ the passive form, *cōptus sum*, instead of *cōpi*; *cōptus eram*, instead of *cōperam*, &c.

(614.) *Translate into English.*

Mīlites, vulnēribus dēfessī, pēdem rēferre cōpērunt.—
*"Quid tū," inquit Labiēnus, "mīles tīro (voc.) tam fērōcūlus ēs?" Tum mīles: "Nōn sum," inquit, "tīro, Labiēnē, sēd dē dēcimā lēgiōnē vētērānus."—**Helvētī nostrōs lācessere cōpērunt.—**Hostēs, quī in montem sēsē rēcōpērānt, praelium rēdintegrāre cōpērunt.—**Cāsar dīcit (574, a), id fierī possē, si Aedui finitimōrum āgros pōpulārī cōpērīnt (574, b).—*

Mīlites in mūrū lāpīdes jācēre cōpērunt.—Undīque in mūrū lāpīdes jācī (613, c, ) cōptī sunt.—Dux mīlītēs hortātur ut vētēris gloriā mēmīnerint.—Lēgatī dixerunt sē portūs (*accus. pl.*) insūlasque nōvissē.—Multī tē ōdērunt, sī tē solum āmās.—Germānī sūperbiam L. Variī ēt sāvītiam ōdissē cōpērunt.—Omnēs immēmōrem bēnēficiū ōdērunt.—Tullus Hostilius, ut Livius ait, fērōcior ētiam Rōmūlō (360, c) fuit.—Sōcrātēs interrōgātus quīnām hōmīnes tranquiliter vivērent (534, e)? “Quī,” inquit, “nullius turpitudinis sibi cōscīi sunt.”—Demōnax interrōgātus, quando cōpisset (534, e) philōsōphārī? “Tum,” inquit, “cum cognoscēre meipsum (159) cōpī.”—Hannībal Rōmānos sic ōdērat, ut ingrātiam cum illis rēdire nullō mōdō (55, a) posset (553, b, R.).—Is mīser est, quem omnēs bōnī ōdērunt.—Nōvīmus Aristīdis justītiam, nōvīmus Sōcrātis sāpientiam.—Nōn āmābīmus bōnōs mōres, sī nōn ōdērīmus mālōs.



PART III.

SUMMARY OF ETYMOLOGY



SUMMARY OF ETYMOLOGY.

§ 1. LETTERS, QUANTITY, &c.

- (615.) 1. THE letters are the same as in English, with the omission of w.
2. Six are *vowels*, a, e, i, o, u, y : the remaining nineteen are *consonants*.
3. The consonants are divided into

(a) *Liquids*, l, m, n, r ;

(b) *Spirants*, h, s, j ;

(c) *Mutes* ; the remaining consonants, among which there are

- (1) k-sounds, c, g (ch) ; k, q ;
- (2) p-sounds, b, f, p (ph) ; v ;
- (3) t-sounds, d, t (th) ;
- (4) Double consonants, x, z.

4. The diphthongs are, au, eu, ae, oe (rare, ei, oi, ui).

(616.) GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

(1) A vowel before another is *short* ; e. g., vīa.

(2) A vowel before two consonants, or the letters j, x, z, is *long* by position ; e. g., amānt.

[As a mute followed by a liquid causes some exceptions to this rule, we shall mark the quantity, in that case, *doubtful* ; thus, āgri.]

(3) All diphthongs are *long* ; e. g., mensē, āū-rum.

(4) Contracted syllables are *long* ; e. g., cōgo (coago).

§ 2. NOUN.

(617.) 1. The *noun* is the name of any object (person or thing). Nouns are *proper* (13, a), *common* (13, b), or *abstract* (13, c).

2. There are *three* genders, *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter* : *two* numbers, *singular* and *plural* : *six* cases, *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *vocative*, and *ablative* : and *five* declensions.

3. GENERAL RULES OF GENDER.

Males, rivers, winds, and mountains most we find
 With *months* and *nations* **MASCULINE** declined ;
 But *females, cities, countries, trees* we name,
 As **FEMININE** ; most *islands, too*, the same.
COMMON are such as *both* the genders take,
 And **NEUTER** all words undeclined we make.

[There are many exceptions from these rules, which must be learned by observation.]

First Declension —(Genitive-ending æ.)

(618.)

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom. Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ā.	æ.	æ.	ām.	ā.
Plur.	æ.	ārūm.	is.	ās.	is.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—Final syllables all long but ā, *nom.* and *voc.* ; ām, *acc.* ; and ūm, *gen. plur.*

2. *Gender.*—Nouns of first declension are *feminine*, except names of male beings, &c.

Second Declension.—(Genitive-ending ī.)

(619.) **MASCULINE** nouns of second declension have *nominative*-ending ās ; *neuter* nouns, ūm.

(a) CASE-ENDINGS, MASCULINES.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	ās.	ī.	ō.	ūm.	ē.	ō.
Plur.	ī.	ōrūm.	īs.	ōs.	ī.	īs.

(b) CASE-ENDINGS, NEUTERS.

	N., A., V.	Gen.	Dat., Abl.
Sing.	ūm.	ī.	ō.
Plur.	ā.	ōrūm.	īs.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—Short final syllables, ūs, ē, ūm, ā.

Long " ī, ō, īs, ōs.

2. *Gender.*—A few nouns are feminine in ūs, and a few neuter (see 62, R. 1).

3. *Stems in r.*—(1) Most nouns whose stems end in r, reject the ending ūs in nom. and ē in voc.; e.g., *field*, nom., āgēr (not āgēr-ūs); voc., āgēr (not āgēr-ē). (2) Most which have ē in nom. drop it in the remaining cases; e.g., nom., āgēr; gen., āgrī (not āgēr-ī).

4. *Exceptions to Case-endings.*—(1) Proper names in ius, with *filius*, *genius*, have voc. in ī; e.g., *Georg-ī*, *fil-ī*. (2) *Deūs* has voc., *de ūs*, nom. plur., *dīī*, dat. and abl. plur., *dīīs*. (3) A few take ūm in gen. plur., instead of ōr ūm; e.g., *sestertium*.

Third Declension.—(Genitive-ending īs.)

(620.) (a) CASE-ENDINGS, MASCULINES AND FEMININES.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	—	īs.	ī.	ēm (īm).	ē (ī).
Plur.	ēs.	ūm (īum).	ībūs.	ēs.	ībūs.

(b) CASE-ENDINGS, NEUTERS.

	N., A., V.	Gen.	Dat.	Abl.
Sing.	—	īs.	ī.	ē (ī).
Plur.	ā (īā).	ūm (īūm).	ībūs.	ībūs.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—Final syllables all short but ī and ōs.

2. *Euphonic Rules.*—(a) o-sound + s = x: arc-s = arx; leg-s = lex.

(b) t-sound before s is dropped: laud-s = laus; mont-s = mons.

3. *Rules of Gender from the Formation of the Nominative.*

[Learn these from 355.]

4. *Peculiar Case-endings.*—(1) Acc. in īm: (a) *commonly* in

Febris, *puppīs*, *pelvis*,

Sēcūris, *restīs*, *turrīs*:

(b) *always* in

Sitīs, *tussīs*,

Vis, *amussīs*.

(2) Abl. in ī: (a) *sometimes* in those which take īm in acc., with *ignīs*, *civīs*: (b) *always* in *vis*; and in neuters whose nom. ends in āl, ār, or ō.

(3) Gen. plur. ium: (a) in all which take ī in abl. sing.; (b) in monosyllables whose stems end in two consonants (e.g., *mont-*, *mont-īūm*); (c) in all which insert a vowel before adding s in nom. (e.g., *nāv-īs*, *nāv-īūm*). (301).

Fourth Declension.—(Genitive-ending ūs.)(621.) **MASCULINE** nominative-ending ūs; *neuter* nominative-ending ā.

(a) CASE-ENDINGS, MASCULINES.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ūs.	ūs.	ūī.	ūm.	ū.
Plur.	ūs.	ūm.	ībūs.	ūs.	ībūs.

(b) CASE-ENDINGS, NEUTERS.

	Nom., Acc., Voc.	Gen.	Dat., Abl.
Sing.	ā.	ūs, or ā.	ū.
Plur.	ūs.	ūm.	ībūs.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—Ūs long, except in nom. and voc. sing., and dat. and abl. plur.; ū and ī long always.

2. *Genders.*—Only the following nouns are feminine:

Ācūs, mănūs, trībūs,
Dōmūs, portīcūs, and Īdūs.

3. *Peculiar Case-ending.*—The following take ūbūs in dat. and abl. plur., instead of ībūs:

Arcūs, ācūs, portūs, vērū,
Fīcus, lācūs, artūs,
Spēcūs, quercūs, also pēcū,
Trībūs too, and partūs.

4. Dōmūs, *house*, is thus declined:

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	dom-ūs.	{ -ūs. -ī.	-ūī.	-ūm.	-ō.
Plur.	dom-ūs.	{ -ūm. -ōrūm.	-ībūs.	{ -ōs. -ūs (<i>rarely</i>).	-ībūs.

Obs. The genitive dōmī is used only in the sense of *at home, at my house*.

Fifth Declension.—(Genitive-ending eī.)

(622.) **THERE** are but few nouns of this declension: all feminine except diēs, *day*, and merīdiēs, *midday*; and even diēs is feminine in singular when it means a *fixed day*.

(623.)

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ēs.	ēī.	ēī.	ēm.	ē.
Plur.	ēs.	ērūm.	ēbūs.	ēs.	ēbūs.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—The e in eī is *long* when a vowel stands before it, as di-ē-ī; *short* when a consonant, as fid-ē-ī.

2. The genitive, dative, and ablative plural are wanting in all nouns of this declension except rēs, diēs, spēcīa.

§ 3. ADJECTIVE

(624.) THE *adjective* expresses a quality or property belonging to an object; e. g., *good, small, white, &c.* In Latin, adjectives are divided into three classes, according to their endings.

1. CLASS I. (us, a, um).

(625.) These take the *feminine* ending of first declension of nouns; *masculine* and *neuter* endings of the second.

(1.) CASE-ENDINGS.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ūs.	ā.	ūm.	N.	ī.	ēs.	ā.
G.	ī.	ēs.	ī.	G.	ōrum.	ārum.	ōrum.
D.	ō.	ēs.	ō.	D.	īs.	īs.	īs.
A.	ūm.	ām.	ūm.	A.	ōs.	ās.	ā.
V.	ēs.	ā.	ūm.	V.	ī.	ēs.	ā.
A.	ō.	ā.	ō.	A.	īs.	īs.	īs.

(2.) *Stems in er.*—Adjectives whose stem ends in *ēr* reject *ūs* and *ā* in nom. and voc.

(a) Most of them also drop *ēs* of the nom. in the other cases; e. g. *beautiful, pulchēr.*

Nom.	Pulchēr,	pulchrī,	pulchrām.
Gen.	Pulchrī,	pulchræ,	pulchrī, &c.

(b) But *aspēr, lācēr, libēr, mīser, prosper, tēnēr*, retain the *ēs*; e. g.,

Nom.	Mīser,	mīserā	mīserām.
Gen.	Mīserī,	mīseræ,	mīserī, &c.

(3.) *Peculiar Case-endings.*—Some adjectives, numerals, and adjective pronouns have gen., *iūs*, and dat., *ī*; e. g., *unūs, unīus, unī*. [They are *unūs, totūs, solūs, nullūs, ullūs, aliūs, altēr, utēr, neutēr, uterquē.*]

2. CLASS II. (Two Endings).

(626.) Adjectives of the *second class* have *īs* in the nominative singular for masculine and feminine ending, and *ī* for neuter.

(1.) CASE-ENDINGS.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N., V.	īs.	īs.	ī.	N., V.	ēs.	ēs.	īā.
G.	īs.	īs.	īs.	G.	īum.	īum.	īum.
D.	ī.	ī.	ī.	D.	ībūs.	ībūs.	ībūs.
Acc.	ēm.	ēm.	ē.	Acc.	ēs.	ēs.	īā.
Abl.	ī.	ī.	ī.	Abl.	ībūs.	ībūs.	ībūs.

(2.) Some adjectives of this class take *ēr* for the ending of the nom. sing. mas. instead of *īs*; e. g., *acēr, lācrīs, lācrē.*

Fourth Declension.—(Genitive-ending ūs.)(621.) **MASCULINE** nominative-ending ūs; *neuter* nominative-ending ū.

(a) CASE-ENDINGS, MASCULINES.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ūs.	ūs.	ŭi.	ŭm.	ŭ.
Plur.	ūs.	ŭm.	ibūs.	ūs.	ibūs.

(b) CASE-ENDINGS, NEUTERS.

	Nom., Acc., Voc.	Gen.	Dat., Abl.
Sing.	ū.	ūs, or ŭ.	ū.
Plur.	ŭā.	ŭm.	ibūs.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—Ūs long, except in nom. and voc. sing., and dat. and abl. plur.; ŭ and ī long always.

2. *Genders.*—Only the following nouns are feminine:

Ācūs, mănūs, tribūs,
Dōmūs, porticūs, and Īdūs.

3. *Peculiar Case-ending.*—The following take ŭbūs in dat. and abl. plur., instead of ibūs:

Arcūs, ācūs, portūs, vērdū,
Ficus, lācūs, artūs,
Spēcūs, quercūs, also pēcdū,
Tribūs too, and partūs.

4. Dōmūs, *house*, is thus declined:

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	dom-ūs.	{ -ūs. -ī.	-ŭi.	-ŭm.	-ō.
Plur.	dom-ūs.	{ -ŭm. -ōrūm.	-ibūs.	{ -ōs. -ūs (<i>rarely</i>).	-ibūs.

Obs. The genitive dōmī is used only in the sense of *at home*, *at my house*.

Fifth Declension.—(Genitive-ending eī.)

(622.) **THERE** are but few nouns of this declension: all feminine except diēs, *day*, and merīdiēs, *midday*; and even diēs is feminine in singular when it means a *fixed day*.

(623.)

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom., Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	ēs.	ēī.	ēī.	ēm.	ē.
Plur.	ēs.	ērūm.	ēbūs.	ēs.	ēbūs.

Rem. 1. Quantity.—The e in eī is *long* when a vowel stands before it, as di-ē-ī; *short* when a consonant, as fid-ē-ī.

2. The genitive, dative, and ablative plural are wanting in all nouns of this declension except rēs, diēs, spēcīa.

§ 3. ADJECTIVE

(624) THE *adjective* expresses a quality or property belonging to an object; e. g., *good, small, white*, &c. In Latin, adjectives are divided into three classes, according to their endings.

1. CLASS I. (us, æ, um).

(625.) These take the *feminine*-ending of first declension of nouns; *masculine* and *neuter* endings of the second.

(1.) CASE-ENDINGS.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ūs.	æ.	ūm.	N.	ī.	æ.	æ.
G.	ī.	æ.	ī.	G.	ōrām.	ārām.	ōrām.
D.	ō.	æ.	ō.	D.	īs.	īs.	īs.
A.	ūm.	ām.	ūm.	A.	ōs.	ās.	æ.
V.	ō.	æ.	ūm.	V.	ī.	æ.	æ.
A.	ō.	æ.	ō.	A.	īs.	īs.	īs.

(2.) *Stems in er.*—Adjectives whose stem ends in *er* reject *ūs* and *æ* in nom. and voc.

(a) Most of them also drop *ō* of the nom. in the other cases; e. g. *beautiful, pulchēr.*

Nom. Pulchēr, pulchrī, pulchrām.
Gen. Pulchrī, pulchræ, pulchrī, &c.

(b) But *aspēr, lacēr, libēr, mīser, prospēr, tēnēr*, retain the *ō*; e. g.,

Nom. Mīser, mīserā mīserām.
Gen. Mīserī, mīseræ, mīserī, &c.

(3.) *Peculiar Case-endings.*—Some adjectives, numerals, and adjective pronouns have gen., *iūs*, and dat., *ī*; e. g., *unūs, unīūs, unī*. [They are *unūs, tōtūs, solūs, nullūs, ullūs, aliūs, altēr, utēr, neutēr, uterquē*.]

2. CLASS II. (Two Endings).

(626.) Adjectives of the *second class* have *īs* in the nominative singular for masculine and feminine ending, and *ō* for neuter.

(1.) CASE-ENDINGS.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N., V.	īs.	īs.	ō.	N., V.	ōs.	ōs.	īā.
G.	īs.	īs.	īs.	G.	īūm.	īūm.	īūm.
D.	ī.	ī.	ī.	D.	ībūs.	ībūs.	ībūs.
Acc.	ōm.	ōm.	ō.	Acc.	ōs.	ōs.	īā.
Abl.	ī.	ī.	ī.	Abl.	ībūs.	ībūs.	ībūs.

(2.) Some adjectives of this class take *ēr* for the ending of the nom. sing. mas. instead of *īs*; e. g., *acēr, acris, acrē*.

§ 4 NUMERALS.

(633.) NUMERALS are divided into the following classes, of which the first three are adjectives, the fourth adverbs.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
<i>One, two, &c.</i>	<i>First, second, &c.</i>	<i>One by one, &c.</i>	<i>Once, twice, &c.</i>
1 Unū.	Primū.	Singulū.	Sēmēl.
2 Duō.	Sēcundū.	Binī.	Biā.
3 Trēs.	Tertiū.	Ternī.	Tēr.
4 Quattuor.	Quartū.	Quaternī.	Quāter.
5 Quinquē.	Quintū.	Quinī.	Quinquē.
6 Sex.	Sextū.	Sēnī.	Sēxiēs.
7 Septēm.	Septimū.	Septēnī.	Sēptiēs.
8 Octō.	Octāvū.	Octōnī.	Octiēs.
9 Nōvēm.	Nōnū.	Novēnī.	Nōviēs.
10 Dēcēm.	Dēcimū.	Dēnī.	Dēciēs.
11 Undēcim.	Undēcimū.	Undēnī.	Undēcīēs.
12 Duōdēcim.	Duōdēcimū.	Duōdēnī.	Duōdēcīēs.
13 Trēdēcim. (Im.)	Tertiū.	Ternī.	Trēdēcīēs.
14 Quattuordēc.	Quartū.	Quaternī.	Quattuordēcīēs.
15 Quindēcim.	Quintū.	Quinī.	Quindēcīēs.
16 Sexdēcim.	Sextū.	Sēnī.	Sēdēcīēs.
17 Septendēcim.	Septimū.	Septēnī.	Dēciēs & sēptiēs.
18 Octodēcim.	Octāvū.	Octōnī.	Duōdēviciēs.
19 Nōvendēcim.	Nōnū.	Nōvēnī.	Undēviciēs.
20 Vigintī.	Vicēsīmū.	Vicēnī.	Viciēs.
30 Trigintā.	Tricēsīmū.	Tricēnī.	Triciēs.
40 Quādrāgintā.	Quādrāgēsīmū.	Quādrāgēnī.	Quādrāgiēs.
50 Quinquāgintā.	Quinquāgēsīmū.	Quinquāgēnī.	Quinquāgiēs.
60 Sexāgintā.	Sexāgēsīmū.	Sēxāgēnī.	Sēxāgiēs.
70 Septuāgintā.	Septuāgēsīmū.	Sēptuāgēnī.	Sēptuāgiēs.
80 Octōgintā.	Octōgēsīmū.	Octōgēnī.	Octōgiēs.
90 Nōnāgintā.	Nōnāgēsīmū.	Nōnāgēnī.	Nōnāgiēs.
100 Centum.	Centēsīmū.	Cēntēnī.	Cēntiēs.
200 Dūcentī.	Dūcentēsīmū.	Dūcentēnī.	Dūcentiēs.
300 Trēcentī.	Trēcentēsīmū.	Trēcentēnī.	Trēcentiēs.
400 Quādringentī.	Quādringentēsīmū.	Quādringentēnī.	Quādringentiēs.
500 Quingentī.	Quingentēsīmū.	Quingentēnī.	Quingentiēs.
600 Sexcentī.	Sexcentēsīmū.	Sēxcentēnī.	Sēxcentiēs.
700 Septingentī.	Septingentēsīmū.	Sēptingentēnī.	Sēptingentiēs.
800 Octingentī.	Octingentēsīmū.	Octingentēnī.	Octingentiēs.
900 Nōningentī.	Nōngentēsīmū.	Nōngentēnī.	Nōngentiēs.
1000 Millē.	Millēsīmū.	Millēnī.	Milliēs.

For the declension of unus, duo, and tres, see 194.

Ducenti, and all the compounds of centi, are declined like the plural of bonus.

Millia, thousands, the plural of mille, is declined like a neuter noun of the third declension.

Ordinal numbers are declined like bonus.

Distributives, like the plural of bonus.

All the rest are undeclinable.

In the combination of cardinal numbers, from twenty to one hundred, the smaller with et, or the larger without et, precedes; as quattuor et viginti, or viginti quattuor. Above one hundred the larger number precedes, with or without et; as centum et unus, or centum unus.

§ 5. PRONOUN.

(634.) THE *pronoun* is a substitute for the noun; e. g., *he, she, it*, may be substitutes for *man, woman, book*.

1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

(625.) (a) *Substantive Personal Pronouns* are so called because used as substantives, not as adjectives.

SINGULAR.					PLURAL.			
	N.	G.	D.	Acc.; Abl.		N., A.	Gen.	Dat., Abl.
<i>I.</i>	ěgŏ.	měi.	mihŭ.	mě.	<i>We.</i>	nŏs.	nostrŭm, or nostrŭ.	nŏbŭs.
<i>Thou.</i>	tā.	tāi.	tihŭ.	tě.	<i>You.</i>	vŏs.	vestrŭm, or vestrŭ.	vŏbŭs.
<i>Him, her, it.</i> }	—	sŭi.	sihŭ.	sě.	<i>Them.</i>	(same as sing.)		

(b) *Adjective Personal, or Possessive* (derived from the above).

<i>Mine.</i>	měũs, ā, ūm (voc., mŭ).	<i>Ours. —</i>	nostrŭ, nostrā, nostrŭm.
<i>Thine.</i>	tũũs, ā, ūm.	<i>Yours.</i>	vestrŭ, vestrā, vestrŭm.
<i>His, hers, its.</i>	sũũs, ā, ūm.	<i>Theirs.</i>	sũũs, suā, sũũm.

2. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

(636.) The *demonstrative pronouns* are so called because they serve to point out an object; e. g., *this, that, these, those, &c.*

(1.) *Īs, ēā, ĭd, this, that (he, she, it)*, often antecedent of *qui*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing. <i>Īs, ēā, ĭd.</i>	ějũs.		ěi.	ěũm, ěām, ĭd.	ěŏ, ěā, ěŏ.
Plur. <i>Īi, ēæ, ēā.</i>	ěŏrũm, ěārũm, ěŏrũm.		Īis, or ěis.	ěŏs, ěās, ěā.	Īis, or ěis.

(2.) *Īdēm, ěādēm, ĭdēm, the very same*, compounded of *Īs* and *dēm*. Declined like *Īs* with *dem* added; thus, *ějusdem, eidēm eundēm* (not *eumdem*), &c.

(3.) *Hic, hęc, hŏc, this*, points out an object present to the *speaker*, and is called the *demonstrative* of the *first* person. (It is also used for *he, she, it*.)

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing. <i>hic, hęc, hŏc.</i>	hājũs.		huic.	hunc, hanc, hŏc.	hŏc, hāc, hŏc.
Plur. <i>hī, hęc, hŏc.</i>	hŏrũm, hārũm, hŏrũm.		hīs.	hŏs, hās, hŏc.	hīs.

(4.) *Istě, istā, istŭd, this, that*, points out an object present to the person *spoken to*, and is called the *demonstrative* of *second* person


	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	istē, istā, istū.	istūs.	isti.	istū, istā, istū.	istō, istā, istō.
Plur.	isti, istae, ista.	istorū, istarū, istorū.	istis.	istōs, istās, istā.	istis, istis, istis.

 Iste is often used to express contempt.

- (5.) Illū, illā, illū, points out an object remote from the *speaker* (*that, the former*, opposed to *hic*), and is called *demonstrative of third person*. (It is often used for *he, she, it*.)

 Declined throughout like istē, istā, istū.

- (6.) Ipsē, ipsā, ipsū, *self*, is added to other pronouns, *mē, tē, sē*, &c., and expresses *myself, thyself, himself*, &c., accordingly.

 Declined like istē, except that neuter is ipsū (not ipsū).

3. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

(637.) The *relative pronoun* (*who, which, what*) is so called because it commonly refers to some other word called the antecedent.

- (1.) Quī, quæ, quōd, *who, which, what*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	quī, quæ, quōd.	cujūs.	cui.	quē, quā, quōd.	quō, quā, quō.
Plur.	quī, quæ, quæ.	quorū, quorū, quorū.	quibūs.	quōs, quās, quæ.	quibūs.

- (2.) Quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque (*whoever, whichever, whatever*), declined like quī, quæ, quōd, with *cunque* added.

- (3.) Quisquis (*whoever, whatever*), used *without* a substantive. The following cases only occur, and of these only *quisquis* and *quicquid* commonly.

	Nom.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
Sing.	quisquis (m., f.), quicquid (n.).		quemquē (m., f.), quidquid (n.).	quōquō, quāquā, quōquō.
Plur.	quīquī (m., f.).	quibūsquibūs.		

4. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

(638.) The *interrogative pronouns* (*who? which? what?*) are used in asking questions.

- (1.) Quī, quæ, quid (*who? which? what?*), is declined precisely like the *relative* quī, except that in *nom. sing. masc.* it has *quī*, and in *nom. and acc. sing. neut.*, *quid*. [Quī, quæ, quōd, is also used interrogatively, as an *adjective* (172).]

- (2.) Quisnām, quæsnām, quidnām, is more *emphatic* than quī. (*Pray, what are you doing? quidnām agis?*) It is declined like quī, quæ, quid

5. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

(639.) The *indefinite pronouns* denote an object in a general way, without reference to a particular individual (*any one, some one, &c.*).

- (..) *Quidā, quēdā*, { quoddā, used as an *adjective*, } a *certain* (one); plur., *some*. Declined like *qui*; but takes *n* generally before *d* instead of *m*; e. g.,

Quendām, quorundām (not quemdam, quorumdam).

- (2.) Quīvis, } (any you please). Declined like qui. In neut.,
Quilibēt, } quōd used as *adjective*, quīd as *substantive*.

- (3.) *Quisquam* (*any, any one; e. g., when it is denied that there are any*). Neut., *quicquam* or *quidquam*. Declined otherwise like *qui*. [This pronoun is used chiefly in negative sentences.]

- (4.) **Quispiām, quēpiām,** { quodpiām, used as *adj.*, } *somebody.*
 { quidpiām, used as *subst.*, } *some.*

- (5.) Ālīquīs, ālīquā, { ālīquōd, as *adj.*,
ālīquīd, as *subst.*, } some one, something

- (6.) Quisquē, quæquē, { quodquē, as adj., }
 { quidquē, as subst.. } each.

Ūnusquisquē, -quæquē, { -quodquē, as *adj.*, } *each one*
 { -quidquē, as *subst.*, }
 (stronger than quisquē). *Genitive*, ūnuscūjusquē, &c.,
 both ūnūs and quis being declined.

- (7.)** **Ecquis?** Used interrogatively (*does*); *any one, anything.*

[illegible]

Ecquis expects the answer *none*.

6. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

(640.) *Correlative pronouns* are such as answer to each other; e. g., *how great? so great; as many, so many, &c.*

- (1.) The following are declined**

- (a) Like adjectives of Class I. (625):**

Tantūs, *so great, so much* ; quantuscunquē, *however great*
Quantūs, *as great* ; aliquid tantūs, *somewhat great.*

- (b) Like adjectives of Class II. (626):**

Talis. such.

Qualis, as, of what kind.

Qualiscunque, of whatever kind.

- (2.) The following are indeclinable :**

Tốt, so many ;

ălīquōt, some.

Tōtīdēm, *just so many*;

quotquot however many

Quōt, as many.

§ 6. VERBS.

(641.) THE verb declares something of a person or thing: the eagle *flies*; the queen *loves* her daughter.

1. CLASSES OF VERBS.

(642.) Verbs are *active*, *passive*, or *deponent*.

(1.) *Active* verbs express *action*: (a) either *transitively*, requiring an object; e. g., the queen *loves* (*whom?*) her daughter; or (b) *intransitively*, not requiring an object; the eagle *flies*.

(2.) *Passive* verbs express the *receiving* or *suffering* of an action, *I am loved*; *I was punished*.

Obviously *intransitive* verbs have no passive form. We cannot say, *I am danced*, *I am slept*.

(3.) *Deponent* verbs have the *passive* form, but an *active* signification.

2. PARTS OF THE VERB.

(643.) The verb is divided into,

(a) The *indefinite* verb, including certain parts which do not refer to a definite person or time.

(b) The *finite* verb, including the parts which always do so refer.

Indefinite Verb.

(644.) (a) The *indefinite* verb includes,

(1.) The *infinitive*, which expresses the action of the verb without relation to a definite person, and partakes also of the nature of a noun; e. g., *to learn*; *to love* is pleasant.

(2.) The *participle*, which expresses the action of the verb under the form of an adjective; *loving*, *blooming*.

(3.) The *gerund*, which expresses the action of the verb under the form of the noun, in all cases but the nominative, and supplies oblique cases to the infinitive.

(4.) The *gerundive*, which expresses the action of the verb as *necessary* or *continued*, under the form of an adjective, in all cases and genders.

(5.) The *supine*, which also expresses the action of the verb in the form of two cases (acc. and abl.) of the noun.

Finite Verb.

(645.) (b) The *finite* verb includes those parts which express the

(1.) Different varieties of affirmation, viz., the *moods*.

(2.) Different times at which the action of the verb takes place, viz., the *tenses*.

(3.) Different relations of the verb to persons or things, viz., the *numbers* and *persons*.

(1.) *The Moods.*

(646.) The verb expresses *affirmation*; the *moods* of the verb are used to vary the character of the affirmation.

- (1.) By the *indicative*, affirmation of a *fact* is expressed; e. g. *I write, I did not write.*
- (2.) By the *subjunctive*, affirmation is expressed *doubtfully, contingently, or indefinitely*; e. g., *I may write, if I should write, perhaps some (may) think.*
- (3.) By the *imperative*, affirmation is expressed as an *injunction* or *request*; e. g., *write.*

(2.) *The Tenses.*

(647.) Time may be past, present, or future, and the verb has therefore *three* tenses to express these. But action may be represented as *going on* or as *completed*, either in past, present, or future time, and therefore *two* forms are required for each, making *six* in all.

	Present.	Past.	Future.
Action going on, or imperfect.	<i>I love, or am loving.</i>	<i>I was loving.</i> (Imperfect.)	<i>I shall love, or be loving.</i> (Future.)
Action completed, or perfect.	<i>I have loved.</i> (Perfect.)	<i>I had loved.</i> (Pluperfect.)	<i>I shall have loved.</i> (Future Perfect.)

Rem. 1. The Latin uses its *perfect* form in two ways: (1) like the English perfect, to express action complete in present time; e. g. *amavi, I have loved*: (2) like the English imperfect, to express action indefinitely in past time; e. g., *amavi, I loved*. This is called the *perfect aorist*. [The latter use is by far the most common. This distinction should be thoroughly understood.]

2. The *subjunctive* mood has no future (it uses the periphrastic form 661).
3. The present, perfect, definite, and future are called *primary* tenses, referring, as they do, either to present or future time; the imperfect, perfect aorist, and pluperfect are called *historical* tenses, referring, as they do, to *past* time.

(3.) *Numbers and Persons.*

(648.) As there may be more than one person engaged in an action, the verb has *two numbers*, singular and plural. These persons must be either *I, thou, we, ye, or some other person or thing*; therefore the verb has *three persons*, 1st, 2d, and 3d, which are denoted in Latin by different *endings*.

3. CONJUGATION.

(649.) Conjugation is the *inflection* (21, R.) of a verb through all its parts. There are in Latin *four* conjugations of verbs, distinguished by the ending of the infinitive; thus:

1.	2.	3.	4.
-arē.	-erē.	-irē.	-irē.

4 THE AUXILIARY OR SUBSTANTIVE VERB ESSE, to be.

(650.) [Before proceeding to the conjugations, we must give the forms of *esse*, to be, called an *auxiliary*, because it is used in forming some of the parts of the verb; and *substantive*, because it is the verb expressing simple existence.]

1. INDICATIVE.						
ACTION INCOMPLETE.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
Present.	sūm, <i>I am.</i>	ēs, <i>thou art.</i>	est, <i>he is.</i>	sūmūs, <i>we are.</i>	estis, <i>ye are.</i>	sunt, <i>they are.</i>
Imperf.	ērām, <i>I was.</i>	ērās, <i>thou wast.</i>	ērāt, <i>he was.</i>	ērāmūs, <i>we were.</i>	ērātis, <i>ye were.</i>	ērant, <i>they were.</i>
Future.	erō, <i>I shall be.</i>	eris, <i>thou, &c.</i>	erit, <i>he, &c.</i>	erimūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	eritis, <i>ye, &c.</i>	erunt, <i>they, &c.</i>
ACTION COMPLETED.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
Perfect.	fūi, <i>I have been.</i>	fuisti, <i>thou hast been.</i>	fuit, <i>he has been.</i>	fūimūs, <i>we have been.</i>	fuistis, <i>ye have been.</i>	fuerunt, <i>they have been.</i>
Pluperf.	fuērām, <i>I had been.</i>	fuērās, <i>thou hadst, &c.</i>	fuērāt, <i>he had been.</i>	fuērāmūs, <i>we had been.</i>	fuērātis, <i>ye had been.</i>	fuērant, <i>they had been.</i>
Fut. Perf.	fuērō, <i>I shall have been.</i>	fuēris, <i>thou shall, &c.</i>	fuērit, <i>he shall, &c.</i>	fuērīmūs, <i>we shall, &c.</i>	fuēritis, <i>ye shall, &c.</i>	fuērint, <i>they shall, &c.</i>
2. SUBJUNCTIVE.						
INCOMPLETE.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
Present.	sīm, <i>I may be.</i>	sis, <i>thou, &c.</i>	sit, <i>he, &c.</i>	simūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	sitis, <i>ye, &c.</i>	sint, <i>they, &c.</i>
Imperf.	essem, <i>I might be.</i>	essēs, <i>thou, &c.</i>	essēt, <i>he, &c.</i>	essēmūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	essētis, <i>ye, &c.</i>	essent, <i>they, &c.</i>
COMPLETED.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
Perfect.	fuērīm, <i>I may have been.</i>	fuēris, <i>thou, &c.</i>	fuērit, <i>he, &c.</i>	fuērīmūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	fuēritis, <i>ye, &c.</i>	fuērint, <i>they, &c.</i>
Pluperf.	fuissēm, <i>I might have been.</i>	fuissēs, <i>thou, &c.</i>	fuissēt, <i>he, &c.</i>	fuissēmūs, <i>we, &c.</i>	fuissētis, <i>ye, &c.</i>	fuissent, <i>they, &c.</i>
3. IMPERATIVE.						
	Singular.			Plural.		
	2. ēs, estō, be thou. 3. estō, let him be.			2. estē, estōtē, be ye. 3. suntō, let them be.		
4. INFINITIVE.						
Present.	Perfect.		Future.			
Essē, to be.	fuissē, to have been.		fūtūrūs, ē, ūm, esse, to be about to be.			
5. PARTICIPLE.						
Present.			Future.			
Only in compounds; absens, <i>absent</i> (from absum); præsens, <i>present</i> (from præsūm).			Fūtūrūs, ē, ūm, <i>one who will be.</i>			

5. PARADIGMS OF REGULAR VERBS.

(851.) (1.) *Verb-stem*.—The *stem* of any verb is found by striking off the infinitive-ending; e. g., of *ām-ārē*, *mōn-ērē*, *rēg-ērē*, and *aud-irē* the stems are *ām*, *mōn*, *rēg*, *aud*, respectively.*

(2.) *Tense-stem*.—Each *tense* has its own *tense-stem*, consisting of the *verb-stem* with or without some additions. Thus, in the first conjugation:

Pres. tense-stem = *verb-stem* = *am*.

Imperf. tense-stem = *verb-stem* + *ab* = *amab*.

Perf. tense-stem = *verb-stem* + *av* = *amav*.

[In the annexed paradigms the *tense-stems* are shown upon the left hand side. Observe that the *perfect tense-stem* serves also for the stem of the *pluperfect* and *future perfect* tenses.]

(3.) *Tense-ending*.—Each *tense* has its own endings, which, added to the *tense-stem*, give the *person-forms*. Thus:

Imperfect-stem *āmab* + *ām* = *amabam*, 1st person.

amab + *ās* = *amabas*, 2d person,† &c.

(4.) The *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* of the *passive voice* are formed by means of the *past participle* and forms of *essē*; thus:

āmātūs sum, *āmātūs eram*, *āmātūs ēro*.

[No farther explanation of the paradigm is necessary. The student should learn the modes of formation, and the *tense-endings* for each *tense*, apart from the stems *am*, *mōn*, &c., and unite them afterward with those or any other stems.]

* In reality, the crude-forms are *ama*, *mone*, *audi* (the three *pure* conjugations), and *rēg* (the *consonant* conjugation). But the changes of the crude-form in inflection form too great a difficulty for beginners, we therefore present the stem as the language affords it to us, without going into a nicer analysis.

† Farther, the *person-ending* forms part of the *tense-ending*. From the paradigm (active), it will be seen that in every *tense* except the *perfect* the endings are

o, or m, s, t, mus, tis, nt.

These endings are added to the *tense-stem*, either directly, as *am-o*, or by means of a connecting-vowel, as *reg-i-s*, or of a flexion syllable and connecting-vowel, as *amav-er-a-s*.

PARADIGMS FOR

ACTIVE.							
(652.)	INDICATIVE MOOD.						
PRESENT, <i>I love or am loving, thou art loving, &c.</i>							
ām-	ā.	ās.	āt.	āmūs.	ātīs.	apt.	
mōn-	ēā.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.	
rēg-	ī.	īs.	īt.	īmūs.	ītīs.	unt.	
aud-	īā.	īs.	īt.	īmūs.	ītīs.	īunt.	
IMPERFECT, <i>I was loving, advising, ruling, hearing, &c.</i>							
ām-āb- mōn-ēb- rēg-ēb- aud-īēb-	{	ām.	ās.	āt.	āmūs.	ātīs.	ant.
FUTURE, <i>I shall or will love, advise, rule, hear, &c.</i>							
ām-āb- mōn-ēb- rēg- aud-ī-	{	ā.	īs.	īt.	īmūs.	ītīs.	unt.
		ām.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.
PERFECT, <i>I have loved. (PERFECT AORIST, I loved.)</i>							
ām-āv- mōn-ū- (reg-s) rex- aud-iv-	{	ī.	istī.	īt.	īmūs.	istīs.	ērunt, or ērā.
PLUPERFECT, <i>I had loved, &c.</i>							
ām-āv- mōn-ū- rex- aud-iv-	{	ērām.	ērās.	ērāt.	ērāmūs.	ērātīs.	ērant.
FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall have loved, &c.</i>							
ām-āv- mōn-ū- rex- aud-iv-	{	ērē.	ērīs.	ērīt.	ērīmūs.	ērītīs.	ērīnt.
(653.)	IMPERATIVE MOOD.						
	2d Singular.		3d Singular.		2d Plural.		3d Plural.
ām-	ā, atā.		ātā.		atē, atōtē.		antā.
mōr-	ē, etā.		etā.		etē, etōtē.		entā.
rēg-	ī, itā.		itā.		itē, itōtē.		untā.
aud-	ī, itā.		itā.		ātē, itōtē.		īuntā.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

PASSIVE.						
INDICATIVE MOOD.						
PRESENT, <i>I am loved, &c.</i>						
ām-	ōr.	{ ārīs. ārē.	ātūr.	āmūr.	āmīnī.	āntūr.
mōn-	ēōr.	{ ārīs. ērē.	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīnī.	entūr.
rēg-	ōr.	{ ārīs. ērē.	ītūr.	īmūr.	īmīnī.	untūr.
aud-	īōr.	{ īrīs. īrē.	ītūr.	imūr.	imīnī.	īuntar.
IMPERFECT, <i>I was loved, &c.</i>						
ām-ab- mōn-ēb- rēg-ēb- aud-iēb-	{ ar.	{ ārīs. ārē.	ātūr.	āmūr.	āmīnī.	antūr.
FUTURE, <i>I shall be loved, &c.</i>						
ām-ab- mōn-ēb- rēg- aud-ī-	{ or. ār.	{ ārīs. ērē. ārīs. ērē.	ītūr. ētūr.	īmūr. ēmūr.	īmīnī. ēmīnī.	untūr. entūr.
PERFECT, <i>I have been loved, &c.</i>						
āmātūs.* mōnītūs.* rectūs.* auditūs.*	{ sūm, or fūī.	ēs, or fuistī.	est. or fuit.	sūmūs, or fūimūs.	estīs, or fūistīs.	sunt, or fuerunt.
PLUPERFECT, <i>I had been loved, &c.</i>						
āmātūs.* mōnītūs.* rectūs.* auditūs.*	{ ērām.†	ērās.	ērāt.	ērāmūs.	erātīs.	erant.
FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall have been loved, &c.</i>						
āmātūs.* mōnītūs.* rectūs.* auditūs.*	{ erō.‡	ērīs.	erīt.	erīmūs.	erītīs.	erunt.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.						
	2d Singular.	3d Singular.	2d Plural.	3d Plural.		
ām-	ārē, ātōr.	ātōr.	āmīnī, āmīnōr.	antōr.		
mōn-	ērē, ētōr.	ētōr.	ēmīnī, ēmīnōr.	entōr.		
rēg-	ērē, itōr.	itōr.	īmīnī, īmīnōr.	untōr.		
aud-	īrē, itōr.	itōr.	imīnī, imīnōr.	īuntōr.		

* The participle must be inflected in gender and number to agree with the subject.

† Sometimes fueram, fueras, &c.

‡ Sometimes fuero, fueris, &c.

(654.) ACTIVE.						
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.						
PRESENT, <i>I may love, &c.</i>						
ām- mōn-e- rēg- aud-i-	ēm. } ām. ēs }	ēs as	ēt. āt.	ēmūs. āmūs.	ētīs. atīs.	ēnt. ant.
IMPERFECT, <i>I might love, &c.</i>						
ām-ār- mōn-ēr- rēg-ēr- aud-ir-	ēm. } ēs. }	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.
PERFECT, <i>I may have loved, &c.</i>						
ām-āv- mōn-ū- rēx- aud-iv-	ērim. } ērīs. }	ērīt.	ērīmūs.	ērītīs.	ērint.	
PLUPERFECT, <i>I might have loved, &c.</i>						
ām-āv- mōn-ū- rex- aud-iv-	issēm. } issēs. }	issēt.	issēmūs.	issētīs.	issent.	
(655.) INFINITIVE.						
PRESENT [<i>to love or be loving, &c.</i>]						
1. ām-ārē,	2. mōn-ērē,	3. rēg-ērē,	4. aud-irē.			
PERFECT [<i>to have loved, &c.</i>]						
1. āmāv-issē,	2. mōnū-issē,	3. rex-issē,	4. audiv-issē.			
FUTURE [<i>to be about to love, &c.</i>]						
1. āmatūrūs essē,	2. mōnitūrūs essē,	3. rectūrūs essē,	4. auditūrūs essē.			
(656.) PARTICIPLES.						
PRESENT [<i>loving, advising, ruling, hearing</i>].						
1. ām-āns,	2. mōn-ens,	3. rēg-ēns,	4. aud-iēns.			
PERFECT [<i>having loved, advised, ruled, heard</i>].						
Wanting: supplied by abl. absol., or by quum with subj.						
FUTURE [<i>about to love, advise, rule, hear</i>].						
1. āmatūrūs,	2. mōnitūrūs,	3. rectūrūs,	4. auditūrūs.			
(657.) GERUND AND						
GERUNDS:	1. āmāndī,	2. mōnendī,	3. regendī,	4. audiendī.		
(658.) SUPINES.						
SUPINE in um:	1. āmatūm,	2. mōnitūm,	3. rectūm,	4. auditūm.		
u:	āmatā,	mōnitū,	rectā,	auditā.		

PASSIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *I may be loved, &c.*

ām- mōn-e- rēg- aud-i- }	ēr.	{ ēris. ērē.	ētār.	ēmūr.	ēmīnl.	ēntār.
	ār.	{ āris. ārē.	atur.	amūr.	amīnl.	antār.

IMPERFECT, *I might be loved, &c.*

ām-ār- mōn-ēr- rēg-ēr- aud-ir- }	ēr.	{ ēris. ērē.	ētār.	ēmūr.	ēmīnl.	ēntār.
---	-----	-----------------	-------	-------	--------	--------

PERFECT, *I may have been loved, &c.*

āmātūs. mōnītūs. rectūs. auditūs. }	sīm.*	sīs.	sīt.	sīmus.	sītīs.	sint.
--	-------	------	------	--------	--------	-------

PLUPERFECT, *I might have been loved, &c.*

āmātūs. mōnītūs. rectūs. auditūs. }	essēm.†	essēs.	essēt.	essēmūs.	essētīs.	essent.
--	---------	--------	--------	----------	----------	---------

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT [*to be (being) loved, &c.*]

1. ām-āri,	2. mōn-ēri,	3. rēg-i,	4. aud-iri.
------------	-------------	-----------	-------------

PERFECT [*to have been loved, &c.*]

1. āmātūs essē,	2. mōnītūs essē,	3. rectūs essē,	4. auditūs essē.
-----------------	------------------	-----------------	------------------

FUTURE [*to be about to be loved, &c.*]

1. āmātūm iri,	2. mōnītūm iri,	3. rectūm iri,	4. auditūm iri.
----------------	-----------------	----------------	-----------------

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT AND PERFECT [*loved, being loved, having been loved, &c.*]

1. āmātūs,	2. mōnītūs,	3. rectūs,	4. auditūs.
------------	-------------	------------	-------------

GERUNDIVE.

1. GERUNDIVE: āmāndūs,	2. mōnēndūs,	3. rēgendūs,	4. audiendūs.
------------------------	--------------	--------------	---------------

* Sometimes fuerim.

† Sometimes fuisssem.

6. VERBS IN IŌ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

(659.) Some verbs of the third conjugation assume *i* before the person ending in some of the tenses, as shown in the following paradigm of *căp-ă r-ă*, to take.

ACTIVE.							
INDICATIVE.							
Pres.	căp-	i-ŏ.	is.	it.	imūs.	itīs.	i-ant.
Imperf.	căp-i-ēb-	ām.	ās.	āt.	āmūs.	ātīs.	ant.
Fut.	căp-i-	ām.	ēs.	ēt.	ēmūs.	ētīs.	ent.
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	cap-i-	ām.	ās.	āt.	āmūs.	ātīs.	ant.
PASSIVE.							
INDICATIVE.							
Pres.	căp-	i-ŏr.	ŏrīs.	itūr.	imūr.	imīnī.	i-untūr.
Imperf.	căp-i-ēb-	ār.	ārīs.	ātūr.	āmūr.	āmīnī.	antūr.
Fut.	căp-i-	ār.	ērīs.	ētūr.	ēmūr.	ēmīnī.	entūr.
SUBJUNCTIVE.							
Pres.	căp-i-	ār.	ārīs.	ātūr.	āmūr.	āmīnī.	antūr.
IMPERATIVE.							
3d Plur. Active, căp-i-untŏ.				3d Plur. Pass., căp-i-untŏr.			
PARTICIPLES.							
Pres. Active, căp-i-ens.				Fut. Pass., căp-i-endus.			
GERUND, căp-i-ēnd-i, ō, &c.							

7. DEPONENT VERBS.

(660.) (1.) Deponent verbs have the *passive* form with *active* signification. As the endings are the same as those of the passives (Paradigm, p. 263, 265), we need not repeat them.

(2.) But deponents have *three* active participles, while other verbs have but *two*: thus,

Pres., *exhorting*, Perf., *having exhorted*, Fut., *about to exhort*,
hort-ans. hort-atūs. hortat-ŭrūs.

(3.) Also, all *transitive* deponents have the verbal adjective in *du*s; e. g., hortandūs, *one that should be exhorted*; *intransitive* deponents have it only in the *neuter*; e. g., moriendū est, *one must die*.

8. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

(661.) By means of the tenses of *ess-ē*, combined with the future participle in *rus*, and the verbal in *du*s, the periphrastic conjugation is formed; e. g., amātūrūs sum, *I am about to love, I intend to love*; amandūs sum, *I am to be loved, I must be loved, one must love me*; and so through all the tenses and persons. The deponent verbs employ this periphrastic conjugation also.

1. WITH PARTICIPLE IN RŪS.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
āmatūrūs, ā, ūm,	sūm, ēs, est, &c.	āmatūrūs, ā, ūm,	sīm, sis, sīt, &c.
	ērām, ērās, &c.		essēm, essēs, &c.
	fui, fuisti, &c.		fuerim.
	fuerām, fuerās, &c.		fuisse.
	erō, eris, &c.		
INFINITIVE.			
Pres., āmatūrūs essē, <i>to be about (or intending) to love.</i>			
Perf., āmatūrūs fuissē, <i>to have been about to love.</i>			
Fut., āmatūrūs forē, <i>to intend to love hereafter.</i>			

2. WITH VERBAL IN DŪS.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
āmandūs, ā, ūm,	sūm.	āmandūs, ā, ūm,	sīm.
	ērām.		essēm
	fui.		fuerim.
	fuerām.		fuisse.
	ērō.		
INFINITIVE.			
Pres., āmandūs, ā, ūm, essē, <i>ought to be loved.</i>			
Perf., āmandūs, ā, ūm, fuissē, <i>ought to have been loved.</i>			
Fut., āmandūs, ā, ūm, forē, <i>ought to be loved hereafter.</i>			

9. ON THE FORMATION OF THE PERFECT-STEM.

(662.) In the paradigms, the perfect-stems are formed by adding to the verb-stem in the 1st conj. āv- (ām-āv-); in the 2d, ū (mōn-ū-); in the 3d, - (reg-s); in the 4th, īv- (aud-īv-). But, although most Latin verbs form the perf.-stem thus, many use different endings, which are exhibited in the following classification:

I. FIRST CONJUGATION.

(663.) Four ways of forming the perfect-stem:

- I. By adding āv to the verb-stem: ām-ārē—ām-āv-l.
- II. " ū " crēp-ārē—crēp-ū-l.
- III. By reduplicating the first consonant: d-ārē—dēd-l.
- IV. By lengthening the stem-vowel: jāv-ārē—jāv-l.

II. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Five ways:

- I. By adding ū to the verb-stem: mōn-ērē—mōn-ū-l.
- II. " ēv " dēl-ērē—dēl-ēv-l.
- III. " s " alg-ērē—al(g)-s-l.
- IV. By reduplication: mōrd-ērē—mō-mōrd-l.
- V. By lengthening the stem-vowel: cāv-ērē—cāv-l.

III. *Perfect-stem reduplicates the first Consonant with e.*

To give, d-o, d-ärě, död-i, dă-tŭm.

So, also, those compounds of which the first part is a word of *two syllables*; e. g., circumdō, circumdāre, circumdēdi, circumdātum, *to surround*; but the compounds with *monosyllables* follow the 3d conj.; e. g., addō, addāre, addēdi, addītum, *to add*.

To stand, st-o, st-ără, stăt-i, st-a-tăm.

The compounds have in the perfect *stōti* when the first part is a *dissyllable*; e. g., *circumstō*, *circumstōti*; but *stīti* when it is a *monosyllable*; e. g., *adstō*, *adstīti*.

IV. Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel.

<i>To assist,</i>	jūv-o,	jūv-ārē,	jūv-i,	jū-tūm.
				{ lāva-tūm.
<i>To wash,</i>	lāv-o,	lāv-ārē,	lāv-i,	{ lau-tūm.
				{ lō-tūm.

(665.)

SECOND CONJUGATION.

1. Perfect-stem adds ū to the Verb-stem.

To admonish. mǎn-eo. mǎn-ērě. mǎn-ǎ-i. mǎn-ǎ-tuam.

II. *Perfect-stem adds* **εν** *to the Verb-stem.*

<i>To blot out,</i>	dél-eo,	dél-ērě,	dél-ěv-i,	dél-ě-tům.
<i>To weep,</i>	fi-eo,	fi-ērě,	fi-ěv-i,	fi-ě-tům.
<i>To spin,</i>	n-eo,	n-ērě,	n-ěv-i,	n-ě-tům.
<i>To fill up,</i>	compl-eo,	compl-ērě,	compl-ěv-i,	compl-ě-tům.
<i>To abolish.</i>	ăböl-eo,	ăböl-ērě,	ăböl-ěv-i,	ăböl-i-tăm.

The primitives *δleo* and *pleo* are obsolete: like *compleo* are conjugated *impleo*, *expleo*; like *aboleo*, *adoleo*, and *exoleo*.

III. *Perfect-stem adds s to the Verb-stem.*

Euphonic Rules.

1. A t-sound before s is dropped; e. g., ar(d)-si = ars-i.
2. A c-sound + s = x; e. g., aug-si = aux-i.
3. But a c-sound *after* l or r, before s, is dropped; e. g., ful(g)-si = fuls-i.

<i>To shiver</i>	}	alg-eo,	alg-ērē,	{	al-s-i	}	
<i>with cold,</i>					(alg-s-i).		
<i>To burn.</i>		ard-eo,	ard-ērē,	{	ar-s-i	}	ars-um.
				{	(ard-s-i).		
<i>To increase,</i>		aug-eo,	aug-ērē,	{	aux-i	}	auc-tum.
				{	(aug-s-i).		
<i>To be bright,</i>		fulg-eo,	fulg-ērē,	{	ful-s-i		
				{	(fulg-s-i).		

<i>To stick,</i>	hær-eo,	hær-ērē,	{ hæs-s-i (hær-s-i),	} hæs-sūm.
<i>To indulge,</i>	indulg-eo,	indulg-ērē,	{ indul-s-i (indulg-s-i),	} indul-tūm.
<i>To command,</i>	jūb-eo,	jūb-ērē,	jus-s-i (jub-s-i),	jus-sūm.
<i>To remain,</i>	mān-eo,	mān-ērē,	man-s-i,	man-sūm.
<i>To assuage,</i>	mulc-eo,	mulc-ērē,	{ mul-s-i (mulc-s-i),	} mul-sūm.
<i>To milk,</i>	mulg-eo,	mulg-ērē,	{ mul-s-i (mulg-s-i),	} mulc-tūm.
<i>To laugh,</i>	rid-eo,	rid-ērē,	ri-s-i (rid-s-i),	ri-sūm.
<i>To advise,</i>	suād-eo,	suād-ērē,	{ suā-s-i (suad-s-i),	} suā-sūm.
<i>To wipe,</i>	terg-eo,	terg-ērē,	{ ter-s-i (terg-s-i),	} ter-sūm.
<i>To swell,</i>	turg-eo,	turg-ērē,	{ tur-s-i (turg-s-i),	
<i>To twist,</i>	torqu-eo,	torqu-ērē,	{ tor-s-i (torqu-s-i),	} tor-tūm.
<i>To press,</i>	urg-eo,	urg-ērē,	ur-s-i (urg-s-i),	
<i>To shine,</i>	lūc-eo,	lūc-ērē,	lux-i (lūc-s-i),	
<i>To mourn,</i>	lūg-eo,	lūg-ērē,	lux-i (lug-s-i),	

IV. *Perfect-stem reduplicates first Consonant and Vowel.*

<i>To bite,</i>	mord-eo,	mord-ērē,	mōmord-i,	mor-sūm.
<i>To hang,</i>	pend-eo,	pend-ērē,	pēpend-i,	pen-sūm.
<i>To betroth,</i>	spond-eo,	spond-ērē,	spōspond-i,	spon-sūm.
<i>To shear,</i>	tond-eo,	tond-ērē,	tōtond-i,	ton-sūm.

The compounds of these verbs drop the reduplication ; e. g., re-spondē (not re-spopondī).

V. *Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel.*

<i>To take care,</i>	cāv-eo,	cāv-ērē,	cāv-i,	cau-tūm.
<i>To favour,</i>	fāv-eo,	fāv-ērē,	fāv-i,	fau-tūm.
<i>To cherish,</i>	fōv-eo,	fōv-ērē,	fōv-i,	fō-tūm.
<i>To move,</i>	mōv-eo,	mōv-ērē,	mōv-i,	mō-tūm.
<i>To dread,</i>	pāv-eo,	pāv-ērē,	pāv-i,	
<i>To sit,</i>	sēd-eo,	sēd-ērē,	sēd-i,	ses-sūm.

In the same manner are conjugated the compounds with dissyllables : e. g., circumsēdeo, circumsēdērē, circumsēdī, circumsessūm, *to sit around* ; but those with monosyllables change ē of the stem into i e. g., assīdeo, assīdērē, assēdī, assessūm, *to sit by*.

<i>To see,</i>	vid-eo,	vid-ērē,	vid-i,	vi-sūm.
<i>To now</i>	vōv-eo,	vōv-ērē,	vōv-i,	vō-tūm.

(366.)

THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. Perfect-stem adds s to the Verb-stem.

Euphonic Rules.

1. b before s = p; e. g., scrib-s-i = scrip-s-i.

2. c-sound + s = x; e. g., cing-s-i = cinx-i.

[c, g, h, qu, are regarded as c-sounds.]

3. t-sound (d or t) before s is dropped; e. g., claud-s-i = claus-i.

4. m before s is either changed into n, or p is interposed (prems-i = pres-s-i; com-s-i = comp-s-i).

<i>To write.</i>	scrib-o,	scrib-ěre,	{ scrip-s-i (scrib-s-i), }	scrip-tūm.
<i>To bind,</i>	cing-o,	cing-ěre,	cinxi (cing-s-i),	cinc-tūm.
<i>To carry,</i>	vēh-o,	vēh-ěre,	vexi (veh-s-i),	vec-tūm.
<i>To cook,</i>	cōqu-o,	cōqu-ěre,	coxi (coqu-s-i),	coc-tūm.
<i>To shut,</i>	claud-o,	claud-ěre,	{ clau-s-i (claud-s-i), }	clau-sūm.

A u in the compounds is changed into ū; e. g., includo, includērē, inclūs-i, inclūsūm, to shut in.

<i>To give way,</i>	cēd-o,	cēd-ěre,	cessi (cēd-s-i),	ces-sūm.
<i>To scatter,</i>	sparg-o,	sparg-ěre,	{ spar-s-i (sparg-s-i), }	spar-sūm.

In the compounds a is changed into e; e. g., aspergo, aspergērē asper-s-i, aspersūm, to besprinkle.

<i>To adorn,</i>	cōm-o,	cōm-ěre,	com-ps-i,	com-p-tūm.
<i>To press,</i>	prēm-o,	prēm-ěre,	{ press-i (prem-s-i), }	pres-sūm.

In the compounds ě is changed into i; e. g., comprīmo, comprīmērē, compress-i, compressūm, to press together.

<i>To carry,</i>	gēr-o,	gēr-ěre,	gess-i (gēr-s-i),	ges-tūm.
------------------	--------	----------	-------------------	----------

II. Perfect-stem adds u to the Verb-stem.

(a) Without change of Verb-stem.

<i>To nourish,</i>	āl-o,	āl-ěre,	āl-u-i,	āl-i-tūm.
<i>To till,</i>	cōl-o,	cōl-ěre,	cōl-u-i,	cāl-tūm.
<i>To ask advice,</i>	consūl-o,	consūl-ěre,	consūl-u-i,	consul-tūm.
<i>To knead,</i>	deps-o,	deps-ěre,	deps-u-i,	deps-tūm.
<i>To murmur,</i>	frēm-o,	frēm-ěre,	frēm-u-i,	frēm-i-tūm.
<i>To groan,</i>	gēm-o,	gēm-ěre,	gēm-u-i,	gēm-i-tūm.
<i>To grind,</i>	mōl-o,	mōl-ěre,	mōl-u-i,	mōl-i-tūm.
<i>To conceal,</i>	occūl-o,	occūl-ěre,	occūl-u-i,	occul-tūm.
<i>To grind,</i>	pīn-o,	pīn-ěre,	pīn-u-i,	pīn-i-tūm.
<i>To snatch,</i>	rāp-io,	rāp-ěre,	rāp-u-i,	rap-tūm.
<i>To join together</i>	{ sēr-o,	sēr-ěre,	sēr-u-i,	ser-tūm.

<i>To weave,</i>	tex-o,	tex-ērē,	tex-u-i,	tex-tūm.
<i>To tremble,</i>	trēm-o,	trēm-ērē,	trēm-u-i,	
<i>To vomit,</i>	vōm-o,	vōm-ērē,	vōm-u-i,	vōm-i-tūm.

(b) With change of Verb-stem.

<i>To beget,</i>	gign-o,	gign-ērē,	gēn-u-i,	gēn-i-tūm.
<i>To reap,</i>	mēt-o,	mēt-ērē,	mess-u-i,	mes-sūm.
<i>To place,</i>	pōn-o,	pōn-ērē,	pōs-u-i,	pōs-i-tūm.

[For compounds of cumbērē, see 664, II.]

III. Perfect-stem adds v or iv to the Verb-stem.

(a) Adds v, and lengthens Stem-vowel if short.

<i>To separate,</i>	}	cern-o,	cern-ērē,	crē-v-i,	crē-tūm.
<i>perceive,</i>					

The perfect and supine of cerno are found only in the compounds
e. g., *dēcerno, dēcernērē, dēcervī, dēcrtūm, to decree.*

<i>To grow,</i>	cresc-o,	cresc-ērē,	crē-v-i,	crē-tūm.
<i>To smear,</i>	lin-o,	lin-ērē,	lē-v-i, or lī-v-i,	lī-tūm.
<i>To know,</i>	nosc-o,	nosc-ērē,	nō-v-i,	nō-tūm.

So, also, the compounds *inter, ig, per, prae-nosco*, have *ōvī, ōtūm*; but
cog, ag, prae-cog, recog-nosco, have *ōvī, itūm*; e. g., *agnosco, agnosce-ērē, agnōvī, agnītūm, to perceive.*

<i>To feed,</i>	pasc-o,	pasc-ērē,	pā-v-i,	pas-tūm.
<i>To rest,</i>	quiesc-o,	quiesc-ērē,	quīē-v-i,	quīē-tūm.
<i>To decide,</i>	scisc-o,	scisc-ērē,	sci-v-i,	sci-tūm.
<i>To sow,</i>	sēr-o,	sēr-ērē,	sē-v-i,	sē-tūm.

The compounds have the supine in *itūm*; e. g., *consēro, consērērē, consēvī, consītūm, to plant.*

<i>To allow,</i>	sīn-o,	sīn-ērē,	sī-v-i,	sī-tūm.	
<i>To despise,</i>	spērn-o,	spērn-ērē,	sprē-v-i,	sprē-tūm.	
<i>To strew,</i>	stern-o,	stern-ērē,	strā-v-i,	strā-tām.	
<i>To become</i>	}	suesc-o,	suesc-ērē,	suē-v-i,	suē-tām.
<i>accustom-</i>					
<i>ed,</i>					

(b) Perfect-stem adds iv.

<i>To summon,</i>	arcess-o,	arcessērē,	arcess-iv-i,	arcess-i-tūm.
-------------------	-----------	------------	--------------	---------------

In the same manner, *capesso, facesso, incesso, laceesso.*

<i>To seek,</i>	}	pēt-o,	pēt-ērē,	pēt-iv-i,	pēt-i-tūm.
<i>strive af-</i>					
<i>ter,</i>					
<i>To seek,</i>		quær-o,	quær-ērē,	quæs-iv-i,	quæs-i-tūm.

The compounds change *æ* of the stem into *i*; e. g., *conquīro, conquīrērē, conquīsvī, conquīsitūm, to examine.*

<i>To rub,</i>	tēr-o,	tēr-ērē,	{ tr-iv-i (for tēr-iv-i), }	trī-tūm.
----------------	--------	----------	--------------------------------	----------

IV. *Perfect-stem reduplicates the first Consonant.*

Some of these present vowel-changes, which must be carefully observed. (a) When the first vowel is i, o, u, the first consonant is reduplicated with that vowel; (b) in other verbs with e; (c) the compounds of *dāre*, *to give*, with i.

(a) First Vowel i, o, or u.

To run, curr-o, curr-ērē, cū-curr-i, cur-sūm.

Most of the compounds have the perfect both with and without the reduplication; e. g., *accurro*, *accurrērē*, *accurri* and *accūcurri*, *accursum*, *to run to*.

To learn, disc-o, disc-ērē, dī-dīc-i.

The compounds also reduplicate; e. g., *perdiscō*, *perdidici*, *to learn thoroughly*.

To weigh, pend-o, pend-ērē, pē-pend-i, pen-sum.

The compounds do not reduplicate; e. g., *appendō*, *appendērē*, *appendi*, *appensūm*, *to hang to*.

To demand, posc-o, posc-ērē, po-posc-i.

The compounds reduplicate; e. g., *rēposcērē*, *rēpōposci*, *to demand back again*.

To prick, pung-o, pung-ērē, pū-pūg-i, punc-tūm.

Compounds have perf. *punxi*.

To beat, tund-o, tund-ērē, tū-tūd-i, tun-sūm.

Compounds have supine *tūsum*; e. g., *contundērē*, *contūsūm*, *to crush*.

(b) Other Verbs reduplicate with e.

To fall, cād-o, cād-ērē, cē-cīd-i, ca-sūm.

To cut, cæd-o, cæd-ērē, cē-cīd-i, cæ-sūm.

The compounds have *cīdī*, *cīsūm*; e. g., *occidērē*, *occīdī*, *occīsūm*, *to kill*.

To sing, cān-o, cān-ērē, cē-cīn-i, can-tūm.

The compounds have *cīnī*; e. g., *succīnērē*, *succīnī*, *to sing to*.

To cheat, fall-o, fall-ērē, fē-fell-i, fal-sūm.

To bargain, pang-o, pang-ērē, pē-pīg-i, pac-tūm.

The compounds have *pingō*, *pēgī*, *paetūm*; e. g., *compingērē*, *compēgī*, *compactūm*, *to fasten together*.

To spare, parc-o, parc-ērē, pē-perc-i, par-sūm.

To bring forth, pār-io, pār-ērē, pē-pēr-i, par-tūm.

To drive, pell-o, pell-ērē, pē-pūl-i, pul-sūm.

To touch, tang-o, tang-ērē, tē-tīg-i, tac-ūm.

The compounds have *tingo, tingērē, tīgī, tactūm*; *e. g., attingērē attīgī, attactūm, to reach.*

(c) Compounds of *dāre*, reduplicate with *i*.

<i>To hide,</i>	ab-do,	abd-ērē,	ab-dīd-i,	ab-dī-tūm.
<i>To add,</i>	ad-do,	add-ērē,	ad-dīd-i,	ad-dī-tūm.
<i>To lay up,</i>	con-do,	con-d-ērē	con-dīd-i,	con-dī-tūm.
<i>To believe,</i>	crē-do,	crēd-ērē,	crē-dīd-i,	crē-dī-tūm.
<i>To surrender,</i>	dē-do,	dēd-ērē,	de-dīd-i,	dē-dī-tūm.
<i>To publish,</i>	ē-do,	ēd-ērē,	ē-dīd-i,	ē-dī-tūm.
<i>To put in,</i>	in-do,	ind-ērē,	in-dīd-i,	in-dī-tūm.
<i>To oppose,</i>	ob-do,	obd-ērē,	ob-dīd-i,	ob-dī-tūm.
<i>To destroy,</i>	per-do,	perd-ērē,	per-dīd-i,	per-dī-tūm.
<i>To betray,</i>	prō-do,	prod-ērē,	pro-dīd-i,	pro-dī-tūm.
<i>To restore,</i>	red-do,	redd-ērē,	red-dīd-i,	red-dī-tūm.
<i>To deliver,</i>	trā-do,	trad-ērē,	tra-dīd-i,	tra-dī-tūm.
<i>To sell,</i>	ven-do,	vend-ērē,	ven-dīd-i,	ven-dī-tūm.

V. Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel of the Verb.

(a) Without Vowel-changes.

<i>To take,</i>	ēm-o,	ēm-ērē,	ēm-i,	em-tūm.
-----------------	-------	---------	-------	---------

Compounds, *coēmo, adīmō, exīmō.*

<i>To dig,</i>	fōd-io,	fōd-ērē,	fōd-i,	fos-sūm.
<i>To fly,</i>	fūg-io,	fūg-ērē,	fūg-i,	fūg-i-tūm.
<i>To pour,</i>	fund-o,	fund-ērē,	fūd-i,	fū-sūm.
<i>To read,</i>	lēg-o,	lēg-ērē,	lēg-i,	lec-tūm.

The compounds with *per, prae, re,* and *sub* retain *ē*; *e. g., perlēgērē perlēgī, perlectūm, to read through*; but those with *col, de, e,* so change *ē* into *i*, *e. g., colligērē, collēgī, collectūm, to collect*; *three, dillgo, I love*; *intelligo, I understand*; *negligo, I neglect, have exi, ectūm*; *e. g., dillgērē, dilexi, dilectūm.*

<i>To leave,</i>	linqu-o,	linqu-ērē,	liqu-i,	lic-tūm.
<i>To burst,</i>	rump-o,	rump-ērē,	rūp-i,	rup-tūm.
<i>To conquer</i>	vinc-o,	vinc-ērē,	vīc-i,	vic-tūm.

(b) With Vowel-change.

<i>To drive,</i>	āg-o,	āg-ērē,	ēg-i,	ac-tūm.
------------------	-------	---------	-------	---------

Three of the compounds retain *ā*, *circumāgo, perāgo, sātāgo*: two undergo contraction, *cōgo* (*con + āgo*), *dēgo* (*de + āgo*): compounds with *ab, amb, ad, ex, prod, sub*, change *ā* into *i*; *e. g., ābligērē, ābēgī, abactūm, to drive away.*

<i>To take,</i>	cāp-io,	cāp-ērē,	cēp-i,	cap-tūm.
-----------------	---------	----------	--------	----------

All the compounds change *ā* into *i*, and have supine *ceptūm*; *e. g., accēp-ērē, accēpī, acceptūm, to receive.*

<i>To make,</i>	}	făc-io,	făc-ěřě,	fēc-i,	fac-tŭm.
<i>To do,</i>					

1. Compounds with verbs retain *ă*; e. g., *lăbefăcěřě*, *lăbėfēcĭ*, *labe. factŭm*, *to weaken*.

2. Compounds with prepositions change *ă* into *i*; e. g., *afficěřě*, *affēcĭ*, *affectŭm*, *to affect*.

<i>To break,</i>	frang-o,	frang-ěřě,	frėg-i,	frac-tŭm.
------------------	----------	------------	---------	-----------

Compounds change *a* into *i*; e. g., *refringěřě*, *refrėgĭ*, *refractŭm*, *to break open*.

<i>To cast,</i>	jăc-io,	jăc-ěřě,	jēc-i,	jac-tŭm.
-----------------	---------	----------	--------	----------

Compounds *ab*, *ad*, *de*, *e*, *in*, *ob*, *re*, *trans*. all change *ă* into *i*; e. g., *abjicěřě*, *abjēcĭ*, *abjectŭm*, *to throw away*.

VI. The Perfect-stem presents the simple Verb-stem.

(a) Stems ending in *u* or *v*.

<i>To refuse,</i>	abnu-o,	abnu-ěřě,	abnu-i.	
<i>To sharpen,</i>	ăcu-o,	ăcu-ěřě,	ăcu-i,	acŭ-tŭm.
<i>To show,</i>	argu-o,	argu-ěřě,	argu-i,	argŭ-tŭm.
<i>To agree,</i>	congru-o,	congru-ěřě,	congru-i.	
<i>To put off,</i>	exu-o,	exu-ěřě,	exu-i,	exŭ-tŭm.
<i>To put on,</i>	indu-o,	indu-ěřě,	indu-i,	indŭ-tŭm.
<i>To imbue,</i>	imbu-o,	imbu-ěřě,	imbu-i,	imbŭ-tŭm.
<i>To pay,</i>	lu-o,	lu-ěřě,	lu-i.	lŭ-tŭm.
<i>To fear,</i>	mětu-o,	mětu-ěřě,	mětu-i.	
<i>To lessen,</i>	mĭnu-o,	mĭnu-ěřě,	mĭnu-i,	mĭnŭ-tŭm.
<i>To rush,</i>	ru-o,	ru-ěřě,	ru-i,	rŭ-tŭm.
<i>To loose,</i>	solv-o,	solv-ěřě,	solv-i,	solŭ-tŭm.
<i>To spit,</i>	spu-o,	spu-ěřě,	spu-i,	spŭ-tŭm.
<i>To place,</i>	stătu-o,	stătu-ěřě,	stătu-i,	statŭ-tŭm.
<i>To sneeze,</i>	sternu-o,	sternu-ěřě,	sternu-i,	sternŭ-tŭm.
<i>To sew,</i>	su-o,	su-ěřě,	su-i,	sŭ-tŭm.
<i>To give,</i>	tribu-o,	tribu-ěřě,	tribu-i,	tribŭ-tŭm.
<i>To roll,</i>	volv-o,	volv-ěřě,	volv-i,	volŭ-tŭm.

(b) Consonant-stems.

<i>To weigh,</i>	append-o,	append-ěřě,	append-i,	appen-sŭm.
------------------	-----------	-------------	-----------	------------

So, also, the other compounds of *pendo*.

<i>To attend,</i>	attend-o,	attend-ěřě,	attend-i,	atten-sŭm.
-------------------	-----------	-------------	-----------	------------

So, also, the other compounds of *tendo*.

<i>To drink,</i>	bĭb-o,	bĭb-ěřě,	bĭb-i,	bĭbĭ-tŭm.
<i>To forge,</i>	cŭd-o,	cŭd-ěřě,	cŭd-i,	cŭ-sŭm.
<i>To eat,</i>	ěd-o,	ěd-ěřě,	ěd-i,	ě-sŭm.
<i>To lick,</i>	lamb-o,	lamb-ěřě,	lamb-i.	
<i>To chew,</i>	mand-o,	mand-ěřě,	mand-i,	man-sŭm.
<i>To spread,</i>	pand-o,	pand-ěřě,	pand-i,	pas-sŭm.

<i>To take,</i>	prēhend-o,	prēhend-ērē,	prēhend-i,	prēhen-sūm.
<i>To scratch,</i>	scāb-o,	scāb-ērē,	scāb-i,	
<i>To climb,</i>	scand-o,	scand-ērē,	scand-i,	scan-sūm.

Compounds (a, e, de, con, in) change *ā* into *ē*; e. g., *ascendo*.

<i>To sink down,</i>	sīd-o,	sīd-ērē,	sīd-i,	
----------------------	--------	----------	--------	--

The compounds take the perf. and supine from *sēdeō*; e. g., *consīdērē*, *consēdī*, *consessūm*, *to sit together*.

<i>To hiss,</i>	strīd-o,	strīd-ērē,	strīd-i,	
<i>To turn,</i>	vert-o,	vert-ērē,	vert-i,	ver-sūm.

Deverto, *præverto*, and *rēverto* are also used in the passive form as deponents; e. g., *rēvertōr*, *rēvertī*, *reversūs sūm*, *I turn back*.

<i>To brush,</i>	verr-o,	verr-ērē,	verr-i,	ver-sūm.
<i>To pluck,</i>	vell-o,	vell-ērē,	vell-i,	vul-sūm.

Compounds of *candō* and *fendō* belong here, viz.,

<i>To burn,</i>	incend-o,	incend-ērē,	incend-i,	incen-sūm.
<i>To defend,</i>	dēfend-o,	dēfend-ērē,	dēfend-i,	dēfen-sūm.

(667.)

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

I. Perfect-stem adds *iv* to the Verb-stem.

(Obs.) This class contains most of the verbs of the fourth conjugation: the following alone has a peculiar supine:

<i>To bury,</i>	sēpēl-io,	sēpēl-irē,	sēpēl-iv-i,	sēpul-tūm.
-----------------	-----------	------------	-------------	------------

II. Perfect-stem adds *u* to the Verb-stem.

<i>To clothe,</i>	āmic-io,	āmic-irē,	āmic-u-i,	āmic-tūm.
<i>To open,</i>	āpēr-io,	āpēr-irē,	āpēr-u-i,	āper-tūm.*
<i>To cover,</i>	ōpēr-io,	ōpēr-irē,	ōpēr-u-i,	ōper-tūm.
<i>To leap,</i>	sāl-io,	sāl-irē,	sāl-u-i,	sal-tūm.

Compounds change *ā* into *i*; e. g., *dēsālirē*, *dēsālui*, *dēsultūm*, *to leap down*.

III. Perfect-stem adds *s* to the Verb-stem.

<i>To cram,</i>	farc-io,	farc-irē,	{ far-s-i { (farc-s-i),	} farc-tūm.
-----------------	----------	-----------	----------------------------	-------------

The compounds change *a* into *e*; e. g., *confercire*, *confersi*, *confertūm*, *to fill up*.

<i>To prop,</i>	fulc-io,	fulc-irē,	{ ful-s-i { (fulc-s-i),	} ful-tūm.
<i>To draw,</i>	haur-io,	haur-irē,	{ hau-s-i { (haur-s-i),	} haus-tūm.
<i>To decree,</i>	sanc-io,	sanc-irē,	{ sanx-i { (sanc-s-i),	} sanc-i-tum and sanc-tūm.

* The compounds of *par-iō* which begin with a vowel have *ui*, *ertūm*, as in Class II.; those beginning with a consonant have *i*, *ertūm*, as in Class V.

<i>To patch,</i>	sarc-io,	sarc-irě,	{ sar-s-ī (sarc-s-ī),	{ sar-tūm.
<i>To feel,</i>	sent-io,	sent-irě,	{ sen-s-ī (sent-s-ī),	{ sen-sūm.

Instead of *assentiō*, *assentiōr*, *deponent* is more common.

<i>To hedge in,</i>	sēp-io,	sēp-irě,	sēp-s-ī,	sep-tūm.
<i>To bind,</i>	vinc-io,	vinc-irě,	{ vinx-ī (vinc-s-ī),	{ vinc-tūm.

IV. Perfect-stem lengthens the Stem-vowel.

Contains but a single simple verb.

<i>To come,</i>	vēn-io,	vēn-irē.	vēn-ī,	ven-tūm.
-----------------	---------	----------	--------	----------

V. Perfect-stem takes the simple Verb-stem.

<i>To ascertain,</i>	compēr-io,	compēr-irě,	compēr-ī,	comper-tūm.*
<i>To discern,</i>	rēpēr-io,	rēpēr-irě,	rēpēr-ī,	rēper-tūm.*

(668.)

DEPONENT VERBS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

<i>To exhort,</i>	hort-ōr,	hort-ārī,	hort-āt-ūs.
-------------------	----------	-----------	-------------

The deponents of the first conjugation are the most numerous, but are formed like *hortōr*, with *ārī*, *ātūs*.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

<i>To acknowledge,</i>	fāt-eōr,	fāt-ērī,	fas-sūs.
------------------------	----------	----------	----------

The compounds make *fīteōr*, *fessūs*; e. g., *confīteōr*, *confitēri*, *confessūs*, *to confess*: *diffiteor* has no participle.

<i>To bid,</i>	lic-eōr,	lic-ērī,	lic-īt-ūs.
<i>To heal,</i>	mēd-eōr,	mēd-ērī.	
<i>To deserve,</i>	mēr-eōr,	mēr-ērī,	mēr-īt-ūs.
<i>To pity,</i>	mīser-eōr,	mīser-ērī,	{ mīser-īt-ūs. ° miser-tūs.
<i>To think,</i>	r-eōr,	r-ērī,	rā-tūs.
<i>To look upon,</i>	tu-eōr,	tu-ērī,	{ tu-īt-ūs, or tū-tūs.
<i>To fear,</i>	vēr-eōr,	vēr-ērī,	vēr-īt-ūs.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

<i>To devise,</i>	commīnisc-ōr,	commīnisc-ī,	commen-tūs
-------------------	---------------	--------------	------------

Rēmīniscor, *to remember*, has no perfect.

<i>To obtain,</i>	ādīpisc-ōr,	ādīpisc-ī,	ādep-tūs.
<i>To be weary,</i>	dēfetisc-ōr,	dēfetisc-ī,	dēfes-sūs.

* See note. p. 276.

<i>To awake,</i>	expergisc-ör,	expergisc-I,	experrec-tüs
<i>To enjoy,</i>	fru-ör,	fru-I,	{ fruc-tüs and fru-it-us.
<i>To perform,</i>	fung-ör,	fung-I,	func-tüs.
<i>To proceed,</i>	grad-iör,	grad-I,	gres-süs.

Compounds change the ä into ë ; e. g., aggrëdi, aggressüs, *to assail*

<i>To be angry,</i>	irasc-ör,	irasc-I.	
<i>To fall,</i>	läb-ör,	läb-I,	laß-süs.
<i>To speak,</i>	löqu-ör,	löqu-I,	löcü-tüs.
<i>To die,</i>	mör-iör,	mör-I,	mor-tüs.
<i>To obtain,</i>	nancisc-ör,	nancisc-I,	nac-tüs.
<i>To be born,</i>	nasc-ör,	nasc-I,	na-tus.
<i>To lean upon, to strive,</i>	{ nüt-ör,	{ nüt-I,	{ nī-sus, or nix-üs.
<i>To forget,</i>	öblivisc-ör,	öblivisc-I,	öbli-tus.
<i>To bargain,</i>	päcisc-ör,	päcisc-I,	pac-tüs.
<i>To feed,</i>	pasc-ör,	pasc-I,	pas-tüs.

This verb is the passive of pascëre, *to give food*.

<i>To suffer,</i>	pät-iör,	pät-I,	pas-sus
-------------------	----------	--------	---------

Perpëtiör, perpessüs, *to endure*, changes ä into ë.

(From plectö, *to twine*.)

<i>To embrace,</i>	{ amplect-ör,	amplect-I,	amplex-üs.
	{ complect-ör,	complect-I,	complex-üs.
<i>To set out,</i>	pröficisc-ör	pröficisc-I,	pröfec-tüs.
<i>To complain,</i>	quër-ör,	quër-I,	ques-tüs.
<i>To grin,</i>	ring-ör,	ring-I.	
<i>To follow,</i>	sëqu-or,	sëqu-I,	sëcä-tüs.
<i>To revenge,</i>	ulcisc-ör,	ulcisc-I.	ul-tus.
<i>To use,</i>	üt-or,	üt-I,	ü-sus.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

<i>To assent,</i>	assent-iör,	assent-iri,	assen-süs.
<i>To flatter,</i>	bland-iör,	bland-iri,	bland-it-üs.
<i>To try,</i>	expër-iör,	expër-iri,	exper-tüs.
<i>To bestow money,</i>	larg-iör,	larg-iri,	larg-it-üs.
<i>To lie,</i>	ment-iör	ment-iri,	ment-it-üs.
<i>To measure,</i>	mët-iör,	mët-iri,	men-süs.
<i>To move a mass,</i>	möl-iör,	möl-iri,	möl-it-üs.
<i>To wait for,</i>	oppër-iör	oppër-iri,	opper-tüs.
<i>To begin,</i>	ord-iör,	ord-iri,	or-süs.

To rise,	ōr-iōr,	ōr-irī,	or-tūs.
To divide,	part-iōr,	part-irī,	part-it-ūs.
To possess myself of,	pōt-iōr,	pōt-irī,	pōt-it-ūs.
To cast lots,	sort-iōr,	sort-irī,	sort-it-ūs.

(669.)

INCHOATIVE VERBS.

Inchoatives are verbs derived from nouns, adjectives, or other verbs expressing a *beginning* or *becoming* of the act or state denoted by the primitive. Their stems always end in *sc*, and they all follow the form of the 3d conj.; e. g.,

From *puer*, *boy*, we have *puerasc-ērē*, to become a boy (again).

" *mātūr-ūs*, *ripe*, we have *mātūresc-ēre*, to become ripe.

" *dorm-irē*, to sleep, we have *obdormisc-ērē*, to fall asleep.

(1.) It is enough to observe on those derived from *adjectives* and *nouns* that they either *have* no perfect, or else form it in *ui*.

(2.) As to those derived from verbs,

(a) Most are from verbs in the *second* conjugation, and form their perfect-stem by adding *u* to the stem, rejecting *sc*; or, in other words, their perf.-stem is the same as that of the simple verb from which they are derived; e. g.,

To become gray, *canesc-ērē* (*canērē*), *canu-i*.

To grow sour, *acesc-ērē* (*acēre*), *acu-i*.

(b) Those derived from verbs of the other conjugations take the perfects of the simple verbs from which they are derived.

To grow old, *inveterasc-ērē* (*inveterārē*), *inveterāv-i*, *inveterā-tum*.

To come to life, *rēvivisc-ērē* (*vivērē*), *rēvix-i*, *rēvic-tum*.

To fall asleep, *obdormisc-ērē* (*dormirē*), *obdormīv-i*, *obdormi-tum*.

11. IRREGULAR VERBS.*

(670.) INFINITIVE MOOD.	
Tenses for Incomplete Action. Present and Imperfect.	Tenses for Complete Action. Perfect and Pluperfect.
1. possē, to be able.	pōtuissē, to have been able.
2. vellē, to be willing.	vōluissē, to have been willing.
3. nollē, to be unwilling.	nōluissē, to have been unwilling.
4. mallē, to be more willing.	maluissē, to have been more willing.
5. ēdērē, or essē, to eat.	ēdissē, to have eaten.
6. ferrē, to bear.	tūlissē, to have borne, or suffered.
7. fiērī, to become.	factūm essē, to have been made, or done.
8. ferī, to be borne.	latūm essē, to have been borne.

* See note, next page.

(671.)			INDICATIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT, <i>I am able, &c.</i>			PERFECT, <i>I have been able, &c.</i>		
1. possūm,*	pōbēs,	pōtest,	1. pōtu-i,	istī,	īt,
possūmūs,	pōtestis,	possunt.	pōtu-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
2. vōlō,	vis,	vult,	2. vōlu-i,	istī,	īt,
vōlūmūs,	vultis,	volunt.	vōlu-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
3. nōlō,	nonvis,	nonvult,	3. nōlu-i,	istī,	īt,
nōlūmūs,	nonvultis,	nōlunt.	nōlu-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
4. malō,	mavis,	mauvult,	4. malū-i,	istī,	īt,
malūmūs,	mauvultis,	malunt.	malū-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
5. ēdō,	ēdis or ēs,	ēdit or est,	5. ēd-i,	istī,	īt,
ēdimūs,	ēditis or estis ;	ēdunt.	ēd-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
6. fērō,	fers,	fert,	6. tūl-i,	istī,	īt,
fērīmūs,	fertis,	fērunt.	tūl-īmūs,	istīs,	ērunt or ērē.
7. fio,†	fis,	fit,	7. factus sūm,	ēs,	ēst,
fimūs,	fitis,	fiunt.	facti sūmūs,	estis,	sunt.
8. fērōr,	ferris or ferre ;	fertur,	8. lātus sūm,	ēs,	est,
fērīmūr,	fērīmīni,	fēruntur.	lati sūmūs,	estis,	sunt.
IMPERFECT, <i>I was able, &c.</i>			PLUPERFECT, <i>I had been able, &c.</i>		
1. pōt-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,	1. pōtu-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
pōt-ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.	pōtu-ērāmūs,	ērātis,	ērant.
2. vōl-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	2. vōlu-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
vōl-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	vōlu-ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ērant.
3. nōl-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	3. nōlu-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
nōl-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	nōlu-ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ērant.
4. mal-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	4. malū-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
māl-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	malū-ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ērant.
5. ēd-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	5. ēd-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
ēd-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	ēd-ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ērant.
6. fēr-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	6. tūl-ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
fēr-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	tūl-ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ērant.
7. fi-ēbām,	ēbas,	ēbāt,	7. factūs ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
fi-ēbāmūs,	ēbatīs,	ēbant.	facti ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ērant.
8. fēr-ēbār,	ēbaris or ē,	ēbātūr,	8. lātus ērām,	ērās,	ērāt,
fēr-ēbamur,	ēbamīni,	ēbantūr.	lati ērāmūs,	ērātīs,	ērant.
FUTURE, <i>I shall or will be able, &c.</i>			FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall or will have been able, &c.</i>		
1. pōt-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,	1. pōtu-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
pōt-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērunt	pōtu-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērīnt.
2. vōl-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	2. vōlu-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
vōl-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	vōlu-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērīnt.
3. nōl-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	3. nōlu-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
nōl-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	nōlu-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērīnt.
4. mal-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	4. malū-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
māl-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	malū-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērīnt.
5. ēd-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	5. ēd-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
ēd-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	ēd-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērīnt.
6. fēr-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	6. tūl-ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
fēr-ēmūs,	ētīs,	ent.	tūl-ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērīnt.
7. fi-ām,	ēs,	ēt,	7. factus ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
fi-ēmūs	ētīs,	ent.	facti ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērīnt.
8. fēr-ār,	ērīs or ērē,	ētūr	8. lātus ērō,	ērīs,	ērīt,
fēr-ēmūr,	ēmīni,	entūr.	lati ērīmūs,	ērītīs,	ērīnt.

* As many of these verbs are nearly related to each other, it seems unnecessary to separate their forms of inflection. The correspondent numbers will be sufficient direction in tracing the several tenses of each verb.

† Fio, contrary to the general rule (24, a), has *i long* throughout, before vowels : but before *er* it is *short* : as. *fiēri*.

(676.)

PARTICIPLES.

Active. 1. pōtens, *being able.*
 2. vōlens, " *willing.*
 3. nōlens, " *unwilling.*
 4. mālens, " *more willing.*
 5. ēdens, *eating.* ēsūrus, *about to eat.*
 6. fērens, *bearing.* lātūrus, *about to bear.*
 7. faciendūs, *to be made or done.*
 8. fērendūs, *to be borne.*

Passive. 7. factūs, *being or having been made or done.*
 8. latūs, *being or having been borne or suffered.*

(677.)

Eo, I go.

†

Eō, I go, is conjugated like *audio*, except in the following tenses :

	Singular.			Plural.	
Indicative Pres.	eō,	is,	it.	imūs,	itīs, eunt.
Past.	ibām,	ibās,	ibāt.	ibāmūs,	ibātīs, ibant.
Fut.	ibō,	ibis,	ibit.	ibimūs,	ibitīs, ibunt.
Imperative.		i, or itō.		itō, or itōtō.	3. euntō.
Subjunct. Pres.	eām,	eās,	eāt.	eāmūs,	eātīs, eant.
Gerunds.	eundi,	eundō,	eundū.		
Participle Pres.	iens (gen. euntīs),	going.	Fut. Itārūs,	<i>about to go.</i>	
Supines.	itūm,	itū.			

Rem. In like manner, the compounds of eo are formed: also, *queo*, *to be able*, and *nēqueo*, *to be unable*; except that these two have no imperative mood or gerunds.

12. DEFECTIVE VERBS

(678.) Are those which have only some particular tenses and moods ;
as, aio, I say; ausim, I dare; avē, hail ! &c.

(1.) Aio, I say.					
		Singular.		Plural.	
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	aio,	āis,	ait.		aiunt.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	ai-ēbam,	ēbās,	ēbāt.	ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs, ēbant.
<i>Imperative.</i>		ai.			
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	aiens.	aiās,	aiāt.		aiant.
<i>Participle.</i>					

(2.) Ausim, I dare.			
	ausim,	ausis,	ausit.
			ausint.

(3.) Āvē, hail !	
<i>Imperative.</i>	āvē, or āvēto.
<i>Infinitive.</i>	āvērē.
	āvētē, or āvētōtē.

(4.) Salvē, God save you !		
<i>Imperative.</i>	salvē, or salvētō.	salvētē, or salvētōtē.
<i>Infinitive.</i>	salvērē.	
<i>Ind. Fut.</i>	salvēbis.	

(5.) Cēdo, give me.				
Imperative.	Singular.		Plural.	
	cēdō.		cēdītē.	
(6.) Faxo, or faxim (for faciam), I will or may do it.				
	fax-o, or fax-im,	is, it.	imūs.	itīs, int.
(7.) Quæso, I pray.				
Ind. Pres.	quæso-ð,	is,	it.	āmūs.
Infinitive.	quæserō.			
Participle.	quæsens.			
(8.) Inquā, or Inquid, I say.				
Ind. Pres.	inqu-ið or ān,	Is,	It.	Imūs, iunt.
Ind. Imperf.			inquiēbat.	inquiē-
Fut.		inquiēs,	inquiēt.	{bat t.
Perf. Ind. Pres.		inquisti.		
Imperative.		inquē.	inquītð.	inquītē.
Participle.	inquiens.			

(9.) These verbs,

Nōv-i, I know;
 Mēmīn-i, I remember;
 Cœp-i, I begin;
 Od-i, I hate,

have the forms of the perfect tenses combined with the meanings of the imperfect. Nosco, the present of nōvī, is in use, and denotes *to learn*, whence nōvī expresses the actual knowledge which is the result of past learning.

Nōv-	{ i,	isti, &c. (Pres.)
Mēmīn-	{ ērām,	ērās, &c. (Past.)
Cœp-	{ ērō,	ērīs, &c. (Fut.)
Od-	{ ērim,	ērīs, &c. (Subj. Pres.)
	{ issēm,	issēs, &c. (Subj. Past.)
	{ issē,	(Infinitive.)
Mementō, mementōtē. (Imperative.)		
Ōsūs, ōsūrūs; cœptūs, cœptūrūs. (Participles.)		

13. IMPERSONAL VERBS

(679.) Are those which have no *subject*, and take the pronoun *it* before them in English; e.g., pluīt, *it rains*.

1. Impersonals never used personally.

libēt, libuit, <i>it pleases</i> .	*pœnitēt, pœnituit, <i>it repents</i> .
licēt, licuit, or } <i>one may,</i>	*pūdēt, pūdaīt, { <i>it shames,</i>
licitum est, } <i>it is lawful.</i>	{ <i>one is ashamed.</i>
oportēt, oportuit, { <i>one ought,</i>	*tædēt, pertæsum est, { <i>it wears,</i>
{ <i>it behooves.</i>	{ <i>disgusts.</i>
*miserēt, <i>one pities.</i>	refert, <i>it concerns.</i>
*plgēt, <i>it grieves (one).</i>	

* Those marked * take acc. of person and gen. of the thing (or object of the feeling).

2. Impersonals sometimes used *personally* in third person singular or plural.

fulmināt,	} <i>it lightens.</i>	ningit,	<i>it snows.</i>
fulgurat,		pluit,	<i>it rains.</i>
grandinat,		tōnat,	<i>it thunders.</i>
lucescit,		vespērascit,	<i>it grows dark.</i>

3. Personal verbs used *specially* as impersonals in third person singular.

accidit,	<i>it happens.</i>	fit,	<i>it happens.</i>
accēdit,*	<i>it is added.</i>	intērest,	<i>it concerns.</i>
apparet,	<i>it appears.</i>	jāvāt,	<i>it is pleasant.</i>
attinet,	<i>it belongs to.</i>	lātēt,	{ <i>it is unknown, concealed.</i>
conducit,	<i>it is conducive.</i>	liquet,	
constāt,	{ <i>it is known, agreed upon.</i>	pātēt,	<i>it is plain, open.</i>
contingit,		<i>it happens.</i>	plācēt,
convenit,	<i>it suits, agrees.</i>	præstāt,	<i>it is better.</i>
delectāt,	<i>it is delightful.</i>	restāt,	<i>it remains.</i>
dēcēt,	<i>it is becoming.</i>	sōlēt,	{ <i>it happens usually.</i>
dēdēcēt,	<i>it is unbecoming.</i>	assolēt,	
evēnit,	<i>it turns out.</i>	stāt,	<i>it suffices.</i>
expēdit,	<i>it is expedient.</i>	sufficit,	<i>(I) have leisure.</i>
excidit,†	<i>it has escaped me.</i>	vācāt,	

Rem. These may be used in the different tenses of indic. and subj. moods.

4. The third person singular of many intransitive verbs is used impersonally in the passive; e. g., *currītūr*, *they run* (it is run by them); *pugnātū est*, *they fought* (it was fought by them). Those which govern the dative, govern it also in the impersonal form; e. g., *I am envied*, *mihi invidētūr*.

* Accēdit quod (or ūt) = *moreover*.

† i. e., *dē mēmōriā excidit* = *it has slipped from my memory—is forgotten*.

§ 7. ADVERB.

THE adverb qualifies a verb, adjective, or another adverb.

I. Derivative Adverbs.

(680.) *Derivative adverbs* (a) are nearly all formed from *adjectives* or *participles*, by adding *ě* or *Itěr* to their stems:

1. Add *ě* to stem of adjectives in *ūs, Ń, ům*; e. g.,

clār-ūs, *illustrious*. clār-ě, *illustriously*.

Rem. B ōnūs makes b ěn ě, *well*; and m ělūs (*bad*); m ěl ě, *badly*.
All others end in *ě* (*long*).

- 2 Add *Itěr* to the stem of adjectives of 2d or 3d class; e. g.,

brěv-is, *brief*. brěv-Itěr, *briefly*.
fěrox (ferōc-s), *fierce*. fěrōc-Itěr, *fiercely*.

Rem. 1. Those which end in *ns* do not take the connecting vowel *i*.
e. g.,

prādens, *prudent*. prāden-těr, *prudently*.

2. Audax, *bold*, makes audac-těr, *boldly*.

(b) A few are formed from nouns, by adding *tūs* or *tīm* to the stem by means of a connecting vowel; e. g.,

cæl-ām, *heaven*. cæl-i-tūs, *from heaven*.
fund-ūs, *bottom*. fund-i-tūs, *from the bottom, totally*.
grex (greg-s); *flock*. grěg-ā-tīm, *by flocks*.

(c) Cases of adjectives, especially in the *neuter*, are often used as adverbs; e. g., dulcě, *sweetly*; falsě, *falsely*, &c.

II. Primitive Adverbs.

(681.) *Primitive adverbs* are such as cannot conveniently be classed among the derivatives above mentioned. The most common are arranged in the following lists:

1. ADVERBS OF PLACE (fivefold).

(1.) In a Place.			
ubi ? hic, illic, istic, ibi, intus, foris,	where ? here. there. there, where you are. there. within. without.	ubiquē, nusquam, alicubi, alibi, ubivis, ibidem,	everywhere. nowhere. somewhere. elsewhere. { anywhere (you please). in the same place.
(2.) To a Place—(o, uc).			
quo ? huc, illuc, istuc, intro,	whither ? hither. thither. { thither, to where you are. to within.	foras, eo, alio, aliquo, eodem,	to without. to that place. to another place. to some place. to the same place.
(3.) Towards a Place.			
quorsum, versus, sursum, deorsum,	whitherward ? towards. upward. downward	retorsum, dextorsum, sinistorsum,	backward. to the right hand. to the left hand.
(4.) From a Place—(nc, nde).			
unde ? hinc, illic, istinc, indē,	whence ? hence. thence. { thence, from where you are. thence.	aliundē, alicundē, sicundē, utrinquē, supernē, infernē,	from elsewhere. from some place. if from any place. on both sides. from above. from below.
(5.) Through or by a Place.			
qua ? hac, illac,	which way ? this way. that way.	istac, alia,	that way, by you. another way.

2. ADVERBS OF TIME (threefold).

(1.) <i>Being in time, either,</i>			
nunc, hodiē, tunc, tūm, hērī, dūdūm, pridēm, pridiē, nūpēr,	1. <i>Present.</i> <i>now.</i> <i>to-day.</i>	protinus, illico,	<i>instantly.</i> <i>straightway.</i>
	2. <i>Past.</i> <i>then.</i> <i>yesterday.</i>	crās, postridie, perendie, nondum,	<i>(Remote.)</i> <i>to-morrow.</i> <i>the day after.</i> <i>two days hence.</i> <i>not yet.</i>
	3. <i>Future.</i> <i>(Very Near.)</i> <i>presently.</i> <i>immediately.</i> <i>by-and-by.</i>	quandō ? aliquandō, nonnunquām interdum, sempēr, nunquām, intērim, intērea, quōtidie,	4. <i>Indefinite.</i> <i>when ?</i> <i>sometimes.</i> <i>always.</i> <i>never.</i> <i>in the mean time.</i> <i>daily.</i>
(2.) <i>Continuance of Time.</i>			
quamdiū ? diū, tamdiū,	<i>how long ?</i> <i>long.</i> <i>so long.</i>	jamdiū, jamdūdūm, jampridēm,	<i>long ago.</i>
(3.) <i>Vicissitude, or Repetition of Time.</i>			
quōtiēs ? sæpē, tōtiēs, aliquōtiēs, vicissim, rursus, itērum,*	1. <i>Indefinite.</i> <i>how often ?</i> <i>often.</i> <i>so often.</i> <i>for several times.</i> <i>by turns.</i> <i>again.</i> <i>a second time.</i>	subindē, identidēm,	<i>immediately after.</i> <i>several times.</i>
		2. <i>Definite, or in Number</i> sēmēl, bīs, tēr, quatēr,	<i>once.</i> <i>twice.</i> <i>thrice.</i> <i>four times.</i>

3. ADVERBS OF ORDER.

indē, <i>then.</i>	deinceps, <i>successively.</i>	primo,* -um,† <i>first.</i>
deindē, <i>thereafter.</i>	denuō, <i>anew.</i>	secundō,† <i>secondly.</i>
dehinc, <i>henceforth.</i>	deniquē, <i>finally.</i>	&c.
porrō, <i>moreover.</i>	(postrēmō,† <i>lastly.</i>	

4. ADVERBS OF QUALITY, MANNER, &c.

adeō, <i>so, and therefore.</i>	nempē, <i>truly.</i>
admōdūm, <i>very, greatly.</i>	nimiūm, <i>too much.</i>
an, <i>whether ? or else ?</i>	nōn, <i>not.</i>
cūr, <i>why.</i>	nūm ? <i>whether ?</i>
dēmūm, <i>at length.</i>	omniō, <i>at all, in general.</i>
etiam, <i>likewise, yes.</i>	pārūm, <i>little.</i>
fērē, <i>almost.</i>	sātis, <i>enough.</i>
haud, <i>not.</i>	sic, <i>so, thus.</i>
immō, <i>yes, truly.</i>	scilicet, <i>namely.</i>
itā, <i>so, thus.</i>	videlicet, <i>namely.</i>
māgis, <i>more.</i>	vix, <i>scarcely.</i>
nē, <i>not.</i>	

* Primo = *at first*; primūm = *first, in the first place.*

† These fall under (680, e).

§ 2. PREPOSITION.

(68) 1. PREPOSITIONS governing the *accusative*:

Antē, apūd, ad, adversūs,
Circū, circa, citrā, cīs,
Ergā, contrā, intēr, extrā,
Infra. intra, juxta, ob,
Pēnēs, pōnē, post, and prætēr,
Prōpē, proptēr, pēr, sēcundū,
Sūpra, versūs, ultrā, trans.

[Versūs is placed *after* the noun which it governs.]

2. Governing the *ablative*:

Absquē, ā, āb, abs, and dē.
Cōrām, clām, cūm, ex, and ē.
Tēnūs, sinē, prō, and prae.

3. Governing both *accusative* and *ablative*:

In, sub, supēr, subter

§ 9. CONJUNCTION.

(683.) CONJUNCTIONS connect words and sentences. They may be divided into the following classes:

- I. *Copulative*, which simply unite sentences together (*and*): they are *et*, *atque* or *ac*, *que*, *neque* or *ne*, *necnon*, *etiam*, *quoque*, with the adverbials *item* and *etiam*.
- II. *Disjunctive*, which connect *unlike* prepositions (*or*): they are *aut*, *vel*, the suffix *ve*, and *sive* or *seu*; (*either—or*): *aut—aut*, *vel—vel*; (*whether—or*): *sive—sive*.
- III. *Comparative* (*as, like, as if, &c.*): they are *ut*, *sicut*, *velut*, *prout*, *ceu*, *quam*, *tamquam*, *quasi*, *ut*, *acsi*, together with *ac* and *atque*, when they mean *as*.
- IV. *Adversative*, expressing *opposition* of thought (*but*): they are *sed*, *autem*, *verò*, *at* and its compounds, *tamen* (and its compounds with *at* *sed* and *verum*), and *ceterum*.
- V. *Concessive*, expressing something *granted* (*although, even if*): they are *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi*, *quamquam*, *quavis*, *quantumvis*, *quamlibet*, *licet*, with *ut* and *quum*, when they mean *although*.
- VI. *Conditional*, expressing a *condition* (*if, if only, if but*): they are *si*, *sin*, *ni* or *nisi*, *simodò*, *dummodò*, *modò*, and some times *dum* and *modò* used alone.
- VII. *Conclusive*, expressing a *conclusion* or *inference* (*therefore*): they are *ergo*, *igitur*, *itaque*, *eò*, *ideò*, *idcirco*, *proinde*, *propterea*, and the relatives (*wherefore*) *quapropter*, *quare*, *quomobrem*, *quocirca*, *undè*.
- VIII. *Causal*, expressing a *cause* or *reason* (*for, because*): *nam*, *namque*, *enim*, *et enim*, *quia*, *quod*, *quoniā*, *quippe*, *quum*, *quandò*, *quandòquidē*, *siquidē*.
- IX. *Final*, expressing a *purpose* or *aim* (*in order that, in order that*): *ut* or *ut*, *quò*, *nē*, *utnē*, *nēvē*, *neu*, *quin*, *quominus*.
- X. *Temporal*, expressing a *relation of time* (*when, as soon as, after that, just as*): *quum*, *ut*, *ubi*, *postquam*, *antequam*, *priusquam*, *quandò*, *simul*, *simulac*, *dum*, *usque dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*.
- XI. *Interrogative*, used in asking questions: *nūm*, *utrū*, 'suffix)

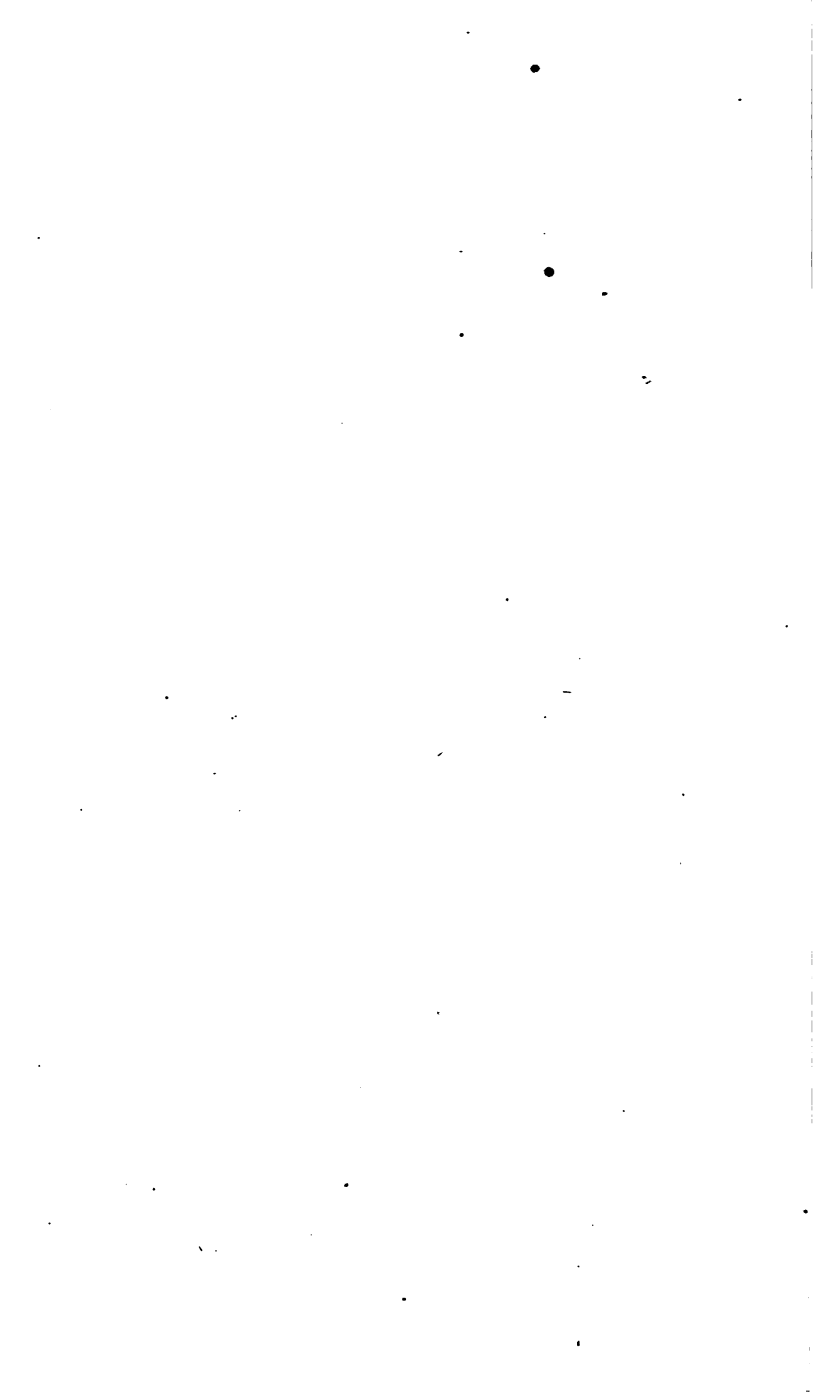
§ 10. INTERJECTION.

(684.) INTERJECTIONS are simply signs of emotion

āh,	<i>ah !</i>	hēm,	<i>hem ! how !</i>
āpāgē,	<i>away !</i>	iō,	<i>kuzza !</i>
eccē,	<i>behold !</i>	ōh,	<i>oh ! alas !</i>
eccūm,	<i>see him !</i>	pāpæ,	<i>O strange ! good !</i>
eū,	<i>lo !</i>	prō,	<i>alas !</i>
heī, heū,	<i>alas !</i>	we,	<i>woe !</i>
		vah,	<i>O rare !</i>

PART IV.

SUMMARY OF SYNTAX



SYNTAX.

INTRODUCTION.

(685.) A *proposition* is a thought expressed in words ; e. g., *the rose blooms ; the rose is beautiful.*

(686.) A *simple sentence* consists of a single proposition ; e. g., *the messenger was sent ; the swift messenger arrived.*

(687.) A *compound sentence* is one made up of two or more propositions , e. g., *the messenger, who had been sent arrived.*

(688.) SYNTAX treats of the use of words in the formation of sentences and of the relation of sentences to each other. We speak first,

PART I.

OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

I. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

§ 1. Definition of Subject and Predicate.

(689.) Every sentence (e. g., *the eagle flies*) consists of two parts, the *subject* (e. g., *eagle*) and the *predicate* (e. g., *flies*).

(a) The *subject* is that of which anything is declared, and is generally (1) a *noun*, or (2) some word used instead of a noun.

1. *The eagle flies.* Here the noun *eagle* is the subject.

2. *To err is human.* Here the infinitive *to err* is used as a noun, and forms the subject.

(b) The *predicate* is that which is declared of the subject, and is generally either (1) a *verb*, (2) an *adjective* or *participle*, or (3) a *noun*, connected with the subject by some form of the verb *to be*.

1. *The eagle flies.* Here the verb *flies* is the predicate.

2. *To err is human.* Here the adjective *human* is the predicate.

3. *John is a man.* Here the noun *man* is the predicate.

§ 2. Agreement.

(690.) RULE I. The verb of the predicate agrees with the subject in number and person.

The trees are green.

Art thou happy ?

| *Arbores virent.*

| *Esne tu beatus ?*

Rem. 1. If the subj. consists of two or more singular nouns denoting persons, the verb is generally in the plural.

2. A *collective* noun sometimes has a plural verb.

The crowd rushes.

| *Turba ruunt.*

[This construction is not used by Cicero, and seldom, if at all, by Caesar.]

3. A plural verb is sometimes used with *uterque* and *quisque*

Each of them leads his army out of the camp. | *Uterque eorum ex castris exercitum educunt.*

4. The verb agrees with the first person rather than the second; the second rather than the third.

If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well. | *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.*

(691.) An adjective may stand either

- (1.) As predicate: *e. g.*, the man is *happy*;
- (2.) As modifying the subject; *e. g.*, the *good* man is happy;
- (3.) As modifying the predicate; *e. g.*, the good man is a *happy* man.

In either case we have

RULE II. Adjectives agree with the nouns to which they refer in gender, number, and case.

[This rule applies to all adjectives, pronouns, and participles.]

Rem. If there be two or more nouns denoting *persons*, the most worthy* gender prevails; if *things*, the neuter is used.

My father and mother are dead.

| *Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.*

Labour and enjoyment are united. | *Labor voluptasque juncta sunt.*

(692.) **RULE III.** If the predicate be a noun, it takes the case of the subject.

Numa was made king.

| *Numa rex creabatur.*

§ 3. Apposition

(693.) A noun may stand

- (a) In the subject, denoting the same person or thing with the subject-noun; *e. g.*, the general, a *brave* man, led the army.
- (b) In the predicate, denoting the same person or thing with a noun in the predicate; *e. g.*, we have sent the consul, a *brave* man.

Nouns thus expressing the same person or thing, whether in the subject or predicate, are said to be in *apposition* with each other; and in either case we have

RULE IV. Nouns in apposition with each other agree in case

* The *masculine* is said to be more worthy than the *feminine*; the *feminine* than the *neuter*.

The commander, a brave man, led the army.	Imperator, vir fortis, exercitum duxit.
We sent the consul, a brave man.	Consulem, virum fortem, misimus.

Rem. 1. A noun in apposition with two or more nouns is commonly put in the plural.

M. Antony and C. Crassus, tribunes of the people.	M. Antonius, C. Crassus, tribuni plebis.
---	--

2. A noun in apposition with the name of a town may be put in the ablative, with or without the preposition in.

At Rome, the chief city of Italy. | Romæ, (in) prima urbe Italix.

II. USE OF CASES.

§ 4. Nominative.

(694.) *Subject-nominative*.—The subject of a proposition takes the nominative case, and is called the *subject-nominative*.

(2.) *Predicate-nominative*.—The predicate-nominative (692) is always connected with the subject by *esse*, *to be*, or some verb expressing an incomplete idea.

<i>Rem.</i> Of this class of verbs are <i>to appear</i> , apparere, videri; <i>to become</i> , fieri, evadere, existere; <i>to be named</i> , dici, appellari, nominari; <i>to be esteemed</i> , existimari, haberi, &c.	
Ariovistus was called king by the senate.	Ariovistus a senatu rex appellatus est.

§ 5. Genitive.

(695.) **RULE V.** The genitive answers the questions *whose?* *of whom?* *of what?* *e. g.*, the love of glory, amor gloriæ; Cicero's orations, Ciceronis orationes.

Rem. The genitive is *subjective* when it denotes that which does something, or to which a thing belongs; *e. g.*, Ciceronis orationes. It is *objective* when it denotes that which is affected by the action or feeling spoken of; *e. g.*, amor gloriæ: the taking of the town, expugnatio urbis.

(696.) **RULE VI.** *Genitive of Quality*.—The genitive (with an adjective, or pronoun of quality, number, &c.) is used to express the *quality* of a thing.

A man of great bravery.	Vir magnæ virtutis.
A ditch of fifteen feet.	Fossa quindecim pedum.

Rem. 1. The *ablative* is also used in the same way (722).

2. If the two nouns are connected, not immediately, but by another part of speech, the *accusative* must be used: fossa quindecim pedes lata.

(697.) **RULE VII. Partitive-genitive.**—The genitive is used to express the *whole* of which anything is a part. Hence,

(a) With comparatives and superlatives :

<i>The more learned of the two brothers.</i>		Doctior fratrum duorum.
--	--	-------------------------

<i>The most learned of the Romans.</i>		Doctissimus Romanorum.
--	--	------------------------

(b) With all words expressing *number* or *quantity*, whether adjectives, pronouns, numerals, or adverbs; e. g., *many of the soldiers*, multi militum; *which of you?* quis vestrum? *the last of the Romans*, ultimus Romanorum; *enough eloquence*, satis eloquentiæ, *where* (in what part) *of the world?* ubinam gentium?

Rem. This rule includes the neuters tantum, quantum, aliquantum, quid, aliquid, &c.

(698.) **RULE VIII. Genitive of Mental Affections.**—The genitive is used with verbs and adjectives expressing certain operations of the mind or feelings, to denote the *object* thereof.

(a) *Operations of the mind.*

1. Adjectives of *knowledge* and *ignorance*, *remembering* and *forgetting*, *certainty* and *doubt*.

Mindful of a kindness.

| Beneficii memor.

He was not ignorant of the result of the war.

| Eventus belli non erat ignarus.

2 Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* (recordor, memini, reminiscor, obliviscor).

To remember past events.

| Meminisse præteritorum.

He exhorts the Æduans to forget their disputes.

| Cohortatur Æduos ut controversiarum obliviscantur.

[The thing remembered is often put in the accusative.]

(b) *Operations of the feelings.*

1. Adjectives expressing *desire* or *aversion*, *patience* or *impatience*, *appetite* or *passion*. Participles used as adjectives fall under this rule.

Desirous of praise.

| Avidus laudis.

A lover of (= one loving) virtue.

| Amans virtutis.

2. Verbs.

(a) Those expressing *pity*, viz., miseresco, misereor.

I pity the unfortunate.

| Miseresco infelicium.

(b) The impersonals pudet, piget, pœnitet, tædet, miseret (*shame, disgust, repentance, loathing, pity*).

<i>I am not only sorry for my folly, but ashamed of it.</i> <i>I am weary of my life.</i>	Me non solum pœnitent stultitiæ meæ, sed etiam pudet. Me tædet vitæ.
--	---

Rem. 1. Observe that the *person* feeling is expressed by the accusative.

2. The cause of feeling may be a verb, or part of a sentence, instead of a noun in the genitive.

<i>I am not sorry (= it does not repent me) that I have lived.</i>	Non pœnitent me vixisse
--	-------------------------

(699.) RULE IX. *Genitive of Participation*.—The genitive is used with adjectives and participles expressing (1) *plenty* or *want*, (2) *power* or *weakness*, (3) *sharing* or its opposite, (4) *likeness* or *unlikeness*.

(1.) <i>Full of wrath.</i> (2.) <i>Master of one's faculties.</i> (3.) <i>He is like his brother.</i> (4.) <i>Man is a sharer of reason.</i>	Plenus iræ. Compos mentis. Similis est fratris. Homo particeps est rationis.
---	---

Rem. 1. Those of *plenty* and *want* take also ablative (716, B. 4).

2. Those of *likeness* and *unlikeness* take also the dative (704, 4).

(700.) RULE X. *Genitive of Value*.—The genitive of certain adjectives is used with verbs of *valuing*, *esteeming*, *buying*, *selling*, &c., to denote the price or value.

<i>The poor man estimates riches at a great value.</i>	Pauper divitias magni æstimat.
--	--------------------------------

Rem. 1. Such genitives are *magni*, *permagni*, *pluris*, *maximi*, *minoris*, and others.

2. If the price be a noun, the ablative is used (719). Also, the ablatives *magno*, *permagno*, *plurimo*, *parvo*, *minimo*, *nihi-lo*, are often used.

(701.) RULE XI. *Genitive of Crime*.—The genitive is used with verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *acquitting*, &c., to denote the *crime* or *offence* charged.

<i>To accuse of treachery.</i> <i>The judge acquitted the prisoner of the crime.</i>	Proditionis accusare. Prætor reum criminis absolvit.
---	---

(702.) RULE XII. *Genitive of Property*.—The genitive is used with *esse* to denote (1) that to which something belongs, (2) that to which something is peculiar.

(1.) <i>This book belongs to my father.</i> (2.) <i>It is peculiar to the brave to endure pain with fortitude.</i>	Hic liber est mei patris. Fortium est dolorem fortiter pati.
---	---

Rem. 1. Under this last head come the following constructions

It is	{	the property peculiarity duty mark characteristic &c.	}	of a wise man = est sapientis.
-------	---	--	---	--------------------------------

2. Observe carefully, that instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns (*mei, tui, &c.*), the neuter possessives (*meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*) are used; *e. g., it is my duty, &c. est meum, &c.*

(703.) **RULE XIII.** The genitive is used with the impersonal interest (*it concerns*), to express the person concerned.

It concerns my brother.

| *Mei fratris interest.*

It concerns the state.

| *Reipublicæ interest.*

Rem. But instead of the genitives of the personal pronouns (*mei, tui, &c.*), the possessive forms *mea, tua, &c.*, are always used; and with them the impersonal *refert* has the same force as *interest*.

It concerns you.

| *Tua interest (not tui interest)*

It is of great importance to me to see you.

| *Magni mea refert ut te videam*

§ 6. Dative.

(704.) **RULE XIV.** The dative case is used to express the person or thing to or for whom (or which), to or for whose advantage or disadvantage anything is done or tends.

✎ Almost every instance in which the dative occurs may be explained by a proper application of this rule. For the sake of fuller illustration, however, we add the following heads:

(1) *Dative of Remote Object.*—The dative is used to express the remote object,

(a) With transitive verbs governing also a direct object.

I send you a book.

| *Mitto tibi librum.*

Pisistratus conquered the Megarenses for himself.

| *Pisistratus sibi Megarenses vicit.*

Rem. The accusative is often omitted, and the dative alone appears with the verb; *e. g., I persuade you, tibi suadeo; he told the general, nuntiavit imperatori.*

(b) With intransitive verbs expressing an action done to or for some person or thing.

I have leisure for philosophy.

| *Vaco philosophiæ.*

(2) On the same principle (*advantage* or *disadvantage*), the dative is used with verbs of the following meanings, viz.:

*Envy, profit, please, displease, obey,
Help, hurt, resist, excel, or disobey,
Command, indulge, be angry, spare, upbraid,
Marry, heal, favour, meet, trust, and persuade.*

Rem. 1. *Juvo, lædo, delecto, offendo, rego, gubernō*, govern the accusative.

2. *Impero, credo, minor, comminor*, are also used transitively, with accusative and dative.

(3.) *Dative with Compound Verbs.*—The dative is used with *most* verbs compounded with *ad, con, in, inter, ob, præ, sub*; and with *many* of those compounded with *ab, ante, de, e, post, præ, re, super*.

Rem. These verbs govern the dative when they acquire a meaning from the preposition which calls for the dative; *e. g., to join, jungere*, takes accusative; but *to join to, adjungere*, takes dative also. When they are transitive, they take both accusative and dative; but when intransitive, the dative only.

<i>To prefer unknown men to known.</i>	<i>Ignotos notis anteferre.</i>
<i>Vices creep upon us.</i>	<i>Vitia nobis obrepunt.</i>

(4.) So, also, the dative is used with *adjectives* expressing *advantage, likeness, usefulness, fitness, facility, nearness to*, and their opposites.

<i>Be kind to all.</i>	<i>Cunctis esto benignus.</i>
<i>Hurtful to the body.</i>	<i>Corpori perniciosum.</i>
<i>A place fit for ambush.</i>	<i>Locus insidiis aptus.</i>
<i>They are neighbours to the Germans.</i>	<i>Proximi sunt Germanis.</i>

Rem. 1. Adjectives of *likeness* or *unlikeness* may take the genitive (699, 3).

2. Those of *fitness* and *unfitness* often take the accusative with *ad* *e. g., locus ad insidias aptus.*

(705.) **RULE XV. Dative of Possession.**—The dative is used with *esse* to express the person who has or possesses something.

<i>I have a book.</i>	<i>Est mihi liber (= habeo librum).</i>
-----------------------	---

Rem. 1. *I have a name* = *est mihi nomen*; but if the name be expressed, it may be put either in nominative or dative; *e. g., my name is Lælius* = *mihi est nomen Lælius* (or *Lælio*).

2. The possessor is expressed by the *dative* when the mind refers chiefly to the *possession* (*e. g., I have a book* = *est mihi liber*); but by the *genitive* when the mind refers chiefly to the *possessor* (*e. g., this book is my father's* = *hic liber est mei patris*).

(706.) **RULE XVI. Dative of the End (Double Dative).**—Two datives are used with *esse*, and with verbs of *giving, coming, sending, imputing*; one to express the *person*, the other the *object or end*.

The Boians were (for) a protection to the rear. | Boii novissimis præsidio erant.

Pausanias came to aid (for an aid to) the Athenians. | Pausanias venit Atheniensibus auxilio.

Rem. The verbs used with double dative are *esse, dare, ducere, tribuere, vertere, accipere, relinquere, deligere, mittere, venire, habere*.

[The dative is used with gerundives, for which see 737, *b*.]

§ 7. Accusative.

(707.) The **ACCUSATIVE** is the case of the *direct object*, and answers the questions *whom? what? to what place?*

☞ Under this general statement we make three heads: (1) the accusative with verbs; (2) the accusative with prepositions; (3) the accusative according to the usage of the language.

I. Accusative with Verbs.

(708.) **RULE XVII. Accusative of the Direct Object.**—The accusative is used with transitive verbs, to express the *direct object*.

Cæsar recalls the lieutenant. | Cæsar legatum revocat.

Rem. 1. Some verbs are used both transitively and intransitively; the use of these must be learned by practice.

2. Some *intransitives* (especially those of motion), compounded with prepositions, acquire a transitive force easily recognised from their meaning; thus: *to go, ire; to go across, transire*, which takes the accusative.

3. Some *intransitives* take an accusative of a noun from the same root with themselves; *e. g., to live a life, vivere vitam*.

(709.) **RULE XVIII. Accusative with Impersonals.**—The accusative of the *person affected* is used with the impersonals *ouedet, piget, tædet, miseret, pœnitet*.

I am tired of life. | Tædet me vitam.

Rem. *Decet* and its compounds (which admit a personal subject), also *juvat* and *delectat*, take the accusative.

Anger becomes wild beasts. | Decet ira feras.

(710.) **RULE XIX. Double Accusative.**

(a) Two accusatives, one of the *person*, the other of the

thing, are used with verbs of *teaching, concealing, asking, or entreating*, and also with those verbs whose passives have a double nominative (694, 2, R.).

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| (1.) <i>Who taught Epaminondas music?</i> | Quis musicam docuit Epaminondam. |
| (2.) <i>I conceal nothing from you.</i> | Nihil te celo. |
| (3.) <i>I ask this of you earnestly.</i> | Hoc te vehementer rogo. |
| (4.) <i>Avarice renders men blind.</i> | Avaritia homines cæcos reddit. |

Rem. 1. With verbs of *asking, demanding*, the ablative with a preposition is used instead of one of the accusatives.

<i>The ambassadors were asking peace of Cæsar.</i>	Legati pacem a Cæsare poscebant.
--	----------------------------------

2. *Petere* and *postulare* always take the ablative with *ab*; and *querere*, the ablative with *ab*, *de*, or *ex*.

(b) Two accusatives are used also with verbs compounded with *trans*.

<i>Cæsar led the army across the Rhine.</i>	Cæsar exercitum Rhenum transduxit.
---	------------------------------------

The *trans* is often repeated; e. g., *Cæsar exercitum trans Rhenum transduxit*.

Rem. 1. In the passive construction of verbs which take a double accusative, the *person* takes the nominative, but the *thing* generally remains in the accusative.

<i>I was asked my opinion.</i>	Ego rogatus sum sententiam.
<i>The multitude is led across the Rhine.</i>	Multitudo Rhenum transducitur.

2. But with verbs of *demanding* the ablative with a preposition is generally used.

<i>Money is demanded of me.</i>	Pecunia a me poscitur.
---------------------------------	------------------------

II. Accusative with Prepositions.

(711.) **RULE XX.** The accusative is used with the prepositions *ad, apud, ante, adversus, cis, citra, circa, circum, circiter, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, penes, per, pone, post, præter, prope, propter, secundum, supra, trans, versus, ultra*. Also, with *in* and *sub*, when motion is expressed; with *super*, when it means *over*, and with *subter* nearly always.

. III. Accusative according to the Usage of the Language.

(712.) **RULE XXI. Accusative of Measure.**—The accusative is used in answer to the questions *how far? how deep? how*

thick? how broad? how old? how long? (whether of time or distance).

<i>The city is two miles off.</i>	<i>Urbs duo millia abest.</i>
<i>The ditch is ten feet wide (deep, or long).</i>	<i>Fossa decem pedes lata (alta, longa).</i>
<i>Only one hour.</i>	<i>Unam modo horam.</i>
<i>Twenty years old.</i>	<i>Viginti annos natua.</i>

Rem. 1. How far? is sometimes answered by the ablative.

<i>Six miles from Caesar's Camp.</i>	<i>Millibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris.</i>
--------------------------------------	---

2. For *time how long*, the accusative with *per* is sometimes used, and sometimes the ablative alone.

<i>Through the whole night.</i>	<i>Per totam noctem.</i>
<i>He was absent six months.</i>	<i>Sex mensibus abfuit.</i>

(713.) **RULE XXII. Accusative of Direction, Whither?**—The accusative is used with names of *towns* and *small islands*, in answer to the question, *whither?*

<i>To set out for Athens.</i>	<i> Athenas proficisci.</i>
-------------------------------	------------------------------

Rem. 1. With names of *countries* or *large islands* the prepositions *in*, *ad*, must be used.

<i>He crossed into Europe.</i>	<i> In Europam trajecit.</i>
--------------------------------	-------------------------------

2. *Domus* and *rus* follow this rule.

<i>To go home.</i>	<i> Ire domum.</i>
<i>I will go into the country.</i>	<i> Rus ibo.</i>

(714.) **Greek Accusative.**—The accusative is used to express a special limitation.

<i>Naked as to his limbs.</i>	<i> Nudus membra.</i>
<i>For the most part (men) say so.</i>	<i> Maximam partem ita dicunt.</i>

Rem. This is a Greek usage, common in Latin poetry, but not in prose.

(715.) **Exclamations.**—The accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an interjection.

<i>Miserable me!</i>	<i> Me miserum.</i>
<i>Behold, four altars!</i>	<i> En quattuor aras.</i>

[For the accusative with the infinitive, see 751.]

§ 8. Ablative.

(716.) **RULE XXIII. General Rule.**—The ablative is used to express the (1) *cause*; (2) *manner*; (3) *means, material, or instrument*; (4) *supply*.

1. *Cause*.—The ablative of cause is used with passive verbs, and with the participles *natus*, *genitus*, *ortus*, *contentus*.

The world is illuminated by the sun. | *Sole mundus illustratur.*

I am content with my lot. | *Sorte mea contentus sum.*

O thou, born of a goddess! | *Nate Dea!*

☞ If the cause be a *person* (or a thing *personified*) a or ab must be used with passive verbs.

The world was built by God. | *A Deo mundus edificatus est.*

2. *Manner*.—(a) This ablative generally occurs in nouns denoting manner; e. g., *mos*, *modus*, *ratio*, &c.

In this way I wrote. | *Hoc modo scripsi.*

(b) With other nouns, *cum* is generally used, unless an *adjective* is joined with the noun.

He hears with pleasure. | *Cum voluptate audit.*

He bears the injury with firmness. | *Æquo animo fert injuriam.*

3. *Means, Material, Instrument*.—Ablative without a preposition.

To travel by horse, carriage, ships. | *Equo, curru, navibus, vehi.*

Bulls defend themselves with their horns. | *Cornibus tauri se tutantur.*

☞ If the instrument or means be a *person*, *per* or *propter* is used, with the accusative.

I was freed by you. | *Per te liberatus sum.*

4. *Supply*.—As supply may be either abundant or defective, the ablative is used with verbs and adjectives of *abounding*, *wanting*, *filling*, *emptying*, &c.; e. g., *abundare*, *egere*, *carere*, *inops*, *refertus*, *præditus*, &c.

Germany abounds in rivers. | *Germania fluminibus abundat.*

The mind is endowed with perpetual activity. | *Mens est prædita motu sempiterno.*

(717.) RULE XXIV. The ablative of the *thing needed*, and the dative of the *person*, are used with *opus est* (*there is need*).

We have need of a leader. | *Duce nobis opus est.*

Rem. If *opus est* be used personally, the *thing needed* is put in the nominative as subject.

Leaders are necessary for us. | *Duces nobis opus sunt.*

(718.) RULE XXV. The ablative is used with the *deponents* *utor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*.

To make use of advice. | *Consilio uti.*

They were enjoying peace. | *Pace fruebantur.*

Rem. Potior is used also with the genitive.

To obtain possession of all Gaul. | Totius Galliæ potiri.

(719.) **RULE XXVI. Ablative of Price.**—The ablative is used with verbs of *buying, selling, valuing, &c.*; also with the adjectives dignus and indignus, to express the *price* or *value*.

He sold his country for gold.


Worthy of hatred.

That battle cost the blood of many.

Patriam auro vendidit.

Odio dignus.

Multorum sanguine ea victoria stetit.

 If the price or value be an *adjective*, it is generally put in the genitive (700).

(720.) **RULE XXVII. Ablative of Limitation.**—The ablative is used to denote the limitation generally expressed in English by *as to, in respect of, in regard to*.

Older (i. e., greater in age).

Skilled in the law.

In affection a son.

Major natu.

Jure peritus.

Pietate filius.

(721.) **RULE XXVIII. Ablative of Separation.**—The ablative is used with verbs of *removing, freeing, depriving*, and the like.

Cæsar removed his camp from the spot.

The trees are stripped of leaves.

Cæsar castra loco movit.

Arbores foliis nudantur.

Rem. Many of these verbs also take the prepositions *a, ab, de, ex*.

(722.) **RULE XXIX. Ablative of Quality.**—The ablative is used (with an adjective of quality) to express that one thing is a quality or property of another.

Cæsar was a man of consummate talent.

Agesilaus was a man of low stature.

Cæsar summo fuit ingenio.

Agesilaus statura fuit humili.

Rem. The genitive is also thus used (696).

(723.) **RULE XXX. Ablative of Comparison.**—The ablative is used with the comparative degree (*quam* being omitted) to express the object with which another is compared.

Cicero was more eloquent than Hortensius.

Cicero fuit eloquentior Hortensio.

(724.) **RULE XXXI. Ablative of Measure.**—The ablative of measure is used,

- (a) With *comparatives* and *superlatives*, to express the measure of excess or defect.
- (b) To express the measure of time before or after any event.

Much greater.

Themistocles lived many years before Demosthenes.

Multo major.

Themistocles permultis annis ante fuit quam Demosthenes.

(725.) **RULE XXXII. Ablative of Time When.**—The ablative is used to express the point of time at which anything occurs.

On the sixth day.

Sexto die.

Rem. The time within which anything occurs is expressed by the ablative with or without *in* or *de*.

Within ten years.

Decem annis.

Within those days.

In his diebus.

(726.) **RULE XXXIII. Ablative of Place.**

- (a) The place *whence* is expressed by the ablative.

He departed from Corinth.

Corintho profectus est.

- (b) The place *where* is expressed by the ablative, if the noun be of the *third* declension or *plural* number.

Alexander died at Babylon.

Alexander Babylone mortuus est.

At Athens.

Athenis.

Rem. If the noun be of the 1st or 2d declension singular, the genitive is used.

At Rome. At Corinth.

Romæ. Corinthi.

(Domi follows this rule.)

(727.) The ablative is used with the following prepositions.
viz. :

Abaque, a, ab, abs, and de,

Coram, clam, cum, ex, and e,

Tenus, sine, pro, and præ.

Also with *in* and *sub* (implying *rest*, not *motion*), and *super*, when it means *upon*. *Subter* is sometimes, also, used with ablative.

(728.) **RULE XXXIV. Ablative with Compound Verbs.**—The ablative is used with some verbs compounded with *a* (*ab*), *de*, *e* (*ex*), and *super*.

To be absent from the city.

Urbe abesse.

Cæsar resolved to desist from battle.

Cæsar prælio supersedere statuit.

Rem. The preposition is sometimes repeated.

To depart from life (= to die). | *Exire de vita.*

[For the Ablative Absolute, see 750.]

(729.) Verbs followed by genitive, dative, or ablative, where we use no preposition, and should therefore be likely to put the accusative. (Those with asterisks take also an accusative of the *thing*, though some of them only when the accusative is a neuter pronoun.)*

GENITIVE.			
<i>obtain,</i>	potior (<i>abl.</i>).	<i>hurt,</i>	noceo.
<i>pity,</i>	{ misereor.	<i>indulge,</i>	*indulgeo.
<i>forget,</i>	{ miseresco.	<i>marry,</i>	nubo.
<i>remember,</i>	{ obliviscor (<i>acc.</i>).	<i>obey,</i>	{ pareo.
<i>recollect,</i>	{ memini (<i>acc.</i>).		{ obedio.
	{ recorder (<i>acc.</i>).	<i>pardon,</i>	{ obtempero.
	{ reminiscor (<i>acc.</i>).	<i>permit,</i>	*ignosco.
<i>require,</i>	{ egeo }	<i>persuade,</i>	*permitto.
<i>need,</i>	{ indigeo } (<i>abl.</i>).	<i>please,</i>	*persuadeo.
DATIVE.		<i>resist,</i>	placeo.
<i>abuse,</i>	{ maledico.	<i>oppose,</i>	{ resisto.
<i>revile,</i>	*suadeo.	<i>rival,</i>	{ repugno.
<i>advise,</i>	*respondeo.	<i>satisfy,</i>	æmulor (<i>acc.</i>).
<i>answer,</i>	credo.	<i>spare,</i>	satisfacio.
<i>believe,</i>	*impero.	<i>suit,</i>	parco.
<i>command,</i>	{ *mando.	<i>threaten,</i>	{ convenio.
<i>commission,</i>	*gratulator.		{ *minor.
<i>charge,</i>	displiceo.	<i>trust,</i>	{ *minitor.
<i>congratulate,</i>	*præcipio.		{ fido }
<i>displease,</i>	*invideo.		{ confido } (<i>abl.</i>).
<i>direct,</i>	faveo.	ABLATIVE.	
<i>envy,</i>	adulor (<i>acc.</i>).	<i>abuse,</i>	abutor.
<i>favour,</i>	*do.	<i>discharge,</i>	{ fungor.
<i>flatter,</i>	{ auxilior.	<i>perform,</i>	{ fruor.
<i>give,</i>	{ opitulator.	<i>enjoy,</i>	potior (<i>gen.</i>).
<i>help,</i>	{ subvenio.	<i>obtain,</i>	{ egeo }
<i>aid,</i>	{ succurro.	<i>require,</i>	{ indigeo } (<i>gen.</i>).
<i>assist,</i>	{ medeor.	<i>need,</i>	utor.
<i>succour</i>		<i>want,</i>	{ careo.
<i>heal,</i>		<i>use,</i>	
<i>cure,</i>		<i>want,</i>	
		<i>am without,</i>	

III. USE OF THE INDEFINITE VERB.

§ 9. Infinitive.

(730.) **RULE XXXV. Infinitive as Subject.**—The infinitive is used as the *subject* of a verb, and is then regarded as a *neuter noun*.

To love (= loving) is pleasant. | *Jucundum est amare.*

* Arnold.

(731.) **RULE XXXVI. Infinitive as Complementary Object.**
 —The infinitive is used (exactly as in English) to complete the imperfect ideas expressed by certain words.

<i>I wish to learn.</i>		Capio discere.
<i>Worthy to be loved.</i>		Dignus amari.

Rem. 1. The complementary infinitive occurs after verbs denoting to wish, to be able, to be accustomed, ought (debere), to hasten, &c.; after the adjectives dignus, indignus, audax, &c.

2. Observe that this construction, which occurs after all verbs in English, can only stand in Latin after those expressing imperfect ideas, as above stated. A purpose cannot be expressed in Latin, as in English, by the simple infinitive; e. g., he comes to learn = venit ut discat, not venit discere.

(732.) **Historical Infinitive.**—In animated narrative the infinitive is sometimes used for the indicative.

<i>The Romans hastened, made ready,</i>		Romani festinare, parare, &c. &c.
---	--	-----------------------------------

(This construction is quite common in Sallust.)

[For Accusative with Infinitive, see 751.]

§ 10. Participle.

(733.) **RULE XXXVII.** The participle agrees with its noun in gender, case, and number, and the active participle governs the same case as its verb.

<i>The honoured man.</i>		Vir laudatus.
<i>The blooming rose.</i>		Rosa florens.
<i>I saw him reading a book.</i>		Eum legentem librum vidi.

(734.) The participle future active is used to express a purpose (where in English we should use *to*, *in order to*, with the infinitive).

<i>Alexander goes to Jupiter Ammon,</i>		Alexander ad Jovem Ammonem
<i>in order to inquire concerning</i>		pergit, consulturus de origine
<i>his descent.</i>		sua.

(735.) The passive participle is often used to supply the place of a noun.

<i>After Tarentum taken (= after</i>		Post Tarentum captum.
<i>the taking of Tarentum).</i>		
<i>From the city built (= from the</i>		Ab urbe condita.
<i>building of the city).</i>		

[For Participle in Subordinate Sentences, see 749]

§ 11. *Gerund.*

(736.) RULE XXXVIII. As the *infinitive* is used as a noun in the nominative or accusative, so the *gerund* is used in the remaining cases, and governs the same case as its verb.

Nom.	<i>Writing is useful.</i>		Scribere est utile.
Gen.	The art of <i>writing</i> is useful.		Ars scribendi est utilis.
Dat.	Paper is useful <i>for writing</i> .		Charta scribendo est utilis.
Acc.	{ I learn <i>writing</i> .		Scribere disco.
	{ I learn <i>during writing</i> .		Inter scribendum disco.
Abl.	We learn <i>by writing</i> .		Scribendo discimus.

Rem. 1. With a preposition the gerund in the accusative must be used, *not* the infinitive: ad (inter, ob) scribendum, *not* ad (inter, ob) scribere.

2. The general rules for the use of cases of nouns (695-728) apply to the cases of the infinitive and gerund, as above given.

Special Remark. The gerund is *not* used in the *dative* or *accusative* with an active government; e. g., we can say scribendi epistolas, *of writing letters*, or scribendo epistolas, *by writing letters*, but *not* charta utilis est scribendo (*dat.*) epistolas, nor charta utilis est ad scribendum literas. In these last cases the *gerundive* must be used (738).

§ 12. *The Gerundive, or Verbal in dus, da, dum.*

(737.) RULE XXXIX. (a) The gerundive in the *nominative neuter* (dum) is used with the tenses of *esse*, to denote that an action *should* or *must* be done; and these may govern the case of the verb.

(One) *must write.* | Scribendum est.

(b) The person by whom the action *should* or *must* be done is put in the *dative*.

I <i>must write.</i>		Scribendum est mihi.
Caius <i>must write.</i>		Scribendum est Caio.
One <i>must use reason.</i>		Ratione utendum est.

(738.) RULE XL. (a) The gerundive is used with *esse*, in all cases and genders, as a verbal adjective, agreeing with the noun, to express *necessity* or *worthiness*.

I am to be loved. she is to be loved, &c.		Amandus sum; amanda est &c.
---	--	-----------------------------

(b) When the person is specified, it must be put in the *dative*.

I must love Tullia.

All things were to be done by Cæsar at one time.

Tullia mihi amanda est.

Cæsari omnia uno tempore erant agenda.

Rem. a or ab with ablative is sometimes used instead of the dative.

My cause must be managed by the consuls.

A consulibus mea causa suscipienda est.

(739.) **RULE XLI.** The gerundive is used (*to express continued action*) as a verbal adjective, in all genders and cases (but the nominative) *agreeing* with the noun, instead of the gerund governing the noun; *e. g.*,

Gen. Of writing a letter.

Scribendæ epistolæ, instead of *scribendi epistolam*.

Dat. To or for writing letters.

Scribendis epistolis, instead of *scribendo epistolas*.

Acc. To write a letter.

Ad scribendam epistolam, instead of *ad scribendum epistolam*.

Abl. By, &c., writing a letter.

Scribenda epistola, instead of *scribendo epistolam*.

Rem. As observed in (736), the gerundive *must* be used for the dative or accusative of the gerund when it has an active government. It *may* be used for it in any other case, unless the object of the gerund is a neuter adjective or pronoun; *e. g.*, *of learning the true* = *vera discendi*, not *verorum discendorum*; *of hearing this* = *hoc audiendi*, not *hujus audiendi*.

§ 13. *Supines.*

(740.) **RULE XLII.** (1.) The supine in *um* is used with verbs of motion, to express the *design* of the motion, and governs the same case as its verb.

I come to ask you.

| Venio te rogatum.

(2.) The supine in *u* is used,

(a) With *adjectives*, to show in *what respect* they are used; *e. g.*,

Pleasant as to taste.

| Dulce gustatu.

(b) With the nouns *fas*, *nefas*, *opus*, in the same sense *fas est dictu*.

PART II.

OF COMPOUND SENTENCES.

(741.) A compound sentence is one made up of two or more simple sentences. The sentences thus combined are either co-ordinate or subordinata

I. CO-ORDINATE SENTENCES.

§ 14. *Classes of Co-ordinate Sentences.*

(742.) Co-ordinate sentences are united together, but yet *independent* of each other: * co-ordination is either,

- (a) *Copulative*; e. g., His father has abandoned him, *and* his friends have deserted him, *and* the son remains.
- (b) *Disjunctive*; e. g., Either his father has abandoned, *or* his friends have deserted him.
- (c) *Adversative*; e. g., His father has abandoned him, *but* his friends have not.
- (d) *Causal*; e. g., His friends will abandon him, *for* his father has done so.
- (e) *Conclusive*; e. g., His father has abandoned him, *therefore* his friends will desert him.

II. SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

§ 15. *Classes of Subordinate Sentences.*

(743.) Subordinate sentences are so united to others (called *principal sentences*) as to be *dependent* upon them.

The messenger, <i>who was sent</i> , an-	Nuntius, qui missus est, nun-
nounced.	tiavit.

Here *the messenger announced* is the principal sentence; *who was sent*, the subordinate sentence. *

(744.) Subordinate sentences are of five classes :

- A. *Participial sentences.*
- B. *Accusative with infinitive.*
- C. *Conjunctive sentences*, i. e., such as are introduced by a conjunction or adverb of time.
- D. *Relative sentences*, i. e., such as are introduced by a relative word.
- E. *Interrogative sentences*, i. e., such as are introduced by an interrogative word.

We shall treat these in order, premising a few remarks upon the use of the moods and tenses, which must be thoroughly understood.

§ 16. *The Moods.*

(745.) The verb expresses affirmation. The moods of the verb are used to vary the character of the affirmation.

* It must be obvious that *all co-ordinate sentences* are, for grammatical purposes, *principal sentences*. Moreover, the doctrines and rules applied to *simple sentences* (Part I.) are applicable to all *principal sentences*: it is only in *subordinate sentences* that difficulty is likely to occur. The pupil should, therefore, obtain as accurate a knowledge as possible of the various kinds of subordinate sentences, and the different modes of affirmation which they express, as it is upon these that their syntax depends.

1. By the *indicative*, affirmation of a fact is expressed; e. g., *I write, I did not write.**
2. By the *subjunctive*, affirmation is expressed *doubtfully, contingently, or indefinitely*; e. g., *I may write, if I should write, perhaps some (may) think.*
3. By the *imperative*, affirmation is expressed as an *injunction or request*; e. g., *write.*

(746.) It must be obvious that in principal sentences the indicative mood chiefly occurs, and in subordinate sentences the subjunctive, as affirmations of fact are made more frequently in the former than in the latter. But,

- (a) The subjunctive is used (of course), even in principal sentences when the affirmation is doubtful, contingent, or indefinite (745, 2).
- (b) The indicative is used, even in subordinate sentences, when the affirmation is positive.

True friendships are everlasting, because nature cannot be changed. | *Veræ amicitiae sempiternæ sunt, quia natura mutari non potest.*

§ 17. The Tenses.

(a) DIVISION.

(747.) The tenses are either primary or historical (647, R. 3).

	Present.	Future.	Pres. Part.
(a) Primary,	<i>amat,</i> <i>he loves.</i>	<i>amabit,</i> <i>he will love.</i>	<i>amavit,</i> <i>he has loved.</i>
	Imperfect.	Pluperfect.	Perf. Aorist.
(b) Historical,	<i>amabat,</i> <i>he was loving.</i>	<i>amaverat,</i> <i>he had loved.</i>	<i>amavit,</i> <i>he loved.</i>

(b) SUCCESSION OF TENSES.

(748.) RULE XLIII. If there be a primary tense in the principal sentence, there must be a primary tense in the subordinate; if an historical tense in the principal, an historical in the subordinate.

Principal.	Subordinate.	Principal.	Subordinate.
<i>I know</i>	<i>what you are doing.</i>	<i>Scio,</i>	<i>quid agas.</i>
<i>I was knowing</i>	<i>what you were doing.</i>	<i>Sciebam,</i>	<i>quid ageres.</i>
<i>I have learned</i>	<i>what you are doing.</i>	<i>Cognovi,</i>	<i>quid agas.</i>
<i>I learned</i>	<i>what you were doing.</i>	<i>Cognovi,</i>	<i>quid ageres.</i>

(A.) § 18. Participial Sentences.

[The participle is used to abridge discourse, instead of a relative, adverb, or conjunction with a verb. Thus (1), *Tarquin, when he was expelled*

* Of course the *action* may be either positive or negative, without affecting the *affirmation*.

from Rome = Tarquin, expelled from Rome. (2) Cæsar, when the work was finished, departed = Cæsar, the work having been finished, departed

These are abridged subordinate sentences, (1) being called the *conjunctive participial construction*, and (2) the *ablative absolute*.]

(749.) *Conjunctive Participial Construction*.—The participle in a subordinate sentence which has for its subject the subject or object of the principal sentence, agrees with this last in gender, number, and case.

Aristides, when he was expelled from his country, fled to Lacedæmon.	Aristides, patria pulsus, Lacedæmonem fugit.
--	--

Observe, in this example, that Aristides is the subject of both the principal and the subordinate sentence, and pulsus agrees with Aristides in gender, number, and case. In English such sentences are generally expressed by an adverb or conjunction with a verb.

(750.) *RULE XLIV. Ablative Absolute*.—If the subordinate sentence contains a noun and participle independent of the subject of the leading sentence, both noun and participle are placed in the ablative. (This construction is called the *ablative absolute*.)

When Tarquin was reigning, Pythagoras came into Italy.	Pythagoras, Tarquinio regnante, in Italiam venit.
All things having been provided, they appoint a day.	Omnibus rebus comparatis, diem dicunt.

Rem. Nouns, adjectives, and pronouns are often used in the ablative absolute without a participle.

Under the guidance of Nature (= Nature being guide).	Natura duce.
In the consulship of Manlius.	Manlio consule.

(B.) § 19. *Accusative with Infinitive*.

(751.) *RULE XLV*. Many subordinate sentences, which in English are introduced by the conjunction *that* (especially after verbs of *thinking, saying, knowing, &c.*), are expressed in Latin by the *accusative with the infinitive*.

They said that they did not fear the enemy.	Dicebant non se hostem vereri.
He knows that Cicero is eloquent.	Scit Ciceronem esse eloquentem.

Rem. 1. Observe that the *subject* of the sentence thus subordinated is put in the accusative, and the *predicate* in the infinitive. If the predicate contain an adjective, it must agree with the subject.

perceive that the water is cold. | Sentio aquam frigidam esse.

2. The accusative with infinitive occurs chiefly,

(a) After verba sentiendi et dicendi (*thinking, feeling, perceiving, knowing, saying, announcing, willing, forbidding, &c.*).

(b) After such expressions as apparet (*it is evident*), constat (*it is known*), opus est, oportet, necesse est, justum est (*it is necessary, right, just, &c.*). In this case the accusative with infinitive becomes the *subject* of the entire sentence.

It is known to all that the Romans were very brave. | Constat inter omnes Romanos fuisse fortissimos.

☞ Oportet and necesse est may take the subjunctive, instead of the accusative with infinitive.

We ought (= it behooves us) to practice virtue. | Oportet nos virtuti studere; or Virtuti studeamus oportet.

(C.) § 20. *Conjunctive Sentences.*

Relation of Conjunctions to the Moods.

(752.) From what has been said (745, 746), it is obvious, that as the *moods* express the varieties of affirmation, and as the *conjunctions* are used to indicate different relations of thought (as *positive, conditional, causal, &c.*), there must be a close connexion between the use of the conjunctions and that of the moods. It must be borne in mind, however, that the *nature of the affirmation* (except, perhaps, in purely idiomatic expressions) decides both the mood and the conjunction that shall be used. It cannot properly be said, therefore, that the conjunctions govern the moods; but, for convenience' sake, we treat them together.

GENERAL RULE.

(753.) The subjunctive is used in all subordinate sentences in which affirmation is expressed as *dependent* upon some previous affirmation, either as *purpose, aim, consequence, condition, or imaginary comparison*.

SPECIAL RULES.

1. *Final Conjunctions, ut, ne, quin, quo, quominus.*

(754.) RULE XLVI. The subjunctive is used in sentence expressing a *purpose* or a *consequence*, introduced by the final conjunctions *ut, ne, quin, quo, quominus*.

1. Ut, ne, expressing purpose.

I did not write that in order to instruct you.	Ea non ut te insti uerem scripsi.
I beseech you not to do this.	Te obsecro ne hoc facias.

2. Ut, expressing consequence.

The soldiers went with such violence that the enemy betook themselves to flight.	Eo impetu milites ierunt, ut hostes se fugæ mandarent.
--	--

(3.) Quo is used to express a purpose, instead of ut, especially when a comparative enters into the sentence.

Cæsar erects forts, that he may the more easily keep off the Helvetians.	Cæsar castella communit, quo facilius Helvetios prohibere possit.
--	---

(4.) Quin is used in the sense of "but that" (as not, &c.) after negative sentences, and after non dubito, non dubium est, &c.

There is no one but thinks.	Nemo est quin putet.
It is not doubtful but that the soldiers will fight bravely.	Non dubium est quin milites fortiter pugnaturi sint.

(5.) Quominus is used (in preference to ne) after verbs of hindering, preventing, standing in the way of, &c. (It can generally be rendered in English by "of" or "from" with a participle.)

Nothing hinders him from doing this.	Nihil impedit quominus hoc faciat.
--------------------------------------	------------------------------------

2. Conditional Conjunctions, si, nisi, dum, dummodo, modo

(755.) RULE XLVII. Conditional conjunctions take the indicative if the condition is expressed as *real* or *certain*, the subjunctive where it is not.

If he has any money, he will give it (it is uncertain whether he has any).	Si pecuniam habeat, dabit.
--	----------------------------

Rem. 1. If the condition is represented as *impossible* or *unreal*, (1) the *imperfect* subjunctive must be used for present or future time, (2) the *pluperfect* subjunctive for past time.

(1) If he had any money, he would give it (but he has none).	Si pecuniam haberet daret.
(2) If he had had any money, he would have given it.	Si pecuniam habuisset, dedisset.

Rem. 2. As dum, dummodo, modo, in the sense of *provide, that*, can never express a *real*, existing condition, they *always* take the subjunctive.

3. *Concessive Conjunctions* (683, 5).

(756) The *concessive conjunctions* take the indicative when they introduce a definite statement of fact, but the subjunctive when something is expressed as possible, not actual. *Etsi*, *quamquam*, and *tametsi* are used principally in the *former* sense; in the *latter*, *etiamsi* more commonly, and *licet* and *quamvis** nearly always. Hence,

RULE XLVIII. *Licet* and *quamvis* (*although*) are always followed by the subjunctive; *etiamsi*, generally.

Though truth should obtain no defender.

Veritas licet nullum defensorem obtineat.

The wise man endures pain patiently, even though it be grievous.

Sapiens dolorem patienter tolerat quamvis acerbus sit.

Rem. The comparative conjunctions, when used concessively, *velut*, *quasi*, *acsi*, *tanquam*, &c. (meaning *as if*, *as though*), always take the subjunctive, for the reason given (756) for *licet* and *quamvis*.

Why do I use witnesses, as though the matter were doubtful?

Quid testibus utor, quasi res dubia sit?

4. *Temporal Conjunctions.*

(757.) *Temporal conjunctions* (*when*, *after that*, *as soon as*, *just as*, &c.) of course generally take the *indicative*.

After Caesar drew up the line of battle.

Postquam Cæsar aciem instruxit.

Every animal, as soon as it is born.

Omne animal, simulac ortum est.

SPECIAL REMARKS.

(A.) *Quum* has two uses: *temporal* and *causal*.

(a) *Temporal.*

1. As a *pure particle of time*, *quum* takes the indicative.
2. In *historical narrative* (especially where the principal clause has the indicative perfect) *quum* temporal is followed by the *subjunctive* imperfect or pluperfect.

When Cæsar had conquered Pompey, he crossed over into Italy.

Cæsar, quum Pompeium vicisset, in Italiam trajecit.

[In many such cases, the action introduced by *when* is in some sense the *cause* of the action in the principal sentence.]

* *Quamvis* is used by the later writers in the sense of *quamquam*, with the indicative.

- (b) *Quum* causal, expressing the relation of *cause* and *effect* (since because, although), obviously requires the *subjunctive*.

Since these things are so.

| *Quam cum ita sint.*

Hence,

RULE XLIX. *Quum* causal is always followed by the subjunctive; and *quum* temporal by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, when the aorist perfect indicative is used in the principal sentence.

(B.) *Antequam* and *priusquam* are used,

1. To express simple priority of one action to another, and here the indicative is obviously required.

All these things were done before | *Hæc omnia ante facta sunt*
Verres touched Italy. | *quam Verres Italiam attigit.*

2. To express a connexion between one action and another, and here the subjunctive is obviously required.

Before Cæsar attempted anything, | *Cæsar, priusquam quidquam*
he orders Divitiacus to be summoned. | *conaretur, Divitiacum ad se*
| *vocari jubet.*

3. To introduce a general or indefinite statement, requiring, of course, the subjunctive.

The tempest threatens before it | *Tempestas minatur, antequam*
rises. | *surgat.*

(C.) *Dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, in the sense of *until*, take the subjunctive when the affirmation is expressed as possible or future.

He was unwilling to leave the | *Dum Milo veniret, locum relin-*
spot until Milo came. | *quere noluit.*

[For interrogatives, see § 22.]

(D.) § 21. *Relative Sentences.*

(758.) In the compound sentence, "the messenger, *who was sent*, announced," the clause "the messenger announced" is the principal sentence; and the clause "*who was sent*" the relative sentence. The word "*messenger*" is the antecedent of the relative "*who*."

1. *Agreement.*

(759.) **RULE L.** The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case depends upon the construction of the relative sentence.

The bridge which was at Geneva | *Pontem, qui erat ad Genavam*
as orders to be cut down. | *jubet rescindi.*

This was a kind of fighting in | Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo Ger-
which the Germans had exer- | mani se exercuerant.
cised themselves

Rem. The verb in the relative sentence takes the *person* of the ante-
 cedent.

We who write.

| Nos qui scribimus.

2 The Moods in Relative Sentences.

(760.) (a) The *indicative* mood occurs in the relative sen-
 tence only when it states a fact distinctly, with reference to a
 particular subject.

The messenger who was sent.

| Nuntius qui missus est.

(b) But *qui* is used in Latin very commonly (1) to avoid the
 use of a conjunction, and (2) to introduce indefinite statements,
 or the words or opinions of another; and in such cases is al-
 ways followed by the subjunctive.

(761.) RULE LI. The subjunctive is used in relative senten-
 ces expressing the *purpose*, *result*, or *ground* of the principal
 sentence.

1. Purpose (*qui* = *ut* with demonstrative).

They sent ambassadors to sue for
 (= *who should sue for*) peace.

| Miserunt legatos, qui pacem pet-
 erent (= *ut* ii pacem peterent).

2. Result (*qui* = *ut* after *is*, *tam*, *talis*, *dignus*, *ita*, &c.).

I am not the man to do this (= I
 am not such who can do).

| Non is sum qui hoc faciam.

Pollio is worthy of our love (= *who*
 worthy, whom we may love).

| Dignus est Pollio, quam diliga-
 mus.

3. Ground or cause (*qui* = *cur* or *quod*).

You err, *who think* (= *because you*
think)—

| Erras qui censeas—

Hannibal did wrong in wintering
 (= *because he wintered*) at Ca-
 pua.

| Male fecit Hannibal qui Capua
 hiemavit.

(762.) RULE LII. The subjunctive is used in relative sen-
 tences containing *indefinite statements*, especially after the
 words *there are*, *there can be found*, *there is no one*, &c.

There are those who say.

| Sunt qui dicant.

I have nothing *whereof* to accuse
 (= *no reason to blame*) old age.

| Nihil habeo quod incusam se-
 nectutem.

Rem. When the sentence introduced by the relative expresses the

sentiments of another (rather than of the writer), the subjunctive is used.

<i>The Helvetians determined to get together those things which (they thought) belonged to marching (were necessary for setting out).</i>	<i>Helvetii constituerunt ea quæ ad proficiscendum pertinerent comparare.</i>
---	---

§ 22. Interrogative Sentences.

1. Questions.

(763.) Questions are often expressed in English without any interrogative word; e. g., *Is Caius writing?* but in the Latin, almost invariably, an interrogative word is used. These are either (a) interrogative particles, (b) interrogative pronouns, or (c) interrogative adverbs or conjunctions.

(a) *Interrogative Particles*: ne, nonne, num, utrum, an.

(1.) Ne simply asks for information.

<i>Is Caius writing?</i>	<i>Scribitne Caius?</i>
--------------------------	-------------------------

(2.) Nonne expects the answer YES.

<i>Do you not think the wise man happy?</i>	<i>Nonne putas sapientem beatum esse?</i>
---	---

(3.) Num expects the answer NO.

<i>Do you think the fool happy?</i>	<i>Num putas stultum esse beatum?</i>
-------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

(4.) Utrum is used in *double* questions, with an (*whether—or*).

(Whether) is that your fault or ours?	<i>Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est?</i>
---------------------------------------	---

(b) *Interrogative Pronouns*: quis, qui, qualis, quantus, ec-quis, &c.

<i>Who taught Epaminondas music? &c.</i>	<i>Quis Epaminondam musicam docuit?</i>
--	---

(c) *Interrogative Adverbs or Conjunctions*: quare, cur, quando, ubi, quomodo, &c.

(764.) Questions are either *direct* or *indirect*: direct, when they are not dependent on any word or sentence going before; e. g., *Is Caius writing?* Indirect, when they are so dependent; e. g., *Tell me if Caius is writing.*

2. Use of the Moods in Questions.

(a) Direct.

(765.) In *direct* questions the *indicative* is used when the question is put positively, and the *subjunctive* when it is put doubtfully; e. g.,

(Positive.) <i>What are you doing?</i>	<i>Quid agis? (Indic.)</i>
--	----------------------------

(Doubtful) <i>What can we do?</i>	<i>Quid agamus?</i>
-----------------------------------	---------------------

(b) *Indirect.*

(766.) RULE LIII. In *indirect* questions the *subjunctive* is always used.

I do not know <i>what</i> book you are reading.	Nescio quem librum legas.
---	---------------------------

Tell me <i>what</i> you are doing.	Dic, quid agas.
------------------------------------	-----------------

§ 23. *Oratio Obliqua.*1. *Nature of Oratio Obliqua.*

(767.) When any one relates the words or opinions of another, he may do it in two ways :

(a) He may represent him as speaking in the *first person*, and give his words precisely as they were uttered; *e. g.*, Ariovistus said, "*I have crossed the Rhine*"—Ariovistus dixit, Rhenum transii. This is called *oratio recta*, *direct discourse*.

(b) He may state the substance of what the speaker said in narrative form; *e. g.*, Ariovistus said *that he had crossed the Rhine*—Ariovistus dixit se Rhenum transisse. This is called *oratio obliqua*, *indirect discourse*.

2. *The Moods in the Oratio Obliqua.*

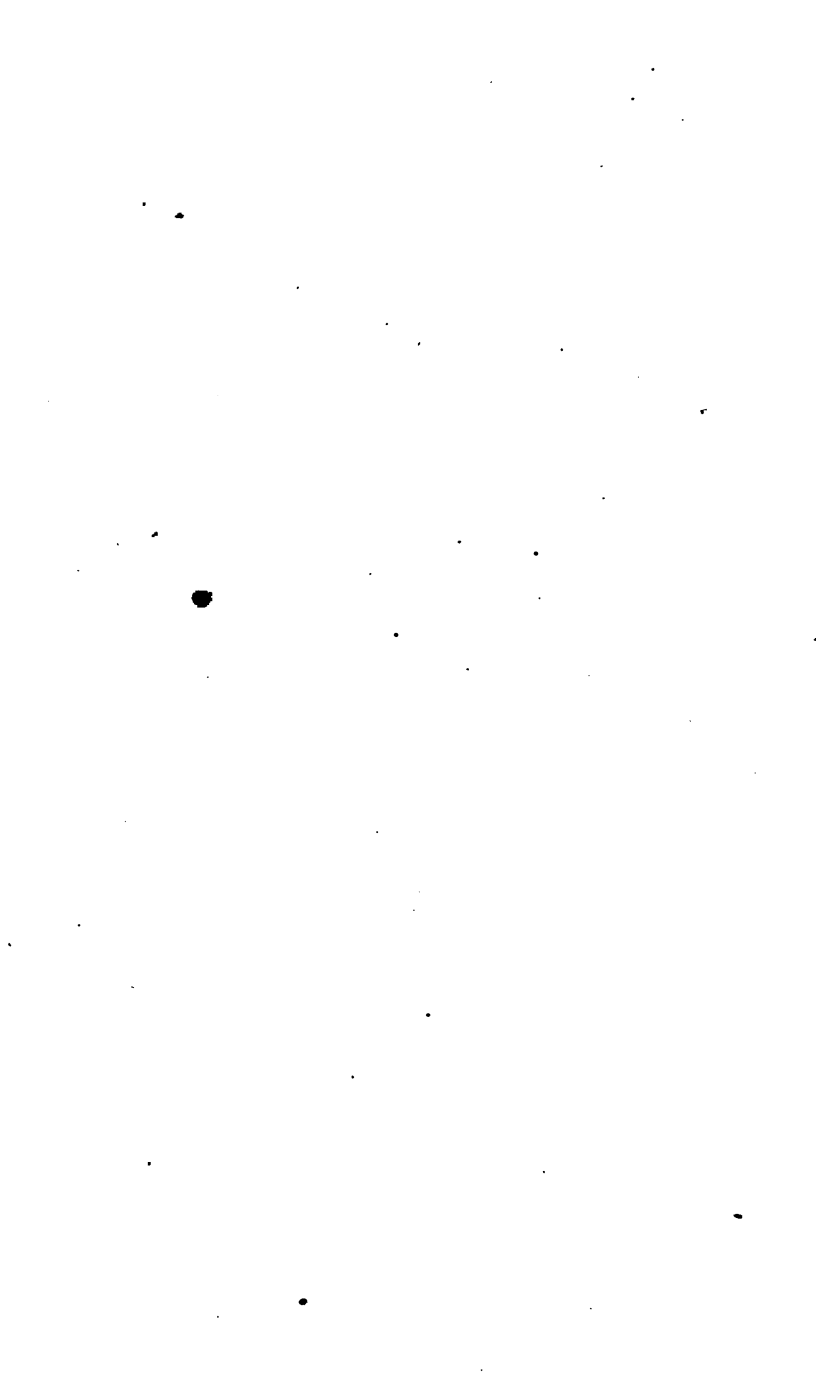
(768.) The sentences introduced in the *oratio obliqua* are either *principal* or *subordinate*; *e. g.*, Ariovistus said that he would not wage war on the Æduans if they paid the tribute yearly. Here the sentence *that he would not wage war upon the Æduans* is a principal sentence, and if *they paid the tribute yearly* is a subordinate sentence.

(769.) RULE LIV. (a) *Principal sentences* in the *oratio obliqua* are expressed by the accusative with the infinitive; *e. g.*, Ariovistus dixit, se Æduis bellum non esse illaturum.

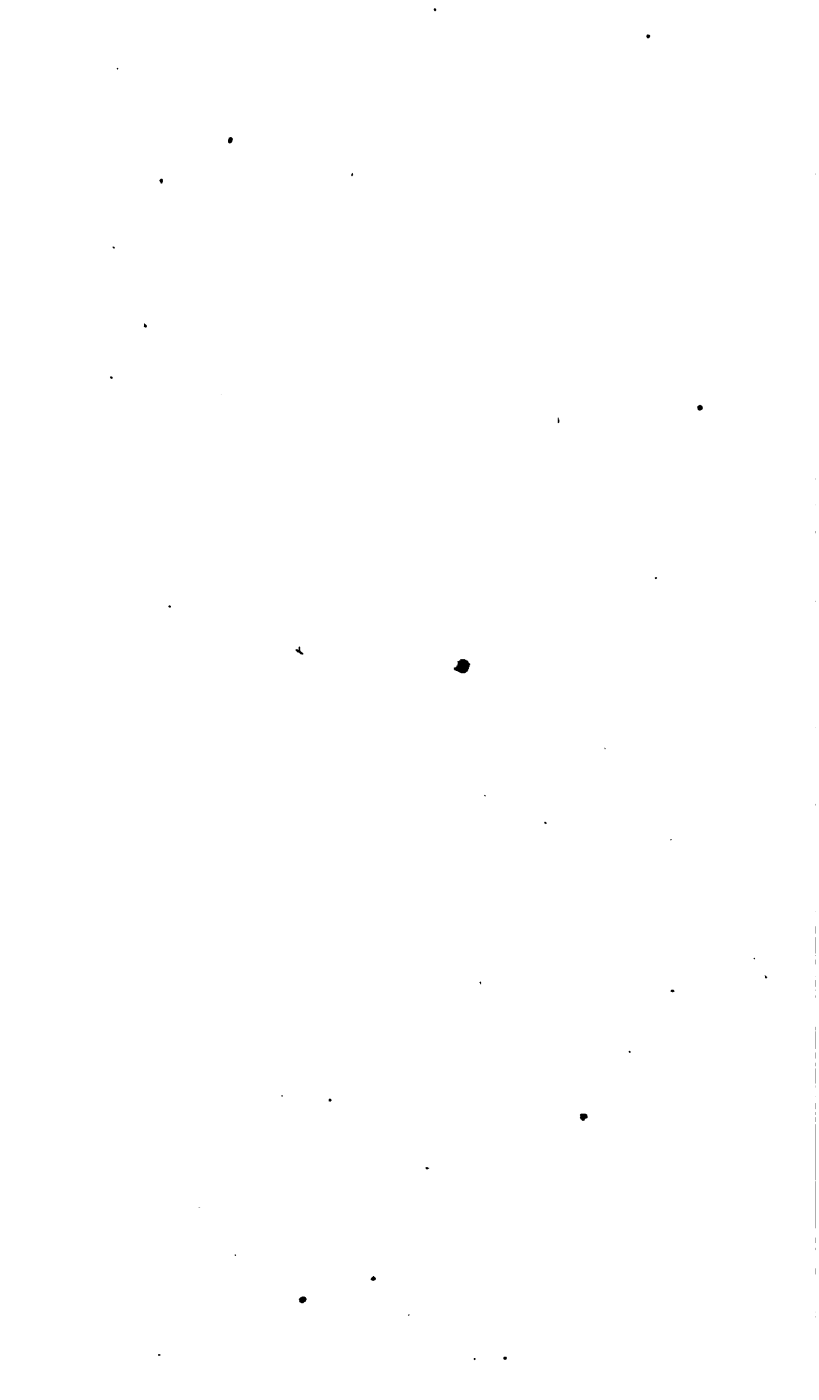
Rem. If the principal sentence contains a *command* or *wish*, it is expressed by the *subjunctive*; *e. g.*,

The leader said <i>that the troops</i> should consult their own safety.	Dux dixit, milites suæ salutis consulere.
---	---

(b) *Subordinate sentences* in *oratio obliqua* always take the *subjunctive*; *e. g.*, Ariovistus dixit, se Æduis bellum non esse illaturum, si stipendium quotannis penderent (*if they paid the tribute yearly*).



APPENDICES.



APPENDIX I.

OF PROSODY.

§ 1. Quantity.

[The rules of quantity in Lesson XLII. should be reviewed, and the following additional rules learned.]

1. Penults.

(770.) DISSYLLABIC SUPINES lengthen the penult; *e. g.*, *visum*.

Rem. The following are short, viz.:

*Dātum, rātum; sātum, stātum, itam,
Citum, litum, sītum, rītum, qūtum.*

(771.) REDUPLICATED PERFECTS shorten both penult and antepenult.
e. g., *cēcīdi, dīdici*.

Rem. Penult is long in *cecidī* (*cædēre*) and *pēpēdi* (*pēdēre*).

(772.) In ADJECTIVE PENULTS observe the following:

1. *Short Penults*: *-acus, -icus, -idus, -imus*; *e. g.*, *Ægyptiācus, modicus, cupidus, legitimus*.

Exceptions.—*Merācus, opācus, amicus, apricus, anticus, posticus, mendicus, umbilicus, fidus, infidus, bimus, trimus* (of *two, three years, &c.*), *matrimus, opimus, patrimus, imus, primus*.

2. *Long Penults*: *-alis, -anus, -ānus, -ātus*, with all before *-rus, -vus, -sus*; *e. g.*, *dotālis, montānus, percrādus, astūtus, avārus, sin-cerus, delirus, decōrus, octāvus, æstivus, famōsus*.

Exc.—*Infēri, postēri, barbārus, opipārus*.

3. *Penults sometimes long, sometimes short*: *-ilis, -inus*.

(a) *-ilis*, from *verbs*, is short; from *nouns*, long; *e. g.*, *facilis* (*short*) *civilis* (*long*). *Exilis, subtilis*, and the names of months (*Aprilis &c.*), are long.

(b) *-inus*, from *nouns* denoting *time* or *material*, is short; from other words, long; *e. g.*, *crastinus, elephantinus* (*short*); *caninus, Latinus* (*long*).

2. Compound Words.

(773.) Compound words generally retain the quantity of the simple words; *e. g.* *per+lōgo = perlōgo; per+lōgi = perlōgi*

Rem. 1. A change of vowels does not affect the rule; e+lēgo=elīgo.

2. Dejēro, pejēro (jāro); maledīcus, &c. (dīco), cognītum, agnītum (nōtum), are short, though the simple words are long.

(774.) a, ē, dē, dī, prē, sē, in composition are long, but rē is short.

Exc.—Dīrimo, disertus, rēfert. Pro is short in Greek words, and in the compounds of cello, fanum, fari, fateor, festus, fugio, fundo, nepos, neptis, torvus; also in prōficiscor. In prōpago, prōpino, it is doubtful.*

(775.) If the first part of a compound word end in a, it is generally long; if in e, i, or u, generally short; e.g., trāduco, trādo (contracted from trans); trēcenti, agrīcola, quadrāpes.

§ 2. *Rhythm, Arsis, Thesis, Verse, Feet.*

(776.) (a) By *Rhythm* we mean a regular alternation of elevations (stress) and depressions of the voice. In poetry this alternation follows certain fixed laws.

(b) The effort of voice by which stress is laid upon one syllable is called *Ictus*, or rhythmical accent. A syllable so raised by the ictus stands in the *Arsis*. The syllable or syllables on which the voice rests or sinks are said to be in the *Thesis*.

(c) A *Foot* is formed by the union of arsis and thesis. A combination of feet forms a *Verse*.

Thus, in the line vīsērē mōntēs, the ictus falls on the syllables marked with the accent; vīs and mōn, therefore, are in the arsis, sērē and tēs in the thesis. The union of arsis and thesis in vīsērē forms a foot; so also in mōntēs. The combination of these two feet forms the verse

Vīsērē mōntēs.

(d) A *Dactyl* is a foot composed of one long syllable (arsis) and two short syllables (thesis); e.g., vīsērē: a *Spondee* of two long (arsis and thesis); e.g., mōntēs.

§ 3. *Scanning.*

(777.) *SCANNING* is the measuring of a verse into the feet which compose it. Observe the following points in scanning:

1. *Synalæpha* cuts off a vowel at the end of a word when the next word begins with a vowel or h; e.g., instead of regina ad. we read regin' ad; instead of atque hinc, atqu' hinc.
2. *Ecthipsis* cuts off m with the vowel before it at the end of a word.

* The following lines contain the exceptions:

At rape quæ fundo, fugio, neptisque, neposque,
Et cello, fari, fateor, fanumque, festumque;
Atque procus, proficiscor, cumque propleta, profecto

when the next begins with a vowel; e. g., instead of *ignōtum est*, we read *ignōt' est*.

3. The last syllable of a word ending with a consonant is always long if the next word begins with a consonant; e. g., *manibūs tremor*; here *būs* (naturally short) is made long.
4. *Synæresis* contracts two syllables into one; e. g., *aurēā* into *aurēā* (pronounced *aurya*).
5. *Dieresis* divides one syllable into two; e. g., *pictæ*, *pictal*.

§ 4. Hexameter Verse.

(778.) (a) **HEXAMETER** verse is so called because it has *six measures*, of a foot each. The first *four* feet may be either dactyls or spondees; the *fifth* is regularly a dactyl, the *sixth* a spondee.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
Sēd fūgīt	Intērē-	ā fūgīt	irrēpā-	rābīlē	tēmpūs.
Infān-	dūm Rē-	gīnā jū-	bēs rēnō-	vārē dō-	lōrēm.

Rem. 1. Sometimes a spondee is found in the 5th place, especially when anything grave or solemn is expressed. The line is then called *spondaic*.

2. The final syllable of a verse is always reckoned *long*; e. g., *rem*, in *dolorem*.

(b) *Cæsura* is the separation, by the end of a word, of syllables entering into a foot. If the feet of a verse be marked off like bars in music, whenever a bar falls in the middle of a word there is a *cæsura*; e. g., the following hexameter has *five cæsuras*:

Illē la- | tūs nīvē- | ām mōl- | lī ful- | tūs, hŷā- | cīnthō.

(c) The *cæsural pause* in hexameter verse is a pause or rest of the voice on a *cæsural* syllable, designed to give harmony to the entire verse.

- (1.) The most approved *cæsural* pause (*the heroic*) falls on the *arsis* of the *third foot*, as in the following examples:

Sēd fūgīt | Intērē- | a fūgīt | irrēpā | rābīlē | tēmpūs.
 Illē lā- | tūs nīvē | ām mōl- | lī ful | tūs hŷā- | cīntho.

- (2.) Next in excellence is the *cæsural* pause in the *thesis* of the *third foot*, or in the *arsis* of the *fourth*. Occurring in other places, it mars the harmony of the verse.

APPENDIX II.

(779.)

GREEK NOUNS.

	1st Decl.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ænē-as, } \alpha, \alpha, \text{ am (an), } \bar{\alpha} \bar{\alpha} \\ \text{Anchis-es, } \alpha, \alpha, \text{ ēn, } \bar{\epsilon}, \bar{\epsilon}. \text{ Voc. sometimes } \bar{\alpha} \text{ and } \bar{\delta} \\ \text{Pēnēlōp-ē, } \bar{\epsilon}\alpha, \alpha, \text{ ēn, } \bar{\epsilon}, \bar{\epsilon}. \end{array} \right.$
	2d Decl.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Del-ōs, } \iota, \omicron, \text{ um, or } \bar{\omicron}\bar{n}, \epsilon, \omicron. \\ \text{Orph-eūs, } \epsilon\iota, \epsilon\omicron, \text{ eum, or } \bar{\epsilon}\bar{\alpha}, \bar{\epsilon}\bar{\upsilon} \epsilon\omicron. \\ \text{(or, N. eūs, G. eos, D. } \bar{\epsilon}\iota \text{ (ēi), Acc. } \bar{\epsilon}\bar{\alpha} \text{ poetical)} \\ \text{Ath-ōs, } \bar{\omicron}, \bar{\omicron}, \text{ ōn, or } \bar{\omicron}, \bar{\omicron}\alpha, \bar{\omicron}. \text{ (In Greek, } \omega\varsigma.) \\ \text{Poēs-is, } \iota\varsigma, \left. \begin{array}{l} \} \text{ i, im, } \} \text{ i\varsigma, i. } \mid \text{ es, eōn (ibus not found)} \\ \text{(eos,)} \} \text{ (in,)} \end{array} \right\} \\ \text{Nerē-is,} \\ \text{G. Nerēid-is, } \left. \begin{array}{l} \} \text{ i, em, } \} \text{ (Nerēi), } \bar{\epsilon}. \mid \text{ es, um, ibus, es. } \} \\ \text{(ōs,)} \} \text{ (ā,)} \end{array} \right\} \text{ (āa,)} \\ \text{Pericl-ēs, } \iota\varsigma, \left. \begin{array}{l} \} \text{ i, em, } \} \text{ es, } \} \epsilon. \\ \text{i, } \} \text{ ea, } \} \text{ e, } \} \end{array} \right\} \\ \text{Did-ō, } \bar{\upsilon}\alpha, \bar{\omicron}, \bar{\omicron}. \bar{\omicron}. \mid \text{ (also, } \bar{\omicron}\bar{n}\iota\varsigma, \&c.) \end{array} \right.$

Obs. Neuters in *a*, gen. *ātis*, have dat. plur. in *ātis*; thus: *poēma*, dat. plur. *poēmātis*, not *poēmatibus*.

(780.)

EXAMPLES OF PATRONYMICS

(OR NAMES FROM A FATHER OR ANCESTOR).

	<i>Ænēas,</i>	<i>Anchises,</i>	<i>Tyndārus,</i>	<i>Theseus,</i>	<i>Atlas (antis)</i>
Masc.	<i>Æneādes,</i>	<i>Anchisiādes,</i>	<i>Tyndarīdes,</i>	<i>Thesides,*</i>	<i>Atlantīdes,</i> <i>Atlantiādes.</i>
Fem.	<i>(Æneis,)</i>	<i>Anchisias,</i>	<i>Tyndāris,</i>	<i>Thesīs,</i>	<i>Atlantis,</i> <i>Atlantias</i>

(781.)

EXAMPLES OF NAMES

(DERIVED FROM ONE'S TOWN OR NATIVE COUNTRY).

Masc.	<i>Persa,</i>	<i>Cres,</i>	<i>Tros,</i>	<i>Thrax,</i>	<i>Laco (Lacon),</i>	<i>Phoenix.</i>
Fem.	<i>Persis,</i>	<i>Cressa,</i>	<i>Troas,</i>	<i>Threissa,</i>	<i>Lacæna,</i>	<i>Phænissa</i>
		<i>Cretis,</i>		<i>Thressa.</i>		
Romānus	<i>Clusinus</i>	<i>Atheniensis</i>	<i>Abderitēs (fem.,</i>	<i>Abderitēs)</i>		
(Roman).	<i>(of Clusium)</i>	<i>(an Athenian).</i>	<i>(of Abdera).</i>			
	<i>Milesius</i>		<i>Arpinas</i>			
	<i>(of Miletus).</i>		<i>(of Arpinum).</i>			

* For *Thesīdes*. Hence *ides* comes from nom. in *eus*.


APPENDIX III.

(782.)

THE CALENDAR.

(1.) THE Roman months had the same number of days as ours, but were differently divided.

1. The *Kalends* were the 1st day of the month.
2. The *Nones* " 5th or 7th day of the month.
3. The *Ides* " 13th or 15th day of the month.

 We make in *March, July, October, May,*
The *Nones* the *seventh*, the *Ides* the *fifteenth* day.

In all the other months the 5th and 13th were used.

(2.) The names of the months are used as adjectives agreeing with *Kalendæ, Nonæ, and Idus.*

<i>The 1st of January.</i>	<i>Kalendis Januariis.</i>
<i>The 5th of June.</i>	<i>Nonis Junii.</i>
<i>The 13th of September.</i>	<i>Idibus Septembribus.</i>

(3.) (a) Instead of beginning at the 1st of the month and numbering the days regularly 2d, 3d, &c., as we do, the Romans counted them backward from the *Kalends, Nones, and Ides.* Thus, the 2d of January was called *the 4th day before the Nones of January*, *quarto (die ante) Nonas Januarias*; the 3d, *tertio Nonas*; the 4th, *pridie Nonas*; the 5th, *Nonis.*

(b) From the above cases it will be seen that the day with which the reckoning commences is included (except *pridie*), i. e., the 2d day before the *Nones* is *tertio Nonas*; the 3d day before, *quarto Nonas*, &c.

<i>The 13th of October.</i>	<i>Tertio (die ante) Idus Octobres.</i>
<i>The 3d of June.</i>	<i>Tertio (die ante) Nonas Junias.</i>

(c) Special care must be taken, in designating any day between the *Ides* of one month and the *Kalends* of another, to ensure correctness. Thus, *III. (die ante) Kalend. Januar.* will be December 30; but *III. Kal. Maias* = 29th April, inasmuch as December has 31 days and April but 30. So *III. Kal. Martias* = 27th February.

(4.) The following table, exhibiting the correspondence between the Roman calendar and ours, can now be readily understood :

The Days of our Months.	March, May, July, and October (have 31 days).	January, August, and December (have also 31 days).	April, June, September, and November (have 30 days).	February (has 28, and in Leap-years 29 days).
1.	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>
2.	VI. } ante	IV. } ante	IV. } ante	IV. } ante
3.	V. } ante	III. } Nonas.	III. } Nonas.	III. } Nonas.
4.	IV. } Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5.	III. } Nonas.	Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.
6.	Pridie Nonas.	VIII. }	VIII. }	VIII. }
7.	Nonis.	VII. }	VII. }	VII. }
8.	VIII. }	VI. } ante	VI. } ante	VI. } ante
9.	VII. }	V. } Idus.	V. } Idus.	V. } Idus.
10.	VI. } ante	IV. }	IV. }	IV. }
11.	V. } Idus.	III. }	III. }	III. }
12.	IV. }	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13.	III. }	Idibus.	Idibus.	Idibus.
14.	Pridie Idus.	XIX. }	XVIII. }	XVI. }
15.	Idibus.	XVIII. }	XVII. }	XV. }
16.	XVII. }	XVII. }	XVI. }	XIV. }
17.	XVI. }	XVI. }	XV. }	XIII. }
18.	XV. }	XV. }	XIV. }	XII. }
19.	XIV. }	XIV. }	XIII. }	XI. }
20.	XIII. }	XIII. }	XII. }	X. }
21.	XII. }	XII. }	XI. }	IX. }
22.	XI. }	XI. }	X. }	VIII. }
23.	X. }	X. }	IX. }	VII. }
24.	IX. }	IX. }	VIII. }	VI. }
25.	VIII. }	VIII. }	VII. }	V. }
26.	VII. }	VII. }	VI. }	IV. }
27.	VI. }	VI. }	V. }	III. }
28.	V. }	V. }	IV. }	Prid. Kalendas
29.	IV. }	IV. }	III. }	Martias.
30.	III. }	III. }	Prid. Kalendas	
31.	Prid. Kalendas (of the following month).	Prid. Kalendas (of the following month).	(of the following month).	

(5.) The 5th day before the Kalends of April (for instance) may be expressed in three ways :

- Die quinto ante Kalendas Apriles.
- Quinto Kalendas Apriles.
- Ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles or abbreviated, a. d. V. Kal. Apr.

APPENDIX IV.

ABBREVIATIONS.

(743.) THE following abbreviations of words occur in Latin authors.

(a)

NAMES.

A. Aulus.	M'. Manius.	Sept. Septimius.
Ap. Appius.	M. Marcus.	Serv. Servius.
C. Caius.	Mam. Mamercus.	Sex. Sextus.
Cl. Claudius.	M. T. C. Marcus Tulli-	Sp. Spurius.
Cn. Cnæus.	us Cicero.	T. Titus.
D. Decimus.	N. Numerius.	Ti. or } Tiberius.
D. Decius.	P. Publius.	Tib. }
L. Lucius.	Q. Quintus.	Tull. Tullius.

(b)

PUBLIC EXPRESSIONS.

Æd. Ædilia.	Id. Idus.	Pr. Prætor.
Aug. Augustus.	Imp. Imperator.	Præf. Præfectus.
Cal. or } Kalendæ.	Impp. Imperatores.	Pont. Max. Pontifex
Kal. }	Non. Nonæ.	Maximus.
Cos. Consul.	O. M. Optimus Maxi-	Resp. Respublica.
Coss. Consules.	mus.	S. Senatus.
D. Divus.	P. C. Patres Con-	S. C. Senatus consul-
Des. Designatus.	scripti.	tum.
Eq. Rom. Eques Ro-	Pl. Plebis.	S. P. Q. R. Senatus po-
manus.	Pop. Populus.	pulusque Rom
F. Filius.	P. R. Populus Rom.	Tr. Tribunus.

(c)

OTHER ABBREVIATIONS.

A. Anno.	S. Salutem.
A. C. Anno corrente.	S. P. D. Salutem dicit plurimam.
A. pr. Anno præterito.	c. caput.
A. M. Anno mundi.	cf. confer.
A. Chr. Anno Christi.	e. g. exempli gratia.
A. D. Anno Domini.	i. e. id est.
A. U. C. Anno urbis conditæ.	l. c. loco citato
D. D. Dono dedit.	pag. m. pagina mea.
D. D. D. Dono dedit dicavit.	q. d. quasi dicat.
D. D. C. q. Dedit dicavit consecra-	q. l. quantum libet.
vitque.	q. s. quantum sufficit.
D. M. Diis Manibus.	scil. scilicet.
L. S. Loco sigilli.	seq. sequens.
M. S. Manuscriptus.	v. versus.
P. S. Postscriptum.	v. g. verbi gratia.
Q. D. B. V. Quod Deus bene vertat.	viz. videlicet.
S. V. B. E. E. V. Si vales bene est	vid. vide.
ego valeo.	



WORD-BUILDING

AND

READING LESSONS.

*For a while no like or of
again*

WORD-BUILDING.

(784.) 1. THE generic meaning of a word is contained in its *root*; the *specific* meaning is generally given by its *ending*. Thus, in all the words *am-o* (*I love*), *am-pr* (*love*), *am-ator* (*a lover*), *am-icus* (*friend*), we find the same generic idea (*love*) expressed by the root *am*; while the specific meanings, *I love* (verb), *love* (noun), *lover* (noun), *friend* (adjective noun), are given by the endings *o*, *or*, *ator*, *icus*, respectively.

2. The meanings of words are farther modified by certain *prefixes*; e. g., *ire* (*to go*), *amb-iro* (*to go round*).

3. Again, words may be compounded with each other, and form new words; e. g., with *agr-* (the stem of *ager*, *field*), and *col-* (the stem of *colère*, *to till*), we form *agricol-a*, *a tiller of the field* = *a farmer*.

Thus there are three modes of forming words: by *suffixes*, *prefixes*, and *composition*. We treat them in order.

(1.) WORD-BUILDING BY SUFFIXES.

(A.) Nouns.

(785.) First Declension.

1. The ending *-a*, suffixed to verb-stems, expresses an *agent* or *doer*.

scrib-a,	writer,	from	scrib-ère,	to write.
perfūg-a,	deserter,	from	perfūg-ère,	to desert.

- 2 -ia, -itia, with adjective-stems, a *disposition* or *condition*.

ignav-ia,	cowardice,	from	ignav-us,	cowardly.
prudent-ia,	prudence,	from	pruden(t)-a,	prudent.
trist-itia,	sadness;	from	trist-is,	sad.
victor-ia,	victory,	from	vict-or,	victorious

3. -dra, with supine-stems, the *action* or *condition* of the verb.

pict-ura,	painting;	pingere (pict-),	to paint.
præfect-ura,	prefectship;	præficere (præfect-),	to place over.

(786.) Second Declension.

1. -us, -ius, with verb-stems, form nouns denoting the *agent* or the *action* of the verb.

serv-us,	slave;	serv-ire,	to serve.
fluv-ius,	river;	flu(v)-ère,	to flow.
coqu-us,	cook;	coqu-ère,	to cook.
lud-us,	sport,	lud-ère,	to play.

2. -am, -ium, with verb-stems, gives a *result* of the action of the verb.

jug-um,	yoke,	jug-ëre,	to join.
vad-um,	ford;	vad-ëre,	to go.
incend-ium,	fire;	incend-ëre,	to burn.

3. -ium, with noun-stems, (a) an *office*, or (b) an *assemblage* of men exercising an office or function.

(a) sacerdot-ium,	office of sacerdos.
minister-ium,	office of minister.
(b) colleg-ium,	assemblage of collegæ.
conviv-ium,	assemblage of convivæ.

4. -mentum, with verb-stems, the *means* of doing what the verb expresses.

teg-u-mentum,	covering;	teg-ëre,	to cover.
adju-mentum,	aid;	adjuv-äre,	to assist.

5. -ulum, -bulum, -culum, with verb-stems, *means* or *instrument*.

jac-ulum,	javelin;	jac-ëre,	to hurl.
venab-ulum,	hunting-spear;	ven-äri,	to hunt.
veh-i-culum,	carriage;	veh-ëre,	to carry.

Rem. culum also sometimes—the *place where*; e. g., cœna-culum, cubi-culum.

6. -crum, -strum, with verb-stems, *place* or *thing prepared* for any purpose.

lava-crum,	bath;	lav-äre,	to wash
claus-trum,	lock;	claud-ëre,	to shut.

(787.) *Diminutives of First and Second Declensions.*

lus, -la, -lum, with noun-stems, form diminutive nouns, of masculine, feminine, and neuter genders.

- (a) Connecting vowels *i, o, u*, the latter sometimes with *e*.

fili-o-lus, fili-o-la, *little son, daughter*—(filius); frater-culus (frater); opus-culum (opus).

- (b) Sometimes *l* is doubled: lap-illus (lapis); codic-illa (codex, codicis); sac-ellum (sacrum).

(788.) *Third Declension.*

1. -tās, -tūs (with or without *i* as connecting vowel), form, with adjective-stems, abstract nouns denoting *quality*, &c.

bon-i-tas,	goodness;	bon-us,	good.
hones-tas,	honour;	honest-us,	honourable
fort-i-tudo,	bravery;	fort-is,	brave.

2. (a) -or, with verb-stems, the *action* or *condition* of the verb.

pav-or,	fear;	pav-ēre,	to fear.
am-or,	love;	am-āre,	to love.

- (b) -or, with supine-stems, the *agent* or *doer*.

doct-or,	teacher;	doc-ēre (doct-),	to teach.
monit-or,	adviser;	mon-ēre (monit-),	to advise.

3. -io, with supine-stems, the *action* of the verb, especially the doing of it.

act-io,	action;	ag-ēre (act-),	to act, do.
caut-io,	caution;	cav-ēre (caut-),	to take care.

4. -tudo, with adjective-stems, the *abstract quality*.

fort-i-tudo,	bravery;	fort-is,	brave.
--------------	----------	----------	--------

(789.) *Fourth Declension.*

Most nouns of the 4th declension are abstracts formed from verb-stems or supine-stems.

us-us,	use;	utī (us-),	to use
mōt-ta	motion,	mōv-ēre (mōt-),	to move.

(790.) *Fifth Declension.*

1. -es, -ies, -ities, with verb or adjective-stems, a *property*, *operation*, *quality*, &c.

fid-es (fid-ēre); ser-ies (ser-ēre); fac-ies (fac-ēre), dur-ities (dur-us); mund-ities (mund-us).

2. [Those in -ities coexist with others in -itia (784, 2); e. g. munditia, duritia, &c.]

(B.) *Adjectives.*

(791.) *First Class, us, a, um.*

1. -us, *quality* in general (coexisting with verb and noun stems).

alb-us,	white;	alb-āre,	alb-umen.
curv-us,	curved;	curv-āre,	curv-amen.
dur-us,	hard;	dur-āre,	dur-ities.
viv-us,	alive;	viv-ēre,	vit-a.

2. -idus and uus, chiefly with stems of intransitive verbs, the *quality* of the verb, without addition.

turg-idus,	swelling;	turg-ēre,	to swell.
cal-idus,	warm;	cal-ēre,	to be warm.
noc-uus,	hurtful;	noc-ēre,	to hurt.

3. -bundus, with verb-stems, force of present participle, intensifies
 hesita-bundus, *full of hesitation*; hesit-āre, *to hesitate*
 lacryma-bundus, *weeping profusely*; lacrym-āre, *to weep*

4. -cundus, same as bundus, generally with the additional idea of *permanency*.

ira-cundus, *passionate*; ira-sc-i, *to be angry*
vere-cundus, *bashful*; verē-ri, *to fear*.

5. -ius, with noun-stems, *belonging or relating to a thing*.

class-icus, *belonging to a fleet*; class-is, *fleet*.
civ-icus, *civic*; civ-is, *citizen*.

6. -eus, -aceus, -icius, with noun-stems, *material or origin*.

ferr-eus, *of iron*; ferr-um, *iron*.
chart-aceus, *of paper*; chart-a, *paper*.

7. -inus, with noun-stems, *similarity, quality, or material*.

asin-inus, *asinine, like an ass*; asin-us, *an ass*.
mar-inus, *marine*; mar-e, *the sea*.
crystall-inus, *crystalline*; crystall-um, *crystal*.

8. -anus, with names of towns ending in a or æ, a *native of such place*.

Rom-anus, *a Roman*; Roma, *Rome*.

9. -osus, -lentus, with noun-stems, *fulness, abundance* (like the English -ous).

fam-osus, *famous*; fam-a, *fame*.
vino-lentus, *drunken*; vin-um, *wine*.

(792.) *Second Class, is, is, e.*

1. -is, *quality in general* (coexisting commonly with noun and verb forms).

lev-is, *light*; lev-are, *lev-itas*.

2. -ilis, -bilis, with verb-stems, the *quality* of the verb, or the *capacity* of it, in two senses, (a) *active* and (b) *passive*.

(a) terri-bilis, *exciting terror*; terr-ere, *to terrify*.
(b) doc-ilis, *docile*; doc-ere, *to teach*.
amāb-ilis, *amiable*; am-are, *to love*.

3. -ilis (i long), with noun-stems, *belonging or relating to a thing*.

civ-ilis, *belonging to a citizen, civil*; civ-is, *citizen*.
host-ilis, *hostile*; host-is, *enemy*.

[Observe that *ilis*, with verb-stems, is *short*; with noun-stems, *long*.]

4. -alis, -aris, with noun-stems, *of or belonging to*.

conviv-alis, *convivial*; conviv-a, *head*.
capit-alis, *capital*; caput, *head*.
consul-aris, *consular*; consul.

5. -ensis, with names of towns—a *native of such town*.

Cann-ensis, *an inhabitant of Cannes*.
Arimin-ensis, *an inhabitant of Ariminum*.

(792.) *Third Class* one ending.

-ax, with verb-stems, the *tendency* of the verb, generally in a *bad* sense.

pugn-ax,	<i>pugnacious</i> ;	pugn-äre,	<i>to fight</i> .
rap-ax,	<i>rapacious</i> ;	rap-äre,	<i>to seize</i> .

(C.) *Verbs*.(794.) *First Conjugation*.

1. **-äre**, generally a *transitive* ending, with noun-stems.

numer-äre,	<i>to count</i> ;	numer-us,	<i>number</i> .
nomin-äre,	<i>to name</i> ;	nomen (nomin-is),	<i>name</i> .

2. **FREQUENTATIVE** verbs, expressing a *repetition* or *increase* of the action of the original verb, are formed by the endings **-äre** and **-itare**; thus:

(a) **-äre**, added to supine-stems.

curs-äre,	<i>to run to and fro</i> ;	currere (curs-um),	<i>to run</i> .
dormit-äre,	<i>to be sleepy</i> ;	dormire (dormit-um),	<i>to sleep</i> .

(b) **-itare**, added to verb-stems.

rog-itare,	<i>to ask often</i> ;	rog-äre,	<i>to ask</i> .
vol-itare,	<i>to fly to and fro</i> ;	vol-äre,	<i>to fly</i> .

3. **-ari**, deponent-ending, with noun-stems, is much used for expressing "*to be that which, or of the character that,*" the noun indicates.

comit-ari,	{ <i>to attend as com-</i>	comes (comit-is),	<i>companion</i> .
	<i>panion</i> ;		
domin-ari,	<i>to rule as master</i> ;	domin-us,	<i>master</i> .

(795.) *Second Conjugation*.

-äre, frequently an *intransitive* ending, with noun and adjective stems.

alb-äre,	<i>to be white</i> ;	alb-us,	<i>white</i> .
luc-äre,	<i>to shine</i> ;	lux (luc-is),	<i>light</i> .

(796.) *Third Conjugation*.

INCHOATIVE verbs express the *beginning* or *increase* of the action of the verb from which they are derived. They are formed by adding **sc** to the verb-stem, with the connecting-vowels *a*, *e*, or *i*. Most of them are formed on stems of verbs of second conjugation.

pallasc-äre,	<i>to grow pale</i> ;	pall-äre,	<i>to be pale</i> .
labasc-äre,	<i>to totter</i> ;	lab-äre,	<i>to waver</i> .

(797.) *Fourth Conjugation*.

DESIDERATIVE verbs express a *desire* of that which is implied in the primitive, and are formed by adding **-ürire** to supine-stems.

es-ürire,	<i>to want to eat</i> ;	edüre (es-um),	<i>to eat</i> .
-----------	-------------------------	----------------	-----------------

(II.) WORD-BUILDING BY PREFIXES.

(798.) Under this head we place only the *inseparable prepositions* (224) viz., amb-, dis- (di-), re-, &c.

1. Amb = *about, around, on both sides*; e. g., amb-īre, *to go round* (amb+īre).

☞ Before *p* the *b* is dropped; e. g., am-plector: before *c*-sounds amb is changed into an; e. g., an-ceps, an-qui-ro.

2. Dis (dī) = *asunder*; e. g., dis-jungēre, *to disjoin* (dis+jungēre).

☞ Di is used before *d, g, l, m*; e. g., digererere, &c. Before *f* the *s* is assimilated; e. g., differre (dis+ferre).

3. Rē = *back, again, away, un-*; e. g., rēpellere, *drive-back* (re+pellere); rēficere, *refit* (rē+facere).

☞ Before vowels, *d* is inserted; e. g., rēd-īre (re+īre).

[Rē long occurs only in rēfert.]

4. Sē = *aside*; e. g., sēducere, *lead astray seduce* (sē+ducere); sēponere, *lay aside* (sē+ponere).

(III.) WORD-BUILDING BY COMPOSITION.

I. *Prepositions in Composition with other Words.*

(799.) ☞ Most prepositions are used to form compound words, and generally modify their meaning in a way easily understood; e. g., stare. *to stand*; pręstare, *to stand before, to excel*. We notice here only those which present some peculiarities.

1. a, ab, abs = *away, from*. (a) *a* is used before *m* and *v*; e. g., a-mittere, *to send away, lose*; a-vertere, *turn away*. (b) *au* is used before *ferre* and *fugere*: auferre, aufugere. (c) *as*, before *p* or *sp*: asperito, aspernor.

2. ad = *to*. (a) Assimilated before consonants, except *d, j, v, m*; e. g., arripere, assurgere, adducere, &c. (b) *d* dropped before *gn*; e. g., agnoscere, agnatus.

3. con (a variation of cum) = *with*. (a) *co* before *h* and vowels; e. g., co-ortus, co-hibere. (b) *com* before *b, p*:* com-burere, com-pellere. (c) Assimilated before *l, m, r*: col-ligere, com-movere, cor-ripere.

4. e or ex = *out of*. (a) Assimilated before *f*; e. g., effero (ex+fero). (b) *e* before liquids and *b, d, g, v*.


5. in, with verbs = *into, on, in, against*; with adjectives has privative force; e. g., doctus, *learned*; indoctus, *unlearned*.

(a) Assimilated before *l, r*, e. g., illatum (in+latum); irrumpere (in+trumpere).


* And sometimes before vowels: comedere.

(b) Changed into *im* before *b, p*; e. g., *imbibĕre* (*in+hibere*); *imponĕre* (*in+ponere*).

6. *ob* = *against*; e. g., *obtrudĕre* (*ob+trudere*), *thrust against*.

 Assimilated before *c, f, p*; e. g., *oc-cidĕre* (*ob+cadere*); *of-ferre*, *op-ponĕre*.

7. *pro* = *forth, forward*; e. g., *projicĕre* (*pro+jacere*), *cast forth*.

 Before vowels, *d* is inserted; e. g., *prod-esse* (*pro+esse*).


8. *præ* = *before*; e. g., *præcĕdĕre* (*præ+cedere*), *to go before, to surpass*.

9. *sub* = *under, from under*; e. g., *subducĕre*, *to draw from under*.

(a) Generally assimilated; e. g., *sum-movĕre*, *sup-ponere*, &c.

(b) Sometimes *sus-*; e. g., *sus-cipĕre*, *sus-tinĕre*, &c.

10. *trans* = *across, over*; e. g., *transducĕre*, *to lead across*.

 *Trā*, instead of *trans*, occurs in *trādĕre*, *trāducĕre*, *trājicĕre*.


(800.) II. *Adverbs in Composition with other Words.*

1. *nē, vĕ*, have a *privative* force; e. g., *nēfas*, *wicked* (*ne+fas*); *vĕsanus*, *insane* (*vĕ+sanus*).

2. *benĕ*, *well*; *malĕ*, *ill*; *satis*, *enough*; e. g., *beneficium*, *a good deed*; *maleficium*, *an evil deed*; *satisfacĕre*, *to satisfy* (= to do enough).

3. *bis* (and other numerals), *twice* (*thrice*), &c.: *bicorpor*, *two-bodied* (*bis+corp-us*).

(801.) III. *Nouns and Adjectives in Composition with other Words.*


 When a noun or adjective is compounded with another word the connecting vowel is always short *i*.

agri-cola (*agr+col-*), *a husbandman*.

arti-fex (*art+fac-*), *an artificer*.

(802.) IV. *Verbs in Composition with other Words.*

None occur, except in composition with *facere*; e. g., *calefacĕre* (*calĕre+facere*), *to make hot*; *patefacĕre* (*patĕre+facere*), *to lay open*.

[ Observe that the vowel *a* in *facere* remains unchanged.]

(803.) V. *Common Vowel-changes in Composition.*

1. *a* into *i*; e. g., *arrĭpĕre* (*ad+rapere*), *conflicĕre* (*con+facere*), *constituĕre* (*con+statuere*), &c.

2. *a* into *e* (more rarely); e. g., *ascendĕre* (*ad+scandere*).

3. *e* into *i* (not always); e. g., *colligĕre* (*con+legere*), *abstĭnĕre* (*abs+tenere*), &c.

4. *œ* into *i*; e. g., *occidĕre* (*ob+cœdere*), *rĕquirĕre* (*rĕ+quærere*).

READING LESSONS.

I.


GALLIA est omnis divisa¹ in partes tres.—Belgæ unam incolunt;² Aquitani alteram; Celtæ tertiam.—Hi, ipsorum³ linguâ Celtæ⁴ appellantur;⁵ nostrâ⁶ linguâ, Galli.⁴

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt Belgæ, alteram Aquitani, tertiam qui⁶ ipsorum linguâ Celtæ, nostrâ Galli appellantur.

Hi omnes inter se differunt.⁷—Linguâ, institutis,⁸ legibus differunt.—Garumna⁹ flumen Gallos ab Aquitanis dividit.—Matrôna flumen Gallos a Belgis dividit.—Horum omnium¹⁰ fortissimi sunt Belgæ.—Ab humanitate¹¹ Provinciæ longe absunt.¹²—A cultu¹³ Provinciæ longissime absunt.—Minime ad eos mercatores¹⁴ commeant.—Quædam¹⁵ animos effeminant.¹⁶—Quædam ad effeminandos animos pertinent.¹⁷

Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus, inter se differunt.—Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrôna et Sequana dividit.—Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgæ, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate Provinciæ longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores sæpe commeant, atque ea, quæ ad effeminandos animos pertinent,¹⁸ important.¹⁸

Proximi sunt Germanis.²⁰—Germani trans Rhenum incolunt.—Belgæ cum Germanis continenter²¹ bellum gerunt

¹ 435, c.—² in+colere.—³ 716.—⁴ 694, 2, R.—⁵ ad+pellare (*obsolete*), 199, 2, a.—⁶ 167, d, 4.—⁷ 798, .—⁸ 786, 2, instituere = in+statuere, 803, 1.—⁹ 225, a.—¹⁰ 697, a.—¹¹ 788, 1 (*humanus*), humanitas = *refinement*—¹² ab+sum, 799, 1.—¹³ cultus (*civilization*), from colere (*cult*), 789.—¹⁴ mercator, from mercari (*mercāt*), 788, 2, b.—¹⁵ *Some things*.—¹⁶ effeminare (*to make effeminate*), ex+feminare, 799, 4, a: feminare, from femina (*woman*), 794, 1.—¹⁷ *tend to make minds effeminate*, 739.—¹⁸ per+tenere, 803 3.—¹⁹ in+portare, 799, 5, b.—²⁰ 704, 4.—²¹ from continens (*con+tenere*) 215, 2, b.

* Ipsorum and nostra precede linguâ, instead of following it, because of speed to each other, and therefore *emphatic*.

Proximū sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, qui
hūc cum²² continenter bellum gerunt.

II.

Helvetii quoque¹ reliquos² Gallos virtute³ præcedunt.⁴—Fere
quotidianis præliis cum Germanis contendunt.—Aut⁵ suis finibus
Germanos prohibent,⁶ aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

Quā⁷ de causā⁸ Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute
præcedunt, quod⁹ fere quotidianis præliis cum Germanis con-
tendunt, quum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum
finibus bellum gerunt.

Galli unam partem obtinent.¹⁰—Unam partem Gallos¹¹ obti-
nere dictum est.¹²—Eā pars initium capit a flumine Rhodānō.
—Continetur Garumnā flumine,¹³ Oceano,¹³ finibus¹³ Belgarum.
—Attingit¹⁴ ab Sequānis flumen Rhenum.—Vergit ad Septen-
triones.—Belgæ ab extremis¹⁵ Galliæ finibus oriuntur.—Pertin-
ent¹⁶ ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni.—Spectant^{*} in
Septentriones et orientem¹⁷ solem.

Eorum una pars, quam¹⁸ Gallos obtinere dictum est, ini-
tium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur¹⁹ Garumna flumine,
Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab²⁰ Sequanis et
Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad Septentriones.—Belgæ
ab extremis Galliæ finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem
partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in Septentriones et orientem
solem.

Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenæos montes pertinet.
—Una pars Oceani est ad²⁰ Hispaniam.—Aquitaniā ad²⁰ eam

²² 125, II., b.

¹ Quoque neve begins a sentence.—² from relinquere (reliqu-), 791, 1.
—³ 718, in valour.—⁴ 799, 8.—⁵ 519, R. 4.—⁶ 721.—⁷ 89, II.—⁸ Qua de cau-
sa = for which reason.—⁹ because.—¹⁰ ob+tenere, 803, 3.—¹¹ 751.—¹² 751,
R. 2.—¹³ 716.—¹⁴ ad+tangere, 799, 2, a, 803, 1.—¹⁵ 78, II., b.—¹⁶ Pertinent
= they extend, per+tenere.—¹⁷ 438, a.—¹⁸ 759.—¹⁹ is bounded.—²⁰ on the
side of, or near.

* Spectant in Septentriones, &c.: they look into the north and the rising sun.
I. e., they lie in a N.E. direction.

partem Oceani, quæ est ad Hispaniam, pertinet.—Spectat inter occasum²¹ solis et Septentriones.

Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenæos montes, et eam partem Oceani, quæ est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat² inter occasum solis et Septentriones.

III.

Orgetorix nobilis fuit.—Apud Helvetios nobilissimus fuit Orgetorix.—Apud Helvetios longè ditissimus¹ fuit Orgetorix.—Is regni cupiditate² inductus conjurationem³ nobilitatis⁴ fecit.—Is civitati⁵ persuadet, ut de finibus suis exeant.⁶—De finibus suis exeunt.—Perfacile erat totius Galliæ imperio⁷ potiri.—Perfacile esse⁸ (dixit), quum virtute omnibus præstarent,⁹ totius Galliæ imperio potiri.

Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix.—Is, Marco Messalâ et Marco Pisone consulibus,¹⁰ regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit, et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent:¹¹ perfacile esse (dixit), quum virtute omnibus præstarent, totius Galliæ imperio potiri.

Id facile eis persuadet.¹²—Id hoc facilius eis persuasit.—Undique naturâ loci¹³ Helvetii continentur.—Unâ ex parte continentur flumine Rheno latissimo atque altissimo.—Alterâ ex parte continentur monte Jurâ altissimo; tertiâ ex parte lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano.—Flumen Rhenus agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit.—Mons Jurâ est inter Sequanos et Helvetios.—Flumen Rhodanus provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.

²¹ 789, from occidere, ob+cadere.

¹ 371, R. 1.—² from cupid-us, by 788, 1.—³ 788, 3, con+jurare.—⁴ 788, 1.—⁵ 704, 2: *he persuades the state*; i. e., *the citizens*.—⁶ ut exeant = *to go out of*: subj. pres., 754 (ex+ire).—⁷ abl., 718.—⁸ The sentence *perfacile esse*, &c., is in orat. obliqua; 769, a, applies.—⁹ 799, 8.—¹⁰ 458, b.—¹¹ Why is exirent in subj. imperf.? 748.—¹² suadere, *to recommend*; persuadere, *recommend thoroughly*, i. e., *persuade*.—¹³ *by the nature of the country*.

* It looks between the setting of the sun and the north; i. e., in a N.W. direction

Id hoc facilius eis persuadet, quod undique loci naturā Helvetii continentur; unā ex parte, flumine Rheno latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; alterā ex parte, monte Jurā altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertiā, lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.

Minus latē vagantur.—His rebus fit,¹⁴ ut minus late vagentur.¹⁵—Bellum inferunt.¹⁶—Bellum inferre¹⁷ possunt.—Minus facile bellum finitimis¹⁸ inferre possunt.—His rebus fit, ut minus facile bellum finitimis inferre possent.—Magno dolore afficiebantur.¹⁹—Bellandi²⁰ erant cupidi.²¹

His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur, et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possint.—Quā de causa, homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur.

IV.

Pro¹ multitudine² hominum, angustos habebant fines.—Pro gloria³ belli atque fortitudinis,³ angustos habebant fines.—Angustos se⁴ fines habere arbitrabantur.⁵—Hi (i. e., fines) millia passuum ducenta (CC.) patebant.⁶—Hi in longitudinem² millia⁷ passuum ducenta et quadraginta (XL.) patebant.

Pro multitudine autem⁸ hominum, et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem millia passuum CCXL., in latitudinem centum et octoginta (CLXXX.) patebant.

Ducti sunt.—Adducti⁹ sunt.—Moti sunt.—Permoti¹⁰ sunt.—Auctoritate¹¹ Orgetorigis adducti et permoti sunt.—Quædam ad proficiscendum¹² pertinent.—Constituerunt¹³ ea comparare.¹⁴—Constituerunt jumenta et carros emere.¹⁵—Constituerunt se-

¹⁴ By these circumstances it is brought about.—¹⁵ 754, 2.—¹⁶ in+ferre.—¹⁷ 731.—¹⁸ 704, 3.—¹⁹ ad+facere, 799, 2; 803, 1.—²⁰ 736.—²¹ cupere, 791, 2.

¹ For or, in view of.—² mult-us, 788, 4.—³ reputation for war and courage.—⁴ 471.—⁵ from arbit-er, by 794, 3.—⁶ extended.—⁷ 712.—⁸ 522, b.—⁹ Ducti sunt = they were led: adducti sunt = they were led to, i. e., they were induced.—¹⁰ Moti sunt = they were moved: permoti sunt = they were thoroughly moved, i. e., prevailed upon.—¹¹ 788, 1.—¹² 487.—¹³ con+stat-are, 803, 1.—¹⁴ con+parare, 799, 3, b.—¹⁵ 731.

mentes magnas facere,¹⁶ ut in itinere copia frumenti suppet-
eret.¹⁷—Cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam¹⁸ con-
firmant.

His rebus adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti,
constituerunt, ea, quæ¹⁹ ad proficiscendum pertinērent, com-
parare; jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum nu-
merum²⁰ coemere;²¹ sementes quam maximas²² facere, ut
in itinere copia frumenti suppetaret; cum proximis civitatibus
pacem et amicitiam confirmare.

Biennium Helvetiis²³ satis erat.—Biennium sibi²⁴ Helvetii satis
esse duxerunt.²⁴—Ad eas res conficiendas²⁵ biennium satis erat.
—Profectionem²⁶ lege confirmant.²⁷—In tertium annum profec-
tionem lege confirmant.—Ad eas res conficiendas²⁸ Orgetorix
deligitur.²⁸—Is sibi legationem²⁹ suscipit.²⁹—In eo itinere per-
suadet Castico.—Casticus Catamantalēdis erat filius, Sequānus.
—Pater Castici regnum in Sequanis multos annos³⁰ obtinuerat.
—Pater Castici a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat.
—Orgetorix Castico persuadet, ut regnum in civitate suā occu-
paret.³¹

Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt;
in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res
conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civi-
tates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantale-
ois filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos
annos obtinuerat, et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus
erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod³² pater ante
habuerat.

V.

Item Dumnorigi persuadet.—Dumnorix erat Æduus.—
Dumnorix erat frater Divitiaci.—Dumnorix principatum¹ in

¹⁶ to make great sowings, i. e., to sow much land.—¹⁷ Sub+petere, 799
9, a, neuter; suppeteret=might be in store: subjunc. by 754, 1.—¹⁸ 785, 2.
—¹⁹ 759, Rem.—²⁰ As great a number as possible.—²¹ con+emere, to buy
together, to buy up, 799, 3.—²² As great sowings as possible.—²³ 704.—
²⁴ reckoned.—²⁵ 498, d.—²⁶ 788, 3.—²⁷ They fix the departure by a law
²⁸ de+legere, 803, 3.—²⁹ 799, 9, b.—³⁰ 712.—³¹ 754.—³² 759.

¹ chief power, from princeps.

civitate obtinebat.—Dumnorix plebi² acceptus³ erat.—Dumnorigi, ut idem conaretur persuadet,* eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat.

Itemque Dumnorigi Æduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore⁴ principatum in civitate obtinebat, ac maximè⁵ plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat.

Perfacile factu⁶ erat conata perficere.⁷—Ipse suæ civitatis imperium obtenturus erat.—Totius⁸ Galliæ plurimum Helvetii possunt.—Non est dubium quin plurimum Helvetii possint.⁹—Ipse illis regnum conciliaturus¹⁰ erat.—Ipse, suis copiis suoque exercitu, illis regnum conciliaturus erat.

(*Oblique Narration*, 769.) “Perfacile factu esse,” illis probat, “conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suæ civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium, quin totius Galliæ plurimum Helvetii possent;” “Se, suis copiis suoque exercitu, illis regna conciliaturum,” confirmat.

Helvetii jam¹¹ se¹² ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrantur.—Oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim,¹³ incendunt.—Vicos suos ad quadringentos incendunt.—Reliqua¹⁴ privata ædificia¹⁵ incendunt.—Frummentum secum portaturi erant.—Frummentum omne comburunt.—Domum¹⁶ reditionis¹⁷ spes sublata¹⁸ est.—Paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda¹⁹ erant.

Ubi²⁰ jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata ædificia incendunt; frumentum omne, præter quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut, domum reditionis spe²¹ sublata,²¹ paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent.²²

² 702, was acceptable to the common people (a favourite).—³ ad+caper 803, 1.—⁴ 725.—⁵ 376.—⁶ 380. It was a very easy thing to do.—⁷ to accomplish, per+facere, 803, 1.—⁸ Of the whole of Gaul, the Helvetians are the most powerful.—⁹ 754, 4.—¹⁰ 446.—¹¹ jam = at last.—¹² 751.—¹³ in number (amounting) to twelve.—¹⁴ relinquere.—¹⁵ 801, ædes+facere.—¹⁶ 713, Rem. 2.—¹⁷ 788, 3.—¹⁸ tollere.—¹⁹ sub+ire, gerundive, 739.—²⁰ when.—²¹ 750.—²² 754.

* Cæsar often uses the *historical present*, as in this instance, instead of the perfect aorist. If persuadet were used really as the present, then conaretur would have to be conetur, by 748; but, as the historical present, it requires a past tense in the subordinate sentence.

VI.

Omnes res ad profectionem comparant.—Diem dicunt¹ qua die omnes conveniant.²—Is dies erat ante diem quintum Kalendas³ Aprilis, Lucio Pisone, Aulo Gabinio consulibus.—Is dies erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr., L. Pisone, A. Gabinio Coss.

Omnibus rebus⁴ ad profectionem comparatis, diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant: is dies erat ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis, Lucio Pisone, Aulo Gabinio Consulibus.

Helvetii per provinciam nostram iter⁵ facere conantur.—Id Cæsari nuntiatum erat.—Cæsari nuntiatum erat, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere⁶ conari.⁷—Maturat ab urbe proficisci,⁸ et magnis itineribus in Galliam contendit, et ad Genevam pervenit.—De ejus adventu⁹ Helvetii certiores facti sunt.—Legatos ad eum mittunt.—Helvetiis est in animo¹⁰ sine ullo maleficio¹⁰ iter per provinciam facere; aliud iter habent nullum; rogant, ut, Cæsaris voluntate, id facere liceat.¹¹

Cæsari quum id nuntiatum esset,¹² eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari,⁷ maturat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad Genevam pervenit. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt,¹³ qui dicerent,¹⁴ "*sibi*"¹⁵ esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habeant nullum; rogare, ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat."

Lucius Cassius, consul, ab Helvetiis occisus erat.—Exercitus¹⁶ Cassii ab Helvetiis pulsus¹⁷ erat, et sub jugum missus.—Eâ Cæsar memoriâ¹⁸ tenebat.—Concedendum¹⁹ non putabat.—Facultas²⁰ per provinciam itineris faciendi²¹ non data est.—

¹ *They appoint.*—² con+venire; subj. pres., 766.—³ 782, 5.—⁴ 750.—⁵ iter facere = *to make journey* = *to march*.—⁶ 731.—⁷ 751.—⁸ advenire (advent-), 789.—⁹ 468, b.—¹⁰ 800, 2.—¹¹ 754.—¹² 757, A. 2.—¹³ historical present.—¹⁴ 761, 1.—¹⁵ oblique narration.—¹⁶ exercere, 789.—¹⁷ pellere.—¹⁸ memoriâ tenebat, *held in memory*, i. e., *remembered*.—¹⁹ 737 (esse understood, 504, a).—²⁰ power of marching through, or permission to march through.—²¹ 496.

Homines inimico²² animo ab injuria et maleficio non temperant.

Cæsar, quod memoria tenebat, L. Cassium consulem occisum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putabat; neque²³ homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciendi, temperaturos ab injuria²⁴ et maleficio, existimabat.

VII.

Hujus legationis Divico princeps fuit.—Divico, bello Cassiano,¹ dux Helvetiorum fuerat.—Is ita cum Cæsare egit.²—Helvetii in eam partem ibunt, atque ibi erunt, ubi Cæsar constituerit.³—Cæsar veteris incommodi⁴ reminiscitur.⁵—Cæsar pristinae virtutis⁶ Helvetiorum reminiscitur.

(*Oblique Narration, present time.*⁷) Is ita cum Cæsare agit: “*Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciat,⁸ in eam partem ituros⁹ atque ibi futuros⁹ Helvetios, ubi eos Cæsar constituerit atque esse voluerit; sin bello persequi perseveret,¹⁰ reminiscatur¹¹ et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.*”

Hujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Cæsare egit (obl. narr., past time): “*Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros, atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi Cæsar eos constitueret atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.*”

²² 722.—²³ neque existimabat = *nor did he think.*—²⁴ outrage.

¹ *In the Cassian war*, i. e., in which Cassius had been the Roman general.—² *He treated with Cæsar as follows.*—³ 803, 1; subj. by 766.—⁴ *incommodum, disaster*, in+commodus, 799, 5; con+modus, 799, 3, c; genitive by 698, a, 2.—⁵ *rē+miniscor, stem of meminī, meno.*—⁶ *vir, gen., 698, a, 2.*—⁷ *Observe carefully the tenses in this and the following paragraph.*—⁸ *If the Roman people will make peace.*—⁹ 484, a.—¹⁰ 542, b.—¹¹ 528 b

His Cæsar ita¹³ respondet.—Cæsari nihil dubitationis¹⁴ datur.¹⁴—Legati Helvetii quasdam res commemoraverunt.¹⁵—Eas res Cæsar in memoria tenet.¹⁵—Eo¹⁷ Cæsari minus dubitationis datur, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemoraverunt, in memoria tenet.—Eas res graviter¹⁸ fert.¹⁹—Eæ res non merito²⁰ populi Romani accidērunt.²¹—Eas res graviter fert, quod non merito populi Romani acciderunt.—Eo²² gravius fert, quo²³ minus merito Populi Romani acciderunt.

His Cæsar ita respondet²⁴ (*oblique narration, present time*): “Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemoraverint, memoria teneat: atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidērint.”

His Cæsar ita respondit (*oblique narration, past time*): “Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret: atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent.”

VIII.

Helvetii postēro die¹ castra ex eo loco mōvent.—Idem² Cæsar facit.—Quas in partes³ hostes iter faciunt?⁴—Equitatum⁵ omnem præmittit.⁶—Hi vidēbunt, quas in partes hostes iter faciant.⁷—Equitatus ex omni Provincia et Æduis atque eorum sociis coactus⁸ erat.—Hunc equitatum præmittit, qui videant,⁹ quas in partes hostes iter faciant.⁷—Hi cupidius¹⁰ novissimum¹¹ agmen insequuntur.¹²—Cum equitatu Helvetiōrum prœlium commit-

¹³ as follows.—¹⁴ 788, 3, dubitare (dubitat).—¹⁴ To Cæsar nothing of doubt is given = Cæsar has no doubt.—¹⁵ con + memorare (memor).—¹⁶ holds in memory, i. e., remembers.—¹⁷ On this account Cæsar has less doubt, because.—¹⁸ 215, 2, a.—¹⁹ ferre graviter = to bear heavily, to be indignant at.—²⁰ 716.—²¹ accidere = ad + cedere, 803, 1, to happen.—²² By so much.—²³ by how much.—²⁴ Observe the moods and tenses carefully in this and the following paragraph of oblique narration.

¹ 725.—² 150.—³ Into what parts (of the country)?—⁴ 765.—⁵ Equitare (equitat-), 789.—⁶ 795, 8.—⁷ 766.—⁸ had been collected; cogere = con + agere.—⁹ who may see, i. e., to see, 761, 1.—¹⁰ too eagerly, adv., 376.—¹¹ novissimum agmen = the newest rank, i. e., the rear rank.—¹² in + sequi

tunt.—Aliēno¹³ loco prœlium committunt.—Pauc' de nostris cadunt.

Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. idem Cæsar facit; equitatumque omnem ad n u m ě r u m q u a t t u o r m i l l i u m, q u e m ex omni provincia et Æduis atque eorum sociis coactum habēbat, præmittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant.—Qui, cupidius novissimum agmen insecūti,¹⁴ alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum prœlium committunt, et pauci de nostris cadunt.

Hoc prœlio sublāti¹⁵ sunt Hēlvēti. —Quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulērant.¹⁶—Audacius¹⁷ subsistere¹⁸ cœperunt.—Nonnunquam¹⁹ et²⁰ prœlio²¹ nostros lacescere cœperunt. —Cæsar suos a prœlio continebat.²²—Hostem rapinis,²³ pabulationibusque prohibere²⁴ volēbat. —Hoc satis habēbat in præsētia.²⁵

Quo prœlio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere. nonnunquam et novissimo agmine prœlio nostros lacescere cœperunt.—Cæsar suos a prœlio continebat; ac satis habebat in præsētia hostem rapinis pabulationibusque²⁶ prohibere.

IX.

Multa¹ antēhac tacuerat² Liscus.—Hæc orationē³ Cæsaris adductus propōnit⁴. —Sunt nonnulli,⁵ quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum⁶ valet.—Hi privātim⁷ plus possunt⁸ quam ipsi

¹³ In a place not their own, i. e., on disadvantageous ground.—¹⁴ 451, c.—¹⁵ sub+latas, irreg. perf. of tollere: the Helvetians were elated.—¹⁶ they had driven off, pro+pellere.—¹⁷ 376.—¹⁸ to halt, sub+sistere; inf. 731.—¹⁹ non+nunquam, not never, i. e., sometimes.—²⁰ also.—²¹ by an assault.—²² to hold together, i. e., to restrain.—²³ 721, from plunder and from foraging parties.—²⁴ pro+habere.—²⁵ acc. pl. of præsens; in præsētia (tempora), for the present.—²⁶ 517, a.

¹ Many things, before this, Liscus had kept secret.—² tacere, intrans = to be silent; trans = to keep secret.—³ 788, 3, orare (orāt).—⁴ pro+ponere, to set before, to relate.—⁵ non+nullus, not none, i. e., some.—⁶ plurimum valet = avails very much (has very great weight).—⁷ 215, 3.—⁸ plus possunt = can more, i. e., have more power.

magistrātus.⁹—Hi seditiōsa¹⁰ atque imprōba¹¹ oratione multitudine deterrent.¹²—Frumentum non confērent.¹³—Hi multitudine deterrent, ne frumentum conferant.¹⁴—Ipsi quidem principātum Galliæ obtinēre non possunt. —Sati¹⁵ est Gallōrum quam Romanōrum imperia perferre.¹⁶

Si Helvetios superaverint¹⁷ Romāni, una¹⁸ cum reliqua Gallia Æduis libertatem eripient.¹⁹—Dubitare non debent, quin Romani Æduis libertatem sint ereptūri.²⁰—Sati²¹ est si jam principatum Galliæ obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre.

Tum demum Liscus,²¹ oratione Cæsaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat proponit.—(*Oratio obliqua*): “Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat; qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus; hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant, quod præstare debeant. Si jam principatum Galliæ obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre satius esse, neque dubitare debere, quin si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Æduis libertatem sint erepturi.”

X

Hac oratione Lisci, Dumnōrix, Divitiaci frater, designabatur.¹—Id Cæsar sentiebat.²—Pluribus præsentiibus³ eas res jactari⁴ nolēbat.—Celeriter⁵ concilium dimittit; Liscum retinet.—Quærit,⁶ ex solo,⁷ ea quæ in conventu⁸ dixerat.—Dicit liberius⁹ atque audacius.⁹—Eādem secrēto¹⁰ ab aliis quærit.—Repērit¹¹ esse vera.

⁹ *The magistrates themselves.*—¹⁰ 791, 9 (seditio).—¹¹ in+probus, 799, 5.—¹² de+terrere.—¹³ con+ferre, contribute.—¹⁴ ne conferant, *that they may not contribute*, i. e., deter them from contributing, 548, b.—¹⁵ Sati¹⁵, compare of satis, 376: *it is better.*—¹⁶ per+ferre, to endure.—¹⁷ 542, b, 2.—¹⁸ they will wrest liberty from the Æduans, together with the rest of Gaul.—¹⁹ e+traperē, 803, 1.—²⁰ 754, 4.—²¹ Then, finally (then, and not till then).

¹ was alluded to, de+signare.—² was aware of.—³ 750, many being present, i. e., in the presence of many.—⁴ 794, 2, a; from jacio (jact-): jactare = to toss to and fro; hence, to discuss.—⁵ 215, 2.—⁶ He inquires into.—⁷ ex solo = of him alone.—⁸ 789.—⁹ 376.—¹⁰ privately.—¹¹ He finds (the statements) are true.

Ipse est Dumnōrix,¹² summa audacia,¹³ magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia,¹⁴ cupidus rerum¹⁵ novārum.—Complures annos¹⁶ portoria¹⁷ reliquaque omnia Æduorum vectigalia habet.—Hæc vectigalia parvo pretio¹⁸ redempta sunt.¹⁹—Vectigalia²⁰ parvo pretio redempta habet, propterea quod, illo²¹ licente,²² contra licēri²³ audet nemo.—His rebus suam rem familiarem auxit.—His rebus facultates²⁴ ad largiendum²⁵ magnas comparavit.—Magnum numerum equitatūs suo sumptu²⁶ semper alit.—Magnum numerum equitatūs semper circum se habet.—Non solum domi,²⁷ sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter²⁸ potest.

Cæsar hac oratione Lisci Dumnōrigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designāri sentiebat : sed, quod pluribus præsentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet : quærit, ex solo, ea quæ in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quærit ; reperit esse vera : “ Ipsum esse Dumnōrigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum : complures annos portoria reliquaque omnia Æduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra licēri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse, et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse : magnum numerum equitatūs suo sumtu semper alere et circum se habere : neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse.”

XI.

Ad has suspensiones certissimæ res¹ accedebant.—Dumnōrix per fines Sequanōrum Helvetios transduxerat.²—Obsides inter eos dandos³ curaverat.—Ea omnia jussū⁴ Cæsaris fecerat.—Ea

¹² *Dumnōrix is the very person, (a man) of the highest audacity, &c.*—¹³ 722.—¹⁴ *influence.*—¹⁵ 698, *b.*—¹⁶ 712.—¹⁷ *transit duties, custom duties.*—¹⁸ 719.—¹⁹ *were contracted for.*—²⁰ *vectigalia . . . habet, he holds the taxes contracted for at a low price ; i. e., holds them under a very favourable contract.*—²¹ 456, *a.* *when he bids.*—²² *liceor, licēri, to bid.*—²³ 731.—²⁴ *Means for making largesses.*—²⁵ 489.—²⁶ *suo sumptu, at his own expense.* *Sumptus, 789, from sumere.*—²⁷ 726, *R., at home.*—²⁸ *largiter potest, he can largely, i. e., he has extensive power.*

¹ *certissimæ res = most certain (or undoubted) facts.*—*accedebant = were added ; ad+cedere, intransitive.*—² *trans+ducere.*—³ 504, *a.*—⁴ 789 *from jubere (juss-) : by the command, 716.*

omnia injussu⁵ Cæsaris et⁶ civitatis fecerat.—Ea omnia inscientibus ipsis⁷ fecerat.—Ea omnia non modo injussu Cæsaris et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecerat.—A magistratū⁸ Æduōrum accusabātur.—Satis est causæ,⁹ quare in eum animadvertat.¹⁰—Satis est causæ, quare in eum civitatem animadvertēre jubeat.—Satis erat causæ, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet.—Satis esse¹¹ causæ arbitrabātur.

Quibus rebus cognitis,¹² quum¹³ ad has suspiciones certissimæ res accedērent—quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios transduxisset¹⁴—quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset—quod ea omnia non modo injussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis, fecisset—quod a magistratu Æduorum accusarētur; satis esse causæ arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet.

His omnibus rebus¹⁵ unum repugnābat.¹⁶—Divitiaci fratris¹⁷ summum in populum Romānum studium¹⁸ cognoverat Cæsar.—Divitiaci summam in se voluntatem cognoverat.—Divitiaci egregiam fidem, justitiam,¹⁹ temperantiam,¹⁹ cognoverat.—Dumnorigis supplicio²⁰ Divitiaci animum offendet.—Ne²¹ Divitiaci animum offendant, verētur.—Ne²² Divitiaci animum offēderet, verebātur.

His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verebatur.

⁵ *without the command*; in+jussū.—⁶ The English idiom demands or instead of *and*: *without the command of Cæsar or the state*.—⁷ *themselves not knowing it*, i. e., without the knowledge of Cæsar and the Æduan government.—⁸ *By a magistrate*, 93, II., b.—⁹ 697, b.—¹⁰ in eum animadvertere, *to animadvert upon him*, i. e., *to punish him*.—¹¹ 751, R. 2.—¹² Quibus rebus cognitis = *Which things being known by inquiry*, i. e., *after he had inquired into these things*.—¹³ *Since (seeing that)*, 757, A, b.—¹⁴ transduxisset, curasset, &c., are subjunctives, because they express, not Cæsar's own sentiments or knowledge, but what he had heard from others: *certissimæ res accederent*.—¹⁵ 704, *To all these considerations one (thing) opposed itself*.—¹⁶ re+pugnare.—¹⁷ *Of his brother Divitiacus*, i. e., the brother of Dumnorix.—¹⁸ *zeal*.—¹⁹ 785, 2.—²⁰ *By the punishment of Dumnorix he will hurt the feelings of Divitiacus*.—²¹ *veretur ne . . . he fears that he shall*.—²² *verebatur ne . . . he feared that he should*.

XII.

Cæsar graviter¹ in² Dumnorigem statuet.—Divitiacus Cæsarem complectitur.—Divitiacus multis³ cum lacrymis Cæsarem complectitur.—Obsecrâre incipit ne⁴ quid gravius⁵ in² fratrem statuat.—Scit Divitiacus illa esse vera.—Nemo ex eo⁶ plus quam Divitiacus doloris⁷ capit.—Divitiacus gratiâ⁸ plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia poterat.—Dumnōrix minimum⁹ propter adolescentiam poterat.—Dumnōrix per Divitiacum crevit.¹⁰—His opibus¹¹ ac nervis¹² ad minuendam¹³ gratiam Divitiaci utitur.—His opibus ad perniciem¹⁴ Divitiaci utitur.—Quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pene ad perniciem Divitiaci utitur.—Divitiacus tamen et¹⁵ amore fraterno et existimatione¹⁶ vulgi commovetur.¹⁷—Divitiacus summum locum amicitiae apud Cæsarem tenet.—Nemo existimabit non ejus voluntate factum.¹⁸—Ex hac re tōtius Galliae animi a Divitiaco avertentur.¹⁹

(*Direct Narration, Present Time.*²⁰) Scit Divitiacus illa esse vera, nec quisquam ex eo plus quam ipse doloris capit propterea quod, quum ipse gratiâ plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevit; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pene ad perniciem ipsius utitur. Divitiacus tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commovetur, quod, si²¹ quid fratri a Cæsare acciderit, quum²² ipse talem locum amicitiae apud eum teneat, nemo existimabit non

¹ graviter statuet = *will decide severely.*—² against.—³ 89, II.—⁴ 548, a.
⁵ quid gravius = *anything more severe (than usual): anything at all severe.*—⁶ from him, i. e., Dumnōrix.—⁷ plus doloris, *more pain*, 697.—⁸ by his influence (popularity).—⁹ minimum poterat = *had very little power.*—
¹⁰ crescere: *grew* (in power).—¹¹ resources.—¹² sinews, abl. by 716.—
¹³ 739, for diminishing the influence of Divitiacus.—¹⁴ 790, 1.—¹⁵ 517, c.
¹⁶ existimare, 788, 3: existimatione vulgi = *by the opinion of the public.*
¹⁷ con+movēre; commovetur = *is strongly moved.*—¹⁸ No one will think it was not done with his (Divitiacus's) consent.—¹⁹ a+vertere: *the affections of all Gaul will be turned away from him.*—²⁰ Observe carefully the moods and tenses in the following paragraphs of direct and oblique narration.—²¹ if anything happen to his brother from Cæsar.—²² quum ipse teneat, *seeing that he himself holds.*

ejus voluntate factum; qua ex re fiet²³ uti totius Galliae animi ab eo avertantur.²⁴

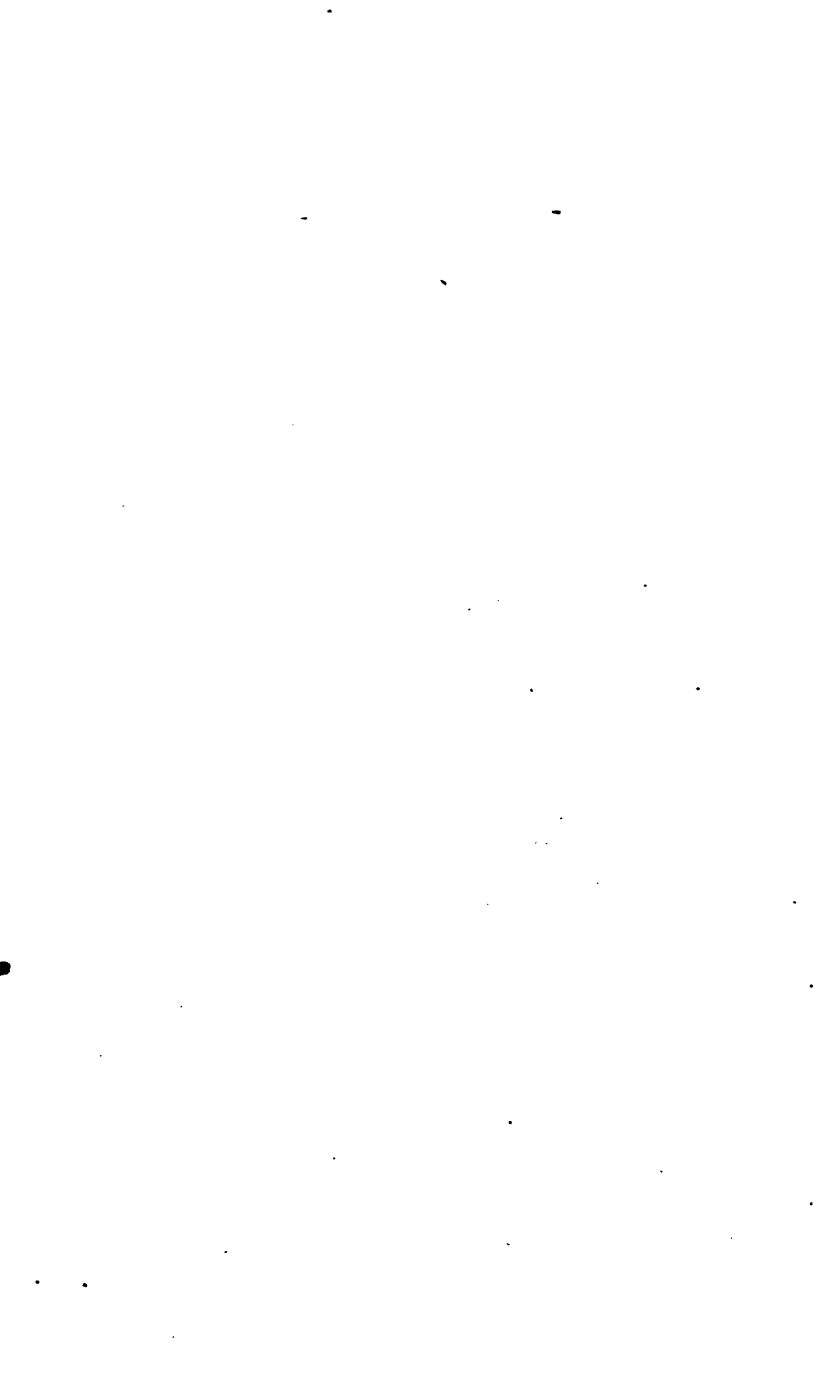
(*Direct Narration, Past Time.*) Sciebat Divitiacus illa esse vera, nec quisquam ex eo plus quam ipse doloris capiēbat, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se creverat; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem ipsius utebatur. Divitiacus tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commovēbatur, quod si quid fratri a Cæsare gravius accidisset, quum ipse talem locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nemo erat existimatūrus non ejus voluntate factum, qua ex re futurum erat uti totius Galliae animi ab eo averterentur.

Divitiacus, multis cum lacrymis Cæsarem complexus obsecrare incipit (*oblique narration, present time*), "Ne quid gravius in fratrem statuatur; scire se, illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se creverit; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam utatur: sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri, quod, si quid ei gravius a Cæsare acciderit, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneat, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum uti totius Galliae animi a se avertantur."


Divitiacus multis cum lacrymis, Cæsarem complexus, obsecrare cœpit (*oblique narration, past time*), "Ne quid gravius in fratrem statuēret; scire se, illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam uteretur: sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri, quod si quid ei a Cæsare gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur."

²³ from which thing it will result.—²⁴ 754. 2.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.



LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

 THE numbers refer to paragraphs. In verbs, the perfect and supine-stems are placed in brackets, immediately after the infinitive endings. The declensions of nouns may be known by the genitive endings. the conjugations of verbs by the infinitive endings.

- A, ab, abs, prep. with abl., *by, from*.
 Abesse (abfu-, ab+esse), *to be away from, to be distant, to be absent*.
 Abrog-äre (av-, at-), *to abrogate*.
 Abstin-äre (abstinu-, abstenu-, ab+tenere), *to abstain from* (with abl.).
 Abund-äre (av-, at-), *to abound* (with abl.).
 Ac, conj., *and, as well as*.
 Acced-äre (access-, accens-, ad+cedere, 401, 3), *to approach*.
 Accid-äre (accid-, ad+cadere), *to happen*.
 Accidit, impers., 583, *it happens*.
 Accip-äre (io, accip-, accept-, 666, V., ð), *to receive: acceptus erat, he was popular, or acceptable*.
 Accurr-äre (accurr-, and accucurr-, accurs-, ad+curre), *to run to, to run up to*.
 Accus-äre (av-, at-), *to accuse*.
 Acer, acris, acre, 105, R. 1, *sharp, spirited*.
 Acerrime (superl. of acriter), *very spiritedly*.
 Acies, ei, *line of battle*.
 Acriter, adv., 217, *sharply, spiritedly*.
 Acut-us, a, um, *sharp, acute*.
 Ad, prep. with accus., *to, near*.
 Add-äre (addid-, addit-, ad+dare, 411, c), *to add*.
 Adduc-äre (addux-, adduct-), *to lead to, induce*.
 Adeo, adv., *to this point, to such a degree*.
 Adesse (adfu-, ad+esse), *to be present* (with dat.).
 Adhib-äre (adhibu-, adhibit-, ad+habere), *to apply, employ, admit*.
 Adhort-äri (at-, dep-), *to exhort*.
 Adjung-äre (adjunx-, adjunct-), *to join to*.
 Adjuv-äre (adjäv-, adjüt-), *to assist*.
 Admodum, adv., *very*.
 Admon-äre (admonu-, admonit-), *to advise, admonish*.
 Adolescens, (adolescent) is, *young man*.
 Adolescenti-a, æ, *youth*.
 Ador-äre (av-, at-), *to adore, worship*.
 Advent-us, us, *approach*.
 Adversus, or adversum, prep. with accus., *against, towards*.
 Edific-äre (av-, at-), *to build*.
 Edifici-um, i, *building*.
 Edu-us, i, *Eduan* (people of Gaul)
 Egens, (ëgent) is, 107, *poor*.
 Eger, gra, grum, *sick*.
 Egritudo, (ëgritudin) is, 339, *sorrow, affliction, sickness*.
 Egrot-äre (av-, at-), *to be sick*.
 Egyptus, i, f., 25, a, *Ægypt*.
 Equor, (æquör) is, 327, *sea*.
 Estas, (estät) is, 293, *summer*.

Ætas, (ætat) is, 293, *age, time of life*.

Æternitas, (æternitat) is, 293, *eternity*.

Ætern-us, a, um, *eternal*; in æternum, *forever*.

Affectio, (affectio) is, 293, *affection*.

Afferre (attul-, allat-, ad+ferre), to bring, bring to, adduce.

Affic-ère (affec-, affect-, ad+facere), to affect, move, influence. ●

Afric-a, æ, *Africa*.

African-us, i, *Africanus*.

Ager, gri, 64, *field*.

Ag-ère (æg-, act-), to do, act, drive; to treat (as an ambassador).

Agmen, (agmin) is, 344, a, *army on march, or in marching order*; novissimum agmen, *the rear*.

Agn-us, i, *lamb*.

Agricol-a, æ, m., *husbandman*.

Agricultur-a, æ, *agriculture*.

Agripp-a, æ, *Agrippa*.

Aio, 609, *I say, say yes, affirm*.

Al-a, æ, *wing*.

Al-ère (alu-, alt-), to nourish, support, maintain.

Alexander, -dri, *Alexander*.

Alien-us, a, um, *foreign, belonging to another*.

Aliquando, at some time, some day, at last.

Aliquant-us, a, um, 184, *somewhat great*; aliquantum agri, *a pretty large piece of ground*.

Aliquis, quæ, quid (quod), 178, 5, *some one, something*; aliquid novi, *something new*, 180.

Aliter, *otherwise*.

Ali-us, a, ud, gen. alius, &c., 194, R. 1, *other, another*. [of Gaul.

Allobroges, um, *Allobroges*, people

Allu-ère (allu-), to wash.

Alpes, ium, *Alps*, mountains between Gaul and Italy.

Alter, a, um, gen. ius, 194, R. 1, *another, the second* (in a series).

Alt-us, a, um, *high, lofty, deep*; altum, i, *the deep, the sea*.

Amabilis, is, e, 104, *amiable*.

Am-are (av-, at-), to love.

Ambo, æ, o, *both*.

Ambul-are (av-, at-), to walk.

Amiciti-a, æ, *friendship*.

Amic-us, i, *friend*.

Amitt-ère (amis-, amiss-), to lose.

Amplè, adv., *largely*.

Amplius, comp. of amplè, *more, larger, greater than*.

Ancill-a, æ, *maid-servant*.

Angli-a, æ, *England*.

Angusti-æ, arum, *defiles*, 57, R

Angust-us, a, um, *narrow*.

Animadvert-ère (vert-, vers-), animum+ad+vertere), to turn the mind to, to oblige; with in, to punish; Cæsar in Dumnorigem animadvertit, *Cæsar punishes Dumnoriges*.

Animal, (animal) is, 325, *animal*.

Animans, (animant) is, *living*; as noun, *a living being*.

Anim-us, i, *soul, mind*.

Ann-us, i, *year*.

Anser, (anser) is, 319, *goose*.

Ante, prep. with accus., *before*.

Antehac, adv., *before, before this*.

Antepon-ère (posu-, posit-), to place before, to prefer.

Antonin-us, i, *Antonine*.

Antoni-us, i, *Antony*.

Aper ire (aperu-, apert-, 427, II.), to open.

Apert-us, a, um, *open*.

Apis, (Ap-) is, *Apis*, Egyptian deity.

Appell-are (av-, at-), to call, name.

Aprilis, is (sc. mensis), m., 25, a, *April*. [proach.

Appropinqu-are (av-, at-), to approach.

Apud, prep. with accus., among, apud te, with you (at your house) apud Ciceronem, in Cicero (i. e., his writings).

Aqu-a, æ, *water*.
 Aquil-a, æ, *eagle*.
 Aquitan-us, i, *Aquitanian* (people of Gaul).
 Arâr, (Arâr) is, *the Saone* (river of Gaul).
 *Ar-äre (av-, at-), *to plough*.
 Arbitr-ari (at-), dep., *to judge, think*.
 Arbor, (arbör) is, *f., tree*.
 Arcess-äre (arcessiv-, arcessit-), *to send for*.
 Arethus-a, æ, *Arethusa*.
 Argent-um, i, *silver*.
 Arid-um, i, *the sand* (neuter of aridus, a, um, *dry*).
 Ariovist-us, i, *Ariovistus*, a German chieftain.
 Aristides, (Aristid-) is, *Aristides*.
 Arma, orum, *arms*.
 Arm-äre (av-, at-), *to arm*.
 Arrip-äre (arripu-, arrept-, ad+rap-ere), *to snatch up, to seize*.
 Arroganti-a, æ, *haughtiness, obstinacy, arrogance*.
 Ars, (art) is, 293, *art*.
 Asper, a, um, *rough*.
 At, conj., *but*.
 Athenæ, arum, *Athens*.
 Atheniensis, is, *an Athenian*.
 Atque, conj., *and*.
 Atrox, (atrôc) is, 107, *fierce*.
 Attent-e, adv., *attentively*.
 Attent-us, a, um, *attentive*.
 Attic-a, æ, *Attica*.
 Atting-äre (attig-, attact-), *to touch on, border upon*.
 Auctoritas, (auctoritat) is, 293, *authority, influence*.
 Audacius, comp. of audacter, 376, *more boldly*.
 Audacter, adv., *boldly*.
 Aud-äre (ausus sum), *to dare*.
 Aud-ire (audiv-, audit-), *to hear*.
 Aug-äre (aux-, auct-), *to increase*.
 August-us, i, *Augustus*.
 Aur-um, i, *gold*.

Aut, conj., *or*.
 Autem, conj., 315, *but, moreover, also*.
 Auxili-um, i, *assistance; auxilia, pl., auxiliary troops*.
 Avar-us, i, *avaricious*.
 Avert-äre (avert-, avers-), *to turn away*.
 Avien-us, i, *Avienus*.
 Avis, (av) is, 300, *bird*.

B.

Barbar-us, a, um, *barbarian, foreign; used as a noun, a barbarian*.
 Beat-us, a, um, *happy*.
 Beat-e, 215, 1, *happily*.
 Belg-a, æ, *a Belgian*, people of Gaul.
 Bell-äre (av-, at-), *to wage war*.
 Bellicos-us, a, um, *warlike*.
 Bell-um, i, *war*.
 Benë, adv., *well*, 215, 1, H.
 Benefici-um, i, *good deed, act of kindness*.
 Benign-us, a, um, *kind*, with dat.
 Besti-a, æ, *beast, brute*.
 Bib-äre (bib-, bibit-), *to drink*.
 Bienni-um, i, *space of two years*.
 Bini, æ, a, dist., 189, *two apiece, two at a time*.
 Bis, 189, *twice*.
 Bonitas, (bonitat) is, 293 *goodness*.
 Bon-us, a, um, *good; bona, neut. pl., blessings, advantages*.
 Bos, bovis, 351, 2, *ox or cow*.
 Brevis, is, e, 104, *short*.
 Britanni-a, æ, *Britain*.
 Britann-us, i, *a Briton*.
 Brut-us, i, *Brutus*.

C.

Cad-äre (cecid-, cas-, 411, b), *to fall*.
 Cadm-us, i, *Cadmus*.
 Caduc-us, a, um, *frail*.
 Cæd-äre (cecid-, cæs-, 411, b), *to fell, kill, cut down*.
 Cæsar, (Cæsär) is, *Cæsar*.

Caius, i, *Caius*.
 Calamitas, (calamitat) is, *calamity*.
 Calcar, (calcar) is, 325, *spur*.
 Camp-us, i, *field, plain*.
 Can-is, (can) is, *c, dog*.
 Cant-äre (av-, at-), *to sing*.
 Cant-us, ūs, *singing*.
 Cap-äre (cēp-, capt-), *to take*.
 Captiv-us, i, *captive, prisoner*.
 Car-äre (caru-, 398), *to want, with abl*.
 Carmen, (carmin) is, 344, *a, song*.
 Caro, (carn) is, 340, *R., flesh*.
 Carthaginiensis, is, *a Carthaginian*.
 Carthago, (Carthagin) is, *Carthage*.
 Carr-us, i, *wagon*.
 Car-us, a, um, *dear*.
 Cassi-us, i, *Cassius*.
 Castell-um, i, *fortress, tower*.
 Castic-us, i, *Casticus*.
 Castra, orum, *camp*.
 Cas-us, ūs, *accident, chance*.
 Catamentales, edis, *Catamentales, proper name*.
 Catilin-a, æ, *Catiline, proper name*.
 Cato, (Catōn) is, *Cato*.
 Caus-a, æ, *cause, reason; abl, causa, for the sake of, 135, II., b; salutis causa, for the sake of safety*.
 Caut-us, a, um, *cautious*.
 Celebr-äre (av-, at-), *to celebrate*.
 Celer, (celer) is, 104, *swift*.
 Celeriter, adv., 215, 2, *b, swiftly*.
 Celta, æ, *a Celt, people of Gaul*.
 Centum, indecl., *a hundred*.
 Cens-äre (censu-, cens-), *to think, judge, believe*.
 Centurio, (centurion) is, *centurion*.
 Cern-äre (crev-, cret-), *to separate, decide, judge*.
 Cert-us, a, um, *certain; certiore facere, to make more certain, i. e., to inform*.
 Cerv-us, i, *stag*.
 Ceteri, orum, *the rest*.

Christ-us, i, *Christ*.
 Cicero, (Cicerōn) is, *Cicero*.
 Cing-äre (cinx-, cinct-), *to gird, surround*.
 Circa, prep. with acc., *about, around*.
 Circiter, prep. with acc., *about, near, circiter viginti, about twenty*.
 Circum, prep. with accus., *about, around*.
 Circumst-äre (or circumstāre), circumstēt, 391, 1, *to surround, to stand about*.
 Citō, adv., *quickly*.
 Cit-us, a, um, *quick, swift*.
 Civis, (civ) is, *c, citizen*.
 Civitas, (civitat) is, 293, *state*.
 Clamor, (clamōr) is, 319 *noise, clamour*.
 Clar-us, a, um, *illustrious*.
 Classis, (class-) is, 300, *fleet*.
 Claud-äre (claus-, claus-), *to shut*.
 Cliens, (client) is, *c., a dependant*.
 Cæl-um, i, *firmament, heaven*.
 Coem-äre (coēm-, coempt-), *to buy up (con+emere)*.
 Coen-äre (av-, at-), *to sup*.
 Coepi, used only in perf. tenses. *I begin, 611*.
 Cog-äre (coēg-, coact-), *to bring together, collect, compel*.
 Cogit-äre (av-, at-), *to think*.
 Cognosc-äre (cognov-, cognit-), *to learn, find out, know*.
 Cohors, (cohort) is, 293 *cohort, the tenth part of a legion*.
 Cohort-ari (at-), dep., *to encourage*.
 Col-äre (colu-, cult-), *to cultivate, serve, honour*.
 Collig-äre (collēg-, collect, con+legere), *to collect*.
 Collis, (coll) is, *m., 302, R., hill*.
 Colloc-äre (av-, at-), *to place*.
 Colloqui-um, i, *conference*.
 Color, (colōr) is, 319, *colour*.
 Columb-a, æ, *dove*. [burn up
 Comb-äre (combust-, combust-). *a*

Comes, (comit) is, *c. companion.*
 Comme-äre (av-, at-), *to go to, to go and return.*
 Commemor-äre (av-, at-), *to mention, to call to mind.*
 Committ-äre (commis-, commiss-), *to intrust to, with dative; prælum committ-äre, to join battle.*
 Commov-äre (commöv-, commöt-), *to move greatly, to excite.*
 Commun-äre (iv-, it-), *to fortify.*
 Communis, is, e, 104, *common.*
 Commut-äre (av-, at-), *to change.*
 Commutatio, (commutatio) is, *change.*
 Compar-äre (av-, at-), *to get together, procure.*
 Compell-äre (compul-, compuls-, con-+pellere), *to compel, drive on.*
 Comper-äre (comper-, compert-, 427, V.), *to find out, discover.*
 Complect-i (complex-), dep., *to embrace.*
 Compl-äre (compläv-, complät-, 395, II.), *to fill up.*
 Complures, ium, 327, *very many.*
 Con-ari (at-), *to attempt, try.*
 Conat-um, i, *attempt.*
 Conced-äre (concess-, concess-), *to yield to, to grant, give way.*
 Concess-us, üs, *grant.*
 Concili-äre (av-, at-), *to gain (for another).*
 Concili-um, i, *assembly, council.*
 Concit-äre (av-, at-), *to stir up, to excite.*
 Concupisc-äre (concupiv-), *to desire.*
 Concurr-äre (concurr-, concurs-), *to run together.*
 Condemn-äre (av-, at-), *to condemn, 348.*
 Conditio, (conditio) is, 333, R., *condition.*
 Conditör, (conditör) is, *builder, founder.* [lead or bring together.
 Conduc-äre (conduc-, conduct-), *to*

Conferre (contul-, collat-), *to bring together, contribute.*
 Confic-äre (confec-, confect-), *to finish.*
 Confid-äre (confisus sum), *to trust to, to confide in.*
 Confirm-äre (av-, at-), *to confirm, establish, affirm, fix.*
 Conflu-äre (conflux-, conflux-), *to flow together.*
 Congreg-äre (av-, at-), *to gather into flocks.*
 Congress-us, üs, *meeting.*
 Conjic-äre (conjec-, conject-, con-+jacere, 416), *to hurl.*
 Conjung-äre (conjunx-, conjunct-), *to join together, unite.*
 Conjur-äre (av-, at-), *to conspire, plot.*
 Conjuratio, (conjuratio) is, 333, R., *conspiracy.*
 Conjux, (conjug) is, *c. husband or wife.*
 Conscend-äre (conscend-, conscens-, con-+scandere, 309), *to climb up.*
 Conscisc-äre (consciv-, conscit-), *to decree, determine; mortem sibi consciscere, to commit suicide, 555.*
 Consci-us, a, um, *conscious, privy to*
 Conscrib-äre (conscrips-, conscript-), *to enrol, levy.*
 Consent-äre (consens-, consens-), *to agree.*
 Consid-äre (consed-, consess-), *to sit down, to encamp.*
 Consili-um, i, *plan, judgment, counsel, deliberation.*
 Consist-äre (constit-, constit-), *to stand, halt.*
 Conspect-us, üs, *sight, beholding.*
 Conspic-äre (conspex-, conspect-), *to see, get sight of.*
 Const-äre (stilt-, stit- or stat-), *to stand together, to halt.*
 Constitu-äre (constitu-, constitüt-

- con-+statuere), *to place, fix, appoint.*
 Consuesco-ëre (consuev-, consuet-), *to be accustomed.*
 Consuetudo, (consuetudin) is, 339, *custom, usage.*
 Consul, (constil) is, *consul*, chief magistrate of Rome.
 Consul-ëre (consulu-, consult-), *to consult.*
 Consult-um, i, *decree.*
 Consum-ëre (consumps-, consumpt-, con-+sumere), *to consume.*
 Contemn-ëre (contemps-, contempt-), *to despise.*
 Contempl-ari (at-), dep., *to contemplate.*
 Contend-ëre (contend-, content-), *to contend, strive after, hasten.*
 Content-us, a, um, *content*, with abl.
 Contin-ëre (continu-, content-, con-+tenere), *to contain, restrain, hold together.*
 Continens, (continent) is, 107, *successive, continued.*
 Continenter, 215, 2, b, *continually.*
 Contingit, impers., 580, *it happens.*
 Continuatio, (continuatiō) is, 333, R., *continuance.*
 Contra, prep. with accus., *against*; adv., *in opposition to.*
 Contrah-ëre (contrax-, contract-, con-+trahere), *to draw together, collect.*
 Convēn-ire (convēn-, convent-, con-+venire), *to come together, meet, agree.*
 Convent-us, ūs, *meeting, assembly.*
 Convert-ëre (convert-, convers-), *to turn completely round.*
 Convoc-ëre (av-, at-, con-+vocare), *to call together.*
 Coor-iri (coort-) dep., *to rise, as a storm.*
 Copi-a, æ, *abundance*; pl., *copias, arms, troops, forces.*
 Cor, (cord) is, n., *heart.*
 Corinth-us, i, f., *Corinth.*
 Corniger, a, um, *horned.*
 Corn-u, 111, *horn, wing of an ark.*
 Coron-a, æ, *crown.*
 Corpus, (corpōr) is, 344, b, *body.*
 Corrig-ëre (correx-, correct-, con-+regere), *to correct, make straight.*
 Corv-us, i, *crow.*
 Cras, adv., *to-morrow.*
 Crass-us, i, *Crassus.*
 Cre-ëre (av-, at-), *to create.*
 Creber, bra, brum, *frequent.*
 Cred-ëre (credid-, credit-), *to believe, intrust*, with dat.
 Crep-ëre (crepu-, crepit, 387, II), *to chide, creak* (as a door).
 Cresc-ëre (crēv-, crēt-), *to grow.*
 Crimen, (crimin) is, 344, a, *crime.*
 Cras, (crur) is, n., *leg.*
 Cubicul-um, i, *bed-chamber.*
 Cubile, (cubil) is, 314, *bed, place to lie down.*
 Culmen, (suhain) is, 344, a, *top, summit.*
 Culp-a, æ, *fault.*
 Cultus, ūs (from colere), *cultivation, civilization, refinement.*
 Cum, prep. with abl., *with*; cum, conj., same as quum, *when.*
 Cunct-ari (at-), dep., *to delay.*
 Cunct-us, a, um, *all, the whole.*
 Cup-ëre (io, 199, cupiv-, cupit-), *to desire.*
 Cupidē, adv., *with desire*, 215, 1 (cupidus).
 Cupiditas, (cupiditat) is, 293, *desire.*
 Cupid-us, a, um (with gen.), *desirous, eager.*
 Cūr, adv., *why.*
 Cur-a, æ, *care.*
 Cur-ëre (av-, at-), *to take care, to see that.*
 Curi-a, æ, *senate-house.*
 Curr-ëre (cucurr-, curs-, 411, a), *to run.*

Cursus *is*, *course, running.*

Custos. (*custod*) *is*, 25, *a, guard, guardian.*

Cyrus, *i*, *Cyrus.*

D.

Danubi-us, *i*, *Danube (river).*

D-äre (*ded-, dat-*), *to give.*

Dari-us, *i*, *Darius, Persian king.*

De, prep. with *abl.*, *of, from, concerning.* *De tertia vigilia*, *in (about, or after) the third watch.*

Deb-äre (*debu-, debit-*), *to owe—ought.*

Deced-äre (*decess-, decess-, de+cedere*), *to go away, depart, retire.*

Decem, indecl., *ten.*

Decern-äre (*decräv-, decrät-, 407*), *decree, determine.*

Decert-äre (*av-, at-*), *to contend, fight.*

Decet, *impers.*, 583, *deciit, it is becoming.*

Decim-us, *a, um, tenth.*

Ded-äre (*dedid-, dedüt-*), *to surrender.*

Deditio, (*deditiön*) *is*, 333, *R., surrender.*

Deduo-äre (*dedux-, deduct-*), *to lead away.*

De-esse (*defu-, de+esse*), *to be wanting (with dat.), to be away.*

Defend-äre (*defend-, defens-*), *to defend.*

Defess-us, *a, um* (part. of *defetisci*, *obsol.*), *wearied, worn out.*

Defic-äre (*defec-, defect-, de+facere*), *to fail, to be wanting, with dat.*

Delect-äre (*av-, at-*), *to delight.*

Del-äre (*deläv-, delät-*), *to destroy.*

Deliber-äre (*av-, at-*), *to deliberate.*

Delig-äre (*deläg-, delect-, de+legere*), *to choose.*

Demetri-us, *i*, *Demetrius (proper name).*

Demum, *adv.*, *finally, at last.*

Denique, *adv.*, *at last, in short.*

Dens, (*dent*) *is*, *m.*, 295, *R.* 1 *tooth.*

Dens-us, *a, um, thick, dense.*

Depon-äre (*deposu-, deposit-, de+ponere*), *to lay aside, put down.*

Deser-äre (*deseru-, desert-*), *to leave, desert.*

Desert-um, *i*, *a desert.*

Desil-äre (*desilu-, desult-, de+salire* 428), *to leap down.*

Design-äre (*av-, at-*), *to point out, allude to.*

Desper-äre (*av-, at-, de+sperare*), *to despair.*

Desperatio, (*desperatiön*) *is*, *despair.*

Deterr-äre (*deterru-, deterrit-*), *to deter, frighten from.*

Deus, *i*, *God*, 62, *R.*

Dic-äre (*dix-, dict-*), *to say, tell.*

Dictio, (*diction*) *is*, 333, *R.*, *speaking, pleading.*

Dies, *ei*, *day.*

Differre (*distal-, dilat-, dis+ferre*), *to differ, to put off.*

Difficilis, *is*, *e* (*dis+facilis*), *difficult.*

Dignitas, (*dignitat*) *is*, 293, *dignity, rank.*

Dign-us, *a, um, worthy, with abl.*

Diligens, (*diligent*) *is*, *careful, diligent.*

Diligenter, 215, 2, *b*, *carefully, diligently.*

Dilig-äre (*dilex-, dilect-, di+legere*), *to love (with esteem).*

Dimitt-äre (*dimis-, dimiss-, di+mittere*), *to send away, dismiss.*

Dirip-äre (*diripu-, dirept-, di+rapere*), *to plunder.*

Disced-äre (*discess-, discess-, dis+cedere*, 401, 3, *b*), *to go away, depart.*

Disc-äre (*didic-, 411, a*), *to learn.*

Discess-us, *is*, *departure.*

Disciplin-a, *is*, *instruction, discipline.*

Discipul-us, *i*, *scholar, pupil.*

Disert-us, a, um, *fluent, eloquent*.
 Displio-ère (displia-, displicit-, dis+placere), *to displease*, with dat.
 Dispon-ère (disposu-, disposit-, dis+ponere), *to place in different directions, arrange, dispose*.
 Disput-ère (av-, at-), *to dispute, discuss*.
 Dissent-ère (dissens-, dissens-, dis+sentire, 427, III.), *to differ in opinion, dissent*.
 Disser-ère (disseru-, dissert-, 407), *to treat of, discuss*.
 Dissolv-ère (dissolv-, dissolut-, dis+solvere), *to dissolve*.
 Dist-ère, *to be distant, or apart* (di+stare).
 Distribu-ère (distribu-, distribut-,) *to divide or distribute among*, 422.
 Ditissimus, superl. of dives.
 Diu, adv., *long*; compar., diutius, *longer*.
 Divers-us, a, um, *different*.
 Dives, (divit) is, 371, R. 1, *rich*.
 Divico, (Divicōn) is, *Divico*, proper name.
 Divid-ère (divis-, divis-), *to divide*.
 Divin-us, a, um, *divine*.
 Divitiac-us, i, *Divitiacus*, proper name.
 Divitiæ, arum, 57, R., *riches, wealth*.
 Doc-ère (docu-, doct-), *to teach*.
 Docilis, is, e, 104, *docile, teachable*.
 Dol-ère (dolu-, dolit-), *to grieve*.
 Dolor, (dolōr) is, 319, *grief, pain*.
 Dol-us, i, *fraud, deceit*.
 Dom-ère (domu-, domit-, 387, II.), *to subdue*.
 Domicili-um, i, *dwelling*.
 Domin-us, i, *master, of house or slaves*.
 Dom-us, i and us, 112, 3, *house, home*; domi, *at home*; domum, *to one's house*.
 Dorm-ère (dormiv-, dormit-), *to sleep*.
 Draco, (dracōn) is, 331, *dragon*.

Druides, um, *Druids, priests of ancient Britain*.

Dubit-ère (av-, at-), *to doubt, hesitate*.

Dubitatio, (dubitatio), is, 333, R., *doubt*.

Dubi-us, a, um, *doubtful*.

Duc-ère (dux-, duct-), *to lead*.

Dulcis, is, e, 104, *sweet*.

Dum, conj., *while, so long as, until*.

Dumnorix, (Dumnorig) is, *Dumnorix*, proper name.

Dao, two, 194.

Duodecim, indecl., *twelve*.

Duplic-ère (av-, at-), *to double*.

Dur-ère (-av-, at-), intrans., *to endure last*; trans., *to harden*.

Dur-us, a, um, *hard*.

Dux, (duc) is, *leader, guide, commander*.

E.

E or ex, prep. with abl., *out of from*.

Ecquis, interrog. pron., 178, 7, *any one?*

Ed-ère, or esse (ed-, es-, 601), *to eat*.

Educ-ère (av-, at-), *to train, educate*.

Educ-ère (edux-, educt-), *to lead out*.

Effect-us, ūs, *effect*.

Effemin-ère (av-, at-, ex+femina), *to effeminate, make womanish*.

Ego, I, 120.

Egregi-us, a, um, *excellent, remarkable*.

Elegans, (elegant) is, 107, *elegant*.

Eloquens, (eloquent) is, 107, *eloquent*.

Em-ère (ēm-, empt-), *to buy*.

Emic-ère (emicu-), 387, II., *to shine or flash forth*.

Enim, conj., *for*, 442, e.

Enunti-ère (av-, at-), *to divulge*.

Eo, adv., *there, to that place, on that account, by so much*.

Eodem, adv., *to the same place*.

Epistol-a, æ, *letter*.
Eques, (equit) is *horse soldier*.
Equester, tris, tre, 428, a, *belonging to cavalry*. **Equestri prælio**, in a *battle of cavalry*.
Equit-are (av-, at-), *to ride on horse-back*.
Equitat-us, ūs, *cavalry*.
Equ-us, i, *horse*.
Erip-ere (eripu-, erept, e+rapere), *to take away from, snatch away*.
Err-are (av-, at-) *to err, wander*.
Erump-ere (erūp-, erupt-), *to burst forth, sally out*.
Esse, to be, 650; **esse**, *to eat, see edere*.
Et, conj., *and*. **Et—et**, both—*and*.
Etenim, conj., *for*.
Etiam, conj., *also, even*.
Etsi, conj., *although*.
Europ-a, æ, *Europe*.
Evoc-are (av-, at-, e+vocare), *to call out*.
Ex, prep. with abl. See E.
Exced-ere (excess-, excess-, ex+cedere), *to go away, depart out of*.
Exclam-are (av-, at-), *to cry out*.
Excip-ere (excēp-, except-, ex+capere), *to receive*.
Excit-are (av-, at-), *to raise, kindle, excite*.
Excusatio, (excusation) is, 333, R., *excuse*.
Exe-dere (exēd-, exes-, ex+edere), *to eat up, consume, corrode*.
Exempl-um, i, *example*.
Exerc-ere (exercu-, exercit-), *to exercise, practice*.
Exercit-us, ūs, *army*.
Exigu-us, a, um, *small*.
Ex-ire (exiv- and exi-, exiit-), *to go out, depart*.
Existim-are (av-, at-), *to think, judge*.
Existimatio, (existimation) is, 333 R., *opinion*.
Expert-are (av-, at-), *to wait for*.

Expedit, impers., 583, *it is expedient*.
Expeditio, (expedition) is, 333, R., *military expedition*.
Expell-ere (expul-, expuls-, ex+pellere), *to expel, drive out*.
Expers, (expert) is, 107, *devoid of* with gen. or abl., 336.
Expet-ere (expetiv-, expetit-), *to covet, desire earnestly*.
Explorator, (explorator) is, 319, *scout*.
Expon-ere (exposu-, exposit-, ex+ponere), *to place out, set forth, explain*.
Expugn-are (av-, at-, ex+pugnare), *to take by storm*.
Extra, prep. with accus., *outside of without*.
Extrem-us, a, um, superl. of **exterus** 370, *the last, outermost*.
Exur-ere (exuss-, exust-, ex+urere), *to burn up*.

F.

Faber, bri, *artificer, workman*.
Fabul-a, æ, *fable, story*.
Fac-ere (io, fēc-, fact-), *to make, do*.
Facile, adv., *easily*.
Facilis, is, e, 104, *easy*.
Facultas, (facultāt) is, 293, *power of doing; hence means, resources*.
Facund-us, a, um, *eloquent*.
Fall-ere (fefell-, fals-), *to deceive*.
Fam-a, æ, *rumour, fame*.
Fames, (fam) is, 300, *hunger*.
Famili-a, æ, *family, gang of slaves*.
Familiaris, e, *belonging to the familia*. **Res familiaris**, *property*.
Fat-eri (fass-), dep., *to confess*.
Fat-um, i, *fate*.
Fav-ere (fav-, faut-, 395, v.), *to favour*.
Felix, (felix) is, 104, *happy*.
Femin-a, æ, *woman*.
Fer-a, æ, *wild beast*.
Fere, adv., *almost*.
Ferre (tul-, lat-, 596), *to bear*.

Feroca-us, a, um, *surlly*.
Ferox, (ferôc) is, 107, *fierce*.
Ferr-um, i, *iron*.
Festin-are (av-, at-), *to hasten*.
Fid-es, ei, *faith*.
Fieri (fact-), 600, used as pass. of facere; *to be made, to become*.
Figur-a, æ, *figure*.
Fili-a, æ, *daughter*, dat. and abl. pl. filiabus.
Fili-us, i, *son*, 62, R., 2.
Fin-is, (fin) is, m., *end, boundary*; fines, *boundaries, territories*.
Finitim-us, a, um, *neighbouring*.
Firm-us, a, um, *strong, firm*.
Fit, *it happens*, pres. indic. of fio, fieri.
Flagiti-um, i, *disgraceful crime, infamy*.
Flamma-a, æ, *flame*.
Fl-êre (flêv-, flêt-, 395, II.), *to weep*.
Flet-us, ùs, *weeping*.
Flos, (flôr) is, 331, b, *flower*.
Fluct-us, ùs, *wave*.
Flumen, (flumin) is, 344, a, *river*.
Fluvi-us, i, *river*.
Fœdus, (fœdër) is, 344, b, *treaty, league*.
Foli-um, i, *leaf*.
Fons, (font) is, m., 293, R., *fountain*.
Foris, (for) is, 300, *door*; used mostly in plur., fores.
Form-a, æ, *form*.
Formid-are (av-, at-), *to fear, be afraid of*.
Formos-us, a, um, *handsome*.
Forsitan, adv., *perhaps*.
Fort-e, adv., *by chance*.
Fort-is, is, e, 104, *brave*.
Fortiter, 215, 2, b, *bravely*.
Fortitudo, (fortitudin) is, 339, *fortitude, courage*.
Fortun-a, æ, *fortune*.
Fortunat-us, a, um, *fortunate*.
For-um, i, *forum*.
Foss-a, æ, *ditch*.

Fræn-um, i, *bridle*, 396; pl., fræni and fræna.
Frater, (fratr) is, *brother*.
Fratern-us, a, um, *fraternal*.
Fraus, (fraud) is, 293, *fraud*.
Frigus, (frigör) is, 344, b, *cold*.
Fruct-us, ùs, *fruit*.
Frument-âri (frumentat-), dep., *to collect corn*.
Frument-um, i, *corn*.
Frustra, adv., *in vain*.
Fug-a, æ, *flight*.
Fug-are (av-, at-), *to rout, put to flight*.
Fug-ax, (fugac) is, 107, *fugitive, fleeting*.
Fug-êre (io, fûg-, fugit), *to flee*.
Fulgur, (fulgür) is, 325, *lightning*.
Fund-ere (fûd-, fûs-), *to pour out, to overthrow, discomfit*.
Funditor, (funditör) is, 319, *slinger*.
Futur-us, a, um, *future*.

G.

Galb-a, æ, *Galba*.
Galli-a, æ, *Gaul*.
Gallin-a, æ, *hen*.
Gall-us, i, *a Gaul*.
Garumn-a, æ, *Garonne (river)*.
Gaud-êre (gavisus sum), *to rejoice*.
Gaudi-um, i, *joy*.
Gener, i, *son-in-law*.
Genev-a, æ, *Geneva*.
Gens, (gent) is, 293, *nation*.
Genus, (gener) is, 344, b, *race, class*.
Ger-êre (gess-, gest-), *to carry on, gerere bellum, to carry on war*.
German-us, i, *a German*.
Gladi-us, i, *sword*.
Glori-a, æ, *glory*.
Græc-us, a, um, *Greek*.
Grando, (grandin) is, 339, *hail*.
Grati-a, æ, *influence, favour, popularity*.
Gratul-âri (gratulat-), dep., *to congratulate*.

Grat-us, a, um, *agreeable*.

Gravis, is, e, *heavy, severe*.

Graviter, adv., *heavily, disagreeable*; graviter fert, *he is indignant at*.

Gregatim, adv., *in flocks*.

Gubern-are (av-, at-), *to steer, direct, govern*.

Gubernator, (gubernatōr) is, 319, *pi-lot, governor*.

H.

Hab-ēre (habu-, habit-), *to have, hold, esteem*.

Hannibal, (Hannibal) is, *Hannibal*.

Haud, adv., *not*.

Helveti-us, i, *a Helvetian*.

Herb-a, æ, *herb*.

Hercyni-us, a, um, *Hercynian*; Hercynia sylva, *the Hercynian forest*.

Heri, adv., *yesterday*.

Hibern-a, orum, *winter-quarters*.

Hiberni-a, æ, *Ireland*.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*, 156.

Hiem-are (av-, at-), *to winter*.

Hiems, (hiem) is, 293, *winter*.

Hirundo, (hirundin) is, 339, *swallow*.

Hispani-a, æ, *Spain*.

Hispan-us, i, *a Spaniard*.

Histori-a, æ, *history*.

Hodie, adv., *to-day*.

Homer-us, i, *Homer*.

Homo, (homin) is, m., *man*.

Honest-e, adv., *honourably*.

Honest-us, a, um, *honourable*.

Honor, (honōr) is, 319, *honour*.

Hor-a, æ, *hour*.

Horati-us, i, *Horace*.

Hort-ari (hortat-), *to exhort, dep*.

Hort-us, i, *garden*.

Hospes, (hospit) is, c, *guest, host*.

Hostis, (host) is, c, *enemy*.

Human-us, a, um, *human*.

Humanitas, (humanitāt) is, 293, *cultivation, refinement, humanity*.

Humilis, is, e, 107 *low*.

I.

Ibi, adv., *there*.

Idem, eadem, idem, *the same*, 150.

Idone-us, a, um, *fit, suitable*.

Idus, iduum (4th declen.), *the Ides* 112, 2.

Ignavi-a, æ, *indolence, cowardice*.

Ignav-us, a, um, *indolent, cowardly*.

Ignis, (ign) is, m., 302, R., *fire*.

Ignomini-a, æ, *disgrace, ignominy*.

Ignor-are (av-, at-), *to be ignorant*.

Ignoratio, (ignoratiō) is, 333, R., *ignorance*.

Ille, illa, illud, *this, that*, 158.

Imago, (imagin) is, 339, *image*.

Imbef, (imbr) is, 320, *shower of rain*.

Immemor, (immemor) is, 107, *unmindful, with gen*.

Immens-us, a, um, *immense*.

Immortalis, is, e, 104, *immortal*.

Impediment-um, i, *hinderance*; impedimenta, pl., *the baggage of an army*.

Imped-ire (iv-, it-), *to hinder, impede*.

Impend-ere, *to hang over*.

Imper-are (av-, at-), *to command, with dat*.

Imperator, (imperatōr) is, 319, *commander, general*.

Imperi-um, i, *command*.

Impetr-are (av-, at-), *to accomplish, effect, obtain*.

Impet-us, ūs, *onset, attack*; impetum facere, *to make an attack*.

Impiē, adv., 215, 1, *impiously*.

Impi-us, a, um, *impious*.

Impl-ere (implēv-, implēt-), *to fill up*.

Implor-are (av-, at-), *to implore*.

Impon-ere (imposu-, imposit-, in-ponere, 407), *to place in or upon*.

Import-are (av-, at-), *to bring in import*.

Improb-us, a, um, *wicked, dishonest*.

In, prep. with acc., *into, against* with abl., *in, among*.

- Incend-ère (incend-, incens-), *to set fire to, to burn.*
 Incert-us, a, um, *doubtful, uncertain.*
 Incip-ère (io, incēp-, incept-), *to begin.*
 Incol-a, æ, *inhabitant.*
 Incol-ère (incola-, incult-), *to dwell in, inhabit.*
 Incommod-um, i, *inconvenience.*
 Incredibilis, is, e, 104, *incredible.*
 Increp-ère (increpa-, increpit-, 390), *to chide.*
 Incus-ère (av-, at-), *to blame.*
 Inde, adv., *thence.*
 Indici-um, i, *private information.*
 Indign-us, a, um, *unworthy.*
 Induc-ère (indux-, induct-), *to lead to, induce.*
 Indulg-ère (induls-, indult-), *with dat., to indulge.*
 Ineptiæ, arum, 57, R., *folly.*
 Inerti-a, æ, *idleness.*
 Infans, (infant) is, c, *infant; (in-fari, that cannot speak).*
 Inferior, (inferiōr) is, comp. of inferus, 370, *inferior, lower.*
 Inferre (intul-, illat-, in-ferre), *to bring upon; bellum alicui inferre, to wage war upon any one.*
 Ingeni-um, i, *talent.*
 Ingens, (ingent) is, 107, *great, enormous.*
 Inimicitia, æ, *enmity.*
 Inimic-us, a, um, *hostile, unfriendly, with dat.*
 Initi-um, i, *beginning.*
 Injuri-a, æ, *injury, outrage.*
 Injust-us, a, um, *unjust.*
 Innocens, (innocent) is, 107, *innocent.*
 Innocenti-a, æ, *innocence.*
 Innumerabilis, is, e, 104, *innumerable.*
 Inops, (inop) is, 107, *poor.*
 Inquam. *I say; inquit, says he, 610.*
- Insciens, (inscient) is, 107, *not knowing.*
 Insect-um, i, *insect.*
 Insequ-i (insecūt-), dep., *to pursue.*
 Insidi-æ, arum, 57, R., *snares, ambush.*
 Instig-ère (av-, at-), *to instigate.*
 Institut-um, i, *purpose, plan, usage.*
 Instru-ère (instrux-, instruct-, in-struere), *to draw up in battle or ray.*
 Insul-a, æ, *island.*
 Intellig-ère (intellex-, intellect-), *to perceive, understand.*
 Intent-us, a, um, *intent, bent upon.*
 Inter, prep. with accus., *between among.*
 Interced-ère (intercess-, intercess-), *to intervene.*
 Interdiu, adv., *by day.*
 Interdum, adv., *sometimes.*
 Inter-ease (interfu-), *to be among, to differ; nihil interest, it makes no difference.*
 Interfecto-, (interfectōr) is, 319 *slayer.*
 Interfic-ère (interfēc-, interfect-, in-ter-facere), *to slay, kill.*
 Interim, adv., *in the mean while.*
 Interitus, ūs, *perishing, destruction, death.*
 Interregn-um, i, *interreign.*
 Interrog-ère (av-, at-), *to ask, interrogate.*
 Intu-eri (intuit-), dep., *to look upon.*
 Inven-ire (invēn-, invent-), *to find, discover.*
 Invoc-ère (av-, at-), *to call upon, invoke.*
 Ipse, a, um, 159, *self.*
 Ir-a, æ, *anger.*
 Iracundi-a, æ, *wrathfulness, wrath.*
 Ire (iv-, it-), 605, *to go.*
 Irrump-ère (irrup-, irrupt-, in-trum-pere), *to break into.*
 Is, ea, id, *this, that, he, she, it* 133

Iste a, ud, *that*, 157.

Ita, adv., *so, thus*.

Itali-a, æ, *Italy*.

Iter, (itiner) is, n., *journey, way, march*.

J.

Jac-ère (jēc-, jact-), *to cast, hurl*.

Jact-äre (av-, at-), *to discuss*.

Jacul-um, i, *dart*.

Jam, adv., *now, already*.

Jan-us, i, *Janus*.

Jub-ère (juss-, juss-), *to order*.

Jucund-us, a, um, *pleasant*.

Judex, (judic) is, 306, *judge*.

Judic-äre (av-, at-), *to judge*.

Judici-um, i, *trial, judgment*.

Jugurth-a, æ, *Jugurtha*.

Jug-um, i, *yoke*.

Jument-um, i, *beast of burden*.

Jung-ère (junx-, junct-), *to join*.

Juno, (Junōn) is, f., *Juno* (goddess).

Jupiter, Jovis, 351, *Jupiter*.

Jur-a, æ, *Jura* (mountain east of Gaul).

Jur-äre (av-, at-), *to swear*.

Jus, (jūr) is, 344, *law, right*.

Juss-us, ūs, *command*.

Justiti-a, æ, *justice*.

Just-us, a, um, *just*.

Juv-äre (jāv-, jūt-), *to help*.

Juvenis, is, *a youth*.

Juventus, (juventāt) is, 293, *youth*.

Juxta, prep. with acc., *near*.

K.

Kalend-æ, arum, *Kalends*.

L.

Labienus, i, *Labienus*, one of Cæsar's lieutenant-generals.

Labor, (labōr) is, 319, *labour, toil*.

Labor-äre (av-, at-), *to labour*.

Lac, (lact) is, 346, 2, *milk*.

Lacess-ère (iv-, it-, 406, III., b), *to provoke, harass*.

Lacrym-a, æ, *tear*

Lac-us, ūs, *lake*.

Lapis, (lapid) is, 295, 3, *stone*.

Larg-iri (it-), dep., *to give largess, to bribe*, 515.

Larg-iter, adv., 215, 2, b, *largely*; largiter potest, *he can largely*, i. e., *he is quite powerful*.

Lat-ē, adv., 215, 1, *widely* (lat-us, wide).

Latin-us, a, um, *Latin*.

Latitudo, (latitudin) is, 340, *breadth* (from latus, broad).

Latus, adv., *more widely* (compar of latē, 376).

Latro, (latron) is, 331, a, *robber*.

Lat-us, a, um, *broad, wide*.

Laud-äre (av-, at-), *to praise*.

Laus, (laud) is, 293, *praise*.

Legatio, (legation) is, 333, R., *embassy*.

Legat-us, i, *lieutenant, ambassador*.

Lēg-ère (lēg-, lect-, 416, a), *to read*.

Legio, (legion) is, 333, R., *legion*.

Lemann-us, i, *Lake Lemman*, or *Geneva*.

Leo, (leon) is, 333, *lion*.

Lepus, (lepōr) is, m., 345, 4, *hare*.

Lev-äre (av-, at-), *to lighten, alleviate*.

Lex, (leg-) is, 293, *law*.

Libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly*.

Liber, libri, 64, *book*.

Liberalitas, (liberalitat) is, 293, *liberality*.

Liber-ō, 215, 1, *freely* (from liber free).

Liber-i, orum, 65, R., *children*.

Liber-tas, (libertat) is, 293, *freedom, liberty*.

Libet, 583, libebat, libuit, or libitum est, impera., *it is agreeable, it pleases, it suits*.

Lic-ēri (licit), dep., *to bid money, to offer a price*.

Licet, licuit, licitum est, *it is allowed, it is lawful, one must*. 583.

Lili-um, i, *lily*.
 Lingu-a, æ, *language*.
 Litter-a, æ, *a letter* (as of the alphabet); litter-æ, arum (pl.), *a letter*, i. e., *an epistle*.
 Littus, (littor) is, 344, *b, shore*.
 Livi-us, i, *Livy*, a Roman historian.
 Loc-us, i, pl., i and a, 309, *place*.
 Long-æ, adv., 215, 1, *far, long*: (long-us.)
 Longitudo, (longitudin) is, 339, *length*: (longus.)
 Long-us, a, um, *long*.
 Loqu-ġ(locūt-), dep., *to speak*.
 Lūbet. See libet.
 Luct-us, ūs, *grief*.
 Lud-ġre (lūs-, lūs-, 401, 3, b), *to play*.
 Lud-us, i, *sport, game, play*.
 Lun-a, æ, *moon*.
 Lup-us, i, *wolf*.
 Lux, (luc) is, 293, *light*.

M.

Macul-are (av-, at-), *to stain*.
 Magis, adv., *more*.
 Magister, tri (64), *master, teacher*.
 Magistrat-us, ūs, *a magistrate*.
 Magnanimus, a, um (magn-us+animus), *high-spirited, magnanimous*.
 Magnitudo, (magnitudin) is (340), *extent, greatness*.
 Magnus, a, um, *great*; comp., major, *greater*.
 Malē, adv. (215, 1, B.), *badly*.
 Maleficium, i (800, 2), *evil deed, crime*.
 Malle (592), *to be more willing, to prefer*; perf., malui.
 Mālum, i, *evil, misfortune*.
 Man-ġre (mans-, mans-), 665, III., *to remain*.
 Manus, ūs (f., 112, 2), *hand, band of soldiers*.
 Mare, (mar) is (314), *sea*.

Massilia, æ, *Marseilles*.
 Mater, (matr) is (f., 25, 2), *mother*.
 Matrimonium, i, *matrimony*.
 Matrona, æ, *the Marne*, a river of Gaul.
 Matur-are (av-, at-), *to hasten*.
 Maxim-ē (adv., 376), *most, most greatly, in the highest degree*.
 Maxim-us, a, um (sup. of magnus, 370), *greatest*.
 Me (acc. and abl. of ego, I), *me*: mecum, *with me* (125, II., b).
 Medicin-a, æ, *medicine*.
 Mediterrane-us, a, um, *Mediterranean* (medi-us+terr-a).
 Medi-us, a, um, *middle*.
 Meli-us, adv. (376), *better*.
 Memini (defect., 611), *I remember*; meminisse, *to remember*.
 Memori-a, æ, *memory*; memoria tenēre, *to hold in memory, to remember*.
 Mens, (ment) is, f., *mind*.
 Mercatōr, (mercator) is (319), *merchant*.
 Meridi-es, ei (m., 115), *mid-day, noon*.
 Merit-um, i, *merit, desert*.
 Metall-um, i, *metal*.
 Met-ġre (messu-, mess-, 666, II., o), *to reap*.
 Met-iri (mens-), dep., *to measure*.
 Metu-ġre (metu-, 666, VI., a), *to fear*.
 Me-us, a, um (122), *my, mine*.
 Mic-are (micu-, 664, II.), *to glitter, shine*.
 Migr-are (av-, at-), *to migrate*.
 Miles, (milit) is, *soldier*.
 Mille (sing. indecl., pl. millia, iura) *thousand*.
 Minerv-a, æ, *Minerva*.
 Minim-us, a, um, *least* (superl. of parvus, 370).
 Minor (minus), 358, *less* (compar. of parvus, 370).
 Minu-ġre (minu-, minūt-), *to diminish*.

Mirabil-is, is, e, *wonderful*.
 Mirific-us, a, um, *causing wonder, astonishing* (mir-us+facere).
 Miser, a, um (77, b), *miserable, wretched*.
 Miseret (impers., 579, a), *one pities; me miseret, I pity*.
 Mitig-äre (av-, at-), *to mitigate*.
 Mitt-äre (mis-, miss-, 401, 3, b), *to send*.
 Mod-us, i, *measure, manner*.
 Mœnia, ium (used only in pl.), *walls*.
 Mœror, (mœrôr) is (319), *sadness*.
 Mon-äre (monu-, monit-), *to advise, warn, remind*.
 Monstr-äre (av-, at-), *to show*.
 Mord-äre (momord-, mors-, 395, IV.), *to bite, champ*.
 Mor-i, and mor-iri (mort-), dep., *to die*.
 Mortal-is, is, e, *mortal*.
 Mors, (mort) is, 293, *death*.
 Mos, (môr) is, 331, 1, b, *custom, manner*.
 Mot-us, ūs, *motion, moving*.
 Mov-äre (môv-, môt-, 395, V.), *to move*.
 Mûlier, (mûlier) is, (f.), *woman*.
 Multitudo, (multitudin) is, 340, *multitude*.
 Mult-us, a, um, *much, many*.
 Mund-us, i, *world*.
 Mun-äre (iv-, it-), *to fortify*.
 Munitio, (munition) is, 333, R., *fortification*.
 Munus, (muner) is, 344, 3, b, *office, gift*.
 Murus, i, *wall*.
 Mut-äre (äv-, ät-), *to change*.

N.

Nac, conj., *for*.
 Nasc-i (nât-), dep., *to be born, spring from*.
 Nat-äre (äv-, ät-), *to swim*.
 Naut-a, æ (m.), *sailor*

Natio, (natiôn) is, 333, R., *nation*.
 Natur-a, æ, *nature*.
 Naval-e, (naval) is, 314, *a dock-yard*.
 Navigatio, (navigatiôn) is, 333, R., *navigation, voyage*.
 Nav-is, (nav) is, 300, *ship*.
 Nê, interrogative particle, 135, II., a.
 Nê, adv., *not*, used imperatively 534, a, conj., *that not*, 548, b.
 Nec, conj., *nor*.
 Neg-äre (äv-, ät-), *to deny, refuse*.
 Neglig-äre (neglex-, neglect-, 666, V., a), *to neglect*.
 Negligens, (negligent) is, 197, *negligent*.
 Negoti-um, i, *matter, business*.
 Nemo, (nemin) is, c, *no one*.
 Neque, conj., *neither, nor*, 515.
 Nequidem, adv., *not even*, 217; always separated by the words which have the emphasis; e. g. ne Socrates quidem, *not even Socrates*.
 Nervi-us, i, *a Nervian* (people of Gaul).
 Nerv-us, i, *a sinew*.
 Nesc-äre (iv-, it-), *to be ignorant, not to know* (ne+scire).
 Neuter, tra, trum, 194, 1, *neither of the two*.
 Nidific-äre (äv-, at-), *to build a nest* (nidus+facere).
 Niger, nigra, nigrum, 77, a, *black*.
 Nihil, n., indecl., *nothing*.
 Nimi-us, a, um, *too much*.
 Nit-i (nis- and nix-), dep., *to strive*.
 Nisi, conj., *unless, if not*.
 Nobilis, is, e, *noble, illustrious*.
 Nobilitas, (nobilitat) is, 293, *nobility*.
 Noc-äre (nocû-, nocît-), *to hurt, with dat*.
 Noctû, adv., *by night*.
 Nolle, nolui, *to be unwilling*, 592.
 Nomen, (nomin) is, 344, a, *name*.
 Nôn, adv., *not*

Nonne, interrogative particle (expects answer *yes*)

Nonnullus, a, um, *some*; nonnulli, *some (persons)*.

Nonnunquam, adv., *sometimes*.

Non-us, a, um, *ninth*.

Nos, *we*, 120.

Nos-ere (nōv-, nōt-), *to learn, know*.

Noster, tra, trum, 122, *our*.

Nōv-i (gen. of novus), *news*, 174 (vocab.).

Nōv-i, defective, *I know*, 611; *novisse, to know*.

Novissimus, a, um (superl. of novus), *newest, latest*; novissimum agmen, *the rear-rank*.

Novitas, (novitāt) is, 293, *novelty (novus)*.

Nov-us, a, um, *new*.

Nox, (noct) is, 293, *night*.

Nub-es, (nub) is, 300, *cloud*.

Nud-us, a, um, *naked*.

Nullus, a, um, gen. nullius, dat. nulli, 194, 1, *no one, none*.

Num (interrog. particle), *whether* (expects the answer *no*, 174).

Numa, æ (m.), *Numa*.

Numer-us, i, *number*.

Nunti-are (āv-, āt-), *to announce*.

Nunti-us, i, *a messenger*.

Nunquam, adv., *never*.

Nuptiæ, arum, 57, R., *a marriage*.

Nutrix, (nutric) is, 293, *nurse*.

O.

Ob (prep. with acc.), *on account of*.

Obseratus, a, um, *a debtor*.

Obscur-are (av-, at-), *to obscure*.

Obsecr-are (av-, at-), *to beseech*.

Obses, (obsid) is (c), *hostage*.

Obstring-ere (obstrinx-, obstrict-) *to bind*: ob+stringere.

Obtin-ere (obtinu-, obtent-), *to hold, maintain*: ob+tenere.

Occas-us, ūs, *setting, e. g., of the sun*; occasus solis *sunset* 118, II., c.

Occidens, (occident) is, m. (sol understood), *west*.

Occid-ere (occid-, occas-, ob+cadere), *to fall, set, die*.

Occid-ere (occid-, occis-, ob+cadere), *to slay, kill*.

Occup-are (av-, at-), *to seize, take possession of*.

Oceanus, i, *ocean*.

Octavus, a, um, *eighth*.

Octoginta (indecl.), *eighty*

Octoni, æ, a, *eight each, eight at a time*, 197.

Ocul-us, i, *eye*.

Odi (defect., 611), *I hate*; odisse, *to hate*.

Odi-um, i, *hatred*.

Offend-ere (offend-, offens-, ob+fendere), *to offend*.

Olim, adv., *once upon a time, formerly*.

Omnino, adv., *altogether, in all*.

Omnis, is, e, *all, every, the whole*; omnis res, *the whole affair*.

Onus, (oner) is, 344, b, *burden, load*.

Oper-a, æ, *toil, labour*.

Oportet (impers., 583), oportebat, oportuit, *it behooves, one ought*.

Oppidan-us, a, um, *of or belonging to a town, a townsman*.

Oppid-um, i, *a town*.

Opprim-ere (oppress-, oppress-, ob+premere), *to repress, crush*.

Oppugn-are (av-, at-), *to attack, besiege* (ob+pugnare).

Ops, opis, 293, *power*; opes, *resources, means*.

Optim-us, a, um, *best (superl. of bonus)*.

Opulens, (opulent) is, 107, *rich, opulent*.

Opus, (oper) is, 344, b, *work*.

Oracul-um, i, *oracle*.

Or-are (av-, at-), *to pray, beg, beseech*.

Oratio, (oration) is, 333, R., *oration speech*.

Orator, (orator) is, 319, *orator*.
Orb-is, (orb) is (m., 302, R.), *orb, circle*; *orbis terrarum, the world*.
Ordo, (ordin) is (m., 340, exc.), *order*.
Orgetorix, (Orgetorig) is, *Orgetorix*, a Helvetian chieftain.
Origo, (origin) is, 339, *origin*.
Or-iri (ort-), dep., *to rise*.
Orn-äre (av-, at-), *to adorn*.
Ornatus, a, um, *adorned*, part. of ornare.
Ostend-äre (ostend-, ostens-, ob+tendere), *to show*.
Ostent-äre (av-, at-), *to vaunt*.

P.

Pabulatio, (pabulation) is, 333, R., *foddering, foraging*.
Pæne, adv., *almost*.
Pag-us, i, *village, canton*.
Palüs, (palüd) is, 293, *marsh*.
Par-äre (av-, at-), *to prepare*.
Parat-us, a, um, *prepared, ready* (part. pass. of parare).
Parc-äre (peperc-, pars- and parcit-, 666, IV., b), *to spare, with dat.*
Par-äre (paru-), with dat., *to obey*.
Pars, (part) is, 293, *part*.
Parsimoni- a, um, *parsimony, frugality*.
Parv-us, a, um, *small, little*.
Pastor, (pastör) is, 319, *shepherd*.
Pater, (patr) is, *father*; *patres, um, patricians of Rome*.
Pat-äre (patü-), *to be open, extend*.
Pat-i, (pass-), dep., *to suffer*.
Patienter, adv., 215, 2, b, *patiently*.
Patienti-a, æ, *patience, endurance*.
Paucitas, (paucitat) is, 293, *fewness*.
Pauci, æ, a, *few*.
Paullisper, adv., *for a little while*.
Paullo, adv., *a little*; *paullo longius, a little too far*.
Pauper, (pauper) is, 107, *poor*.
Paupertas, (paupertat) is, 293, *poverty*.

Pax, (pac) is, 293, *peace*.
Pecco-äre (av-, at-), *to sin*.
Peccat-um, i, *sin*.
Pecuni-a, æ, *money*.
Pedes, (pedit) is, 306, *foot-soldier*.
Pell-äre (pepül-, puls-, 411, b), *to drive, rout, expel, defeat*.
Pellis, (pell) is, 300, *hide, skin*.
Pend-äre (pepend-, pens-, 666, IV., a), *to weigh, pay*.
Pene, adv., *almost*.
Peninsul-a, æ, *peninsula* (pene+insula).
Per (prep. with accna.), *through, during*.
Perdives, (perdivit-) is, 107, *very rich*.
Pèrduc-äre (perdux-, perduct-, per+ducere), *to lead through, bring along*.
Perfacilis, is, e, *very easy*.
Perferre (pertül-, perlat-, per+ferre), *to convey, bear through*.
Perfic-äre (perfec-, perfect-, per+facere), *to accomplish, finish, bring to pass*.
Perfring-äre (perfreg-, perfract-, per+frangere), *to break through*.
Perfug-a, æ, *deserter*.
Perg-äre (perrex-, perrect-), *to go on, go straight*.
Pericul-um, i, *danger*.
Per-ire (peri-, perit-, per+ire), *to perish*.
Peritus, a, um, *skilful, skilled in* (with gen.).
Permöv-äre (permöv-, permöt-), *to move thoroughly, to induce*.
Pernici-es, ei, *destruction*.
Perpauci, æ, a, *very few*.
Perpetu-us, a, um, *perpetual*.
Perrump-äre (perrüp-, perrupt-, per+rumpere), *to break through*.
Pers-a, æ, *a Persian*.
Persequ-i (persecüt-, per+sequi) dep., *to follow after, pursue*.

- Persever-äre** (äv-, ät-), *to persevere*.
Persolv-äre (persolv-, persolüt-, per-
 +solvere), *to pay up, pay in full*;
 pœnas persolvere, *to suffer full*
punishment.
Perspic-äre (perspex-, perspect-), *to*
observe, get sight of. see plainly.
Persuad-äre (persuas-, persuas-), *to*
persuade, convince.
Perterr-äre (perterru-, perterrît-), *to*
frighten thoroughly.
Pertin-äre (pertinu-, per-+tenere), *to*
reach, belong to, extend to.
Perturb-äre (äv-, ät-), *to disturb, con-*
found.
Perven-äre (vên-, vent-), *to arrive at,*
come to.
Pes, (ped) is (m., 295, 3), *foot*; pe-
 dem referre, *to draw back the*
foot, to retreat.
Pet-äre (petiv-, petit-), *to seek, aim*
at, strive after.
Petr-a, æ, *rock*.
Phalanx, (phalang) is, 293, *phalanx*.
Pharsalus, i, *Pharsalus, a town in*
Thessaly.
Philosoph-ari (ät-), dep., *to philoso-*
phize.
Piget (impers., 579, a), *piguit, it*
grieves, pains, disgusts; I am
[grieved at].
Pil-um, i, *javelin*.
Pisc-is, (pisc) is (m., 302, R.), *fish*.
Pius, a, um, *pious*.
Plac-äre (placû-, placit-), *to please*
(with dat.).
Placet (impers., 584, a), *placuit, it*
pleases; Cæsari placuit, Cæsar
determined.
Placid-us, a, um, *calm, placid*.
Plant-a, æ, *plant*.
Plan-us, a, um, *level, plain*.
Plato, (Platôn) is, *Plato*.
Plebs, (plêb) is, 293, *common people*.
Plen-us, a, um, *full*.
Plerique, pleræque, pleraque, *most,*
the greater part.
Plerumque, adv., *for the most part*.
Plum-a, æ, *feather*.
Plurim-us, a, um (superl. of multus),
most, very many.
Plurimum, adv., *very much, in the*
highest degree.
Pocul-um, i, *cup*.
Pœn-a, æ, *punishment*; pœnas per-
 solvere, *pay the full penalty*.
Pœnitet (impers., 579), *pœnituit, it*
repents; me pœnitet, I repent.
Pœt-a, æ (m.), *poet*.
Pompeius, i, *Pompey*.
Pon-äre (posû-, posit-), *to place,*
castra ponere, to pitch the camp.
Pons, (pont) is (m., 295, 1), *bridge*.
Popul-ari (ät-), dep., *to plunder, lay*
waste.
Popul-us, i, *people*.
Port-a, æ, *gate*.
Port-äre (äv-, ät-), *to carry*.
Port-ûs, ûs, *harbour*.
Portori-um, i, *tax, customs duty*.
Posc-äre (poposc-, 411, a), *to demand*
(admits two accusatives).
Posse, potui, *to be able, can*, 587.
Possessio, (possessiôn) is, 333, R.,
possession.
Possid-äre (possêd-, possess-), *to*
possess.
Post, prep. with acc., *after, behind*.
Postea, adv., *afterward*.
Poster-us, a, um, *after*; postero die,
on the day after, on the next day.
Postquam, adv., *after that*.
Postul-äre (äv-, ät-), *to demand*.
Potens, (potent) is, 107, *powerful*.
Potestas, (potestat) is, 293, *power*.
Pot-iri (it-), dep., with gen. or abl
to acquire, get possession of.
Præ (prep. with abl.), *before*.
Præb-äre (præbu-, præbit-), *to af-*
ford.
Præced-ere (cess-, cess-), *to go be-*
fore, excel.
Præceps, (præcipit) is, 107, *headlong*

Præceptor. (præceptōr) is, *a teacher, preceptor.*

Præcept-um, i, *precept.*

Præcip-ère (cēp-, cēpt-, præ + capere), *to command, enjoin.*

Præclar-us, a, um, *illustrious.*

Præco, (præcōn) is, *herald.*

Præd-a, æ, *booty, prey.*

Præd-ari (at-), dep., *to plunder, get booty.*

Prædic-äre (av-, at-), *to declare.*

Prædo, (prædōn) is, *pirate.*

Præesse, præfui, *to be over, command* (præ + esse), with dat.

Præferre (tñl-, lat-), *to prefer.*

Præfic-ère (fē-, fect-, præ + facere), *to place over.*

Præmitt-ère (mīd-, miss-), *to send before.*

Præmi-um, i, r, *ward.*

Prænunti-a, or prænuncia, æ, *harbinger.*

Præsertim, adv., *especially.*

Præsid-i-um, i, *garrison, defence.*

Præstans, (præstant) is, 107, *excellent.*

Præst-äre (stit-, stit-), *to stand before, excel.*

Præter, prep. with acc., *besides, except.*

Præter-ire (iv- and i-, it-, præter + ire, 605, 2), *to pass by.*

Prætor, (prætōr) is, *a prætor* (Roman magistrate).

Preti-um, i, *price, reward.*

Prex. (prec) is, 293, *prayer.*

Primus, a, um, *first.*

Princeps, (princip) is, 107, *chief* (used only as a noun).

Principat-ūs, ūs, *chieftainship, chief authority.*

Principi-um, i, *beginning, principle.*

Pristin-us, a, um, *ancient, former.*

Privatim, adv., *privately.*

Privat-us, a, um, *private.*

Priusquam, adv., *before that.*

Pro (prep. with abl.), *before, for, in view of.*

Prob-äre (av-, at-), *to prove.*

Prob-itas, (probität) is, 293, *honesty.*

Prob-us, a, um, *honest.*

Proced-ère (cess-, cess-, 401, 3, b), *to advance, go forward.*

Procell-a, æ, *tempest.*

Procurr-ère (curr-, curs-, pro + currere), *to run forward.*

Prod-esse (pro + esse), *to profit, with dat.*

Prælium, i, *battle, fight.*

Profectio, (profection) is, 333, B., *setting out, departure.*

Proficisc-i (profect-), dep., *to set out, depart.*

Prohib-ère (prohibu-, prohibit-, pro + habere), *to restrain, keep off.*

Projic-ère (jēc-, ject-, pro + jacere), *to throw forward, throw.*

Prope (prep. with acc.), *near, nigh to; propius, nearer; proxime, nearest.*

Propell-ère (pal-, puls-, pro + pellere), *drive on, drive away.*

Proper-äre (av-, at-), *hasten.*

Propinquus, a, um, *near to, related to; propinquus* (used as noun), *a relation.*

Propius. See prope.

Propon-ère (posu-, posit-, pro + ponere), *to set before, propose.*

Propter (prep. with accus.), *on account of.*

Propterea, adv., *therefore; propterea quod, because, for the reason that.*

Propuls-äre (av-, at-), *to ward off, avert, repel.*

Prorsus, adv., *straight on, truly, precisely.*

Prosequ-i (prosecūt-), dep., *to pursue.*

Proverbi-um, i, *proverb.*

Providenti-a, æ, *Providence* (pro + videre).

Provinci-a, *ae*, province.

Proxim-us, *a, um* (superl., 371), next, nearest.

Ptolemæus, *i*, Ptolemy.

Pudet (impers., 579, *a*), puduit, *it* shames, one is ashamed.

Puell-a, *ae*, girl.

Puer, *i*, boy.

Pugn-are (av-, at-), to fight.

Pulvis, (pulver) *is*, 331, *b*, dust.

Pun-ire (iv-, it-), to punish.

Put-are (av-, at-), to suppose, think, reckon.

Pyrenæi (montes), the Pyrenees, mountains between Gaul and Spain.

Q.

Quadringenti, *ae*, *a*, four hundred.

Quær-ere (quæsi-, quæsit-), to seek, ask, inquire into.

Qualis, *is, e*, of what kind; talis—qualis, such—as, 184.

Quam, conj., than.

Quamdiu, adv., how long.

Quamvis, conj., although.

Quando, adv., when.

Quantus, *a, um*, how great, 184.

Quantuscunque, -acunque, -umcunque, however great, 184.

Quasi, adv., as if.

Quatern-i, *ae*, *a*, four apiece, four at a time, 189.

Quattuor, indecl., four.

Que, conj., and, 517, *a*.

Queo, I am able, 606.

Quer-i (quest-), to complain.

Qui, quæ, quod, who, which, what, 164.

Quia, conj., because.

Quid, neut. of quis, used interrog., what? as adv., why?

Quicunque, whosoever, 164, R.

Quidam, quædam, quoddam, or quiddam, a certain one plur., some, 178, 1.

Quidem, adv., indeed.

Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet, any one, any you please, 178, 2.

Quin, conj., but that, that not, 558, *b*.

Quindecim, indecl., fifteen.

Quingent-i, *ae*, *a*, five hundred.

Quinque, indecl., five.

Quint-us, *a, um*, fifth.

Quire, to be able, 606.

Quis, quæ, quid, *interrog.*, who, which, what? 170.

Quisnam, quænam, quidnam? pray who? what? 171.

Quispiam, quæpiam, quodpiam, quidpiam, somebody, some, 178, 4.

Quisquam, quicquam, or quodquam, any, any one, 178, 3.

Quisque, quæque, quodque, quidque, each, every one, 178, 6.

Quisquis, whoever, whatever, 637, 1.

Quivis, any one you please, 178, 2.

Quò, adv., whither, in which direction?

Quò, conj., to the end that, that, *ae* that, 558, *a*.

Quod, conj., because.

Quod, rel. pron. neut. of qui.

Quominus, that the less, that not, after verbs of hindering, &c., 558, *c*.

Quondam, adv., formerly, at one time.

Quoniam, conj., since, because.

Quoque, conj., also.

Quot, so many, how many? 184.

Quotannis, adv., yearly.

Quotidian-us, *a, um*, daily.

Quot-us, *a, um*, what one? quotæ hora, what o'clock?

Quum, conj., when, since, 561

R.

Rapin-a, *ae*, rapine, plunder.

Ratio, (ration) *is*, 333, R., *reason*, manner, plan.

Rauracus, *i*, a Rauracian people of Gaul.

Rebellio, (rebelliōn) is, 333, R., *rebellion*.

Reced-ēre (cess-, cess-, 401, 3, *b*), to *give way, retreat*.

Recip-ēre (cāp-, cept-, re+capere, io, 416, c, 199), to *receive back, take back*; se recipere, to *take one's self back, to go back*.

Rect-ē, adv., 215, 1, *rightly*.

Redd-ēre (reddid-, reddit-, re+dare), 666, IV., c), *give back, return, restore*.

Redintegr-ēre (av-, at-), to *renew*.

Redim-ēre (redēm-, redempt-, re+emere), to *buy back, redeem, farm* (as revenues).

Reditio, (reditiōn) is, 333, R., *return* (redire).

Reduc-ēre (dux-, duct-, re+ducere), to *bring, bring back*.

Referre (retūl-, relat-, re+ferre), to *bring back, to draw back*; pedem referre, to *retreat*.

Rēfert, it *matters, it concerns, it interests*, 584, d.

Refic-ēre (fēc-, fect-, re+facere), to *renew, rebuild*.

Reg-ēre (rex-, rect-) to *rule*.

Regin-a, æ, *queen*.

Regn-are (av-, at-), to *reign*.

Regn-um, i, *kingdom, royal power*.

Relinqu-ēre (reliqu-, relict-), to *leave*.

Reliqui-æ, arum, 57, R., *remains, remnant*.

Reliqu-us, a, um, *remaining*.

Reminisc-i (dep.), to *remember* (with gen.).

Remōv-ēre (remōv-, remōt-), to *remove*.

Renunti-are (av-, at-), to *bring back word, report*.

Repell-ēre (repūl-, repuls-, re+pellere), to *repel, drive back*.

Repente, adv., *suddenly*.

Repentin-us, a, um, *sudden*; *repentina res*, the *sudden occurrence*.

Reper-ire (reper-, repert-, 427, V.) to *find out, to discover*.

Repet-ēre (repetiv- and repeti-, re petit-), to *demand back, to ask again*.

Repugn-are (av-, at-, re+pugnare) to *oppose, resist*.

Res, rei, *thing*; *res novæ* (pl.), *revolution*; *res familiaris*, *private property*.

Rescind-ēre (rescid-, resciss-), to *cut down, to cut in pieces*.

Resist-ēre (restit-, restit-), 390, intrans., to *hah, stop* with dat., to *resist*.

Respond-ēre (respond-, respons-, 665, IV.), to *answer*.

Respublic-a, reipublicæ, 351, 3, *republic, state*.

Ret-e, (ret) is, 312, *net*.

Retin-ēre (retinu-, retent-, re+tenere), to *restrain, hold back, retain*.

Revert-ēre (revert-, revers-, 422), to *turn back, return*.

Revert-i (revers-), dep., to *return*.

Revoc-are (av-, at-), to *call back, recall*.

Rex, (reg) is (m.), *king*.

Rhen-us, i, *Rhine* (river).

Rhetoric-a, æ, *rhetoric*.

Rhodan-us, i, *Rhone* (river).

Rid-ēre (ris-, ris-), to *laugh*.

Rip-a, æ, *bank of a river*.

Ris-us, ūs, *laughter*.

Robur, (robor) is, 344, a, *strength*.

Rog-are (av-, at-), to *ask*.

Roman-us, a, um, *Roman*; *Romanus* (used as noun), a *Roman*.

Romul-us, i, *Romulus*.

Ros-a, æ, a *rose*.

Rot-a, æ, *wheel*.

Ruber, bra, brum, 77, a, *red*.

Rumor, (rumōr) is, 319, *rumour, report*.

Rsusus, adv *backward, again*.

S.

Sacer, *cra*, *crum*, 77, *a*, *sacred*. **Mons Sacer**, *the Sacred Mount*; **sacra**, *orum*, *sacred rites*.

Sæpe, *adv.*, *often*.

Sæviti-a, *æ*, *cruelty*.

Sagittari-us, *i*, *archer*.

Sagunt-um, *i*, *Saguntum*, *a town in Spain*.

Salt-äre (*av*, *at*-), *to dance*.

Salus, (*salüt*) *is*, 293, *safety*.

Salv-us, *a*, *um*, *safe*.

San-äre (*av*, *at*-), *to heal, cure*.

Sanct-us, *a*, *um*, *sacred*.

Sanguis, (*sanguin*) *is* (*m.*), *blood*.

Sapiens, (*sapient*) *is*, 107, *wise, a wise man*.

Sapienter, 215, 2, *b*, *wisely*.

Sapienti-a, *æ*, *wisdom*.

Satis, *adv.*, *enough*.

Satius, *comp.* of *satis*; *satius est*, *it is better*.

Schol-a, *æ*, *school*.

Scienti-a, *æ*, *science, knowledge*.

Scind-äre (*scid*-, *sciss*-), *to cut, cut down*.

Scipio (*Scipiön*) *is*, *Scipio*.

Sc-ire (*sciv*-, *scit*-), *to know*.

Scrib-äre (*scrips*-, *script*-), *to write*.

Scriptor, (*scriptör*) *is*, 319, *writer*.

Se, *acc.* of *sui*, 142.

Seced-äre (*secess*-, *secess*-), *to secede*.

Secretö, *adv.*, *secretly, privately*.

Secund-us, *a*, *um*, *second, following*.

Sed, *but*.

Sed-äre (*söd*-, *sess*-, 394, V.), *to sit, sit down*.

Seditios-us, *a*, *um*, *seditions*.

Semel, *adv.*, *once*; *semel atque iterum*, *once and again*.

Sementia, (*sement*) *is*, *a sowing* (of corn).

Semper, *adv.*, *always*.

Sempitern-us, *a*, *um*, *eternal*.

Senat-us, *üs*, *senat*.

Senex, (*sen*) *is*, 107, *old, old man*.

Senectus, (*senectät*) *is*, 293, *old age*.

Sen-i, *æ*, *a*, *six each, six at a time, distrib.*, 189.

Sententi-a, *æ*, *opinion*.

Sent-ire (*sens*-, *sens*-), *to feel, think, perceive*.

Separ-äre (*av*-, *at*-), *to separate*.

Septem, *indecl.*, *seven*.

September, *bris* (*m.*), *September*.

Septentrion-es, *um*, *the north, the seven stars composing Ursa Major*.

Septim-us, *a*, *um*, *seventh*.

Septuaginta, *indecl.*, *seventy*.

Sequan-a, *æ*, *Seine* (river).

Sequan-us, *i*, *Sequanian* (people of Gaul).

Sequ-i (*secüt*-), *dep.*, *to follow*.

Ser-äre (*sév*-, *sät*-), *to sow, plant*.

Sermo, (*sermön*) *is*, 331, *speech*.

Serv-äre (*av*-, *at*-), *to keep, preserve*.

Serv-us, *i*, *slave*.

Severitas, (*severität*) *is*, 293, *severity*.

Sex, *indecl.*, *six*.

Sext-us, *a*, *um*, *sixth*.

Si, *conj.*, *if*.

Sic, *adv.*, *so, thus*.

Sicut, *conj.*, *so as, just as*.

Sidus, (*sider*) *is*, 344, *ö*, *star, constellation*.

Sign-um, *i*, *standard, signal*.

Simil-is, *is*, *e*, 104, *like* (with *gen.* or *dat.*).

Simul, *adv.*, *together, at the same time*; *simulac, simulatque*, *as soon as*.

Sin, *conj.*, *but if*.

Sine, *prep.* with *abl.*, *without*.

Sitis, (*sit*) *is*, 300, *thirst*.

Socer, *i*, 65, R., *father-in-law*.

Societas, (*societät*) *is*, 293, *society, fellowship*.

Soci-us, *i*, *companion, ally*.

Socrates, (*Socrat*) *is*, *Socrates*.

Söl, (*Söl*) *is*, *the Sun*.

Solum, adv., *only*; non solum—sed etiam, *not only—but also*.

Sol-us, a, um, gen. solius, 194, R. 1, *alone*.

Somn-us, i, *sleep*.

Sordid-us, a, um, *sordid, mean*.

Soror, (soror) is, *sister*.

Sors, (sort) is, 293, *lot*.

Spati-um, i, *space, opportunity*; spatium arma capiendi, *time for taking up arms*, 492, a.

Speci-es, ei, *appearance*.

Spect-are (av-, at-), *to look, look at*.

Spes, ei, *hope*.

Splendid-us, a, um, *brilliant, splendid*.

Splendor, (splendör) is, 319, *splendour, glare*.

St-are (stët-, stät-, 387, III.), *to stand*.

Statim, adv., *immediately*.

Statio, (station) is, 333, R., *station, post*.

Statu-ëre (statü-, statüt-), *to appoint, fix, decide*.

Stell-a, æ, *star*.

Stipendi-um, i, *tribute, tax*.

Stipendiari-us, a, um, *tributary*.

Stoicus, i, *a Stoic*.

String-ëre (strinx-, strict-), *to draw* (as a sword).

Studiosè, 215, 1, *zealously, studiously*.

Studi-um, i, *zeal, study, desire*.

Stultiti-a, æ, *folly*.

Stult-us, a, um, *foolish*; stultus, *a fool*.

Suad-ëre (suas-, suas-), *to advise, to persuade*.

Suav-is, is, e, 104, *sweet*.

Sub, prep. with acc., *up to, under*; with abl., *under*.

Subesse (sub+esse), *to be under, to be near*.

Subig-ëre (subëg-, subact-, sub+agere), *to subdue*.

Sub-ire (iv-, it-), *to go under, to un-*

dergo; ad pericula subeunda, *for undergoing perils*.

Subitò, adv., *suddenly*.

Subjic-ëre (subjec-, subject-, sub+jacere), *to throw under, to throw up*.

Sublatus, a, um, part. of tollere, *elated, puffed up, taken away*.

Subsist-ëre (substît-), *to stand still, to halt*.

Subsidi-um, i, *assistance, a reserve of troops*.

Suev-us, i, *a Suevian* (people of Germany).

Sufferre (sustül-, sublat-, sub+ferre), *to bear, sustain*.

Sui, reflex. pron., 142, *himself, herself, &c.*

Sum, *I am*. (See esse.)

Sum-ëre (sumps-, sumpt-, 401, 4, b), *to take*.

Summ-us, a, um (superl. of superus, 370), *highest, top of a thing*; in summo monte, *on the top of the mountain*.

Sumpt-us, ūs, *expense*; sumptū suò, *at his own expense*.

Super-are (av-, at-), *to overcome*.

Superior, oris (compar. of superus, 370), *higher*.

Suppet-ëre (suppetiv- and suppeti- suppetit-), *to be at hand, to be in store*.

Supplici-um, i, *punishment*.

Suscip-ëre (suscêp-, suscepi-, sub+capere), *to undertake*.

Suspicio, (suspiciō) is, 333, R., *suspicion*.

Sustin-ëre (sustinn-, sustent-, sub+tenere), *to sustain*.

Suus, a, um, *one's own*, 143.

T.

Tac-ëre (tacu-, tacit-), intrans., *to be silent*; trans., *to keep secret*.

Tædet, pertæsum est (impers. 579).

- it wearies, it disgusts*; me tædet, *I am disgusted*.
- Talis, is, e, 184, *such*.
- Tam, adv., *so*.
- Tamen, conj., *nevertheless*.
- Tang-ëre (tetig-, tact-, 411), *to touch*.
- Tanquam, adv., *as, like*.
- Tantum, *so much* (neut. of tantus); tantum auri, *so much gold*, 186.
- Tant-us, a, um, 184, *so great*.
- Tard-äre (av-, at-), *to delay*.
- Taur-us, i, *bull*.
- Tel-um, i, *weapon, dart*.
- Temerë, adv., *rashly*.
- Temeritas, (temeritât) is, 293, *rashness*.
- Temper-äre (av-, at-), *to refrain from*; ab injuria temperare, *to refrain from outrage*.
- Temperanti-a, æ, *temperance*.
- Tempestas, (tempestât) is, 293, *storm, tempest*.
- Templ-um, i, *temple*; templum de marmore, *temple of marble, marble temple*.
- Tempus, (tempör) is, 344, *b, time*.
- Tenax, (tenâc) is, 107, *tenacious, firm*.
- Tener, a, um, 77, *b, tender*.
- Ten-ëre (tenu-, tent-), *to hold*.
- Terg-um, i, *back*.
- Terni, æ, a (distrib., 189), *three apiece, three at a time*.
- Terr-a, æ, *earth*; terra marique, *by land and sea*.
- Terr-ëre (terru-, territ-), *to terrify*.
- Terti-us, a, um, *third*.
- Tiberi-us, i, *Tiberius*.
- Themistocles, (Themistocl) is, *The-mistocles*.
- Tigurinus pagus, *the canton of Zurich*.
- Tim-ëre (timu-), *to fear*.
- Timid-us, a, um, *timid*.
- Timor, (timör) is, 319, *fear*.
- Tiro, (tirön) is, 107, *inexperienced raw*.
- Toler-äre (av-, at-), *to endure*.
- Toll-ëre (sustül-, sublat-), *to lift up, take away*.
- Tot, *so many*, 184.
- Tot-us, a, um, gen. ius, 194, R. 1, *whole, all*.
- Trabs, (trab) is, *beam*, 293.
- Trad-ëre (tradid-, tradit-), *to surrender*.
- Tragul-a, æ, *a dart* (used by the Gauls).
- Trah-ëre (trax-, tract-, 401, 2), *to draw*.
- Trajic-ëre (trajēc-, traject-), *transit, to throw or convey over*; intrans., *to cross over*.
- Tranquill-iter, adv., *calmly, tranquilly* (215, 2, tranquillus, *tranquil*).
- Transduc-ëre (transdux-, transduct-) *to lead across*.
- Trans-ire (iv-, it-), *to cross or pass over*.
- Transn-äre (av-, at-), *to swim across*.
- Tredecim, indecl., *thirteen*.
- Tres, tria, 194, *three*.
- Tribun-us, i, *tribune*.
- Triginta, *thirty*.
- Triplex, (triplic) is, 107, *triple, three fold*.
- Tripartitö, adv., *in three divisions*.
- Tristiti-a, æ, *sadness*.
- Tu, thou, 130.
- Tullus Hostilius, *Tullus Hostilius*.
- Tum, adv., *then*.
- Turbo, (tarbin) is (m., 340), *whirl wind*.
- Turp-is, is, e, 104, *base*.
- Tarpiter, adv., 215, 2, *a, basely*.
- Turr-is, (turr) is, 302, *tower*.
- Tut-us, a, um, *safe*.
- Tu-us, a, um, thy, thine, 134

U.

Ubi, adv., *where, when*.
 Ubinam? *where in the world?* 297, *d*.
 Ull-us, a, um, gen. ius, 194, 1, *any*.
 Uterior, ius (compar. of ultra, 371),
farther.
 Ultrô, adv., *of one's own accord*.
 Ulysses, (Ulyss) is, *Ulysses*.
 Umbr-a, æ, *shade, shadow*.
 Unâ, adv., *together*.
 Unde, adv., *whence*.
 Undecim, indecl., *eleven*.
 Undique, adv., *from all sides*.
 Univers-us, a, um, *universal, the whole*.
 Unquam, adv., *ever*.
 Un-us, a, um, gen. unius, 194, *one*.
 Unusquisque, 178, 6, *each one*.
 Urbs, (urb) is, 293, *city*.
 Usque, adv., *as far as; usque ad, even up to*.
 Ut, or uti, conj., *that*, 546.
 Uter, utra, utrum, 194, *which of the two*.
 Ut-i (ûs-), dep. (with abl., 316, R.), *to use, employ*.
 Util-is, is, e, 104, *useful*.
 Utinam, conj., *would that, O that*, 528.
 Utrum, conj., *whether; utrum—an, whether—or*.
 Uxor, (uxôr) is (f.), *wife*.

V.

Vac-äre (av-, at-), *to be empty, to remain unoccupied*.
 Vag-äri (vagät-), dep., *to wander*.
 Val-äre (valû-), *to avail; plurimum valet, is most powerful*.
 Valid-us, a, um, *strong*.
 Valdê, adv., *greatly, very much*.
 Valetudo, (valetudin) is, 339, *health*.
 Vall-um, i, *rampart*.
 Vast-äre (av-, at-), *to lay waste*.
 Vast-us, a, um, *vast*. ● [ute.
 Vectigal, (vectigal) is, 325 *tax, trib-*

Veh-äre (vex-, vect-), *to carry drive*.
 Vehementer, adv., *vehemently*, 215, 2, *b*.
 Vel, conj., *or*, 519, 2.
 Velle, volui, 592, *to wish, to be able*.
 Velox, (velôc) is, 107, *swift*.
 Venator, (venatôr) is, *hunter*.
 Vener-äri (at-), dep., *to revere, to venerate*.
 Venetus, a, um, *Venetian*.
 Veni-a, æ, *pardon*.
 Vên-îre (vên-, vent-, 426, IV.), *to come*.
 Vent-us, i, *wind*.
 Very (ver) is, n., 325, *spring*.
 Verber-äre (äv-, at-), *to flog*.
 Verb-um, i, *word*.
 Ver-êri (verît-), dep., *to fear*.
 Verg-äre (vers-), *to incline, tend*.
 Vero, conj., *but, truly, certainly*, 173.
 Verres, (Verr) is, *Verres*.
 Vert-äre (vert-, vers-, 421, b), *to turn*.
 Ver-us, a, um, *true*.
 Versus, prep. with acc., *towards*.
 Vester, tra, trum, *your*, 134.
 Veteran-us, a, um, *veteran*.
 Vetus, (veter) is, 108, R. 2, *old*.
 Vexill-um, i, *standard*.
 Vi-a, æ, *way; Via Sacra, the Sacred Way, a street in Rome*.
 Victori-a, æ, *victory*.
 Vic-us, i, *village*.
 Vid-äre (vid-, vis-, 394, V.), *to see; videri, pass., to seem, appear*.
 Vigilanti-a, æ, *vigilance*.
 Vigil-äre (av-, at-), *to watch*.
 Vigili-a, æ, *watch; de tertia vigilia about or after the third watch*.
 Viginti, indecl., *twenty*.
 Vil-is, is, e, 104, *cheap, vile*.
 Vinc-äre (vic-, vict-), *to conquer*.
 Vincul-um, i, *bond*.
 Vindex, (vindic) is, *avenger*.
 Vin-um, i, *wine*.
 Viol-äre (av-, at-) *to violate lay waste*.
 Vir, i, *man*.

Virgīl-us, i, *Virgil*.

Virgo, (virgin) is, 339, *virgin*.

Viriliter, adv., *manly, courageously*.

Virtūs, (virtūt) is, 293, *valour, virtue*.

Vis, vim, vi, 301, 2, *strength, force*;
pl., vires, ium.

Vit-a, æ, *life*.

Vit-are (av-, at-), *to shun, avoid*

Viti-um, i, *vice*.

Viv-ere (viv-, vict-) *to live*.

Vix, adv., *scarcely*.

Voc-are (av-, at-), *to call*.

Vol-are (av-, at-), *to fly*.

Volo, *I wish*. (See velle.)

Voluntas, (voluntāt) is, 293, *will, wish*.

Voluptas, (voluptāt) is, 293, *pleasure*.

Volv-ere (volv-, volūt-), *to roll*

Vos, *you*, 130.

Vox, (voc) is, 293, *voice*.

Vulg-us, i, n., 62, R. 1, *the common people*.

Vulner-are (av-, at-) *to wound*.

Vulnus, (vulner) is 344, *h, wound*.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY



ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

Ability, facultas, (facultat) is, 293.
Able (to be), posse, quire (queo).
Abode, domicilium, i.
Abound, abundare.
About, circiter (concerning); de, abl.
Abrogate, abrogare.
Absent (to be), abesse.
Abstain from, abstinere (abstinu-, abstent-).
Accuse, incusare.
Accustomed (to be), consuescere (suev-, suet-).
Acquit, absolvère, 421, a.
Act, agere.
Act of kindness, beneficium, i.
Add, addere, 411, c.
Admire, mirari, admirari (dep.).
Admonish, monere.
Adore, adorare.
Adorn, ornare.
Advice, consilium, i.
Advise, monere, admonere.
Æduan, Æduus, i.
Affair, res, 117.
Affection, affectio, 333, R.
Affirm, confirmare.
Afford, præbere, 527.
After, post (with accus.); de (with abl.).
After that, postquam.
Again, rursus; iterum, adv.
Against, contra; adversus (with accus.); against Cicero, in Ciceronem.
Age (time of life), ætas, (ætat) is, 293.
Agree, consentire, 427, III.
Agreeable, gratus, a, um (with dat.); it is agreeable, libet. or lubet, 583.

Aid, auxilium, i; to aid, adjuvare 390.
Alarm, perturbare.
All, omnis, e; cunctus, a, um; in all adv., omnino.
Allowed (it is), licet, 583.
Ally, socius, i.
Almost, fere; pene, adv.
Alone, solus, 194. R. 1: unus
Already, jam, adv.
Also, etiam, adv.
Altogether, omnino, adv.
Although, quamvis, conj.
Always, semper.
Ambassador, legatus, i
Ambush, insidia, 57, R.
Amiable, amabilis, e, 194.
Among, inter (with acc.).
Ancients (the), veteres; pl. of vetus, old.
And, et, que, ac, atque; and not neque.
Anger, ira, æ.
Animal, animal, 326.
Announce, nuntiare.
Answer, respondere.
Antony, Antonius, i.
Any, ullus, a, um, 194, R. 1; any, one, any you please, &c. See 176
Apart (to be), distare.
Apiece, use the distrib. numerals, 189
Apply, adhibere (a-, it-).
Appoint, constituere, 421, a.
Approach, adventus, us; to approach, appropinquare: accedere
Archer, sagittarius, i
Arise (as a storm), cooriri (coort- dep.).
Arm, armare.

Arms, arma, orum.
Army, exercitus, ūs.
Arrange, disponere, 406, b.
Arrival, adventus, ūs.
Arrive at, pervenire, 427, IV.
Art, ars, (art) is, 293.
Artificer, faber, fabri, 77, a.
As, conj., ut; *as, of what kind*, qualis, 184; *as far as to*, usque; *as soon as*, simulatque.
Ashamed (one is), pudet, 579.
Ask, rogare, postulare.
Assemble, convenire, 427, IV.
Assist, adjuvare, 390.
Assistance, auxilium, i.
Association, societas, (societās) is,
Assure, confirmare. [293].
At, ad, apud; *at home*, domi; *at length*, demum.
Athenian, Atheniensis, is.
Athens, Athenæ, arum.
Attack (noun), impetus, ūs (verb), oppugnare.
Austerity, severitas, (severitās) is, 293.
Auxiliaries, auxilia, orum.
Avail, valere.
Avaricious, avarus, i.
Avoid, vitare.
Await, expectare.
 B.
Back, tergum, i.
Bad, malus, a, um, improbus, a, um.
Badly, malè, adv., 215, R.
Band (of men), manus, ūs.
Barbarian, barbarus, i.
Base, turpis, e, 104; *basely*, turpiter, 215, 2, a.
Battle, prælum, i.
Be, esse; *be among*, interesse, 174; *be over*, præesse; *be wanting*, deesse, with dat.
Beam, trabs, (trab) is, 293.
Bear (verb), ferre, 596.
Beast, bestia, æ; *beast of burden*, jumentum, i.

Beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrum, 77, a.
Because, conj., quod, quia, propterea quod.
Becoming (it is), decet, 583.
Bed, cubile, (cubil) is, 312, *bed chamber*, cubiculum, i.
Before, prep., ante (acc.); adv., antea; *before that*, antequam.
Beg, rogare, orare.
Begin, incipere, 416, c; *I begin*, cœpi, 611.
Beginning, initium, i.
Behold, spectare.
Behoooves (it), oportet, 583.
Belgian, Belga, æ.
Believe, credere, 411, c.
Belong, pertinere, 394, I.
Benevolent, benevolus, a, um.
Benevolence, benevolentia, æ.
Beseech, obsecrare.
Besiege, oppugnare.
Best, optimus, a, um, 370.
Betake one's self, se recipere, 418 a.
Better, melior, 370.
Between, inter.
Bind, obstringere.
Bird, avis (avis), 300.
Bit, frænum, i; pl., i and a, 396.
Bite, mordere, 395, IV.
Black, niger, gra, grum, 77, a.
Blame, incusare, vituperare.
Blood, sanguis, (sanguin) is (m.).
Blooming, florens, (florent) is, 167.
Boast, prædicare.
Bdy, corpus, (corpor) is, 344.
Bond, vinculum, i.
Book, liber, bri.
Booty, præda, æ.
Born (to be), nasci (nat), dep.
Boundary, finis, (fin) is (m.).
Boy, puer, i.
Brave, fortis, e; *bravely*, fortiter 215, 2.
Bravery, virtus, (virtut) is, 293.
Break through, perfringere (page 275); perrumpere, 666, V. a.

Bridge, pons, (pont) is, 295, R. 1.

Bring, ducere, agere; *bring back*, reducere; *bring back word*, renuntiare; *bring to pass*, perficere; *bring together*, cogere, 416, b.

Britain, Britannia, æ; **Briton**, Britannus, i.

Broad, latus, a, um.

Brother, frater, (fratr) is.

Build, ædificare; *build a nest*, nidificare.

Bull, taurus, i.

Burn, incendere; *burn up*, exurere, 545.

Burden, onus, (oner) is, 344.

Burst into, irrumpere, 666, V., a.

Business, negotium, i.

But, sed, autem.

Buy, emere; *buy up*, coemere.

By, prep. with abl., a or ab, 93, 2.

By night, noctu, adv.

C.

Cæsar, Cæsar, (Cæsar) is.

Call, vocare; *to name*, appellare; *to be called*, nominari, appellari.

Call together, convocare.

Call upon, invocare.

Camp, castra, orum.

Can (to be able), posse, 587; *I cannot*, non possum, nequeo.

Captive, captivus, i.

Care (noun), cura, æ; (verb), curare.

Carefully, diligenter, studiose.

Carry, portare, vehere; *carry on*, gerere, 401, 4, a.

Carthage, Carthago, (Carthagin) is.

Cassius, Cassius, i.

Casticus, Casticus, i.

Catiline, Catilina, æ.

Cause, causa, æ.

Cautious, cautus, a, um.

Cavalry, equitatus, ùs; *belonging to cavalry*, equestris, e, 104.

Celebrate, celebrare.

Celt, Ceita, æ.

Censure, incusare.

Centurion, centurio, (centuriōn) is.

Certain, certus, a, am; *a certain one*, quidam, 178.

Certainly, adv., certè: profecto, vero.

Chain, vinculum, i.

Change (noun), commutatio, (commutation) is; (verb), mutare, commutare.

Champ, mordere, 395, IV.

Chide, increpare, 390.

Chief, princeps, (princip) is, 107.

Child, infans, (infant) is, 107; *children*, liberi, orum.

Choose, deligere, 666, V., a.

Christ, Christus, i.

Cicero, Cicero, (Cicerōn) is.

Citadel, arx, (arc) is, 293.

Citizen, civis, (civ) is, c, 25, a.

City, urbs, (urb) is, 293.

Cloud, nubes, (nub) is, 300; *cloud of dust*, vis pulveris.

Cohort, cohors, (cohort) is, 293.

Cold, frigidus, a, um; (noun), frigus, (frigor) is, 344.

Collect, colligere (leg-, lect-); cogere (coeg-, coact-); *collect corn*, frumentari, dep.; *collect into a flock*, congregare.

Colour, color, (colōr) is, 319.

Come, venire, 427, IV.; *come near*, appropinquare; *come to*, pervenire; *come together*, convenire.

Coming, adventus, ùs.

Command, imperare, with dat.

Commander, imperator, (imperatōr) is, 319.

Commit, committere; *commit suicide*, mortem sibi consciscere.

Common, communis, e, 104.

Common-people, plebs, (pleb) is, 293.

Companion, socius, i; comes, (comit) is.

Compel, cogere, 416, b.

Complain, queri (quest) dep.

Complete, conficere.

Concerning (p-ap. with abl.), de.
Concerns (it), interest, refert, 584, d.
Condemn, damnare, condemnare, 348.
Conference, colloquium, i.
Confess, fatēri, dep.
Confines, fines, pl. of finis.
Conflict, congressus, ūs.
Confirm, confirmare.
Confound, perturbare.
Congratulate, gratulari, dep.
Conquer, vincere (vic-, vict-); superare.
Conqueror, victor, (victor) is, 319.
Conspiracy, conjuratio, (conjuratio) is, 333, R.
Consul, consul, (consul) is.
Consult, consulere (consulu-, consult-).
Contemplate, contemplari, dep.
Contend, contendere.
Content, contentus, a, um (with abl).
Continuous, continens, (continent) is, 107.
Continuance, continuatio, (continuation) is.
Corn, frumentum, i.
Council, concilium, i.
Counsel, consilium, i.
Course, cursus, ūs.
Covetous, cupidus, a, um.
Cow, vacca, æ.
Cowardice, ignavia, æ.
Creak, crepare, 390.
Create, creare.
Crime, crimen, (crimin) is, 344, a.
Cross over, transire, trajicere.
Crow, corvus, i.
Crown, corona, æ.
Cry out, exclamare.
Cultivation, cultus, ūs; humanitas.
Cup, poculum, i.
Cure, sanare.
Custom, mos, (mor) is, 331, b.
Cut down, rescindere (rascid-, resciss-).

Cut to pieces, cœdere, 411. & .
Cyrus, Cyrus, i.

D.

Daily, adj., quotidianus, a, um; ~~see~~ quotidie.
Dance, saltare.
Danger, periculum, i.
Danube, Danubius, i.
Dare, audere (ausus sum).
Dart, telum, i; pilum, i.
Daughter, filia, æ.
Day, dies, ei, 116, R., *by day*; interdiu, adv.; *to-day*, hodie, adv.
Dragon, draco, (dracō) is.
Dead, mortuus, a, um.
Dear, carus, a, um.
Death, mors, (mort) is, 293.
Deceive, fallere (fefell-, fals-).
Decide on, statuere.
Decree (verb), decernere (decrev-, decret-); (noun), decretum, i; *decree of the senate*, senatus consultum.
Deep, altus, a, um.
Defeat, pellere, 411, b.
Defend, defendere, 421, c.
Defence, munitio, 333.
Defender, vindex, (vindic) is, 306.
Defiles, angustiae, arum, 57, R.
Delay, cunctari (dep.); *active*, tardare (to retard).
Deliberate, deliberare.
Delight, delectare.
Delight (with), libenter, adv.
Demand, postulare, 411, a; postulare, imperare, 390; *demana oack*, repetere.
Deny, negare.
Depart, discedere, 401, 3, b.
Depart out of, excedere.
Departure, discessus, ūs.
Dependant, cliens, (client) is, c.
Descend, descendere.
Desert, deserere, 406, a, a desert desertum, i.

Deserter, perfuga, æ.
Desire, cupiditas, (cupiditât) is, (verb), cupere (io): studium, i.
Desirous, cupidus, a, um.
Despair (verb), desperare; (noun), desperatio, 333, R.
Despise, spernere, 406, III., a: contemnere.
Destroy, delere, 394, II.
Destruction, interitus, us.
Determine, constituere, statuere.
Devoid, expers, 336.
Die, mori, or mori (mortu-), dep.
Difference (it makes no), nihil interest, nihil refert.
Different, diversus, a, um; alius, 194, R. 1.
Difficult, difficilis, e, 104.
Dignity, dignitas, (dignitat) is, 293.
Diligence, diligentia, æ.
Diligent, diligens, (diligent) is, 107; *diligently*, adv., diligenter.
Diminish, minuire, diminuire.
Direct (of a ship), gubernare.
Disagree, dissentire, 427, III.
Discipline, disciplina, æ.
Discomfit, fugare.
Discover, invenire, 427, IV.
Discourse, disserere (disseru-, dissert-).
Discretion, consilium, i.
Dismiss, dimittere (mis-, miss-).
Displease, displicere (displica-, displicit-), with dat., 161, R.
Dispute, disputare.
Dissolve, dissolvere, 421, a.
Distant (to be), distare.
Distribute, distribuere, 406, a; *arrange*, disponere.
District, pagus, i.
Divide, dividere, 401, 3, a; *divide among*, distribuere, 423, c.
Divulge, enuntiare.
Do, agere, facere.
Dock-yard, navale, (naval) is, 312.
Dog canis (can) is.

Door, foris, (for) is, 300.
Double, duplicare.
Doubt, dubitare.
Doubtful, incertus, a, um; *undecided*, a, um.
Dove, columba, æ.
Draw, trahere (trax-, tract-); *duct*, ducere (dux-, duct-); *draw up*, instruere, 401, 2; *draw as a sword*, stringere, 401; *draw out*, educere.
Dread, formidare.
Drive, agere; *drive back*, repellere, *drive on*, or *together*, compellere.
Druids, Druides, um, pl.
Duty, munus, (muner) is, 344.

E.

Each, quisque, 178; *omnis*, e; *each of the two*, uterque.
Eagle, aquila, æ.
Earth, terra, æ.
Easily, facile (adv.).
East, Oriens.
Easy, facilis, e; *very easy*, perfacilis.
Educate, educare.
Egypt, Egyptus, i (f.).
Eighty, octoginta.
Eloquent, facundus, a, um; *disertus*, a, um; *eloquens*, 107.
Embark (upon), conscendere, 309.
Embrace, amplecti (amplex-), dep.
Emperor, imperator, (imperator) is, 319.
Employ, uti (us-), dep., with abl. adhibere.
End, finis, (fin) is (m.).
Endeavour, conari (conat-), dep.
Endure, durare; *to bear*, tolerare.
Enemy, hostis, (host) is, c.
Enjoin upon, præcipere.
Enmity, inimicitia, æ.
Enough, satis, adv.
Enrol, conscribere.
Entreat, rogare.
Equanimity (with), æquo animo.
Erect, communire.

Err, errare.

Especially, adv., præsertim.

Establish, confirmare.

Eternity, æternitas, (æternitât) is, 293.

Even up to, usque ad.

Ever, unquam.

Everlasting, sempiternus, a, um.

Every, omnis, e, 104.

Evil, malum, i.

Evil-deed, maleficium, i.

Example, exemplum, i.

Excel, præstare (præstit-), with dat.

Excellent, præclarus, a, um; præstans, 107.

Excite, excitare.

Excuse, excusatio, 333, R.

Exercise, exercere.

Exhort, hortari, dep.

Expedient (it is), expedit, 583.

Expel, expellere.

Expense, sumptus, f; at his own expense, sumptu suo.

Eye, oculus, i.

F.

Fable, fabula, æ.

Faith, fides, ei.

Fail, deficere.

Fall, cadere, 411, b.

Fame, fama, æ.

Family of slaves, familia, æ.

Far, longe, adv.

Farm (as revenues), redimere.

Farmer, agricola.

Father, pater, (patr) is.


Father-in-law, socer, i.

Fault, culpa, æ; peccatum, i; find fault with, culpâre, incusare.

Favour, venia, æ; (verb), favere, 395, V.

Fear, timor, (timôr) is, 319; (verb), timere, metuere.

Feather, pluma, æ.

Fell (cut down), cadere, 413, .

Few, pauci, æ, a; very few, pauci.

Fidelity, fides, ei.

Field, ager, gri.

Fierce, ferox, (feroc) is, 107; strus 107.

Fifth, quintus, a, um.

Fight, pugnare.

Figure, figura, æ.

Fill, implere; fill up, complere 395, II.

Finally, denique, adv.

Find invenire, 427, IV.; find out, reperire, 427, V.

Find fault with, incusare.

Finish, conficere.

Fire, ignis, (ign) is (m.).

Firmament, cælum, i.

First, primus, a, um.

Fish, piscis, (pisc) is (m.).

Fit for, idoneus, a, um, with dat.

Five, quinque; five at a time, quini 189. -

Flag, vexillum, i.

Flame, flamma, æ.

Flee, fugere (io), 416, c.

Fleet, classis, (class) is, 300.

Flesh, caro, (carn) is (f.).

Flight, fuga, æ.

Flock, grex, (greg) is (m.); in flocks, gregatim, adv.

Flog, verberare.

Flow, fluere; flow together, confluerere, 401, 2, 422.

Flower, flos, (flôr) is, 331, b.

Fly, volare.

Follow sequi (secût-), dep.

Folly, stultitia, æ; ineptia, arum 57, R.

Fool, stultus, i; foolish, stultus, a, um.

Foot, pes, (ped) is (m.).

Foot-soldier, pedes, (pedit) is.

For, conj., enim, etenim; for my sake, meâ causâ.

Force, vis, vim, vi, 301, 1, forcess (troops), copias, arum, 57, a.

Foreign, alienus, a, um.

Forest, sylva, æ.
Forever, in æternum.
Forget, oblivisci, with gen.
Form, forma, æ.
Fortification, munificio, (munition) is.
Fortify, munire.
Fortunate, fortunatus, a, um.
Fortune, fortuna, æ.
Forum, forum, i.
Four, quattuor; *four apiece*, 189.
Founder, conditor, 319.
Fountain, fons, (font) is (m.).
Frail, fragilis, e, 104.
Free from (to be), carere, 348.
Friend, amicus, i.
Friendship, amicitia, æ.
Frighten, terrere; *frighten completely*, perterrere.
From, a, de; *from every side*, undique, adv.; *from my boyhood*, a puero.
Frugality, parsimonia, æ.
Fruit, fructus, ùs.
Full, plenus, a, um, 348, b.
Future, futurus, a, um.

G.

Galba, Galba, æ.
Gain, potiri, 209; *gain for another*, conciliare.
Game, ludus, i.
Garden, hortus, i.
Garrison, præsidium, i.
Gate, porta, æ.
Gather, colligere, 416, b.
Gaul, Gallia, æ; *the Gauls*, Galli, orum.
General, imperator, 319.
German, Germanus, a, um.
Get sight of, conspiciere (conspex-, conspect-).
Gift, donum, i.
Girl, puella, æ.
Give, dare, 387, III
Give largess, largiri (it-), dep.
Glare, splendor, 319.

Glory, gloria, æ.
Go, ire, 605; *go straight*, pergere; *go away*, discedere, 401, 3, b; *go forward*, procedere; *go forth*, exire.
Goad, concitare.
God, Deus, i, 62, R. 3.
Gold, aurum, i.
Good, bonus, a, um; *good deed*, beneficium; *good-will*, voluntas, 293
Govern, gubernare.
Grant (verb), concedere, 401, 3, b. dare: (noun), concessus, ùs.
Great, magnus, a, um; *comp.*, major; *superl.*, maximus.
Greatly, valde.
Greatness, magnitudo, 339.
Greek, Græcus, a, um.
Grief, mæror, 319; luctus, ùs, 113, N
Grieve, dolere, *it grieves one*, piget, 579.
Guardian, custos, (custod) is, c, 25, a.
Guest, hospes, (hospit) is, c, 25, a.
Guide, dux, (duc) is.

H.

Hail, grando, (grandin) is, 339
Halt, consistere.
Hand, manus, ùs (f.).
Hannibal, Hannibal, (Hannibal) is.
Happen, accidere; *it happens*, accidit, 580.
Happily, beatè.
Happy, beatus, a, um; felix, 107
Harass, lacerare, 406, III, b.
Harbinger, prænuntia, æ.
Harbour, portus, ùs.
Hard, durus, a, um.
Hasten, festinare, contendere.
Hate (to), odisse, 611
Hatred, odium, i.
Have, habere (habu-, habit-). *I have a book*, est mihi liber, 125.
He, is, hic, ille.
Headlong, præceps, (præcipit) is 10

Heal, sanare.

Health, valetudo, 339.

Hear, audire.

Heart, cor, (cord) is (n.).

Heaven, cælum, i.

Heavy, gravis, e, 104.

Help, auxilium, i.

Helvetian, Helvetius, a, um.

Herald, præco, (præcon) is.

Herb, herba, æ.

Hesitate, dubitare.

High, altus, a, um; *higher*, superior
compo. of superus, 370.

Hill, collis, is (m.).

Hillock, tumulus, i.

Hinder, impedire, prohibere.

His, suus, a, um: ejus.

History, historia, æ.

Hold, tenere, obtinere: *hold back*,
retinere.

Home (at), domi, gen. of domus.

Honest, probus, a, um.

Honour, honor, 319; (verb), colere
(colu-, cult-).

Honourable, honestus, a, um.

Hope, spes, ei.

Horn, cornu, 112.

Horned, corniger, a, um, 77, b.

Horse, equus, i.

Horse-soldier, eques, (equit) is.

Hostage, obses, (obsid) is, c, 25, a.

Hour, hora, æ.

House, domus, i and us (f), 112, 3.

Household, familia, æ.

How great, how many? quantus,
186, obs.; *however great*, quan-
tuscunque, 184; *how long*, quam-
diu, adv.

Humanity, humanitas, (humanitat)
is, 293.

Hunger, fames, (fam) is, 300.

Hurl, conjicere, 416, c (conjec-, con-
ject-).

Hurt, nocere.

L

I, ego, 120.

Ides, Idus, iduum (f).

If, si.

Ignorance, ignoratio, 339

Ignorant, ignarus, a, um; *to be ig-
norant of*, ignorare, nescire.

Illustrious, clarus, a, um; præcla-
rus, a, um.

Image, imago, 339.

Immediately, statim.

Immense, immensus, a, um.

Immortal, immortalis, e, 104

Impious, impius, a, um.

Implore, implorare.

In, prep., in, with abl.

Incessant, continens. (continent) is
107.

Increase, augere (aux-, auct-).

Incredible, incredibilis, e, 104.

Indeed, quidem.

Indolence, inertia, æ; ignavia, æ

Indolent, ignavus, a, um.

Induce, inducere, adducere

Indulge, indulgere, dat.

Infant, infans, (infant) is, c.

Influence, auctoritas.

Inform any one, aliquem certiores
facere.

Inhabitant, incola, æ.

Injure, violare.

Injury, injuria, æ; incommodum i

Innocence, innocentia, æ.

Insect, insectum, i.

Instead of, pro (prep. with abl.).

Instigate, instigare.

In the mean time, interea.

It interests, interest.

Intrust, committere (with & a!).

Invoke, invocare.

Ireland, Hibernia, æ.

Iron, ferrum, i.

Island, insula, æ.

Italy, Italia, æ.

Itself, 159.

J.

Javelin, telum, i; *tragula*, æ.
Join, jungere (junx-, junct-); *join together*, conjungere.
Journey, iter, (itiner) is (n.).
Junior, junior, 370.
Jupiter, 351.
Just, justus, a, um; *just so many*, totidem.
Justice, justitia, æ.

K.

Keep, tenere, servare.
Kind, benignus, a, um, with dat.: suavis, e, 335.
Kindle, excitare.
King, rex, (reg) is.
Kingdom, regnum, i.
Kill, occidere, interficere, 390.
Know, scire, noscere, 525; cognoscere: *not to know*, nescire.
Knowledge, scientia, æ.

L.

Labour (noun), labor, 319; (verb), laborare.
Lamb, agnus, i.
Land, terra, *by land and sea*, terra marique.
Language, lingua, æ: *sermo*, 331.
Large, magnus, a, um.
Last (to), durare.
Latin, Latinus, a, um.
Laugh, ridere; *laughtier*, risus, ūs.
Law, jus, (jur) is (n.).
Lawful (it is), licet.
Lay aside, deponere, 406, b.
Lay waste, populari (at-), dep.
Lead, ducere (dux-, duct-); *lead back*, reducere; *lead out*, educere; *lead together*, conducere; *lead over or across*, transducere, 113, II.
Leader, dux, (duc) is.
Leaf, folium, i.
League, fœdus, (fœder) is, 344.

Leap down, desilire, 428.
Learn, discere, 411, a: cognoscere.
Leave, relinquere.
Legion, legio, (legion) is, 333, B.
Letter, epistola, æ; *litteræ*, arum, 58, N.
Level, planus, a, um; *æquus*, a, um.
Levy, conscribere.
Lieutenunt, legatus, i.
Lightning, fulgur, (fulgur) is, 325.
Life, vita, æ.
Like, similis, e, 104 (with dat.).
Line of battle, acies, ei.
Lion, leo, (leon) is.
Literature, litteræ, arum, 57, B.
Little, parvus, a, um.
Live, vivere.
Living-being, animans, (animant) is.
Lofty, altus, a, um.
Long, longus, a, um; *adv.*, longe; *a long time*, diu.
Look at, intueri, dep.
Lose, amittere, perdere.
Lot, sors, (sort) is, 293.
Love (verb), amare, diligere; (noun), amor, 319.
Low, humilis, e, 104.
Lycurgus, Lycurgus.

M.

Magnanimous, magnanimus, a, um.
Maid-servant, ancilla, æ.
Maintain, alere.
Make, facere, 199; *make war*, bellare; *make war upon*, bellum inferre, with dat.; *make an attack*, impetum facere.
Maker, faber, bri.
Maltreat, violare.
Man, homo, vir.
Many, multus, a, um.
Marble, marmor, 325.
Master (of school), magister, tri, (of slaves), herus, dominus.
Matters (it), interest, refert, 583.

Measure, metiri, 206.

Medicine, medicina, æ.

Mediterranean, *Mediterraneus*, a, um.

Meet, convenire.

Memory, memoria, æ.

Merchant, mercator, 319.

Messenger, nuntius, i.

Metal, metallum, i.

Mid-day, meridies, ei.

Middle, medius, a, um.

Migrate, migrare.

Mile, millia (passuum), 191, b.

Military command, imperium, i.

Milk, lac, (lact) is (n.).

Mind, mens, (ment) is (f); animus, i.

Mine, meus, a, um.

Minerva, Minerva, æ.

Miserable, miser, a, um, 77, b.

Mitigate, mitigare.

Moderation, modus, i.

Money, pecunia, æ.

Moon, luna, æ.

More, plus, pluris; adv., magis.

Mortal, mortalis, e, 104.

Most, plurimus, a, um; *most men*, plerique, 195.

Mountain, mons, (mont) is (m.).

Move, movēre.

Much, multus, a, um; *much money*, magna pecunia.

Multitude, multitudo, 339.

My, meus, a, um.

N.

Naked, nudus, a, um.

Name, nomen, (nomin) is, 344, a; to name, nomināre.

Narrow, angustus, a, um.

Nation, natio, 333, R.; gens, 293.

Nature, natura, æ.

Navigation, navigatio, 333, R.

Near, prope, juxta; *nearest to*, proximus, a, um.

Neglect, negligere.

Neighbouring, finitimus, a, um proximus, a, um.

Neither, conj. — *nor*, nec — *neque* *neither* (of two), neuter, tra, trum, 194, R. 1.

Net, rete, (ret) is.

Never, nunquam (adv.).

Nevertheless, tamen, conj.

New, novus, a, um.

Next, posterus, a, um, 118; proximus, 371.

Night, nox, (noct) is, 293.

Nine, novem.

Ninth, nonus, a, um.

Nobility, nobilitas, (nobilitat) is, 293

Noble, nobilis, e, 104.

Nobody, nemo, (nemin) is, c

Noise, clamor, 319.

No one, nullus, a, um, 194, R. 1

Not, nōn; *with imper.*, nō.

Nothing, nihil.

Notice, (see) conspiciere.

Nourish, alere.

Novelty, novitas, (novitat) is, 293.

November, November, bria.

Nurse, nutrix, (nutric) is, 293

O.

Oath, iurjurandum, 351, 4.

Obeys, parere (with dat.).

Obscure, obscurare.

Obtain booty, prædari (dep.)

Obviously, prorsus.

Ocean, oceanus, i.

Of, de.

Of one's own accord, ultro

Old, vetus, (veter) is, 107.

Old man, senex.

Old age, senectus, 293.

On the other side of, trans (acc.); *on account of*, ob, with acc.

One, unus, a, um, 194, 1.

Open, apertus, a, um; *to open*, aperire.

Opinion, opinio, 337, R.; *sententia*, æ.

Opportunity of (with gerund in gen.), spatium, i.
Oracle, oraculum, i.
Oration, oratio, 333, R.
Orator, orator, 319.
Order, ordo, (ordin) is (m.); *to order*, jubere.
Orgetorix, Orgetorix, (Orgetorix) is.
Origin, origo, 339.
Other, alius, a, ud, 194, R. 1.
Otherwise, aliter.
Ought (one), oportet, 583
Our, noster, tra, tram.
Out of, e, or ex (abl.).
Overcome, superare.
Ox, bos, 351, 2.

P.

Pain, dolor, 319.
Paltry, vilis, e, 104.
Pardon, venia, æ.
Parents, parentes, ium.
Part, pars, (part) is.
Pass, iter facere, 210.
Passage, iter, (itiner) is (n.).
Patience, patientia, æ.
Patiently, patienter, adv.
Pay, pendere.
Peace, pax, (pac) is, 293.
Peninsula, peninsula, æ.
People, populus, i.
Perceive, animadvertere.
Perchance, forsitan, forte, adv.
Persian, Persa, æ.
Persuade, suadere, persuadere.
Phalanx, phalanx, (phalang) is.
Philosopher, philosophus, i.
Philosophize, philosophari, dep.
Pilot, gubernator, 319.
Pious, pius, a, um.
Pirate, prædo, 335.
Pity, miserere; *I pity*, me miseret, 579.
Place, locus, i; pl, i and a: *to place*, ponere.
Place into, imponere

Placid, placidus, a, um.
Plain, planus, a, um; æquus, a, um
a plain, æquor, 327.
Plan, consilium, i.
Plant, planta, æ; *to plant*, serere.
Plato, Plato, 334.
Pleading, dictio, 333, R.
Pleasant, jucundus, a, um.
Please, placere (with dat.); *it pleases*, placet, 583.
Pleasure, voluptas, (tat) is, 24.
Plough, arare.
Plunder, diripere: prædari, dep., 48.
Poet, poeta, æ (m.).
Pompey, Pompeius, i.
Poor, egenus, inops, pauper, 107.
Port, portus, ùs.
Post, statio, 333, R.
Possess one's self of, potiri (with gen. or abl.).
Power, vis, vim, vi, 301, 1; potestas (tat) is, 293.
Powerful, potens, (potent) is, 107
Praise, laus, (laud) is, 293; *to praise*, laudare.
Prayers, preces, um, pl. of prex.
Precept, præceptum, i.
Preceptor, præceptor, 319.
Precious, carus, a, um.
Prefer, antepondere.
Prepare, parare.
Present (to be), adesse; *interest*, 267.
Preserve, servare; *preserve moderation*, modum habere.
Preside over, præesse.
Prevail upon, permovere.
Prevent, prohibere, obstare.
Principle, principium, i.
Prisoner, captivus, i.
Private information, indicium, i.
Proceed, pergere, 447.
Proclaim, præco, 331, a.
Procure, comparare.
Promise, fides, ei; *to promise*, sperare, 395, IV.

Property, res familiaris : familia, s.
Providence, Providentia, s.
Province, provincia, s.
Prudence, prudentia, s.
Prudent, prudens, (prudent) is, 107.
Ptolemy, Ptolemæus, i.
Punish, punire.
Punishment, poena, s : supplicium, f.
Pursue, persequi (dep.).
Put-to-flight, fugare : dare in fugam.
Pyrenees, Pyrenæi (montes).
Pythagoras, Pythagoras, s.

Q.

Queen, regina, s.
Quickly, cito, adv.

R.


Race, genus, (gener) is, 344; gens, (gent) is.
Rain, imber, bris.
Raise, tollere : excitare.
Rank, ordo, (ordin) is (m.).
Rapidly, celeriter, adv.
Rashly, temere.
Rashness, temeritas (temeritat) is, 293.
Reach, pervenire.
Read, legere.
Reap, metere.
Reason, ratio, 333, R.
Rebellion, rebellio, 333, R.
Recall, revocare.
Receive, accipere; receive back, recipere.
Reckon, ducere.
Recollection, memoria, s.
Red, ruber, bra, brum, 77, a.
Refrain, temperare.
Refuse, recusare.
Reign, regnum, i; to reign, regnare.
Rejoice, gaudere.
Relate, narrare : commemorare
Relieve, levare.
Religion, religio, 333, R.

Remain, manere.
Remains, reliquie, arum, 57, s.
Remove, removere.
Renew, renovare : redintegrare.
Repair, reficere.
Repel, propulsare (ward off).
Repent, poenitere; I repent, me poenitet, 579.
Repress, opprimere.
Reprove, increpare.
Republic, respublica, 351, 3.
Resist, resistere, with dat.
Restrain, retinere.
Retreat, recedere.
Return (restore), reddere, (go back), revertere, or reverti.
Revenue, vectigal, (vectigal) is.
Revere, venerare.
Revoke, revocare, abrogare.
Reward, præmium, i.
Rhine, Rhenus, i.
Rhetoric, rhetorica, s.
Rich, dives, (divit) is, 107.
Riches, divitiæ, arum, 57, R.
Ride (on horseback), equitare.
Right, jus, (jur) is; rightly jure (abl. of jus); recte, adv.
Rise, oriri, dep.
River, fluvius, i; flumen, (fluvius) is
Robber, latro, 331, a.
Rock, petra, s.
Roll, volvere.
Roman, Romanus, a, um.
Rome, Roma, s.
Rose, rosa, s.
Rouse up, excitare.
Rout, fugare, pellere : fundere. 416, s.
Royal-power, regnum, i.
Rule, regere : imperare, with dat.
Run, currere.

S.

Sacred, sanctus, a, um : sacer, crum; sacred rites, sacra, orum,
Sacred Way, Via Sacra; *Sacred Mount*, Mons Sacer.

Sadness, tristitia, æ: *maior*, 319.
Safe, salvus, a, um; tutus, a, um.
Safety, salus, (salut) is, 293.
Sailor, nauta, æ.
Sake—for the sake of, causa abl., 135, II., b.
Same, is, ea, id; the very same, idem, 150.
Sand, aridum, i.
Say, dicere; I say, aio, inquam.
Scarcely, vix.
Scatter, spargere.
Scholar, discipulus, i.
School, schola, æ.
Scout, explorator, 319.
Sea, mare, 312; æquor, 325.
Secede, secedere.
Second, secundus, a, um.
Sedition, seditio, 333, R.
See, videre; (notice), conspiciere.
Seek, querere.
Seize, occupare; seize up, arripere.
Self, ipse.
Senate, senatus, ūs.
Senate-house, curia, æ.
Senator, senator, 319.
Send, mittere; send away, dimittere; send for, arcessere.
Senior, senior, (senior) is, 107 (comp. of senex), 370.
Separate, separare: dividere.
Sepulchre, sepulchrum, i.
Sequanian, Sequanus, i.
Serve (worship), colere.
Set (as heavenly bodies), occidere.
Set out, proficisci; set forth, exponere; set up, proponere.
Setting (of heavenly bodies), occasus, ūs.
Seven, septem; seventh, septimus, a, um.
Seventy, septuaginta.
Severe, gravis, e, 104.
Severity, severitas, (severitāt) is, 293.
Shadow, umbra, æ.

Sharp, acutus, a, um.
Sharply, acriter, adv.
Shine, micare, 389,  shine forth, emicare.
Ship, navis, 300.
Shore, littus, (littor) is, 344.
Short, brevis, e, 104.
Show, monstrare, ostendere; (noun) species, ei.
Shower, imber, bris.
Shun, vitare.
Shut, claudere.
Sick, æger, gra, grum.
Sign, signum, i.
Sight, conspectus, ūs; in signs of conspectū.
Silent (to be), tacere.
Silver, argentum, i.
Similar to, similis (dat.).
Sin, peccatum, i; to sin, peccare.
Since, quum, quoniam.
Sing, cantare.
Singing, cantus, ūs.
Sister, soror, (soror) is (f.).
Sit, sedere, 394, V.
Six, sex; sixth, sextus, a, um.
Slave, servus, i.
Slay, occidere, interficere.
Slayer, interfector, 319.
Sleep, somnus, i; to sleep, dormire.
Slinger, funditor, 319.
Small, parvus, a, um.
Snatch up, arripere.
So, ita, tam; so great, tantus; so long, tamdiu; so many, tot.
Socrates, Socrates, is.
Soldier, miles, (milit) is.
Some (persons), nonnulli.
Somebody, some, 178; some one, aliquis.
Sometimes, interdum, nonnunquam.
Somewhat great, aliquantus, 18.
Son, filius, i.
Son-in-law, gener, i.
Song, carmen, 344 a.
Soul, animus, i.

Spain, Hispania, s.
Spaniard, Hispanus, i.
Spare, parcere (dat.).
Sparta, Sparta, s.
Speak, dicere, loqui.
Speech, sermo, s.
Spend, consumere.
Spiritedly, acriter.
Splendid, splendidus, a, um.
Spoil, præda, s.
Spur, calcar, 325.
Stag, cervus, i.
Stain, maculare.
Stand, stare; *stand in the way*, obstare.
Standard, signum, i.
Star, sidus, (sider) is, 344; stella, s.
State, civitas, (civitas) is; respublica, 351, 3.
Station, statio, 333, R; *to station*, constituere, collocare.
Stimulate, inducere.
Stir up, instigare.
Stoic, Stoicus, i.
Stone, lapis, (lapis) is (m.).
Stormy, turbidus, a, um.
Strange, novus, a, um.
Strength, vis, 301; robur, 344.
Strengthen, confirmare.
Strive after, persequi, 206.
Strong, validus, a, um.
Strong desire, cupiditas, 293.
Study, studium, i.
Subdue, subigere.
Succour, subsidium, i.
Such, talis, e, 184.
Sudden, repentinus, a, um.
Suddenly, subito, adv.
Sufficiently, satis.
Sum of money, pecunia, s.
Summer, æstas, (æstat) is, 293.
Sun, sol, (söl) is (m.).
Sup, cenare.
Superior, superior, oris.
Support, alere.

Surrender, deditio, 333, R.
Surround, circumvenire; circumstare, 391; cingere, 401, 2.
Sure, certus, a, um.
Suspicion, suspicio, 333, R.
Sustain, sustinere.
Swallow, hirundo, 339.
Sweet, dulcis, e, 104.
Swift, celer, velox, 107.
Swiftly, celeriter, 217.
Swim, natare; *swim across*, transnare.
Sword, gladius, i.
Syracuse, Syracusæ, arum.

T.

Take, sumere; *take away*, eripere, *take back*, recipere; *take captive*, capere; *take care of*, curare; *take by storm*, expugnare; *take possession of*, occupare.
Talent, ingenium, i.
Tame, domare.
Teach, docere.
Teacher, magister, tri.
Tear, lacryma, s.
Tell, dicere, nuntiare.
Tempest, procella, s: tempestas.
Temple, templum, i.
Tenacious, tenax, (tenac) is, 107.
Tender, tener, a, um.
Tent, pellis, 322.
Tenth, decimus, a, um.
Terrify, terrere.
Territory, finis (m.).
Than, quam.
That (pron.), ille, is, iste.
That, conj., *in order that*, ut; *that not*, ne.
Themselves, sui, 142.
Then, tum, adv.
There, ibi.
Thick, densus, a, um.
Thine, tuus, a, um.
Thing, res, rei; *this thing*, hæc *these things*, hæc

Think, putare, cogitare, existimare, sentire, censere.
Third, tertius, a, um.
Thirst, sitis, 300.
Thirteen, tredecim.
Thirty, triginta.
This, hic, hæc, hoc.
Thither, eo.
Three, tres, ia.
Through, per (prep. with acc.).
Threw, jacere; *throw before*, projicere.
Thunder (verb), tonare.
Thus, ita.
Thy, tuus, a, um.
Tiber, Tiberis, is.
Time, tempus, (tempor) is, 344.
Timid, timidus, a, um.
To, ad (prep. with acc.).
To-day, hodie.
Together, una (adv.).
Toil, labor, 319: opera, æ.
To-morrow, cras (adv.).
Tongue, lingua, æ.
Too much, nimius, a, um.
Tooth, dens, (dent) is (m.).
Top of, summus, 297, a.
Touch, tangere; *touch upon*, attingere.
Tower, turris, 300: castellum, i.
Town, oppidum, i.
Townsman, oppidanus, i.
Treaty, fœdus, (fœder) is, 344.
Tree, arbor, (arbor) is (f.).
Trial, judicium, i.
Tribune, tribunus, i.
Tributary, stipendiarius, a, um.
Tribute, stipendium, i.
True, verus, a, um.
Truce, indutiæ, arum, 57, R.
Trust to, credere (with dat.).
Turbid, turbidus, a, um.
Turn, vertere.
Twenty, viginti.
Two-a-piece, bini, 189.

U.

Ulysses, Ulysses, is.
Uncertain, incertus, a, um.
Under, sub, prep., 323.
Understand, intelligere.
Undertake, suscipere.
Unfriendly, inimicus, a, um.
Unjust, injustus, a, um.
Unless, nisi (conj.).
Unmindful of, immemor (with gen.).
Until, donec, dum (conj.).
Use, usus, ūs; *to use*, uti, dep. abl., 316, b.
Useful, utilis, e, 104.

V.

Vacant (to be), vacare.
Vain—in vain, frustra (adv.).
Valour, virtus, (virtut) is, 293.
Value, pretium, i: *to value*, aestimare.
Vast, vastus, a, um.
Vaunt, ostentare.
Vehemently, vehementer (adv.).
Venetian, Venetus, i.
Very, valde, admodum; *very easy*, perfacilis, e; *very few*, perpauci
very near, proximus.
Vice, vitium, i.
Victory, victoria, æ.
Vile, vilis, e, 104.
Village, vicus, i.
Violate, violare.
Virgin, virgo, 339.
Virtue, virtus, (virtut) is, 293.
Virtuous, probus, a, um.
Voice, vox, (vōc) is, 293.
Vow, spondere, 395, IV.

W.

Wage (e. g., war), gerere: bellum inferre.
Wagon, carrus, i.
Wait for, expectare

Walk, ambulāre.
Wall, murus, i; *walls*, mœnia, um.
Wander, vagari, errare.
Want, carere, 348.
Wanting (to be), deesse, 267, b.
War, bellum, i.
Warlike, bellicosus, a, um.
Warn, monere.
Wash, alluere.
Watch, *watching*, vigilia, æ; *to watch*, vigilare.
Water, aqua, æ.
Wave, fluctus, ūs.
Way, via, æ; *to make* (their) *way*, iter facere.
Wearied, defessus, a, um.
Weary of, tædet, 579.
Weep, flere.
Well (to be), valere.
West, Occidens.
What (in number)? quotus? *what is the difference?* quid interest?
When, quum (conj.).
Whence, unde (adv.).
Whether, num, 174: utrum.
Where, ubi (adv.).
Which of the two, uter, 194, R. 1.
Whirlwind, turbo, (turbin) is (m.).
Who, qui, quæ, quod; *who?* quis, quæ, quid?
Whole, omnis, e; universus, a, um; totus, a, um; cunctus, 441.
Why? cār?
Wicked, improbus, a, um.
Wide, latus, a, um; *widely*, latè; *more widely*, latius.
Wild-beast, fera, æ.
Wind, ventus, i.
Willingly, libenter.
Wine, vinum, i.
Wing, ala, æ.
Winter, hyems, (hyem) is, 293; *to winter*, hiemare; *winter-quarters*, hiberna, orum (pl.).
Wisdom, sapientia, æ

Wise, sapiens, (sapient) is, 107, *wisely*, sapienter.
Wish, velle, cupere.
With, cum (prep., abl.).
Without, sine (prep., abl.); *to be without*, carere.
Withstand, resistere, 390.
Wolf, lupus, i.
Woman, femina, æ; *mulier*, is (f.).
Wonder at, admirari, dep.
Wonderful, mirabilis, e, 104.
Wood (a), sylva, æ.
Word, verbum, i; *word is brought*, nuntiatum est.
Work, opus, (oper) is, 344.
World, mundus, i: orbis terrarum.
Worse, pejus, adv.; *worst*, pessimus, 370.
Worship, colere, adorare.
Worthy, dignus, a, um (with abl.).
Would-that, utinam, 526.
Wound, vulnus, (vulner) is, 344: *to wound*, vulnerare.
Wretched, miser, 77, b.
Write, scribere.
Writer, scriptor, 319.

X.

Xenophon, Xenophon, (Xenophont) is.

Y.

Year, annus, adv.
Yearly, quotannis, i.
Yes, immo.
Yesterday, heri.
Yet, tamen.
Yoke, jugum, i.
Young-man, juvenis, is (m.): adolescens.
You, vos (sing., tu).
Your, vester, tra, tram, 134.
Youth, juvenis, (juventut) is, æ: a youth. See *young man*.

Z.

Zeal, studium, i.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

WHAT is a *monosyllable*? a *disyllable*? a *polysyllable*? (8.)—What is *inflection*?—What is the inflection of *nouns* called? of *verbs*? (21, 2 R.)—Name the *vowels*: the *liquids*: the *c-sounds*: *p-sounds*: *t-sounds*: *double consonant*: *diphthongs*, (23.)—Repeat the *general rules of quantity*, (24.)—Repeat the *general rules of gender*, (25, a.)

Has the Latin any *article*? (27.)—What is the *stem* of a noun? (30.)—How many *cases* of nouns are there? (31.)—What is the use of the *nominative*? the *vocative*? the *genitive*? (33.)—How many *declensions*?—How distinguished? (34.)—Give *nom.*, *voc.*, and *gen.* endings of 1st decl. (nom. and voc., a *short*; abl., a *long*).—What is the *gender* of 1st decl.? (36, c.)

Where do you put the *unemphatic gen.*? (*After* its noun, 38, a.)—The *emphatic*? (*Before* its noun, 38, b.)

What is the *subject* of a sentence? the *predicate*? (41.)—What is an *active verb*? *transitive*? *intransitive*? (42.)—What does the *infinitive* express? the *indicative*? (43.)—What does the *present tense* express? the *imperfect*? the *future*? (44.)—What is the *infinitive-ending* of 1st conj.?—How do you find the *stem* of a verb? (45.)—Give the 3d *person endings* of the *indicative*, (46.)—Are the *personal pronouns* necessarily used in Latin? (47 R.)—Where do you put the *subject nominative* in a sentence? (48, II.)

What is the *case* of the *direct object*? (51.)—Give the *accusative-endings* of 1st decl. (52.)—Rule of position for the *object accusative*? (53, II.)

What does the *dative* express? (54): the *ablative*? (55.)—Give the *case-endings* complete, 1st decl. (618): *quantity* of final syllables (618, R. 1): *gender* (618, R. 2): rule of position for *remote object* (58, II., a): for *preposition and its noun* (58, II., b.)

Case-endings, 2d decl., masc. (61.)—Name the *feminine nouns* of 2d decl. (*alvus*, *cōlus*, *hūmus*, *vannus*).—What nouns have *i* for *vocative-ending*? (62, R. 2.)—When *to* implies *motion*, how do you render it in Latin? (63, R.)

What nouns of 2d decl. reject the endings *ūs* and *ūs*? (64.)—Which of

these retain the *ë* in the oblique cases ? (65, R.)—What case is used with words of *abounding* and *wanting* ? (66, II., a.)

Case-endings, 2d decl. neut. (68.)—*Short* final syllables in 2d decl. (*üs, ð, ðm, ð*).—*Long* final syllables (*üs, is, ðs*).—What is the infinitive-ending of verbs, 2d conj. ? (70.)—Give the 3d person endings, indic. present: imperfect: future, (71.)

Give the endings of adjectives of Class I. (76.)—What adjectives reject the endings *üs* and *ð* ? (77.)—Where do you put the unemphatic adjective in a sentence ? (78, II., a.)—Where do you put the adjective belonging to a noun which governs another in the genitive ? (*Before* the genitive, 78 II., b.)

Give the 3d pers. endings of *esse*, indic. (79): rule of syntax for predicate noun (80, a): for predicate adjective, (81, b.)

Infinitive-ending, 3d conj. (83.)—Indic., 3d pers. endings, present: imperfect: future, (84.)—Infinitive-ending, 4th conj. (86.)—Indic., 3d pers., present: imperfect: future, (87.)—Where do you put the adjective belonging to a noun governed by a preposition ? (89, II.)

What syllable forms the 3d pers. *pass.* ending, indic. ? (90.)—In putting an active sentence into the passive form, what changes occur ? (93, II.)—When is the preposition omitted ? (93, II., R.)

Case-endings, 3d decl. (98.)—What is the gender of most nouns which add *s* to form the nom. ? (99.)—Decline *sermo*: *urbs*: *lex*.

What is the gender of nouns in *al, ar, e* ? (102, R. 2.)—Endings of adjectives of 2d class ? (104.)—Decline *brävis*. (105.)—What adjectives take *ë* instead of *i* in abl. ? (105, R. 2.)—What case is used with adjectives of *advantage* or *disadvantage*? of *likeness* or *unlikeness* ? (106, II., c.)

What adjectives form Class III. ? (107.)—Decline *fëlix*. (108.)—Which ending do *participles* in *ns* take in *abl. sing.*, *ë* or *i* ? (108, R. 1, b.)

What nouns belong to 4th decl. ? (110.)—Give the case-endings, masc. (111): neut. (111): quantity of final syllables, 4th decl. (621, R. 1): fem. nouns of 4th decl. (621, R. 2.)—What nouns take *übüs* in *abl. plur.* ? (621, R. 3.)—Decline *döms*, (112, 3.)—What does *dömi* mean ? (112, 4.)—Rule of syntax for verbs compounded with *trans*, (113, II., a.)—Is *trans* ever repeated ?

What nouns belong to 5th decl. ? (114.)—Case-endings, 5th decl. ? (116.)—When is the *o* in *ei long* ? when *short* ? (116, R.)—What nouns of 5th

decl. have plur. complete ? (117, R.)—Time *when* is put in what case ? (118, IL, c)

Decline *ego*, (120.)—What is the *adj. personal* pron. of 1st pers. sing. of 1st pers. plur. ? (122.)—Give 1st pers. endings, 1st conj., act. indic. *present* : *imperfect* : *future*.—Also, pass. *present* : *imperfect* : *future*. (123.)—What case is used with *esse* to denote the possessor ? (125, IL, a.)—Is *cum* prefixed or suffixed to the personal pronouns ? (125, IL, b.)

What are the 1st person endings, act. and pass., for 2d conj., indic. present ? imperfect ? future ? (126.)—The same for 3d conj. (127.)—Fourth, (128.)

Decline *tu*, (130.)—What are the 2d pers. endings, 1st conj., act. and pass., indic. present ? imperfect ? future ? (131.)—The same for 2d conj. (133.)—What are the *possessive* pronouns of 2d pers. ? (134.)—How is *ne* used ? (135, IL, a.)—Where is *causa* placed in a sentence ? (135, IL, b.)

What are the 2d pers. endings of verbs, 3d conj., act. and pass., indic. pres. ? imperfect ? future ? (136.)—The same for 4th conj. (137.)

Decline the *reflexive* pronoun *se*, (142.)—What is the *adjective personal* pronoun of 3d pers. ? (143.)—What case does *imperare* govern ? (147.)

Why are *demonstrative* pronouns so called ? (149.)—Decline *is*, *ea*, *id*, (150.)—Inflect *esse*, pres., imperf., and fut. indic. (151.)—Distinguish *suus* and *eius*, (153.)—What is the demonstrative of the 1st person ? (156) : of 2d ? (157) : of 3d ? (158.)

Decline *qui*, (164.)—Syntax of the relative, (167, b.)

Decline *quis*, (170.)—How is the answer *yes* given ? (173.)—What answer does *num* expect ? (175, b.)

Name the seven *indefinite* pronouns, (178.)—How are indef. pronouns used with a genitive ? (180, a.)

Name the *correlative* pronouns, (184.)—Give the Latin for *much gold* (186, a) : for *much money* (186, a).—Distinguish *tantum* and *tantus* (186, obs.)

Repeat the first twelve numerals in all four classes, (189.)—Give the rule for accus. of *time* or *space*, (191.)

Decline *unus*, *duo*, and *tres*, (194.)—What words are declined like *unus* ? (194, R. 1.)—Is the penult of *unius* *long* or *short* ?

Inflect *capere* in pres., imperf., and fut. indic. (199.)

What are *deponent* verbs? (206.)—How are they conjugated? (Ans. like passives.)

How do you form *derivative adverbs* from adjectives of Class I? (215, 1): of Class II? (215, 2.)—What is the general *position* of the adverb in a sentence? (218, a.)—Where is *ferè* placed? (218, b.)—How is *nequidem* used? (218, c.)

What prepositions govern the accus. or ablat.? (223.)—Give the rule of *opposition*, (225, a.)

Give the person-endings, pres. indic. act.: tense-stem: connecting-vowel: 1st conj.: 2d: 3d: 4th. (234.)

Imperfect tense, person-endings: tense-stem, four conj's.: connecting-vowel, (237.)—*Future* tense, 1st and 2d conj., person-endings: tense-stems: connecting-vowels (238): 3d and 4th conj., fut., person-ending: tense-stem: connecting-vowel, (240.)

Passive-endings, (243.)—Apparent irregularities, viz., 1st pers. pres. indic.: 3d conj., 2d pers. sing. pres.: 1st and 2d conj., fut., 2d pers. sing. (244.)

Rules of Quantity.—Monosyllables ending in a vowel (247, a.): exceptions.—Monosyllables ending in a consonant: exceptions, (247, b.)—Quantity of *a* final (248): *e* final (249): of *i* final (250): of *o* final (251): of *u* final, (252.)—Final syllables ending in a consonant, (253.)—Final *as*, *es*, *os*: exceptions, (254.)—Final *is* and *us*: exceptions, (255.)—Increase of nouns (257): of verbs, (258.)—Penults of perf. tense, (259.)—Adjectives *midus*, *icus*: in *ilus*: in *ilis*, *bilis*, (260.)

What are the tenses for action *completed*? (262): their endings? (263.)—Give the perf., pluperf., and fut. perf. of *esse*, (264.)—Distinguish perf. pres. from perf. aorist, (265.)—What case do the compounds of *esse* with prepositions govern? (267, b.)

How is perf. stem formed in most verbs of 1st conj.? of 2d? of 4th? (270.)—Give perf. of *amare*, *monere*, *audire*, (271.)

How is perf. stem formed of most verbs of 3d conj.? (276.)—Euphonic rules: (1) *k*-sound before *s*: (2) *b* before *s*: (3) *t*-sound before *s*, (277.)—What answer does *nonne* expect? (280.)—How is the pluperf. formed? the fut. perf.? (283.)

Name the six classes of nouns of 3d decl. (291.)—Euphonic rules, (292.)—How do you express "*on the top of the mountain*" in Latin? (297.)

Decline *Jup ter*: *Bos*: *Res publica*: *Jusjurandum*, (351.)

Repeat the rules of gender, 3d decl., from nominative formation, with the exceptions under each, (355.)

Comparison of Adjectives.—What is the *compar.* ending? (357.)—If the stem ends in a vowel, how is the *compar.* formed? (357, R.)—Syntax of *compar.*, when *quam* is omitted, (360, c.)

Superl. ending, (363.)—Stems in *er* add what ending? (364.)—Stems in *l*, what ending? (365.)—What case is used with superlatives? (367, b.)

Compare *bonus*, *malus*, *magnus*, *multus*, *parvus*, *senex*, *juvenis*, *exterus*, *inferus*, *superus*, *posterus*, (370.)—Comp. *dives* *benevolus*.

Are adverbs compared?—How? (376.)


What is the supine? (377.)—Form supine-stem, 1st conj.: 2d: 3d: 4th, (378.)—How is supine in *um* used? (379.)—How is supine in *u* used? (380.)—Name the supines in *u* which are in common use, (381.)—What case answers the question *whither*? (383.)

What are the four ways of forming perf. stem, 1st conj.? (387.)—How many verbs does each class contain? (387.)—How do you form perf., pluperf., or fut. perf. of these verbs? (388.)

What are the five ways of forming the perf. stem, 2d conj.? (394.)—How many verbs does each class contain? (395.)—What rules of euphony are to be applied here? (395, III., a, b, c.)

Name the six ways of forming the perf. stem, 3d conj. (400.)—What rules of euphony are to be applied in forming perf. stems of verbs of 1st class? (401, 1, &c.)

How do verbs of 2d class form perf. stem? (406): verbs of 3d class?—In what sense is *ad* often used by Cæsar? (408, c.)

How do verbs of 4th class form perf. stem? (411.)—What vowel changes must be observed here? (411, a, b, c.)—Give the rule for verbs of demanding (413, 1): for verbs of sparing (413, 4.)—What is the perf. of *adërë*? of *cædërë*? (413, )

How do verbs of 5th class form perf. stem? (416.)—Form the perf. stems of the 10 verbs in (416, c).—What is said of the *prænomens*? (418, c.)

How do verbs of 6th class form perf. stem? (421.)—What cases are used after *distribuere*? (423, c.)

What are the five ways of forming the perf. stem in 4th conj.? (426.)—How many verbs does each class contain? (427.)—How is the *manner* of an action expressed in Latin? (428, a.)

How are the passive tenses for completed action formed? (431.)—How is the perf. part. formed? (432, b.)—How is it inflected? (432, a.)—Inflect the perf., pluperf., and fut. perf. pass. of *amare*, (433.)—How is the perf. pass. part. sometimes used with *est*? (435, c.)

How many participles are there in Latin, act. and pass.? (438.)—Give the endings of the present part. act. in the four conjugations, (439, a.)—How is it declined? (440.)—Has the Latin any *active* part. to express *complete* action? (None, excepting in *deponent* verbs, 440, a, b.)—What is the use of the part. in discourse? (442, c.)—Give the words in which cannot stand first in a clause or sentence, (442, c.)

How is the fut. part. act. formed? (445.)—Inflect the periphrastic pres. past, and fut. of *amare*, (446.)—Give the rule for the use of the fut. part. with verbs of motion, (448.)

How is the perf. pass. part. formed? (451, a.)—How is it inflected? (451, b.)—How do *deponent* verbs use the perf. part. form? (451, c.)—What is the case of the place *where*? (453, a): of the place *whence*? (453, b): of the place *whither*? (453, c.)

When is the part. used in the ablative with a noun? (456.)—How is the want of a perf. act. part. supplied in Latin? (457.)—Can a noun be used in the ablative absolute with another noun? (Yes: 458.)

How does the infin. express action? (465.)—Give the infin. forms, act. and pass., in all the conjugations, (466.)—Give the rule for the complementary infin. (468, a.)

Name the classes of verbs which take after them the accus. and infin. (471.)—Give the method of changing English sentences commencing with *that* into the Latin accus. and infin. (472, 1, 2, 3.)

Give the formation of the perf. infin. pass. (478.)—When the accus. is used with this infin., with what does its part. agree? (478.)

How is the infin. fut. act. formed? (482): the infin. fut. pass. (483.)

Under what form does the gerund express the action of the verb ? (487 a.)—How is the gerund-stem formed ? (487, b.)—How the *cases* of the gerund ? (487, c.)—What rules apply to the cases of the infin. and gerund ? (489.)—Is the infin. or the accus. ger. used with a preposition ? (489, R.)—What case does the ger. govern ? (490.)

How does the gerundive express the action of a verb ? (495, a.)—How are its cases formed ? (495, b.)—How is it used ? (496.)—When *must* the gerundive be used instead of the gerund ?—When *may* it be so used ? (496, R.)—After what verbs does the gerundive express a purpose or object ? (498, R.)

What does the gerundive in the nom. neut. with *esse* express ? (501 a.)—What does it express when used with *esse* as a *verbal adjective* ? (502.)—What is the case of the person in both these constructions ? (The dative.)

How does *imper.* mood express the action of the verb ? (507.)—What is *not* with the imper. ? (510, Rule.)

When is a sentence compound ? (513, a.)—Give an example of a principal sentence : of a subordinate sentence, (513, c.)—Give *some* of the classes of subordinate sentences, (514, a, &c.)

Repeat the copulative conjunctions, (515.)—How are *et* and *que* used ? (517, a) : *ac* ? (517, b.)—What does *et* followed by another *et* mean ? (517, c.)—What is the Latin for *again and again* ? for *not only—but also* ? (517, d.)

Name the disjunctive conjunctions, (519.)—What does *aut* indicate ? *vel* ? (519, R. 1 and 2.)—How is *ve* used ? (519, R. 3.)—What do these conj. mean when repeated ? (519, R. 4.)—Give the adversatives, (520.)—What does *sed* express ? (522, a) : *autem* ? (522, b.)

How does the subjunc. mood express affirmation ? (524.)—Inflect subjunc. pres. of *esse*, (525.)—Inflect subjunc. pres. act. and pass. of *amārē, mōnērē, rēgērē, audire*, (526, b.)—How may a *wish* be expressed in Latin ? (528, a.)—How may a *softened command* be expressed ? (528, b.)—How do you express a direct question when *doubt* is implied ? (528, c.)

Inflect subjunc. perf. of *esse*, (531.)—How do regular verbs form subjunc. perf. act. ? (532, 1) : subjunc. perf. pass. ? (532, 2.)—Inflect the subjunc. perf. act. and pass. of *amārē, mōnērē, rēgērē, audirē*, (532, 3.)—How is the subjunc. perf. used imperatively ? (534, a.)—How may a *supposed* case be expressed ? (534, b.)—How may a *softened assertion* be expressed ? (534, c.)—What interrogative sentences take the subjunc. ? (534, c.)

How is the subjunc. imperf. formed ? (537.)—Repeat the paradigm (538.)—How is the subjunc. pluperf. act. and pass. formed ? (539, *a* and *b*.)—Give the paradigm, (539, *c*.)—Repeat the conditional conjunctions, (540, *a*.)—What is a conditional sentence ? (540, *b*.)—In conditional sentences how do you express a *real* condition ? a *possible* condition ? an *unreal* or *impossible* in present time ? an *unreal* or *impossible* condition in past time ? (542, *b*, Rule.)—Can the perf. or pluperf. indic. ever be used with *si* ? (No.)

Inflect *posse* in subjunc. pres. : imperf. : perf. : pluperf. (545.)—State the composition of *posse*.—Repeat the final conjunctions, (546.)—How is purpose or aim expressed in English ? how in Latin ? (548, *a*.)—How is an object to be provided against introduced in English ? how in Latin ? (548, *b*.)—Can a purpose or aim be expressed in Latin by an infin. ? (No.)

Give the primary tenses of the Latin verb : the historical, (551, 2, *a*, *b*.)—What is the rule for the succession of tenses ? (551, 3.)—How is a *result* expressed in English ? how in Latin ? (553, *a*.)—What is the rule for ut signifying *that* ? (553, *b*.)

How is the want of a fut. subjunc. supplied in Latin ? (556.)—Give the paradigm, periphr. conj. subjunc. (556.)—When does *quv* express a purpose instead of *ut* ? (558, *a*.)—In what sense is *quin* used ? (1) after negative sentences ? (2) after *non dubito*, &c. ? (558, *b*.)—When is *quominus* used in preference to *ne* ? (558, *c*.)

What are the two uses of *quum* ? (561.)—What is the first use called ? the second ? (561.)—When is *quum* followed by the indic. ? (563, *a*.)—When is *quum* *temporal* followed by the imperf. or pluperf. subjunc. ? (563, *b*.)—What is the rule for *quum* causal ? (563, *c*.)

When is the rel. pronoun followed by the subjunc. ? (566.)—Give the rule for the use of subjunc. in a rel. sentence, (568, *d*.)—Is the rel. to express a purpose very common in *Cæsar* ? (Yes.)

In what two ways may we relate the words of another ? (571.)—What is each method called ? (571.)—What kinds of sentences are introduced in *oratio obliqua* ? (Either principal or subordinate.)—What mood is used in principal sentences in *oratio obliqua* ? (574, *a*); in subordinate sentences ? (574, *b*.)

What are impersonal verbs ? (577.)—Give the classes of impersonals (578.)—What impersonals are followed by the accus. of the person and the gen. of the cause ? (579, *a*.)

Give the rule for *oportet* and *decet* (584, a): for *placet* (584, b).
for *licet* and *libet* (584, c): for *interest* and *refert* (584, d).



State the composition of *possum*, and repeat the paradigm, (587.)

Give the composition of *nōlo* and *mālo*, and repeat the paradigms
(592.)—Give the three rules for *velle*, *nolle*, and *mallo*, in (594).

Repeat the paradigm of irregular forms of *ferre*, (596.)—How are the
remaining tenses formed? (596, b.)—What is the meaning of *fērrunt*?
(598, b.)

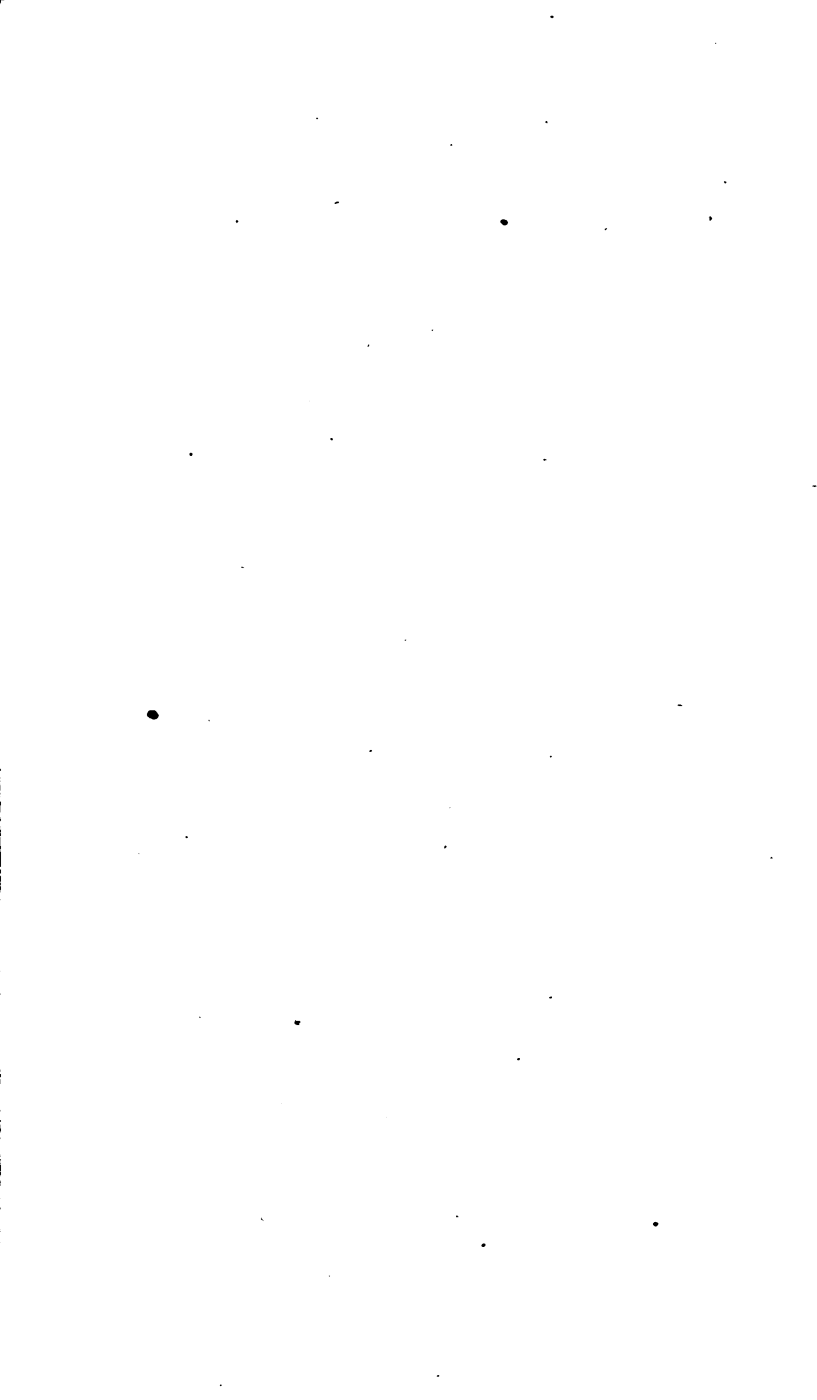
Of what verb does *fieri* form the *pass.*? (600.)—How are the tenses
formed? (600.)—Give the paradigm.—What is the quantity of *i* in *fieri*?
(600, R.)—What forms of *edere* are similar to those of *esse*? (601.)—
Give the paradigm.—What is the quantity of *es*, from *esse*? of *es*, from
edere? (601, R.)

What conjugation does *ire* follow? (605.)—Give the paradigm.—What
is said of the compounds? (605, 1, 2.)—How are *queo* and *nequeo* con-
jugated? (606.)

Inflect *aio* (609): *inquam* (610): *nōvi* (611).—How do you distinguish
between the use of *aio* and of *inquam*? (613, b, )—What form of
cepi is used with a *pass. infin.*? (613, c, )

M M

THE END



Books for Schools and Colleges

PUBLISHED BY

HARPER & BROTHERS, FRANKLIN SQUARE, NEW YORK.

127 HARPER & BROTHERS will send either of the following Works by Mail, postage prepaid (for any distance in the United States under 8000 miles), on receipt of the Money.

For a full Descriptive List of Books suitable for Schools and Colleges, see HARPER'S CATALOGUE, which may be obtained gratuitously on application to the Publishers personally, or by letter inclosing Six Cents in Stamps.

Alford's Greek Testament. The Greek Testament: with a Critically Revised Text; a Digest of various Readings; Marginal References to Verbal and Idiomatic Usage; Prolegomena; and a Critical and Exegetical Commentary. For the Use of Theological Students and Ministers. By HENRY ALFORD, B.D., Dean of Canterbury. Vol. I., containing the Four Gospels, 8vo, Muslin, \$5 00; Sheep extra, \$5 50; Half Calf extra, \$6 00.

Andrews's Latin-English Lexicon, founded on the larger German-Latin Lexicon of Dr. WM. FREUND. With Additions and Corrections from the Lexicons of Gesner, Facciolati, Scheller, Georges, &c. Royal 8vo, Sheep extra, \$5 00.

Abercrombie on the Intellectual Powers. Inquiries concerning the Intellectual Powers and the Investigation of Truth. With Questions. 18mo, Muslin, 45 cents; Half Bound, 50 cents.

Abercrombie on the Philosophy of the Moral Feelings. With Questions. 18mo, Muslin, 40 cents; Half Bound, 50 cents.

Abercrombie's Miscellaneous Essays. Consisting of the Harmony of Christian Faith and Christian Character; The Culture and Discipline of the Mind; Think on these Things; The Contest and the Armor; The Messiah as an Example. 18mo, Muslin, 37½ cents.

Alison on Taste. Essays on the Nature and Principles of Taste. Edited for Schools, by ABRAHAM MILLS. 12mo, Muslin, 75 cents.

Anthon's Latin Lessons. Latin Grammar, Part I. Containing the most important Parts of the Grammar of the Latin Language, together with appropriate Exercises in the translating and writing of Latin. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Latin Prose Composition. Latin Grammar, Part II. An Introduction to Latin Prose Composition, with a complete Course of Exercises, illustrative of all the important Principles of Latin Syntax. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

A Key to Latin Composition may be obtained by Teachers. 12mo, Half Sheep, 50 cents.

Anthon's Zumpt's Latin Grammar. From the Ninth Edition of the Original, by LEONARD SCHMITZ, Ph.D. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Zumpt's Latin Grammar, Abridged. 12mo, Sheep extra, 50 cents.

Anthon's Latin Versification. In a Series of Progressive Exercises, including Specimens of Translation from the English and German Poetry into Latin Verse. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

A Key to Latin Versification may be obtained by Teachers. 12mo, Half Sheep, 50 cents.

Anthon's Latin Prosody and Metre. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Cæsar. Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War, and the First Book of the Greek Paraphrase; with English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, Plans of Battles, Sieges, &c., and Historical, Geographical, and Archeological Indexes. Map, Plans, Portrait, &c. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Anthon's Æneid of Virgil. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, a Metrical Clavis, and an Historical, Geographical, and Mythological Index. Portrait and many Illustrations. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 25.

Anthon's Eclogues and Georgics of Virgil. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, and a Metrical Index. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 25.

Anthon's Sallust. Sallust's Jugurthine War and Conspiracy of Catiline. With an English Commentary, and Geographical and Historical Indexes. Portrait. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Horace. The Works of Horace. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory. A new Edition, corrected and enlarged, with Excursions relative to the Vines and Vineyards of the Ancients; a Life of Horace, a Biographical Sketch of Mæcenas, a Metrical Clavis, &c. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 25.

Anthon's Cicero. Cicero's Select Orations. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, and Historical, Geographical, and Legal Indexes. An improved Edition. Portrait. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Anthon's Cicero's Tusculan Disputations. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Anthon's Cicero de Senectute. The De Senectute, De Amicitia, Paradoxa, and Somnium Scipionis of Cicero, and the Life of Atticus, by Cornelius Nepos. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Cicero de Officiis. M. T. Ciceronis de Officiis Libri Tres. With Marginal Analysis and an English Commentary. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Tacitus. The Germania and Agricola, and also Selections from the Annals of Tacitus. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory. Revised and enlarged Edition. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Anthon's Cornelius Nepos. Cornelii Nepotis Vitæ Imperatorum. With English Notes, &c. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Anthon's Juvenal. The Satires of Juvenal and Persius. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, from the best Commentators. Portrait. 12mo, Sheep extra, 90 cents.

Anthon's First Greek Lessons, containing the most important Parts of the Grammar of the Greek Language, together with appropriate Exercises in the translating and writing of Greek. For the use of Beginners. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Greek Composition. Greek Lessons, Part II. An Introduction to Greek Prose Composition, with a Complete Course of Exercises illustrative of all the important Principles of Greek Syntax. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Greek Grammar. For the use of Schools and Colleges. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's New Greek Grammar. From the German of Kühner, Matthiæ, Buttman, Rost, and Thiersch; to which are appended Remarks on the Pronunciation of the Greek Language, and Chronological Tables explanatory of the same. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Greek Prosody and Metre. For the use of Schools and Colleges: together with the Choral Scanning of the Prometheus Vinculus of Æschylus, and Œdipus Tyrannus of Sophocles; to which are appended Remarks on the Indo-Germanic Analogies. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Anthon's Jacobs's Greek Reader, principally from the German Work of Frederic Jacobs. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, a Metrical Index to Homer and Anacreon, and a copious Lexicon. 12mo, Sheep, \$1 00.

Anthon's Xenophon's Anabasis. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, a Map arranged according to the latest and best Authorities, and a Plan of the Battle of Cunaxa. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 25.

Anthon's Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, the Prolegomena of Kühner, Wiggers's Life of Socrates, &c., &c. Corrected and enlarged. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Antho's Homer. The First Six Books of Homer's Iliad, English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, a Metrical Index, and Homeric Glossary. Portrait. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 25.

Antho's Manual of Greek Antiquities. From the best and most recent Sources. Numerous Illustrations. 12mo, Sheep extra, 88 cents.

Antho's Manual of Roman Antiquities. From the most recent German Works. With a Description of the City of Rome, &c. Numerous Illustrations. 12mo, Sheep extra, 88 cents.

Antho's Manual of Greek Literature. From the earliest authentic Periods to the close of the Byzantine Era. With a Critical History of the Greek Language. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Antho's Smith's Dictionary of Antiquities. A Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities, from the best Authorities, and embodying all the recent Discoveries of the most eminent German Philologists and Jurists. First American Edition, corrected and enlarged, and containing also numerous Articles relative to the Botany, Mineralogy, and Zoology of the Ancients. By CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. Royal 8vo, Sheep extra, \$4 00.

Smith's Antiquities, Abridged by the Author. 12mo, Half Sheep, 90 cents.

Antho's Classical Dictionary. Containing an Account of the principal Proper Names mentioned in Ancient Authors, and intended to elucidate all the important Points connected with the Geography, History, Biography, Mythology, and Fine Arts of the Greeks and Romans; together with an Account of the Coins, Weights, and Measures of the Ancients, with Tabular Values of the same. Royal 8vo, Sheep extra, \$4 00.

Antho's Smith's New Classical Dictionary of Greek and Roman Biography, Mythology, and Geography. Numerous Corrections and Additions. Royal 8vo, Sheep extra, \$2 50.

Antho's Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary. For the use of Schools. Chiefly from the Lexicons of Freund, Georges, and Kaltschmidt. Small 4to, Sheep extra, \$2 00.

Antho's Riddle and Arnold's English-Latin Lexicon, founded on the German-Latin Dictionary of Dr. C. E. GEORGES. With a copious Dictionary of Proper Names from the best Sources. Royal 8vo, Sheep extra, \$3 00.

Antho's Ancient and Mediæval Geography. For the use of Schools and Colleges. 8vo, Muslin, \$1 50; Sheep extra, \$1 75.

Barton's Grammar. With a brief Exposition of the Chief Idiomatic Peculiarities of the English Language. To which Questions have been added. 16mo, Muslin, 88 cents.

Beecher's (Miss) Physiology and Calisthenics. Over 100 Engravings. 16mo, Muslin, 50 cents.

Boyd's Rhetoric. Elements of Rhetoric and Literary Criticism, with copious Practical Exercises and Examples: including, also, a succinct History of the English Language, and of British and American Literature, from the earliest to the present Times. On the Basis of the recent Works of ALEXANDER REID and R. CUNNELL; with large Additions from other Sources. Compiled and arranged by J. R. BOYD, A.M. 12mo, Half Roan, 50 cents.

Boyd's Eclectic Moral Philosophy: prepared for Literary Institutions and General Use. By J. R. BOYD, A.M. 12mo, Muslin, 75 cents.

Butler's Analogy. By Emory and Crooks. Bishop Butler's Analogy of Religion, Natural and Revealed, to the Constitution and Course of Nature. With an Analysis by the late ROBERT EMORY, D.D., President of Dickinson College. Edited, with a Life of Bishop Butler, Notes, and Index, by Rev. G. R. CROOKS, D.D. 12mo, Muslin, 75 cents.

Butler's Analogy. By Hobart. With Notes. Adapted to the use of Schools, by CHARLES E. WEST. 18mo, Muslin, 40 cents.

Buttmann's Greek Grammar. For the use of High Schools and Universities. Revised and enlarged. Translated by EDWARD ROBINSON, D.D., LL.D. 8vo, Sheep extra, \$2 00.

Burke on the Sublime and Beautiful. 12mo, Muslin, 75 cents.

Calkins's Object Lessons. Primary Object Lessons for a Graduated Course of Development. A Manual for Teachers and Parents, with Lessons for the Proper Training of the Faculties of Children. By N. A. CALKINS. Engravings. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 00.

Campbell's Philosophy of Rhetoric. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 25.

Clark's Elements of Algebra. 8vo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Collord's Latin Accidence. Latin Accidence and Primary Lesson Book; Containing a Full Exhibition of the Forms of Words, and First Lessons in Reading. By GEORGE W. COLLORD, A.M., Professor of Latin and Greek in the Brooklyn Collegiate and Polytechnic Institute. 12mo.

Comte's Philosophy of Mathematics. Translated from the Cours de Philosophie Positive, by W. M. GILLESPIE, A.M. 8vo, Muslin, \$1 25.

Combe's Principles of Physiology. With Questions. Engravings. 18mo, Muslin, 45 cents; Half Sheep, 50 cents.

Crabb's English Synonyms. English Synonyms explained. With copious Illustrations and Explanations, drawn from the best Writers. By GEORGE CRABB, M.A. 8vo, Sheep extra, \$2 00.

Daniell's Natural Philosophy. Edited by JAMES RENWICK. 18mo, Muslin, 45 cents.

Docharty's Arithmetic. A Practical and Commercial Arithmetic: containing Definitions of Terms, and Rules of Operations, with numerous Examples. The whole forming a complete Treatise for the use of Schools and Academies. By GERARDUS BEKKMAN DOCHARTY, LL.D., Professor of Mathematics in the New York Free Academy. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Docharty's Institutes of Algebra. The Institutes of Algebra. Designed for the use of Schools, Academies and Colleges. 12mo, Sheep, 75 cents.

Docharty's Geometry. Elements of Plane and Solid Geometry, together with the Elements of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry, and an Article on Inverse Trigonometrical Functions. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Draper's Physiology. Human Physiology, Statical and Dynamical; or, The Conditions and Course of the Life of Man: being the Text-Book of the Lectures delivered in the Medical Department of the University. By JOHN W. DRAPER, M.D., LL.D. Illustrated by nearly 300 fine Wood-cuts from Photographs. 8vo, 650 pages, Muslin, \$4 00; Sheep, \$4 25; Half Calf, \$5 00.

Draper's Text-Book on Chemistry. A Text-Book on Chemistry, for the use of Schools and Colleges. With nearly 800 Illustrations. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Draper's Text-Book on Natural Philosophy. A Text-Book on Natural Philosophy, for the use of Schools and Colleges. Containing the most recent Discoveries and Facts, compiled from the best Authorities. With nearly 400 Illustrations. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Duff's Book-Keeping. The North American Accountant: embracing Single and Double Entry Book-Keeping, practically adapted to the Inland and Maritime Commerce of the United States. Exemplifying all Modern Improvements in the Science, with a New and Certain Method of detecting Errors and proving the Ledger. Embracing an Improved Plan of Instruction. Complete in Three Parts. By P. DUFF, Merchant. 8vo, School Edition, Half Sheep, 75 cents; Mercantile Edition, Muslin, \$1 50.

Faraday on the Physical Forces. A Course of Six Lectures on the Various Forces of Matter, and their Relations to each other. By MICHAEL FARADAY, D.C.L., F.R.S., Fullerian Professor of Chemistry, Royal Institution. Edited by WILLIAM CROOKES, F.C.S. With numerous Illustrations. 12mo, Muslin, 50 cents.

Faraday's Lectures on the Chemical History of a Candle. A Course of Six Lectures on the Chemical History of a Candle, to which is added a Lecture on Platinum. Edited by WILLIAM CROOKES, F.C.S. With numerous Illustrations. 16mo, Muslin, 50 cents.

Findlay's Classical Atlas to illustrate Ancient Geography. Comprised in 25 Maps, showing the various Divisions of the World as known to the Ancients. Composed from the most Authentic Sources, with an Index of the Ancient and Modern Names. 8vo, Half Bound, \$3 25.

Foster's First Principles of Chemistry. Illustrated by a Series of the most recently Discovered and brilliant Discoveries known to the Science. Adapted especially for Classes. 12mo, Sheep extra, 60 cents.

APPARATUS to perform the experiments laid down in this work, manufactured expressly for this purpose, carefully packed for transportation, for \$23.

Foster's Chart of the Organic Elements. For the use of Schools and Academies. Beautifully colored, mounted on Rollers, with Cloth back, \$4 00.

Fowler's English Language. The English Language in its Elements and Forms. With a History of its Origin and Development, and a full Grammar. For Colleges and Schools. By WILLIAM C. FOWLER, late Professor in Amherst College. 8vo, Muslin, \$1 50; Sheep extra, \$1 75.

Fowler's English Grammar for Schools. Designed for General Use in Schools and Families. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Fowler's Elementary English Grammar for Common Schools. 16mo, Sheep extra, 50 cents.

Gieseler's Church History. Edited by Rev. H. B. SMITH, D.D., Professor in the Union Theological Seminary, N. Y. 4 vols. 8vo, Sheep extra, \$2 25 per vol.

Gray's and Adams's Geology. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Gray's Natural Philosophy. Designed as a Text-Book for Academies, High Schools, and Colleges. 300 Wood-cuts. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Greek Concordance of the New Testament. The Englishman's Greek Concordance of the New Testament; being an Attempt at a Verbal Connection between the Greek and the English Texts: including a Concordance to the Proper Names, with Indexes, Greek-English and English-Greek. 8vo, Muslin, \$3 50; Sheep, \$4 00.

Greek-English and English-Greek Lexicon, for the use of Schools and Academies. By Prof. HENRY DEISLER, of Columbia College, Editor of "Liddell and Scott's Greek Lexicon." Small 4to. (*In Press.*)

Griscom's Animal Mechanism and Physiology. Illustrations. 18mo, Muslin, 45 cents.

Hackley's Algebra. School and College Edition. 8vo, Sheep extra, \$1 50. A School Edition. 8vo, Muslin, \$1 00.

Hackley's Geometry. 8vo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Hale's History of the United States. 2 vols. 18mo, Muslin, 90 cents.

Hamilton's (Sir William) Philosophy. With an Introductory Essay by ROBERT TURNBULL, D.D. 8vo, Muslin, \$1 50.

Harper's Greek and Latin Texts. Cheap and Accurate Editions of the Classics for the use of Schools and Students. Superior in mechanical execution to other editions, and more convenient in form. 18mo, Flexible Cloth Binding, 40 cents a volume. CÆSAR.—VERGILIUS.—HORATIUS.—CICERO DE SENECTUTE and DE AMICITIA.—LUCRETIVS.—ÆSCHYLUS.—EURIPIDES, 3 vols.—HERODOTUS, 2 vols.—THUCYDIDES, 2 vols.

Harper's New Classical Library. Literal Translations of the Greek and Latin Authors. Portraits. 12mo, Muslin, 75 cents each. The following volumes are now ready: CÆSAR.—VERGIL.—HORACE.—SALLUST.—CICERO'S ORATIONS.—CICERO'S OFFICES, &c.—CICERO ON ORATORY and ORATORS.—TACITUS, 2 vols.—TERENCE.—JUVENAL.—XENOPHON.—HOMER'S ILLAD.—HOMER'S ODYSSEY.—THUCYDIDES.—HERODOTUS.—EURIPIDES, 2 vols.—SOPHOCLES.—ÆSCHYLUS.—DEMOSTHENES, 2 vols.

Harper's School History. Narrative of the General Course of History, from the Earliest Periods to the Establishment of the American Constitution, Prepared with Questions for the use of Schools, and illustrated with 150 Maps and Engravings. Square 13mo, Muslin, \$1 25; Sheep, \$1 38.

Harrison's Latin Grammar. An Exposition of some of the Laws of the Latin Grammar. By GEBNER HARRISON, M.D., Professor of Ancient Languages in the University of Virginia. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Haswell's Mensuration. For Tuition and Reference, containing Tables of Weights and Measures; Mensuration of Surfaces, Lines, and Solids, and Conic Sections, Centres of Gravity, &c. To which is added, Tables of the Areas of Circular Segments, Sines of a Circle, Circular and Semi-elliptical Arcs, &c., &c. By C. H. HASWELL, Marine Engineer. 12mo, Sheep, 75 cents.

Henry's History of Philosophy. Epitome of the History of Philosophy. For Colleges and High Schools. 2 vols. 18mo, Muslin, 90 cents.

Herschell's Natural Philosophy. 12mo, Muslin, 60 cents.

Hooker's Child's Book of Nature. The Child's Book of Nature, for the use of Families and Schools; intended to aid Mothers and Teachers in training Children in the Observation of Nature. In Three Parts. PART I. Plants. —PART II. Animals. —PART III. Air, Water, Heat, Light, &c. By WORTHINGTON HOOKER, M.D., Yale College. Illustrated by Wood-cuts. The Three Parts complete in one vol. Small 4to, Muslin, \$1 25; Separately, Muslin, 50 cents each.

Hooker's Natural History. For the use of Schools and Families. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 00.

Hooker's Science for the People. An Elementary Work on Natural Philosophy, for Schools and Families.

Kane's Chemistry. With Additions and Corrections. By JOHN WILLIAM DRAPER, M.D. With about 250 Wood-cuts. 8vo, Muslin, \$1 50; Sheep extra, \$1 75.

Lee's Elements of Geology. Engravings. 18mo, Half Sheep, 50 cents; Muslin, 45 cents.

Lewis's Platonic Theology. Plato against the Atheists; or, The Tenth Book of the Dialogue on Laws, accompanied with Critical Notes, and followed by extended Dissertations on the main Points of Platonic Philosophy and Theology, especially as compared with the Holy Scriptures. By TATLER LEWIS, LL.D. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 50.

Liddell's School History of Rome. (*See Student's Historical Text-Books.*)

Liddell and Scott's Greek-English Lexicon. Based on the German Work of FRANCIS PASSOW. With Corrections and Additions, and the Insertion, in Alphabetical Order, of the Proper Names occurring in the Principal Greek Authors, by Professor HENRY DRISLER, M.A., Columbia College, N. Y. Royal 8vo, Sheep extra, \$5 00.

Loomis's Treatise on Arithmetic. A Treatise on Arithmetic, Theoretical and Practical. By ELIAS LOOMIS, LL.D., Professor of Mathematics in Yale College. 12mo, 352 pages, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Loomis's Elements of Algebra. Elements of Algebra. Designed for the use of Beginners. 12mo, 281 pages, Sheep extra, 62½ cents.

Loomis's Treatise on Algebra. A Treatise on Algebra. 8vo, 350 pages, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Loomis's Elements of Geometry. Elements of Geometry and Conic Sections. 8vo, 234 pages, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Loomis's Trigonometry and Tables. Trigonometry and Tables. 8vo, 360 pages, Sheep extra, \$1 50.

The *Trigonometry and Tables*, bound separately. The *Trigonometry*, \$1 00; *Tables*, \$1 00.

Loomis's Elements of Analytical Geometry. Elements of Analytical Geometry, and of the Differential and Integral Calculus. 8vo, 286 pages, 3 sheep extra, \$1 50.

Loomis's Elements of Natural Philosophy. Elements of Natural Philosophy. Designed for Academies and High Schools. 12mo, 352 pages, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Loomis's Practical Astronomy. An Introduction to Practical Astronomy, with a Collection of Astronomical Tables. 8vo, 497 pages, Sheep extra, \$1 50.

Loomis's Recent Progress of Astronomy, especially in the United States. A thoroughly Revised Edition. Illustrations. 12mo, 396 pages, Muslin, \$1 00.

Loomis's Meteorology and Astronomy. Elements of Meteorology and Astronomy, for the use of Academies and High Schools. 12mo, Sheep extra. (*In Press.*)

Lowry's Universal Atlas. From the most Recent Authorities. 4to, Half Roan, \$5 00.

M'Clintock's First Book in Latin. Comprising Grammar, Exercises, and Vocabulary, on the Method of Constant Imitation and Repetition. With Summaries of Etymology and Syntax. By Rev. J. M'CLINTOCK, D.D., LL.D., President of Troy University, and Rev. Geo. R. Crooks, D.D., late Adjunct Professor of Languages in Dickinson College. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

M'Clintock's Second Book in Latin. Containing Syntax and Reading Lessons in Prose; forming a sufficient Latin Reader. With Imitation Exercises and a Vocabulary. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

M'Clintock's First Book in Greek. Containing a full View of the Forms of Words, with Vocabulary and copious Exercises, on the Method of Constant Imitation and Repetition. With brief Summaries of the Doctrine of the Verb, and of the Rules of Syntax. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

M'Clintock's Second Book in Greek. Containing Syntax, with Reading Lessons in Prose; Prosody and the Dialects, with Reading Lessons in Verse. Forming a sufficient Greek Reader. With Notes and a copious Vocabulary. 12mo, Sheep extra, 75 cents.

Markham's (Mrs.) History of France. A History of France, from the Conquest of Gaul by Julius Cæsar to the Reign of Louis Philippe. With Conversations at the End of each Chapter. Map, Notes, and Questions, and a Supplement, bringing down the History to the Present Time. By JACOB ARBOTT. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 00.

Maury's Principles of Eloquence. With an Introduction, by Bishop PORTER. 18mo, Muslin, 45 cents.

Mill's Logic. A System of Logic, Ratiocinative and Inductive: being a connected View of the Principles of Evidence, and the Methods of Scientific Investigation. By J. S. MILL. 8vo, Muslin, \$1 50.

Mills's Literature and Literary Men of Great Britain and Ireland. By ABRAHAM MILLS, A.M. 2 vols. 8vo, Muslin, \$3 50; Half Calf, \$5 50.

Morse's School Geography. A New System of Geography, for the use of Schools. Illustrated by more than 50 Cerographic Maps, and numerous Engravings on Wood. 4to, Half Bound, 50 cents.

Noel and Chapsal's French Grammar. 12mo, Muslin, 75 cents.

Olmsted's Astronomy. Engravings. 12mo, Muslin, 75 cents.

Parker's Outlines of General History. Outlines of General History, designed as the Foundation and Review of a Course of Historical Reading. By RICHARD GREEN PARKER, A.M., Corresponding Member of the New York Historical Society; Author of "Aids to English Composition," &c. New Edition, with Additions. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Parker's Aids to English Composition. Aids to English Composition, Prepared for Students of all Grades, embracing Specimens and Examples of School and College Exercises, and most of the higher Departments of English Composition, both in Prose and Verse. A New Edition, with Additions and Improvements. 12mo, Muslin, 80 cents; Sheep extra, 90 cents.

Parker's Geographical Questions. Adapted for the use of Morse's, Woodbridge's, Worcester's, Mitchell's, Field's, Malte-Brun's, Smith's, Olney's Goodrich's, or any other respectable Collection of Maps: embracing, by way of Question and Answer, such Portions of the Elements of Geography as are necessary as an Introduction to the Study of the Maps. To which is added a concise Description of the Terrestrial Globe. 12mo, Muslin, 20 cents.

Proudfit's Plautus's "Captives." With English Notes for the use of Students, by Professor JOHN PROUDFIT, D.D. 18mo, Paper, 38 cents.

Potter's Principles of Science. The Principles of Science applied to the Domestic and Mechanic Arts, and to Manufactures and Agriculture, with Reflections on the Progress of the Arts, and their Influence on National Welfare. By Rt. Rev. ALONZO POTTER, D.D. With Illustrations. 12mo, Muslin, 75 cents.

Potter's Political Economy. Political Economy: Its Objects, Uses, and Principles; considered with Reference to the Condition of the American People. With a Summary for the use of Students. 18mo, Half Sheep, 50 cents.

Potter's Hand-Book for Readers and Students, intended to assist Private Individuals, Associations, School Districts, &c., in the Selection of Useful and interesting Works for Reading and Investigation. By A. POTTER, D.D. 18mo, Muslin, 45 cents.

Renwick's Natural Philosophy. Engravings. 18mo, Half Sheep, 75 cents.

Renwick's Mechanics. Applications of the Engravings. 18mo, Half Sheep, 90 cents.

Renwick's Chemistry. Engravings. 18mo, Half Sheep, 75 cents.

Robinson's Greek Lexicon of the Testament. A Greek and English Lexicon of the New Testament. By EDWARD ROBINSON, D.D., LL.D., Professor of Biblical Literature in the Union Theological Seminary, N. Y. A New Edition, Revised, and in great part re-written. Royal 8vo, Muslin, \$4 50; Sheep extra, \$4 75.

Robinson's Buttmann's Greek Grammar. (*See Buttmann's Greek Grammar.*)

Russell's Juvenile Speaker. The Juvenile Speaker; comprising Elementary Rules and Exercises of Declamation, with a Selection of Pieces for Practice. By the Rev. FRANCIS T. RUSSELL, A.M. 12mo, Muslin, 60 cents; Half Bound, 70 cents.

Salkeld's Roman and Grecian Antiquities. With Maps, &c. 18mo, Muslin, 85 cents.

Salkeld's First Book in Spanish. A First Book in Spanish; or, A Practical Introduction to the Study of the Spanish Language. Adapted to every Class of Learners; containing full Instructions in Pronunciation; a Grammar; Reading Lessons, &c. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 00.

Schmucker's Psychology. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 00.

School (the) and the Schoolmaster. A Manual for the use of Teachers, Employers, Trustees, Inspectors, &c., &c. By Rt. Rev. ALONZO POTTER, D.D., and GEORGE B. EMERSON, A.M. Engravings. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 00.

Smith's Mechanics. Illustrations. 8vo, Muslin, \$1 50; Sheep extra, \$1 75.

Smith's (Dr. Wm.) New Classical Dictionary. (*See Anthon's Smith's New Classical Dictionary.*)

Smith's (Dr. Wm.) Dictionary of Antiquities. (*See Anthon's Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities.*)

Smith's Student's Gibbon. (*See Student's Historical Text-Books.*)

Smith's History of Greece. (*See Student's Historical Text-Books.*)

Smith's Smaller History of Greece. (*See Student's Historical Text-Books.*)

Strong's Harmony of the Gospels. A Harmony of the Gospels, in the Greek of the Received Text. With the most important various Readings, brief Grammatical Explanations, Select Biblical References, and Chronological Notes. For the use of Students and others. By Rev. JAMES STRONG, S.T.D. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 25.

Student's (the) Historical Text-Books:

Liddell's School History of Rome. A School History of Rome, from the Earliest Times to the Establishment of the Empire. With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By HENRY G. LIDDELL, D.D., Dean of Christ Church, Oxford. Illustrated by numerous Wood-cuts. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 00.

Dr. Smith's History of Greece. A History of Greece, from the Earliest Times to the Roman Conquest. With Supplementary Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D., Editor of the Dictionaries of "Greek and Roman Antiquities," "Biography and Mythology," and "Geography." Revised, with an Appendix, by GEORGE W. GREENE, A.M. For Schools and Students. Illustrated with 100 Wood-cuts. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 00. ●

Dr. Smith's Smaller History of Greece. A Smaller History of Greece, from the Earliest Times to the Roman Conquest. By WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D. Illustrated by numerous Engravings on Wood. 16mo, Muslin, 60 cents.

The Student's Gibbon. The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire. Abridged. Incorporating the Researches of Recent Commentators. By WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D., Editor of the "Classical Dictionary," "A School Dictionary of Greece," &c. Illustrated by 100 Engravings on Wood. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 00.

The Student's Hume. A History of England, from the Earliest Times to the Revolution in 1688. By DAVID HUME. Abridged. Incorporating the Corrections and Researches of Recent Historians; and continued down to the Year 1858. Illustrated by Engravings on Wood. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 00.

Spencer's Greek New Testament. The Four Gospels and Acts of the Apostles, in Greek. With English Notes, Critical, Philological, and Exegetical, on the Gospels and Acts; Maps, Indexes, &c., together with the Epistles and the Apocalypse. The whole forming the Complete Text of the New Testament. For the use of Schools, Colleges, and Theological Seminaries. By Rev. J. A. SPENCER, D.D. 12mo, Muslin, \$1 00; Sheep extra, \$1 25.

Upham's Mental Philosophy. Elements of Mental Philosophy; embracing the two Departments of the Intellect and Sensibilities. By Rev. THOMAS C. UPHAM, D.D., Professor of Moral and Mental Philosophy in Bowdoin College. 2 vols. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$2 50. 12mo, Sheep, \$1 25. ABRIDGED EDITION.

Upham on the Will. Philosophical and Practical Treatise on the Will. Forming the Third Volume of a System of Mental Philosophy. By T. C. UPHAM, Professor in Bowdoin College. 12mo, Sheep extra, \$1 25.

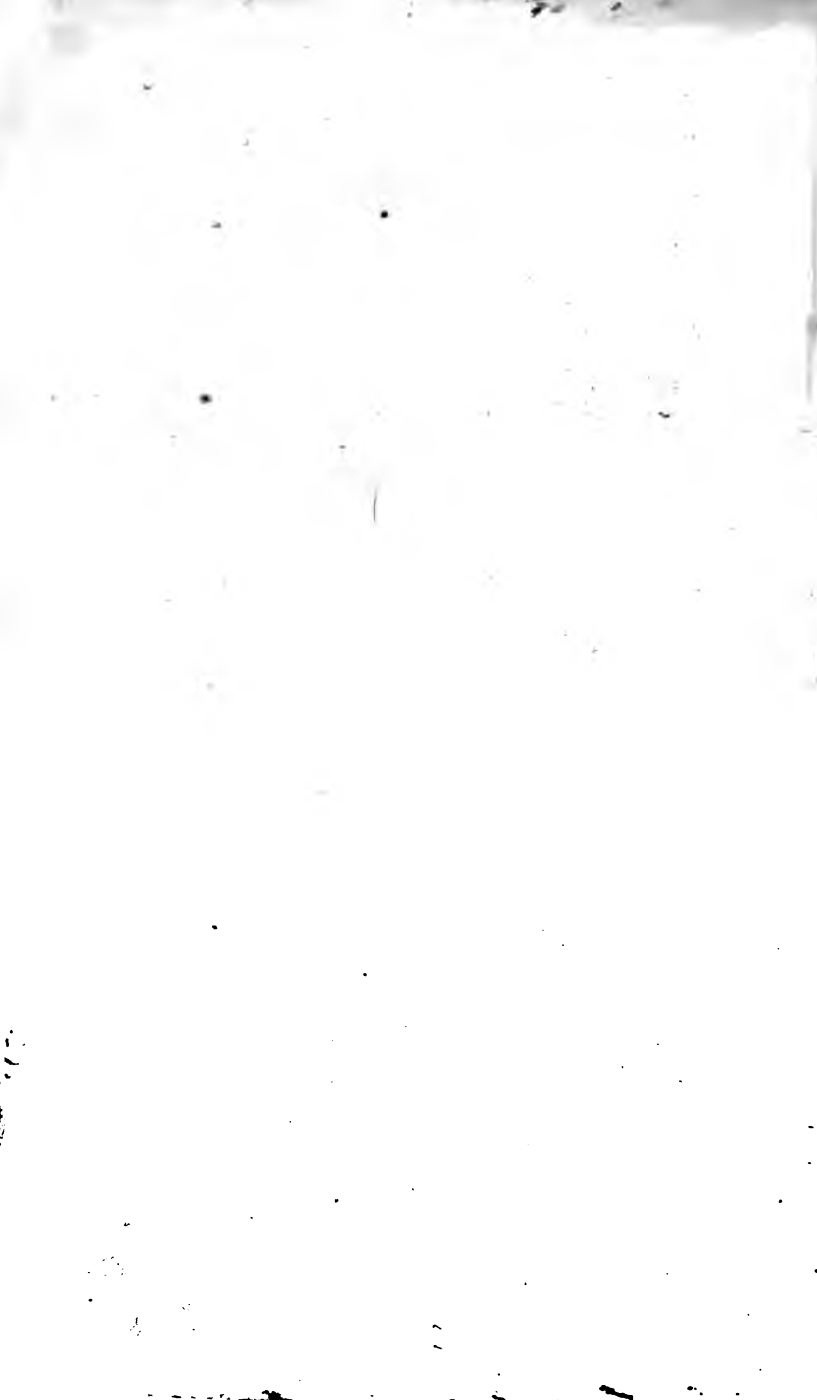
Whately's Logic. Elements of Logic: comprising the Substance of the Article in the Encyclopædia Metropolitana. With Additions, &c. By RICHARD WHATLEY, D.D., Archbishop of Dublin. 18mo, Muslin, 38 cents.

Willson's Readers. A Series of School and Family Readers: Designed to teach the Art of Reading in the most Simple, Natural, and Practical Way: embracing in their Plan the whole range of Natural History and the Physical Sciences; aiming at the highest degree of Usefulness, and splendidly Illustrated. Consisting of a Primer and Seven Readers. By MARCUS WILLSON. The Primer, and First, Second, Third, Fourth, and Fifth Readers now ready. Prices 15, 20, 30, 50, 66 cents, and \$1 00.

Harper's Catalogue.

A NEW DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF HARPER & BROTHERS' PUBLICATIONS is now ready for distribution, and may be obtained gratuitously on application to the Publishers personally, or by letter inclosing SIX CENTS in postage stamps. The attention of gentlemen, in town or country, designing to form Libraries or enrich their literary collections, is respectfully invited to this Catalogue, which will be found to comprise a large proportion of the standard and most esteemed works in English Literature—COMPREHENDING MORE THAN TWO THOUSAND VOLUMES—which are offered, in most instances, at less than one half the cost of similar productions in England. To Librarians and others connected with Colleges, Schools, &c., who may not have access to a reliable guide in forming the true estimate of literary productions, it is believed this Catalogue will prove especially valuable as a manual of reference. To prevent disappointment, it is suggested that, whenever books can not be obtained through any bookseller or local agent, applications with remittance should be addressed direct to the Publishers, which will meet with prompt attention.

Stomach
e. obse.
or by s.
on of p.
or acc.
Candys
state in
PHENIX
t. in ne
actions:
College
in fir.
this C.
nce. I
books on
science
s. who







DUPLICATE
EXCHANGED